This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

**Usage guidelines**

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

**About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Finch DD 6

# A GRAMMAR

OF

# THE FRENCH TONGUE;

## WITH A PREFACE,

CONTAINING AN ESSAY

ON THE PROPER METHOD

OF

TEACHING AND LEARNING THAT LANGUAGE.

By

LEWIS CHAMBAUD.

---

REVISED AND CORRECTED,

AGREEABLY TO THE DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH ACADEMY,

By

M. DES CARRIERES.

---

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR LONGMAN, BROWN & Co.; SIMPKIN, MARSHALL & Co.; HAMILTON & Co.; WHITTAKER & Co.; SHERWOOD & Co.; F. & J. RIVINGTON; J. M. RICHARDSON; DULAU & Co.; HARVEY & DARTON; HOULSTON & STONEMAN; SOUTER & LAW; & JOSEPH THOMAS.

1846.

Finch DD 6

# CHAMBAUD'S GRAMMAR

OF

# THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

have been found exactly corresponding to each other, by several English Gentlemen, who have been long enough conversant with people of fashion and character abroad, to become masters of the pronunciation, and who are therefore competent judges of the matter.

This work is divided into three parts: and I have printed in a small character such observations as are not fit for beginners: but must be omitted, in order for them to learn first what is essential to the language; that they may thereby be the sooner enabled to enter into the construing of the French books. Each Part of Speech is treated of, both with respect to its accidence and construction, in a manner that leaves nothing further to be said upon the same subjects. There is not one construction in French, but is taken notice of, and reduced into rules. And I have reserved for an Appendix some more particular observations, that could not be inserted in the body of the work, without interrupting that order which I proposed; but which are nevertheless necessary to the understanding and writing French.

Another advantage that youth and illiterate people will reap from it is, that in learning French, they will at the same time learn the art of speaking, the reason of the words they utter, the economy of all languages. Therefore after a succinct, but clear and exact analysis of the analogy and foundations of languages, prefixed by way of introduction, I give in the sequel true and perfect notions of the Parts of Speech, and other Grammatical terms used in the work: and both the division of the work, and definitions used in it, will be found grounded in the nature of things, and formed after the most exact rules of Logic. This (though the young learner need not at first trouble himself with it) seemed to me the more necessary, as there is no treatise on Grammar fit for youth and illiterate persons; all the English, as well as the Latin and French Grammars, used in schools, being quite defective in that respect, and the definitions in them, for the most part, false, though generally used by Grammarians.

I think, after the generality of Grammarians, that all the words of which speech is composed, may be ranged into eight or nine classes; but I differ from them as to the true species of words, which are the constituent parts of speech. Thus I keep from that number the Participle, which is no distinct species from the Verb, of which it is only a mode; and I admit the Adnoun, which they confound with the Noun, though essen-

tially different, I acknowledge the Particles for one of the Parts of Speech: but I fix them to a particular species of words, which are neither Adverbs, nor Prepositions, nor Conjunctions. How these came to be so confounded by Grammarians, as to be all promiscuously called by one name, to which they have fixed no idea, and be at the same time distinguished by particular ideas, which fix their species, cannot be easily accounted for. Things specifically distinguished must have distinct appellations. Again: I admit of one Article only, and of no case at all in nouns, contrary to all those who have written upon the French language before me. I give my reasons for that singularity. Reason, and the right of the thing, not imitation, is my guide, and the rule which I go by throughout this performance.

And now, having given an account of this work, I shall say something of the method of teaching and learning French, whereon depends the whole success of those who are desirous of attaining to the knowledge of that language: for I am satisfied that the little progress of Learners is often owing to the mismanagement of Teachers, who are so far from being qualified for their art, that they do not so much as suspect that it is one. Teaching French is become the profession of Foreigners of all sorts, who know not how to shift for a living, and often have no qualification at all. The generality of the French know not their mother-tongue: but the few who are masters of it are not, on that single account, capable of teaching it. I have composed this performance, not only for the instruction of the English who learn French, but also for the use of such Teachers as are not masters of that language. I hope it will be advantageous to them in all respects: for they must have the mastery of it, and make the rules familiar to them, that they may readily represent them upon occasion to their scholars, whenever they happen to write or speak wrong. I shall therefore subjoin my own method of teaching, which is grounded both upon reason and experience.

The lesson consists of four or five parts, which ought to keep an equal pace together: the materials of the language, I mean the Vocabulary and Forms of Speech; the way of using them, or the Grammar; the Exercise, which is the practice of the Grammar Rules; and the pronunciation, or reading: to which translating and construing must be added, when the scholar has learnt his Accidence. The lesson must always begin with the pronunciation, and each part always follow in its turn in the same order, for fear of forgetting something.

Before the Master shows his scholars the vowels of the first table, he himself must pronounce distinctly to them each vowel one after another, and make them pronounce the same after him; then make them pronounce the first four together, then four more, and so on: and when he is satisfied that his pupils have got the pronunciation of them all, he must show them in the first table the letters by which those sounds are represented; pronouncing again first the vowel, as he points it out to his pupils, and making them pronounce it after him. He may then explain to them what a vowel is, in the very words of the definition set down in page 5; and tell them that the vowels marked with a circumflex over them, have a much broader and longer sound than the others; and that the nasal vowels are so called, on account of their being pronounced through the nose. Afterwards he must show them the mute *e*; but must take care not to pronounce it.

When the scholars know their vowels, as represented in the first table, the Master must show them the second, which contains the several ways of representing the vowels; and inform them, that all those combinations of letters, such as *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, *et*, &c. represent each of them only the sound of the vowel beginning the line, and that *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, *et*, &c. must be pronounced *è*. They are to pronounce each combination after him, and then repeat or pronounce them by themselves as he points at each of those combinations. The master must then observe to them, that *e* mute is represented these three ways, *e*, *es*, *ent*.

The table of the consonants is to be used after the same manner, the Master pronouncing them first with the guttural sound of *e* (or *eu*) but very weak, just to show the articulation. They are ranged according to their several efficient causes; those which are produced by the same disposition and motion of the lips or tongue, being placed against each other.

The tables of the syllables must be learnt next, the Master still pronouncing first the syllable, and making his Pupil pronounce it after him, without spelling; that is, without causing him to name first the consonant, and then the vowel of which the syllable is formed. But the learner must read the syllables, not only in their natural order, from the left to the right, but also from the right to the left, from top to bottom, and again from bottom to top, till he is perfect in the pronunciation of them. Next comes the table of Monosyllables: then two other tables to acquaint the learner when the consonants ought not to be pronounced at the end of words and syllables, and when

they ought; lastly, the table of the combinations of sounds. The learner must get this last table by heart, and have six or eight syllables, with the words annexed to them, set him every time, as part of his task: and when he has learnt all those combinations, go through them over again after the same manner; adding a rule of the final consonants, with its exception; and thus repeat these tables a third and fourth time, nay, till the Master is convinced, by the pupil's reading, that he has them thoroughly, and they have made a lasting impression on his mind. Afterwards he must make him read the Vocabulary and Forms of Speech (but still without spelling), reading each word first, and making the pupil repeat it after him: and give him a certain number of words and sentences to get by heart, more or less, according to his capacity.

Spelling will not do at all; and is, on the contrary, the greatest hinderance to the learning of the pronunciation. Children must be accustomed to read the words without naming each letter separately, one after another: they will soon learn to read, if they are taught their letters and syllables after the manner contained in the tables. The usual method of teaching children to read, in making them name the vowels and consonants by themselves, is quite absurd. To evidence this beyond contradiction, let us suppose the pronunciation of this word *champs* is to be learnt. If you make the pupil spell, he will say, *cey, ash, â, em, pey, ess,* and he will stop of course; because the separate sounds of *c, h, a, m, p, s,* cannot give him any idea of the combined sound, which is to be pronounced. How should they? Those letters, named singly after one another, make six different sounds and articulations, none of which separately has, or altogether have, any manner of affinity of resemblance to the single articulated sound expressed by *champs*. The master, seeing his pupil stop after spelling this word, pronounces himself *champs* to him; and the pupil, echo-like, repeats *champs*. Spelling, therefore, can only serve to confound the learner, and lead him into error, in intimating to him that there are six sounds in *champs*, though the teacher is obliged, after all, to convince him by his own pronunciation that there is but one. Let the word be pronounced at first to the learner, and the difficulty is removed; that sound will make a right impression upon his mind; and whenever he sees the same combination of letters, he will remember the sound represented by them, and will pronounce the word right.

Moreover, the names of the letters most commonly o
false notions, nay, sounds and articulations directly opposit
those which are to be pronounced. The letter *c* is p
nounced sometimes *k*, and sometimes *s*. Its name *cey*, leads
learner to pronounce *sa* for *ka*, and to read *lâce* for *lac*. (
sometimes pronounced *gue*, as is *Gog*, *Agag*, and someti
*jey*. The name of *gey*, which the learner gives it in spell
leads him naturally to read, *Joge* for *Gog*, and *Ajage* for *Ag*
Some Masters, hearing a child make such mistakes in read
are apt to fret, to fall into a passion, and perhaps to abuse h
But how can the child help it, if he pronounces false sou
into which he is naturally led by those names of the lett
which his master has been at great pains to teach him?
must not blame the child, but his own method only, and
form it.

The method here recommended to the Teacher has ex
rience for its voucher; it has never failed me. But, upon
whole, those that are fond of spelling, may as well make t
pupils spell the words of the Vocabulary and Forms of Spe
as a set of unmeaning words of two, three, or four syllabl
since those materials of the language cannot be learnt too ea
I make my scholars begin with the Adverbs, instead of
common Nouns, that they may have the indeclinable part
speech, the Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions, treasu
up in their memory, against the time they will be capable
construing French. This is the most difficult and neces
part of the Vocabulary; and, when once learnt, the scholar
meet with nothing to stop him in construing, but the significat
of the Nouns, Adnouns, and Verbs, which he will learn of cou
by dint of translating and construing, besides his usual task
of the Vocabulary.

After minding the pronunciation and materials of the l
guage, the Grammar must be thought of. Therefore
master will set his scholar a lesson out of the Accidence;
plain to him what a noun is, that it is of a gender, has
numbers, and is commonly preceded by the article, and w
is meant by each of these terms; make him read the four ru
for the formation of the plural number (p. 101.) with the t
last paragraphs of page 111 about the article, apply the ru
to the nouns set down for his pattern (p. 112.) and take not
to him of the conformity of the examples to these rules: t
exercise him immediately upon the same, in making him w
down the first noun of the *Introduction to the Writing of Fren*

in French and English, through its three states in both numbers, according to his examples, to show him how to do it by himself; and set him, for his exercise, three or four nouns to be done after the same manner; and give him, besides, those rules about the plural number and agreement of the article with the noun, to get by heart as part of his task. A grown person will easily learn this in one lesson. Young scholars of an indifferent capacity may be made two, or three, or four lessons of the same, and they will have it perfect, before they have done half a dozen exercises upon the accidence of nouns. Afterwards they must learn the rules for the formation of the verbs, (p. 137.) omitting the exceptions at first, which are to be learned only the second time of going through these rules: for, as soon as they have been got by heart, they must be repeated with the exceptions; and the scholar be put to the practice of them, in turning into French the exercises upon the accidence of verbs: and he must prove every tense and person of his exercise by his rules.

The six rules about the Gender of Nouns (p. 105, 106.) are to be learnt next with the exceptions; afterwards the rules for the formation of the feminine gender of the Adnouns (p. 114. & 115.); lastly, those of the construction of the Article (p. 209). When the pupil has learnt so far, he must put the first chapter of the third part of the Exercises into French; and, after his master has corrected his exercise, prove the same by his Grammar rules: but the teacher must first prepare the exercise to his young scholar, after the manner set down in the preface to that book. While he is exercising upon the article, he must learn the rules for the construction of the Pronouns personal; and, as soon as he can say them, be put into that chapter of the Exercises: then return to the Accidence of the Adnouns, and learn also their construction (p. 221. and following); and whilst he is exercising upon the same, learn a new set of rules, in order to be put into the next chapter of the Exercises, and so on, till he has gone through all the Parts of Speech and their principles.

When the scholar has learnt his Accidence, he must construe a French book, and enter into the understanding of the language. He must also repeat his verbs, especially the irregular; conjugate a new verb every time, after saying first where the irregularity of the verb lies; and then learn the observations belonging to each verb. He must likewise go through the Syntax over again, and learn the notes. But the masters

must insist upon their scholars learning well their rules, and never suffer them to learn any thing new, before they thoroughly understand, and can readily repeat what is before; which is also a light and help to what follows. The contrary would be prejudicial to children, and rather retard than forward them. They learn fast enough, when they learn well. *Sat citò, si sat benè.*

But the great difficulty is to procure books fit for beginners. *Télémaque*, and *Molière* are excellent books, but never were composed nor designed for learning French. They suppose a thorough knowledge of the language, and are the last books that ought to be read, in order to relish the beauties and delicacies of it, and learn its figurative, idiomatical, and proverbial ways of speaking; and a Teacher cannot more plainly show his want of judgment, than in causing beginners to construe such books. Who would advise a Foreigner, who wants to learn English, to read *Milton's Paradise Lost*, which a great part of the English themselves do not rightly understand, or some witty play? I say the same of French books of literature. They must certainly be read, but in their turn. The rule in all kinds of learning is, or ought to be, to proceed by insensible steps from what is easy to what is difficult. Beginners must read only books easy to be understood, written in the most plain and natural style, without any thing puzzling, either in the expression or in the turn of the sentences, and the subject ought to be known and agreeable to their capacity: for the whole business at first is to make them learn the true import and proper signification of words, and their general construction.

I recommended, about twelve or fourteen years ago, a book which has gained immortal honour to its author; I mean *Comenii Janua Linguarum reserata:* a performance contrived with incredible art and pains to promote more effectually the learning of languages; and which has been translated, not only into all the languages of Europe, besides the Latin and Greek, but also into the Arabic, Turkish, Persian, and even the Mogul's language: and has gone through a great many Polyglot editions. The ingenious author, in methodising all the works of nature and art, all that is the object of our senses and understanding, has not only brought under proper heads all the words and common constructions of a language, but also explained things and their differences; so that his performance is a compendious system of learning, altogether pro-

per to form the minds of youth, and enrich them with knowledge, at the same time that they are learning languages. How it comes to pass that so valuable a book is now quite disused in schools, and known only to some Men of Letters, is indeed a matter of wonder. Would it not be worth a Bookseller's while to get that work reprinted in French and English?

As to the first construing book, the scholar must first translate his lesson, then construe it; and the construction must be literal, taking one French word only, then one English word, except the article and noun, the pronoun and verb, which must not be parted. By and by, after he shall have gone through a dozen of pages, he must take three or four words together, so as to make a sense, as the noun and adnoun, the subject and the verb, with its regimen. But this is only one half of the business. The young scholar must now digest his lesson (if I may use the expression), in studying it over again another way; and, after he has construed it, must be called upon for every word, first in French, then in English, according to the order of the parts of speech: noun, adnoun, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and particle. By that means, and the set of words which he is to get by heart every time out of his Vocabulary, a child will treasure up in his memory the words of the language, of which he will understand the divers significations, and of which he will soon find the advantage for speaking French. The master must keep to this method, all the first construing book throughout, taking notice, besides, all along to his pupil, of the constructions of which he has learnt the rules: and when he has gone through his Grammar, make him parse, that is, account for the construction of every word of his lesson, and show how each governs or is governed by another in the sentence.

Of the books which are to be read next, some are to be construed only to the master, the scholar having first studied his lesson, and others to be translated and rendered according to the beauties of the English Tongue; but in both he must pass over nothing unexplained, and that he does not entirely understand. The master must make him render faithfully the true spirit of the author; I say faithfully, and not literally, which is necessary only in the beginning, and when the scholar is at a loss how to find out the sense himself. He must take notice to him of the divers forms of speech, turns, and idioms of the two languages; of the propriety of the French words, that is, their significations both proper and figurative; of the choice of the

expressions, in mentioning others almost alike, but which would not sufficiently express the thought, or which might be used in common discourse, but would be unsuitable to the dignity of composition; and especially he ought to explain the use and force of the prepositions, and adverbial ways of speaking, in which consists the idiom of a language, which he must always have in view with his scholars. I cannot swell this Preface with examples, to show by their application that true way of studying French Authors which I here recommend. An ingenious and able teacher, who has his duty at heart, that is, the improvement of the learners, will not be at a loss how to promote it: but there is little to be expected from those who either want the qualifications necessary for their business, or are so bigotted to their own method, as to scorn to listen to any new instructions.

By this time the scholar will pronounce pretty well: therefore he must read with his Master the treatise on the Pronunciation, which makes the first part of this work. He will then see with pleasure the principles of the pronunciation of which he has got the practice already; will easily correct the few defects in his reading; and, in a little time, become entirely perfect therein. He must likewise try to speak French. If he exerts himself he will find that he can speak a great deal more than he imagined, and will be surprised at his own progress. But this wants explanation: which will, at the same time, lead me to the resolution of a question frequently put to French masters: *In how much time can one learn French?*

The term of *scholar, learner, pupil,* which I am obliged to make use of in this Essay, has a two-fold signification. A scholar signifies, first, a person whose judgment is formed, a man of parts, who, being sensible of the benefit of learning, learns French of his own accord, and therefore acts his part, and pursues his study with diligence and steadiness. A scholar is also a child of ten or twelve years of age, or under, whose understanding is not open yet, of an indifferent capacity, and no inclination at all for learning. A grown person of parts and application will learn his Accidence in a couple of months; be able in less than three to construe a French book, and turn into French the first chapter of the Exercises; and go through the whole course of the language, all along with the Exercises upon the Grammar Rules, in less than a twelvemonth. Such scholars indeed can then exert themselves in the practice of what they have learnt. They understand common French, and

can make themselves understood. Yet they are not masters of the French language. They have learnt too fast, without allowing themselves time for digesting their learning. The matters which they have been studying, have only grazed on their mind, without making any deep impression; a new set of rules generally driving away those that were learnt before Moreover, when they are out of the drudgery of the Accidence, and have once entered into the understanding and writing of the language, they are generally apt to neglect their Vocabulary and Forms of Speech, and forget that the several parts of their business ought to keep an equal pace together. They must therefore go through their principles over again, and keep to their method of studying for twelve months longer: for it is by dint of reading only they can learn the several significations of the words, and make themselves masters of the Idioms.

But supposing a grown person of parts and application can learn French in a twelvemonth; it is also reasonable to suppose that he applies himself to his business, and reads four times more, and takes four times more pains, than a child will, or is able to do; therefore a child cannot be less than four or five years learning the same. There is no proposition in Euclid more evident It is as plain as that two and two make four.

The learning of a language is the work of time and application. It cannot be learnt in a short time, nor without taking great pains. That is impossible in the nature of the thing: and children learn nothing but by repeating the same thing over and over again. But if they do not learn so fast as grown persons, they generally learn better. They will speak French, of course, after they have learnt how to speak; for we are all apt to show our accomplishments. If both they and their master act their part, you may rest satisfied that they come on well, though they cannot speak. Do not be impatient at the operations of Nature; she works but slowly. Children, in a good state of health, and under a wholesome diet, grow constantly, though their growing is not constantly observable. It is even so with the mind: it improves constantly, so it is properly cultivated; though it is in process of time only that we can perceive the improvement. It is impossible for one not to be able to speak the language, when thus made capable of it; and it is as impossible to be made capable of it, otherwise than by studying its Genius, and learning methodically.

It is a great abuse introduced in most schools to force beginners to speak nothing but French among themselves. They of necessity must either speak wrong (even supposing that they have a competent stock of words and expressions, for it is the utmost absurdity to pretend that they will learn them by guessing), or condemn themselves to silence. The first cannot but be very detrimental to them; since they thereby accustom themselves to a barbarous broken French, which is no language at all, and cannot be worn out without infinite pains. The second is still worse, for it hinders them from disclosing freely their thoughts, and straitens in some measure their understanding; but, above all, gives them the utmost aversion to the language, their books, and master: to prevent which too much care cannot be employed.

It is amazing to see how apt people are to deceive themselves, and how easy to be imposed upon, by designing crafty men, who improve the general simplicity to their own private gain. To this is owing the abuse of which I am complaining. The generality of people, being incapable to reflect duly upon the nature of a language, and the faculties of the human mind, have hardly put their children to the study of the French language, but they expect them to speak it, before they have learnt how to speak: and in case they do not, never fail to task the master either with incapacity or neglect of his business.

The masters, on the other hand, being at a loss to satisfy those unreasonable expectations, and not knowing what to contrive for forwarding their boys, presently begin by making them learn words, dialogues, and phrases, and labour hard to beat into their heads as many common sentences as they can; pretty near after the same manner as parrots are instructed. And, as has been hinted before, the absurdity is even carried so far in some schools, as to confine the poor boys, under all sorts of penalties and punishments, to the talking nothing else but French. The consequence of which is, they acquire the knack of talking a Gibberish, which nobody can make any thing of The ignorant parents, charmed, however, with the show their children make of their learning, think them great proficients in the French tongue. They recommend the school as one of the best for learning, and so the master gets his ends; but, in truth, the poor boys know nothing of French, and the parents are deceived and imposed upon.

To evidence this, let us observe, that two things are chiefly to be considered in the learning of language: first, the words,

then, the using those words conformably to the genius of the language. The one is the object of memory, the other that of judgment and reflection. The learning of words is nothing less than getting by heart the whole Dictionary of a language; and cannot be performed within a small compass of time, even by the best memory that youth was ever blessed with. The right placing and using of words in speech require a constant and steady application of the mind, and cannot be acquired but by much meditation upon the language, either by oneself, or with a teacher; by frequently construing, and turning that language into our mother-tongue, and *vice versâ*, our mother-tongue into that language, and comparing all along the Genius and Idiom of the two languages. Although it is evident that this must require a vast compass of time, yet it is the more speedily brought about, when one proceeds with method. Afterwards comes the practice of both, to require a due readiness of the mind for writing or speaking.

If nothing more was necessary than to learn to jabber, or to show in company that they can speak some French words and phrases, that, indeed, would not require so much art and method. But as for those who are either designed to be scholars, or to be concerned in some trade that requires a correspondence with foreign merchants; who either intend to travel like rational creatures, with a design to adorn their mind by the conversation of the learned and polite part of Europe; or who, by reason of their birth and qualities, are entitled to those honourable stations, wherein they shall be intrusted, either at home or abroad, with the interest of their King and country: for these, I say, who must of course attain to a mastery in the language, there is much art and method required; though, at the same time, there is seldom any used.

One may daily see in schools young lads who have been learning French for five or six years, and who pass with some for good scholars, on account of that readiness with which they express themselves. But they observe no concord at all; cannot so much as make the adnoun agree with the noun; are utterly incapable of writing four lines, or even to make sense of half a page of a common French book; in short, they know no more than the words and phrases of their own book. Can this be called knowledge of a language, without perverting our ideas of things, and renouncing our own sense and understanding? Whereas, studying half that time, in the manner I propose, would have made them perfect masters of the language, and

enabled them to converse and correspond with foreigners upon all subjects.

As to the time, therefore, that children must be put to the speaking of French, these rules, in my humble opinion, ought to be strictly observed. First, that they should have a sufficient stock of words, and even of ways of speaking, to express themselves; and, besides, that they should be capable of using them according to the genius of the language. In the next place, that they should not be suffered to speak French too soon among themselves, without somebody with them to correct them. Therefore, when a master finds a boy capable of speaking French under these two limitations, I would have him discourse himself with him in a way suitable to his capacity, doing it at first in the same sentences and expressions, that he has learnt in his forms of speech, changing only the order of the construction, but keeping to the same words. Moreover, in schools, a teacher should, twice or thrice a week, spend some time in exercising his scholars in the speaking of French, conversing in an easy and friendly manner with them; asking the youngest questions within their reach; helping them to make their answers: requiring, from those that are more forward, descriptions and recitals of what they have heard, seen, or read; and speaking nothing but French to the forwardest and most perfect in the language, nor suffer them to speak English, except to those who cannot discourse with them in French. It is after this manner boys will be effectually brought to the speaking of French, and not at all by using themselves to the aforesaid gibberish that prevails in schools.

It will not be amiss to set before the reader a specimen of that barbarous language wherein School-boys are trained up, under the specious pretence of speaking French.

| *Bad French*, as it is generally spoken in England. | *English.* | *Good French*, as it is spoken in France. |
|---|---|---|
| *Demain est un jour de fête pour un nouveau garçon.* | To-morrow is a half holiday for a new boy. | *C'est demain congé*, or *Nous aurons demain congé, pour un nouveau pensionnaire* |
| *Il est douze ans vieux, quoiqu'il ne regarde pas si vieux; mais il est court de son âge.* | He is twelve years old, though he does not look so old; but he is short of his age. | *Il a douze ans, quoiqu'il ne paroisse pas si âgé, mais il est petit pour son âge.* |
| *Il a été à l'école ces quatre années.* | He nas been at school these four years. | *Il y a quatre ans qu'il va à l'école.* |
| *Smith, qui n'est que dix, est plus grand que lui par un demi tête.* | Smith, who is but ten, is taller than he by half a head. | *Smith, qui n'a que dix ans, est plus grand que lui de la moitié de la tête.* |

| *Bad French.* | *English.* | *Good French.* |
|---|---|---|
| *Un nouveau garçon de jour est aussi pour venir la prochaine semaine, mais nous ne sommes pas pour avoir fête pour lui.* | A new day-boy is also to come the next week, but we are to have no holiday for him. | *Il doit aussi venir un nouvel externe*, or *Il y aussi un externe qui doit venir la semaine prochaine, mais nous n'aurons pas congé pour lui.* |
| *Nous remprons s'école dans une semaine.* | We shall break up in a week. | *Nous aurons vacances dans huit jours.* |
| *Je puis dire déjà ce que je suis pour gagner pendant les fêtes.—Il est un aisé leçon, mais l'exercice est fort dur.* | I can say already what I am to get during the holidays.—It is an easy lesson, but the exercise is very hard. | *Je sais déjà ce que j'aurai à apprendre pour les vacances. C'est une leçon bien aisée, mais le thême est fort difficile.* |
| *Vous faut aller, ma maîtresse manque vous. — Elle a appelé pour vous trois fois déjà.* | You must go: my mistress wants you. She has called for you three times already. | *Madame (une telle) a besoin de vous*, or *vous demande; sil faut que vous alliez voir ce qu'elle vous veut. Elle vous a déjà appelé trois fois.* |
| *Quelqu'un demande pour mon maître.* | Somebody asks for my master. | *Quelqu'un demande*, or *Voilà quelqu'un qui demande Monsieur (un tel).* |
| *Nous irons prendre une promenade, si le sous-maître veut venir avec nous: autrement nous n'irons pas dehors, car mon maître ne veut pas avoir nous aller par nous-mêmes.* | We shall go and take a walk, if the usher will go with us, otherwise we shall not go out; for my master will not have us go by ourselves. | *Nous irons à la promenade*, or *Nous irons faire un tour, si Monsieur (un tel)*, or *si le précepteur veut venir avec nous: sinon nous ne sortirons pas; car Monsieur (un tel) ne veut pas que nous sortions seuls.* |
| *Je desire vous pour donner moi un de mon nouveau chemise* (said once a boy to a maid). | I desire you to give me one of my new shirts. | *Je vous prie de me donner une de mes chemises neures.* |
| *Il manque quinze minutes de douze.* | It wants fifteen minutes of twelve. | *Il est midi moins un quart.* |
| *Il est trente minutes après trois.* | It is thirty minutes after three. | *Il est trois heures & demie.* |
| *Il vous faut venir.* | You must come. | *Il faut que vous veniez.* |
| *Vous regardez bien.* | You look well. | *Vous avez bon air*, or *bon visage.* |
| *Vous êtes à jouer.—Vous êtes pour jouer.* | You are to play. | *C'est à vous à jouer.* |
| *Appelez pour du pain.* | Call for bread. | *Demandez du pain.* |
| *Demandez pour une pièce de pain.* | Ask for a piece of bread. | *Demandez un morceau de pain.* |
| *Aucune personne vous dira.* | Any body will tell you. | *Tout le monde vous dira.* |

It now remains to answer the objections that may be made against this method of learning and teaching French.

Some people urge, that the best way of learning a language, is to learn by practice: that it is impossible to make sure rules upon a living language, which is entirely grounded upon use: that these rules are destroyed by the exceptions, which prove that they are groundless: and, in fine, that it is too tedious and painful for children to get such rules by heart: that it is overloading their memory, and losing a great deal of time which

may be better employed in making them speak French: and that the rules serve only to puzzle their understanding.

1*st*, I am so much convinced of the excellency of practice in all things, and especially that a living language is a practical science, that it is for no other purpose I have taken so much pains in composing this Grammar, and the Exercises upon the different rules which it contains, than to put the learner, the sooner and more effectually into the practice of the language; and thereby remedy the general complaint, that the generality of those who learn French get no other benefit from their pains and application, than that of understanding common French books, without ever being able to speak or write that language. But I also easily persuade myself, that those who make this objection, mistake *rote* for *practice*, than which nothing is more absurd.

Practice, rightly understood, consists in exercising oneself, upon what one has learnt, and in the frequent using of the terms and idiomatical phrases of a language. It therefore supposes the previous learning, not only of words to speak, but also of the rules for using them, conformably to the genius of that language. Practice, then, has not learning for its object, but is itself the object of learning, and is no more than the exercise of the mind upon the thing learnt. It is undeniably true, that any one, who has once learnt how to write and speak a language, ought afterwards to speak it, as often as he can find an opportunity, as well in order to retain it, as to use it with greater fluency and ease; and this only is called Practice. But as to the means of attaining a due exactness and propriety in the writing and speaking of a language for beginners, who most certainly cannot practise what they have never learnt before, unless they come at the knowledge of the words of a language, and the way of using them, by Conjuration, there is no other, I dare maintain, than that of studying methodically the principles and rules of it after the manner I propose.

Neither let it be urged, in support of that wrong notion some people entertain of practice, that infants learn their mother-tongue without being taught, and only by hearing others speak. For without inquiring here into the faculty of the soul in this respect, which would not prove favourable to those who plead this instance, it may suffice to answer, that it is obvious to any body, who reflects ever so little upon the case, that that knowledge which young children have of their mother-tongue, is confined within a very narrow compass: nor does

it extend further than merely to express the most common concerns and wants of Nature in that tender age; till, after having learnt to read, they gradually improve in the learning of the words and expressions of their mother-tongue, in proportion as by reading and instruction they improve their intellectual faculties.

As to putting young persons into French families where not one word of English is spoken, or even sending them over to France, both reason and experience convince us, that unless they are previously grounded in the principles, they can receive no other benefit than that of practising common compliments, or exercising themselves in the trifling topics of familiar discourse. For unless they study with some qualified person, who makes them read much, and translate French into English, as well as English into French, pointing out, as they go on, the Genius and Idiom of that language, they will be so far from becoming masters of its Scope and Beauty, that, even after staying ten, nay twenty or more years in France, they will find themselves almost as far from understanding the true spirit of a French Author, or conversing in an intelligible manner upon any material subject, as at their first going thither.

The French Refugees are a striking proof of this. An English Gentleman hearing once an old French Refugee say, that he had been fifty years in England, and expressing his surprise that he could not speak English at all; Lack-a-day, Sir, said the Frenchman, what English can one learn in fifty years? *Hélas, Monsieur, qu'est-ce qu'on peut apprendre d'Anglois en cinquante ans?* Neither is it an uncommon thing to see English people, who can hardly make themselves understood in French, though they have lived twenty or thirty years in that country.

Should a parent, who is desirous that his son should learn Music, say to an excellent Master of that Art, *I will have my son learn Music; but pray do not make him lose a deal of time in learning what you call the principles of your art, without singing a pretty tune. Put him at once in the practice: there is nothing like it. Let your rules alone, your gamuts and keys, which are only the cant of Music. I will have him learn by practice*, I say. Sing airs to him, and make him sing. Never speak to him but in singing: he cannot fail of learning to sing when he hears nothing else.* His child could never learn Music after this manner. He might perhaps learn how to sing some airs, which he had often heard

* Practice is here taken in the sense of those who make this objection.

repeated to him; but he could never sing at the opening of a book, for want of having first learnt the nature, use and power, of the several notes that compose Music, which are the rules of Harmony, and guides to the voice. It is the same with a language. Those who are desirous to learn it, must begin with the principles, proceed by the application, and finish by the practice of them. To act contrarily, is to pervert the natural order of things, and attempt impossibilities. To obtain an end in any thing, one must use the necessary means to it; and that the principles are the necessary means of learning a language, is agreed upon by all judicious men, both ancient and modern.

*2dly*, I grant, that use alone has, without reason, and oftentimes contrary to it, established several ways of speaking in a language; but they must know those ways of speaking thus established, for the understanding of the authors that have written, and daily do write, in that language, and conform themselves to them, if they are desirous to write or speak it. These particularities, therefore, which use has thus established, and to which the learner must necessarily conform, must either be in some manner distinguished to him, or he must fix upon them by his own observation: for no other method can be thought of to know them, and yet they must be known.

Now, who will pretend to learn by himself, and without help, those caprices of use, which make the essence of a language; by studying deeply the books written therein; meditating upon the nature and use of every different expression; taking notice that many hundred nouns are of one gender, many hundred others of another, and many besides used in both genders, but with divers significations according to their gender; that, among verbs, some require one relation in the noun, and some another; that they are affected by such and such conjunctions as to their moods; and remembering all those nouns, verbs, and conjunctions, severally; and making many more such observations, without which one cannot attain to the knowledge of a language, and which also suppose the knowledge of Grammar? But though a man might dive in this manner into the bottom of a language, will it not be shorter and easier for him to read only one performance, where he shall find all those observations ready digested in a clear method, so that he needs only reflect upon them to have a key to the entire knowledge of that language?—All ways of speaking were originally established independent upon any rule; but they are

become by use the very rules of speaking, which make the Grammar of a language: and if they are not studied and entirely known, it is impossible ever to speak or write conformably to use.—As to the exceptions, far from destroying the general rules, they are more particular rules, which oftentimes strengthen and illustrate them.

*3dly*, It is well known that children do not want memory; that memory is active in them only, and it is of great moment to cultivate it, in that tender age, in those that have but little. To overload the memory of a child, would be to make him learn too much at once, and things which he does not understand; but not to give a moderate lesson to get by heart, after having well explained it to him. To learn the examples that attend the rules, and promote the understanding of them, is a very great help to the memory. There is no doubt but some children have more memory and capacity than others, and therefore can be sooner forwarded: but they must all learn the Grammar, since it is the only means to attain to the knowledge of a language, as I have, I think, sufficiently proved. Moreover, must not they learn, sooner or later, the words of the language, which are the mere object of memory? If so, one of the great benefits which they will reap from this performance is, that in learning the rules of their Grammar, they will at the same time, insensibly, and as if by artificial memory, learn almost all the words of the French tongue; so much is it calculated for their improvement. Should they learn the words and examples only, without any observation upon them, they could get no knowledge of the language at all, the words being only the materials of it, and its Genius and Idiom consisting in the use of them. And should they learn but few rules, they could know but part of that Genius and Idiom, as this Grammar would be defective, if it did not contain all the observations that can be made upon the language. Besides, there is always in a language matter enough left to be learnt by practice only, which no art can reduce into rules, as may be seen in the Idioms all over my Dictionary. It would be therefore to no purpose to urge that the learning of these rules is too hard for children, and that they can only serve to puzzle their understanding; for if there be any children that cannot learn them, I declare them altogether incapable, not only of learning French, but of any sort of learning at all. "The art of "Grammar is necessary for children," says Quintilian; "it forms "the minds of those who begin." And as the understanding

of languages serves for an introduction to all sciences, sc studying the rules of Grammar, children begin to reflect have their understandings opened, and exert their tender hopeful parts; and thereby render themselves capable of st ing in time more difficult sciences.

If, notwithstanding these proofs of the most effectual mean mastering a language, which carry all the conviction in the w along with them, there are people that still continue to be judiced against a regular and methodical way of learning, must be left to their irrational conceptions; my design bein be serviceable to those only who are desirous to make themsel or their children, perfect in the French tongue, who seek nestly for the best means to effect it, and are sensible of benefit of a good guide in the pursuit thereof. And if the met which I have here proposed, will not bring them to the ha accomplishment of their wishes, I dare insist on it, no other will.

# TABLE OF THE CONTENTS.

## *The* INTRODUCTION.


Page

*Grounds and Principles of the Art of Speaking* ..... 1
*tions of the words* Art, Speaking, Language ..... Ibid.
*rts of Signs by means of which we convey our Thoughts to another* ..... Ibid.
*are images of our thoughts* ..... 2
*nking faculty consists in conceiving and judging* ..... Ibid.
*hings to be considered in speech* ..... Ibid.
*rts of speech reduced to nine* ..... 4
*e definition of a Grammar* ..... Ibid.
*vision of this Work* ..... Ibid.


## *PART I. Of* PRONUNCIATION *and* ORTHOGRAPHY.


*nciation, — Orthography, — Vowels, — Consonants, their sitions* ..... 5
*nch Alphabet, with the true appellation of the Letters, neous* ..... 6
*of the simple Sounds of the French Language* ..... 7
*e of the Vowels, with the several ways of representing* ..... 8
*of the Consonants* ..... 9
*able of Syllables* ..... 10 *and* 11
*table of Syllables* ..... 12 *and* 13
*of all the Monosyllables in the French Language,* 14 *and* 15
*able of the Consonants which are pronounced at the end of ables* ..... 16
*able of the words wherein the same Consonants are dropt he end of Syllables* ..... 17
*table of the Consonants that are usually dropt at the of Syllables* ..... 18
*table of the words wherein these Consonants are pro- nced at the end of Syllables* ..... 19

Page

*A table of the Combinations of the Letters which compose the Syllables, with their corresponding sounds in English* ..... 20
*Combinations of* a, â, an ..... 20 *and* 21
*Combinations of* e, eux, eur, œil, é ..... 21
*Combinations of* è, oi, ê, oie, er ..... 22
*Combinations of* oir, être, i, in, ien ..... 23
*Combinations of* oin, o, ô, or, ou ..... 24
*Combinations of* our, on, u, ur, un ..... 25
*Words difficult to pronounce* ..... 26
*Of the sounds expressed by the Vowels* ..... Ibid.
*Of Proper Diphthongs* ..... 41
*Of Improper Diphthongs* ..... 42
*Of Nasal Vowels* ..... 49
a, e, i, o, u, *followed by* n *or* m *take the nasal sound* ..... 50
*Of Consonants* ..... 53
*General observations upon Pronunciation* ..... 76
*General observations upon Orthography* ..... 79
*Terminations whose Penultima is short* ..... 80
*Terminations whose Penultima is long* ..... 82
*Of the several Marks used in writing French* ..... 84
*The Vowels which suffer Elision, and in what cases* ..... 85
*Hyphen* ..... 86
*Cedilla—Dialysis—Accent* ..... 87
*The French Language most harmonious; a late Writer confuted* 91
*Capitals, or great Letters, their use* ..... 92
*Stops, their names, shapes, and practice* ..... 93
*Parenthesis — Index—Obelisk—Asterisk—Quotation—Section Paragraph—Caret* ..... 94
*Abbreviations used mostly in foreign Gazettes* ..... 95
*List of the words wherein* h *is aspirated, and wherein it is not aspirated* ..... 96

*PART II. Of the* PARTS *of* SPEECH ..... 100

*Accidence of the Nouns, the formation of the Plural* ..... 101
*Of the Gender of Nouns* ..... 106
*Of the Article* ..... 110
*Rule for making the Article agree with the Noun* ..... 111
*Examples of all the ways of considering the Noun* ..... 113
*Accidence of Adnouns, the formation of their Feminine,* 114 *and* 115
*Of the Comparison of Adnouns* ..... 117
*Accidence of Pronouns, Pronouns Personal* ..... 119
*Pronouns Possessive, or rather Pronominal Adnouns* ..... 120
*Pronouns Relative and Interrogative* ..... 121
*Pronouns Demonstrative* ..... 122
*Pronouns Indeterminate* ..... 123

Page
*mbers——Cardinal* ..... 124
——*Ordinal,——Collective* ..... 127
*mbers,——Distributive, Multiplicative* ..... 128
*nce of Verbs,—— Substantive,—— Active,——Neuter,*
*–Reflected* ..... 129
*food, Tense, Number, and Person, are to be distinguished*
*Verbs, and what each is* ..... 130
*gating a Verb, what it is* ..... Ibid.
*xiliary* Avoir ..... 131
*rb Substantive* Etre ..... 133
*for the formation of the Tenses* ..... 136
*for the formation of the Persons* ..... 137
*Conjugation, of Verbs in* er ..... 141
le of the *progressive order of Tenses, simple and Compound* 143
*anner of conjugating the reflected verbs*, 144, 151, 153, 155,
, 159, 163, 165, 167, 169.
Table. *The French verbs used negatively* ..... 147
Table. *The French verbs conjugated interrogatively* .. 148
—— *Interrogatively and negatively* ..... Ibid.
*conjugation, of verbs in* ir *(gerund in* issant*)* ..... 149
*conjugation, of verbs in* ir *(gerund in* ant*)* ..... 151
*conjugation, of verbs in* enir ..... 153
*conjugation, of verbs in* evoir ..... 156
*conjugation, of verbs in* aire ..... 158
*conjugation, of verbs in* aindre *and* oindre ..... 160
*conjugation, of verbs in* oître ..... 164
*conjugation, of verbs in* uire ..... 166
*conjugation, of verbs in* endre *and* ondre ..... 168
*neuter which form their compound tenses from* être ..... 172
*irregular*, s'en aller, puer, envoyer ..... 173
*ations upon* aller *and* s'en aller ..... 176
rir ..... ..... Ibid.
r, Courir ..... ..... 177
r, Fuir, *and* s'Enfuir, Haïr ..... 178
, Ouvrir, Saillir, Assaillir, ..... 179
r, s'Asseoir, [Tressaillir, ..... 180
r, Savoir, Voir ..... ..... 182
r, Valoir ..... ..... 183
ir, Plaire ..... *with the requisite obser-* 184
Boire ..... *vations upon these* 185
Naître, Dire ..... *verbs* ..... 186
ire ..... ..... 187
Vivre, Suivre ..... ..... 188
e, Rompre ..... ..... 189
Mettre, Conclure ..... ..... 190
ncre, Coudre, Moudre .. ..... 191
ire, Clorre, &c. ..... ..... 192
*Impersonal* ..... ..... 198

Pa
*Of Adverbs, their definition* ..... 1
*Adverbs of Time* ..... 1
*Adverbs of Place* ..... 1
*Adverbs of Order* ..... 1
*Adverbs of Quantity and Number* ..... 1
*Adverbs of Quality and Manner* ..... 2
*Adverbs of Affirmation, Negation, Doubt, &c.* ..... 2
*Accidence of Prepositions,——their definition* ..... 2
*Accidence of Conjunctions,——their definition* ..... 2
*Of Particles,—their definition* ..... 2
*Discursive and Interjective Particles* ..... 2

## *PART III. Of* SYNTAX *or* CONSTRUCTION.

*Its definition* ..... 2
*Syntax of Nouns* ..... 2
*An odd Construction of* Partie ..... 2
*Four manners of expressions in Nouns* ..... 207 *and* 2
*Syntax of the Article* ..... 2
*One and twenty prepositions always will have the article before the next noun: nine others sometimes require it, sometimes not* 2
*The limited* or *partitive sense is expressed by the preposition* de 2
*Proper names take the article, when they are used in a determinate sense, or qualified by an adnoun* ..... 2
*The preposition* de *only, without the article, is used in five cases, especially after words of* quantity ..... 2
Bien *used for* beaucoup ..... 2
*Nouns are used without either article or preposition in five cases* 2
*Syntax of Adnouns* ..... 2
*Adnouns that come after the Nouns* ..... 2
*Sixteen adnouns only necessarily come before the noun* ..... 2
*Adnouns always attended by the Preposition* de ..... 2
*Adnouns always attended by the Preposition* à ..... 2
*The construction of adnouns of Dimension* ..... 2
*The construction of Nouns and Verbs attending the Adnoun in the comparative and superlative degrees* ..... 2
*Syntax of Pronouns* ..... Ibi
*The pronouns governed of the verb come before the verb, except in two cases* ..... 2
*And the pronoun in the 3d state comes before that in the 4th, except also in two cases* ..... 2
*Construction of* ne *and* pas *or* point ..... Ibi
*The several ways of asking questions* ..... 2
*The pronouns, whether governing or governed of the verb, are sometimes repeated, and sometimes not* ..... 2
*The use and construction of the pronoun indeterminate* on ..... 2
*The passive voice, both in French and English* ..... Ibi

Page
*The use and construction of the pronouns relative* le, en, y .... 246
*Particular observations upon the construction of the pronouns personal of the third person* il, lui, elle ..... 251
*The use and construction of the pronominal adnouns* ..... 254
*The construction of the pronouns relative,* qui, lequel, *&c.* .... 257
*The use and construction of* dont ..... Ibid.
*The use and construction of* où ..... 258
*The use and construction of* quoi ..... 262
*A very remarkable Pleonasm used in asking questions* ..... 263
*The use and construction of the pronouns demonstrative* ce, celui, ceci, cela, celui-ci, *&c.* ..... 264
*The use and construction of the pronouns indeterminate* ..... 267
Quelqu'un *and* Chacun ..... Ibid.
Quiconque, Personne ..... 270
Nul, pas un, aucun ..... 271
Ni l'un ni l'autre, l'un l'autre, Plusieurs ..... 272
Tout ..... 273
*The use and construction of* Quelque ..... 274 *and* 275
Qui que ce soit, Quoi que ce soit, chaque, rien ..... 276
Tel, certain ..... 277
*Observations upon Nouns of Number* ..... Ibid.
*Syntax of Verbs* ..... 283
*Of the Concord of Verbs with collective Nouns* ..... 284
*The use and construction of the Tenses* ..... 288
*Correspondence of the Subjunctive to the Indicative Mood* .... 293
*The use and construction of the Moods,—Verbs governing the subjunctive* ..... 294
*Verbs governing the Indicative* ..... 296
*Verbs Impersonal governing the Subjunctive* ..... 297
*Verbs Impersonal governing the Indicative* ..... 298
*The use of the present and preterite of the Subjunctive* ..... 300
*Of the government of Verbs* ..... 302
*Verbs active requiring the preposition* de *before the next Infinitive* 303
*Verbs neuter requiring the preposition* de *before the next noun and Infinitive* ..... 305
*Verbs active requiring the preposition* à *before the next Infinitive* 306
*Verbs neuter requiring the preposition* à *before the next Noun and Infinitive* ..... 307
*Verbs taking indifferently* de *or* à *before the next Infinitive* .... 308
*Verbs taking no preposition at all before the next Infinitive* .... 309
*Adnouns construed with* être, *requiring* à *before the next noun and Infinitive* ..... 311
*Adnouns construed with* être, *requiring* de *before the next noun and Infinitive* ..... 312
*Nouns chiefly construed with* avoir, *requiring* de *before the next infinitive* ..... 312

P
*A List of Nouns requiring* de *before the Infinitive* ..... 3
*Terms of Comparison requiring* que *de before the Infinitive* ..... 3
De, à, pour, *answer the English preposition* to ..... 3
*Particular Observations upon the Construction of the English Gerund with the particles* of, from, with, in, by, for ..... 3
*Construction of the Gerund* ..... 3
*Construction of the Participle* ..... 3
*Of Verbs Impersonal* ..... 3
*Of the Impersonal* Il est, *&c.* ..... 3
*Of the Demonstrative*—C'est, *&c.* ..... 3
Il y a ..... 3
Il fait ..... 3
Il faut ..... 3
*Of the French Negatives* ..... 3
*Words requiring* ne, *but without* pas *or* point *before their verbs* 3
*Particular cases where* ne *is used without* pas *or point* ..... 3
*Formation of Adverbs* ..... 3
*Adnouns used adverbially with some verbs* ..... 3
*Syntax of Adverbs* ..... 3
Rien *and* tout *are construed like Adverbs* ..... Ibi
*Syntax of Prepositions*—a, au, aux ..... 3
de, du, des ..... 3
avant ..... 3
après ..... 3
devant ..... 3
derrière—chez—contre ..... Ibi
dans *and* en ..... 3
depuis ..... 3
jusque ..... 3
hors—hormis—excepté—à la réserve ..... 3
loin—malgré—en dépit—par ..... 3
pour ..... 3
près ..... 3
auprès—proche ..... 3
vis-à-vis—à l'opposite—sans—selon—suivant—sur ..... 3
au-dessus—au-dessous ..... 3
vers—envers—à l'égard—au lieu ..... 3
à rebours—au rebours—à travers—au travers ..... 3
*Prepositions which must always be repeated* ..... 3
*Observations upon some English Prepositions* ..... 3
*Syntax of Conjunctions. Conjunctions governing the Indicative* 3
*Conjunctions governing the Subjunctive* ..... 3
*Conjunctions governing the Infinitive* ..... Ibi
*The Conjunctive* que *used instead of repeating the Conjunctions* si, quand, lorsque, pourquoi, *&c.* ..... 379 *and* 3
*Difference between* lorsque *and* quand ..... Ibi

Page
*Si is never construed with the Conditional* ..... 380
*Particular observations upon some Conjunctions* ..... 381

## APPENDIX.

*THE Analogy of Speech, or the Grounds and Principles of the Art of Speaking continued* ..... 383
*Reason has not been regarded in the Invention of Languages* .. 385
*The several species of words, invented for representing our thoughts, are grounded in the nature of things* ..... 389
*Definitions of such grammatical terms as most occur* ..... 391
*Observations upon certain words, wherein chiefly consists the Idiom of French*, Amitié, Amours, An, Année ..... 392
Accoutumer, s'Accoutumer, Avoir coutume, *&c.* Agir ..... 393
Aide—Aimer—*Present and Imperfect of* Aller *and* Venir .... 394
Apparoître *and* Paroître—Avoir ..... 395
Avoir beau—N'avoir garde—Ne faire que, *&c.* Au reste, *&c.* .. 396
Aieux—Savoir—Connoître—Devoir ..... 397
Ecouter—Entendre—Emplir—Enfermer—Enfer ..... 398
Espérer—Eveiller *and* Réveiller—Faire ..... 399
Faire grâce, *and* Faire une grâce—Fleurir ..... 400
Se fier—Fournir—Gens ..... 401
Bonne grâce—Jouer ..... 402
Jour *and* Journée—Laisser ..... 403
Livres *and* Francs ..... 404
Un coup de main, *&c.*—Marcher, *and* se promener ..... 405
Marier *and* Epouser—Mener *and* Porter—Amener *and* Apporter 406
Mourir—Neuf *and* Nouveau—Parens ..... 407
Personne ..... 408
Pâque—Se passer de—Plus, Davantage, Encore .....409 *and* 410
Plaire, Peinture, Portrait, Tableau ..... 411
Prendre garde—Rompre, Briser, Casser ..... 412
Seulement, Suppléer, Traiter mal *and* Maltraiter, Valoir—Voilà 413
Ne faire que de, *or* Venir de—Il y a ..... 414
*The names of some parts of some animals are not the same in French as in English* ..... .....Ibid.
*The sounds of beasts* ..... 415
*Verbs which, together with a noun without the article, form but one particular idea* ..... 416
*Observations upon Verbs, considered with respect to the idiom of the English tongue* ..... 425
*Of the Construction of certain English Particles, with respect to French* ..... 429
*The various Significations and Constructions of* que ..... 430
*Of inseparable Prepositions* ..... 435

Page
*Observations upon Proper Names* ..... 43
*Observations upon the Titles annexed by Custom to the divers Ranks and Stations of civil Life* ..... 43
*Observations upon the writing of Letters* ..... 44
*Of some Adnouns, whose Signification is different according to the different placing of them* ..... 44
*Nouns, Masculine in one Signification, and Feminine in another* 44
*Nouns that are applied to both Sexes, and have therefore their feminine Gender* ..... 44
*Adnouns used substantively, or like Nouns* ..... 45
*List of Nouns Masculine ending in* e *mute* ..... 45

# THE ART

OF

# SPEAKING FRENCH.

## INTRODUCTION.

AN ART is a rational method, a collection of observations gested into convenient order for the teaching and learning of mething: and the methodical collection of observations made on the particular custom of a nation, in the institution, order, d use of the words by which they are used to express the oughts, is what is meant by a Grammar.

SPEAKING is exhibiting our thoughts; and a LANGUAGE is thing else than the means towards that end: that is, a language the manner, or signs, of which a set of men have agreed to ake use, in order to express their thoughts.

And because men want to make their thoughts known, not ly to those with whom they live, but also to others they are ry distant from, or who are to be born many ages after them, ey have, for that purpose, invented two sorts of means, or gns; the one instantaneous and transient, and serving only to present thought actually, SOUNDS; the other permanent, and signed to represent it in all times and places, CHARACTERS.

These sounds and characters, *i. e.* all that is spoken and writn, form SPEECH, which is composed of sentences, sentences words, and words of syllables.

SYLLABLES, in speaking, are sounds of which words are com sed and formed; and, in writing, they are parts of the same rds, composed of characters which represent these sounds: as *-mi-ni-stra-ti-on*, that has (in French) six parts, six sounds, six llables. Syllables are either simple or compound. They are all mpound in the word just mentioned: but in the words *about*, *et*, and many others, the first syllable is simple. Sometimes e sound only, one syllable makes a word, called MONOSYLBLE, as, *but, man, it is not*; which three last sounds make ee words: otherwise a syllable has no signification of itself.

WORDS are images of thoughts. They differ from the sounds and characters, in that men have applied to these last only the general power of making words, without representing other ideas but those of sounds and characters: whereas they have, besides, applied to the words the distinct and particular powers of representing their thoughts. Just as, in painting, colours make of themselves no distinct object that exhibits to the mind other ideas but those of green, red, blue, &c. but being applied with proportion, and according to the rules of art, they make a whole which represents all the figures that one has a mind to draw.

The THINKING FACULTY, which shines so wonderfully in the invention of speech, consists in conceiving and judging. To *conceive*, or to apprehend, is to have the image of a thing in our mind. To *judge*, is to unite our conceptions or ideas together in declaring that a thing is or is not such. But, as we can conceive either things, or the manner of being of things; as, likewise, we can judge of them either simply and absolutely, or with restriction and respectively to some circumstance or other; so four things are to be considered in speech:

1*st*, That which is spoken of, which philosophers call the SUBJECT.

2*dly*, That which is declared of it, which they call the ATTRIBUTE.

3*dly*, The DECLARATIVE TERM, or Copula, which joins the attribute to the subject.

4*thly*, The CIRCUMSTANCES which may attend the subject, the attribute, and the declarative term.

As, for instance, when conceiving what learning is, and what usefulness is, I form this judgment, "Learning is useful;" *learning* is the *subject* I speak of: *useful* is what I declare of it *(the attribute)*; and *is*—the declarative term, which connects the two other terms together.

Again. When I say, "A guilty conscience is at all times a "very tormenting pain," *a conscience* is the subject I speak of; *a pain*, what I declare of it; and *is*—the declarative term, which connects the attribute and subject together. But, besides that, these words, *guilty*, *tormenting*, and *at all times*, are so many circumstances which specify the subject of which I speak, what I declare of it, and the declarative term: for I do not speak of conscience in general, but of a *guilty conscience*; I do not barely declare that it is a pain, but *a tormenting pain*; nor do I affirm that it is only a tormenting pain, but that it is *at all times* a very tormenting pain; the word *very* being only a circumstance, which

specifies the word *tormenting*, as this last does what sort of pain I judge a guilty conscience is.

Whoever reflects ever so little, will easily be sensible that the whole of speech amounts to the expressing of those four things only, which constitute it, and make all its essence. Therefore several sorts of expressions, or words, must needs have been instituted to represent, not only all the things that can be conceived, and their manners of being, but also the judgments which can be made of them, with the modifications of which they are susceptible. It does not follow, nevertheless, that one can express no judgment, without making use of three or four sorts of words. For men have naturally a desire to express their meaning as quick as they can, and a speech the less encumbered with words being less difficult to be delivered, and even the more perfect, as it draws nearer to the simplicity of thinking; so they have instituted words, in the signification whereof is included, at the same time, the attribute and the declarative term. In others they have, besides, included the signification of the subject. And even they have instituted some, which express at once the subject which they speak of, the attribute which they declare of it, the declarative term, and the circumstances that modify one or all the three other terms.

Thus in this proposition, "Man thinks," the word *thinks* includes both the attribute which is declared of the subject *man*, and the declarative term; and is as much as to say *is thinking*, or *is a thinking being*. These words *yes*, *no*, *never*, *always*, *certainly*, and a great many others of the same kind, which we answer to the questions that are asked us, comprehend those very questions: so that the *yes* or *no* which I answer to this question, "Does he "study?" is as much as if I answered, "He studies," or "He "does not study;" the first of which the Latins expressed by the single word *studet*, which is equal to "He is studying."

Again. If to this question, "Is a guilty conscience at all times "a very tormenting pain?" I answered *yes*, *yes sure*, or *certainly*, it is evident that either of these expressions is as much as if I repeated the whole proposition without interrogation, "A guilty "conscience is at all times a very tormenting pain;" and includes therefore a subject which I speak of, the attribute I declare of it, the declarative term, and the modifying terms, or the circumstances which those three terms are attended by.

Neither does it follow that four sorts of words might have been sufficient for expressing all that can be thought of. For as the

natural desire which men have to convey their ideas quickly, has induced them to invent terms of abbreviation, which, though ever so short, comprehend, nevertheless, whole and long propositions: so the necessity of making themselves understood clearly, and without the least ambiguity, especially in considering and speaking of the several relations which things bear to one another; and the disagreeableness of repeating the same terms too often, has made them invent many others, both for the more fully expressing all that passes in their mind, with the manner of their conceptions, and how they stand affected by them, and for adorning their language.

All the words that men have instituted for representing their thoughts, may be reduced to nine sorts. Grammarians call them in general PARTS *of* SPEECH, because speech, or all that is spoken or written, is composed of these nine sorts of words, to each of which they have given particular names, which shall be explained in the Second Part of this Work.

The several words made use of for expressing what one thinks about a subject, are, all together, called by philosophers, a PROPOSITION, and by grammarians a SENTENCE: and several sentences joined together, in such a manner as the one has a coherency with and dependance upon the other, for the making one entire and complete sense, are called a PERIOD by the latter, and ARGUMENT or REASONING by the former.

Hence may appear the injudicious and false definition of Grammar given by most writers. Logic is the art of thinking, conceiving, or forming ideas. Dialect is the art of speaking, exhibiting our thoughts, or expressing ourselves. Oratory, eloquence, rhetoric, (for these terms are synonymous,) is the art of persuading. But Grammar is nothing but the collection of the rules of a language; or (if you like it better) the art of reducing into rules the manner of speaking of a nation.

These things being premised concerning the essence and foundation of languages, we shall consider the sounds and characters of the *French* tongue, the nature of the words of which it is composed, and the use which is to be made of them in speech: three parts into which this Grammar is divided. The First shall treat of Pronunciation and Orthography, or Spelling; the Second of Etymology, or the nature of the Parts of Speech, as likewise of their power and different forms; the Third of the Construction of the same, or their grammatical order, otherwise called Syntax.

# PART I.

OF

# PRONUNCIATION

AND

# ORTHOGRAPHY.

---

PRONUNCIATION is the expressing the sounds and articulation of a language; as ORTHOGRAPHY is the drawing of them, or representing them with characters.

The sounds are nothing else but the voice, that is, the air emitted out of the lungs, or the breath made sonorous; from which they are called VOWELS, as *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*.

The vowels, in their way through the mouth, receive modifications, or articulations, from the several motions of the lips or the tongue; and as these articulations cannot be expressed, or heard, but jointly with the sounds, they are called CONSONANTS.

For example, *a* is a vowel, or a simple sound; but *ba* and *ga* are articulated, or compound sounds; because the motions of the lips in *ba*, and of the tongue in *ga*, affect the vowel *a* with those modifications, or articulations, heard in the sounds *ba* and *ga*: and these differences of sounds which are between *ba* or *ga* and the vowel *a*, are what we call consonants.

The *French* grammarians usually reckon five vowels and nineteen consonants, constituting the alphabet, or table of the letters of the language, in this order, with their true appellations underneath:

a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, o, p,
*aw, bey, cey, dey, ey, eff, gey, ash, e, kaw, ell, emm, enn, oa, pey,*
q, r, s, t, u, x, y, z, *and* & (an abbreviation for *et.*)
*qu, err, ess, tey, u, ix, ee grec, zed*

How erroneous this alphabet is, must needs appear from what has just been said of the sounds and articulations of which speech is formed. Parting from those principles, the *French* language will be found to have seventeen distinct sounds or vowels, though the present alphabet contains these five only, *a, é, i, o, u;* and the twelve others, namely, *e, è, ou, â, eû, ê, ô, an, en, in, on, un,* sounds as simple as the first five, are not so much as taken notice of to the learner. There are one-and-twenty consonants in the language; but the alphabet contains only eighteen, and acquaints you only with fifteen different articulations, as the letters, *c, k, x,* represent no other articulations than those represented by other consonants: and there remain four others, of which the alphabet gives no manner of knowledge, namely, *ch, gn, ill,* and *ï* represented by two consonants, each of which serve to represent other articulations.

Most vowels and consonants are represented several ways. For instance, the vowel *è* is represented by *ei* in *peine,* by *ai* in *vaine,* by *oi* in *foible,* &c. the consonant *f* by *ph* in *philosophe,* &c. Some vowels and consonants cannot be represented, for want of proper simple characters, but by several letters. Such are the vowels, *ou, eu, eû* or *eux,* and the five nasal *an, en, in, on, un,* which are also represented several ways, and such the consonants *ch, gn, ill,* and *ï*. Now each of the letters, which make up these divers combinations, has not the sound or articulation which it has when pronounced by itself: and these letters blended together represent a sound, which has no manner of affinity with those which each of them represents singly. Thus in *au, ou, eû,* neither the sound of *a,* or of *o, e,* nor the sound of *u,* are heard, but only another simple sound very different, represented by those combinations of letters, *au, ou, eû.* If, therefore, the master makes his pupils name each of the letters which make up these combinations, he will make them pronounce false sounds, which, as they have no connection or affinity with the true sounds

that are to be pronounced, will serve only to give them a wrong impression thereof; and by that means to puzzle, confound, and quite dishearten them.

Since, then, the present alphabet does not contain all the sounds and articulations of the language, nor all the ways of representing them, and yet it is necessary for those who learn reading to be acquainted with every one of them, a more rational and easy method must be thought of, to facilitate that knowledge. The following Tables will remedy all the aforesaid inconveniencies, and thoroughly acquaint a learner of the lowest capacity, with the pronunciation of the *French*.

## *A* TABLE *of the simple Sounds of the* French *Language.*

### *Eight Acute Sounds.*

a, e, é, è, i, o, ou, u.

### *Four Grave.*

â, eû, ê, ô.

### *Five Nasal.*

an, en, in, on, un.

### *e* mute.

## *A* TABLE *of the* Vowels, *with the several ways representing or writing them.*

A. a, at, ac, ap, ach, &c.

Â. â, as, ats, aps, acs, achs, &c.

AN. an, am, en em, aen, ean, aon, aons, &c.

E. e, eu, eut, euf, œu, œud, &c.

Eû. Eû, eus, eut, eux, œufs, &c.

É. é, ez, &, ed, er, és, ai, eai, æ, œ, &c.

È. è, ai, ei, oi, eg, ep, et, ait, oit, &c.

Ê. ê, es, ès, est, ets, aie, aient, ais, aits, oie, ois, eois, eoi &c.

EN. en, ain, aim, em, ein, in, im, &c.

I. i, is, y*, &c.

IN. in, im, &c.

O. o, au, eau, &c.

Ô. ô, au, aux, &c.

OU. ou. où, oup, ous, out, &c.

ON. on, om, ons, ont, eon, &c.

U. u, eu, &c.

UN. un, eun, um, &c.

E. (e *mute*) es, ent (at the end of Verbs).

* y *in the middle of words stands for* two ii's, *the former whe belongs to the foregoing Syllable; but the latter denotes a partic articulation, which shall be observed in the dissertation upon t letter.*

## *A* TABLE *of the* Consonants, *with the several ways of representing or writing them.*

### *Five Labial Consonants.*

| *Weak Consonants.* | *Strong Consonants.* |
|---|---|
| M, m. | mm. |
| *Ma, mon.* | *Homme.* |
| B, b. | P, p. |
| *Bombe.* | *Pompe.* |
| V, v. | F, f, ff, PH, ph. |
| *Vin, vivant.* | *Fin, affable, Phare* |

### *Four Hissing.*

| | |
|---|---|
| J, j, G, g (*before* e *and* i). | Ch, ch, sch. |
| *Jeu, dis je, jaugé.* | *Char, chiche, schisme.* |
| Z, z, s (*between two Vowels*). | S, s, ss, ç, C, c (*before* e *and* i). |
| *Zizanie, asyle.* | *Sa, si, son, lassé, reçu, ceci.* |

### *Five Palatal or Lingual.*

| | |
|---|---|
| N, n. | nn. |
| *Nâr*i*ne.* | *Bonne.* |
| D, d. | T, t, tt. |
| *Dindon.* | *Tinte, nette.* |
| L, l, ll. | R, r, rr. |
| *La, lèvre, elle.* | *Redire, arracher.* |

### *Two Guttural.*

| | |
|---|---|
| G, g, GU, gu. | Q, q, qu, K, k, C, c, ch. |
| *Goguenard, garre.* | *Coquemar, cap, quand, cruche, écho.* |

### *Five Liquid.*

| | |
|---|---|
| GU, gu. | Qu, qu. |
| *Gueux.* | *Queue.* |
| | Gn, gn. |
| | *Règna.* |
| ILL, ill, IL, il. | ï. |
| *Vaillant.* | *Aïeul, païen.* |

X, x, *stands for two articulations together, to wit,* gz, *as in* exil, *and* cs, *as in* vexa.

H, h, *is only a note of aspiration in some words, for in most words it is quite mute.* (*v. p. 58.*)

## *First* TABLE *of*

| a | â | e | ✓eux | é | è | ✓est | i | o | ô |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ha | hâ | heu | —— | hé | hè | haie | hi | ho | oh! |
| ma | mâ | me | meux | mé | mè | mê | mi | mo | mô |
| ba | bâ | be | bœufs | bé | bè | bê | bi | bo | beau |
| pa | pâ | pe | peux | pé | pè | pê | pi | po | pó |
| va | vas | ve | vœux | vé | vè | vê | vi | vo | vô |
| fa | fâ | fe | feux | fé | fè | fê | fi | fo | fau |
| pha | phas | phe | —— | phé | phè | phois | phi | pho | —— |
| ja | jâ | je | jeux | jé | jè | jets | ji | jo | jau |
| gea | geas | ge | geux | gé | gè | gê | gi | —— | geo |
| cha | châ | che | cheux | ché | chè | chê | chi | cho | chau |
| za | zâ | ze | —— | zé | zè | —— | zi | zo | zô |
| sa | sas | se | —— | sé | sè | sois | si | so | —— |
| ça | ças | ce | ceux | cé | cè | ces | ci | —— | ceau |
| sa | ssas | sse | sseux | ssé | ssè | ses | si | so | sots |
| na | nas | ne | neux | né | nè | nê | ni | no | nô |
| da | dats | de | deux | dé | dè | des | di | do | dos |
| ta | tâ | te | teux | té | tè | tes | ti | to | tô |
| la | lâ | le | leux | lé | lè | les | li | lo | lots |
| ra | ras | re | reux | ré | rè | rê | ri | ro | rô |
| ga | gâ | —— | —— | — | — | —— | — | go | gau |
| gua | guas | gueu | gueux | gué | guè | guê | gui | guo | —— |
| ca | cas | —— | —— | —— | —— | —— | — | co | cô |
| qua | quas | que | queue | qué | què | quê | qui | quo | cau |
| gna | gnas | gne | gneux | gné | gnè | gnê | gni | gno | gneaux |
| illa | illas | illeu | illeux | illé | illè | illois | illi | illo | illots |

## SYLLABLES.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| u | an | in | on | un | |
| hu | han | hin | hon | hun | |
| mu | men | min | mon | mun | |
| bu | ban | bain | bon | bun | |
| pu | pam | pin | pon | —— | |
| vu | ven | vin | von | —— | |
| fu | fan | fin | fon | fun | } |
| —— | phan | phin | phon | —— | } |
| ju | jean | j'in | jon | jeun | |
| —— | gen | gin | geon | —— | |
| chu | cham | chain | chon | —— | |
| —— | —— | zin | zon | zun | } |
| su | san | sin | son | sun | } |
| çu | cen | cein | çon | —— | } |
| su | sem | sim | son | —— | } |
| nu | nan | nym | non | —— | |
| du | dan | din | don | dun | |
| tu | tan | tin | ton | tun | |
| lu | lan | lin | lon | lun | |
| ru | ran | rin | ron | —— | |
| gu | gan | gain | gon | —— | } |
| —— | guan | guim | guon | —— | } |
| cu | can | cain | con | cun | } |
| qu'u | quan | quin | qu'on | qu'un | } |
| —— | gnan | gnin | gnon | —— | |
| —— | illan | —— | illon | —— | |

## *Second* TABLE *of*

### *Consonants which are coupled together.*

bl pl fl gl cl br pr vr fr phr dr tr gr cr
chr ct ctr sp squ ps sc scr st str

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| bla | blâ | ble | bleus | blé | blet | blê | bli | blo | blô |
| pla | plâ | ple | —— | plé | plai | plets | pli | plo | plots |
| fla | flâ | fle | —— | flé | floit | flois | fli | flo | flots |
| gla | glas | gle | —— | glé | glet | glets | gli | glo | glots |
| cla | clats | cle | —— | clé | clai | claie | cli | clo | clau |
| bra | bras | bre | breux | bré | broit | broient | bri | bro | brocs |
| pra | prâ | pre | preux | pré | pret | près | pri | pro | prô |
| vra | vras | vre | —— | vré | vrai | vrai | vri | vro | vreau |
| phra | frâ | fre | freux | fré | frè | frê | fri | fro | frau |
| dra | dras | dre | dreux | dré | dret | drois | dri | dro | drô |
| tra | tras | tre | —— | tré | trai | trê | tri | tro | —— |
| gra | gras | gre | —— | gré | grè | grê | gri | gro | gros |
| cra | crâ | cre | creux | cré | cret | crê | cri | cro | crocs |
| cta | ctas | cte | —— | cté | ctoit | ctois | cti | cto | —— |
| spa | — | — | —— | spé | spoit | spois | spi | spo | —— |
| sca | scâ | sque | —— | squé | squoit | squoient | squi | sco | —— |
| sta | stas | ste | —— | sté | stoit | stoient | sti | sto | —— |
| stra | — | — | —— | stré | stroit | stroient | stri | stro | —— |
| [illegible]tri | — | spla | —— | splé | —— | —— | scru | psa | pseau |

## SYLLABLES.

x, *pronounced with the double articulation of* ce, xa, xe, xé, xè, xi, xe, xan, xin, xon.
x, *pronounced with the double articulation of* gz, xa, xè, xi, xo, xem.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| blou | blu | blan | blin | blon | —— |
| plou | plu | plan | plein | plom | —— |
| flou | flu | flan | flin | flon | —— |
| glou | glu | glan | glin | glon | —— |
| clou | clu | clan | clin | clon | —— |
| brou | bru | bran | brin | bron | brun |
| prou | pru | pren | prin | prom | prun |
| —— | —— | vran | vrin | vron | —— |
| frou | fru | fran | frin | fron | —— |
| drou | dru | dran | drin | dron | |
| trou | tru | tran | trin | tron | —— |
| grou | gru | gran | grin | gron | —— |
| crou | cru | cran | crin | cron | —— |
| —— | ctu | ctan | ctin | cton | —— |
| spou | —— | span | spin | spon | —— |
| scou | scu | scan | squin | squon | —— |
| —— | stu | stan | stin | ston | —— |
| —— | stru | stran | strin | stron | —— |
| —— | —— | psi | pos | —— | —— |

## *A* TABLE *of the* Monosyllables *in the* French *Language.*

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| a, | bleus, | clef, | cours, | Dieux, | fut, | gril, | Juin. |
| ai, | brun, | clerc, | coups, | doigts, | fin, | glu, | joint, |
| ais, | broc, | clair, | coing, | deux, | font, | gré, | Juif, |
| ait, | brin, | craie, | coud, | doux, | faim, | Grec, | joug, |
| as, | bois, | croc, | court, | dur, | fond, | gant, | jeu, |
| au, | boit, | crois, | cœur, | dat, | feins, | geus, | jeux, |
| an, | bal, | croix, | cran, | Dreux, | fonds, | gond, | |
| ail, | bu, | croit, | chœur, | Dol, | fri, | geai, | la, |
| arc, | bref, | coi, | creux. | deuil. | froc, | gît, | le, |
| aux, | bus, | coin, | | | frit, | gain, | les, |
| art, | buis, | choc, | | | fat, | grain, | lac, |
| air, | but, | ceint, | de, | en, | foin, | groin, | lacs, |
| Août | blanc, | cru, | des, | eu, | fit, | gué, | lard, |
| | bled, | cri, | dé, | es, | franc, | goût, | las, |
| bac, | brut. | crin, | dans, | eut, | frein, | gai, | leur, |
| bar, | | crut, | dors, | est, | frais, | guet, | lors, |
| bas, | car, | cris, | dont, | eau, | foi, | gueux | lier, |
| bât, | cal, | craint, | dort, | eux, | fief, | | lieu, |
| bain, | çà, | Christ, | dos, | eaux, | fois, | hais, | lien, |
| bats, | ce, | cieux, | don, | et, &, | froid, | haut, | liant, |
| bail, | cet, | coq, | dot, | EST. | Foix, | hier, | Luc, |
| baux, | ces, | cerf, | du, | | fort, | hart, | lent, |
| banc, | ceux, | clin, | donc, | | fuis, | hem, | lin, |
| bec, | ciel, | cerfs, | dais, | fi, | flot, | hors, | lis, |
| beau, | cep, | cuir, | dam, | fard, | fleur, | huis, | long, |
| bel, | cor, | chez, | dard, | fil, | flots, | huit. | lit, |
| bien, | camp, | cuis, | dent, | fils, | fou, | il, | Linx, |
| bis, | corps, | choir, | dix, | fer, | fleurs, | ils, | legs, |
| bon, | chat, | chou, | dis, | fiel, | feu, | je, | lu, |
| bouc, | champ, | cuit, | drap, | faon, | feux, | jet, | lot, |
| boue, | chats, | choux, | dit, | fe fier, | front, | j'ai, | loin, |
| bous, | chant | clos, | daim, | fier, | four, | Jean, | lots, |
| bord | char, | cent, | draps, | faut, | flux. | j'eus, | laid |
| bout, | cher, | cinq, | dru, | flanc, | | | lus, |
| bourg, | chaux, | clou, | drois, | fais, | geai, | jour, | lait, |
| bœuf, | chef, | clous, | dû, | faix, | grand, | jours, | lut, |
| bras | cnaud, | cou, | doit, | faux, | gras, | jeun, | loi, |
| bœufs, | chien, | cous, | Dieu, | fait, | gris, | jus, | lui, |
| bleu, | choix, | cour, | doigt, | fus, | gros, | joins, | louer, |
| blond, | chair, | coup, | droit, | fis, | gland, | jonc, | loup, |

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| lourd, | ne, | œufs, | prend, | rats, | s'en, | tout, | val, |
| loups. | nez, | œil. | pond, | ris, | sus, | tort, | veaux, |
| | nais, | | puis, | roc, | sein, | tous, | vos, |
| ma, | né, | | prit, | rit, | sur, | tords, | viens, |
| mal, | niais, | pal, | près, | rôt, | seing, | Turc, | ver, |
| me, | nain, | pas, | prix, | rang, | sors, | tonds, | vers, |
| mes, | neuf, | pin, | plut, | rend, | suc, | temps, | vœu, |
| mais, | nos, | pain, | plaît, | Rhin, | sort, | tint, | vert, |
| moi, | neufs, | paix, | pleut, | rond, | six, | tend, | veux, |
| mon, | nous, | pais, | par, | rapt, | Sud, | tein, | voir, |
| mien, | ni, | pis, | pieu, | reins, | sis, | tien, | veut, |
| miel, | nef, | paît, | perd, | rumb, | sait, | tends, | vois, |
| mieux, | nid, | peau, | prêt, | rien, | Seth, | tronc, | voit, |
| mois, | nu, | plat, | perds, | romps, | sauf, | troc, | voix |
| m'en, | nids, | pot, | plis, | rieur, | Saul, | trop, | vais, |
| moins, | nerf, | plus, | pied, | roi, | seau, | très, | vas, |
| marc, | non, | pu, | pair, | rois, | sien, | trot, | vin, |
| mil, | net, | pots, | pieds, | Ruth. | sied, | tu, | vif, |
| Mars, | nom, | pus, | poix, | | sieur, | t'en, | vins, |
| mot, | Nil, | peaux, | peur, | | sois, | traits, | vit, |
| Mons, | Nord, | peu, | puits, | sa, | soif, | tard, | vingt, |
| Metz, | naît, | Paul, | pleurs, | se, | soit, | trait, | vis, |
| mont, | nuit, | poil, | poux, | son, | soin, | Tyr, | vint, |
| met, | nul, | peut, | pour, | sac, | soir, | toît, | vil, |
| mut, | nuls, | puis, | pur. | sain, | sou, | trois, | vol, |
| mets, | noir, | point, | | sacs, | suif, | toîts, | vent, |
| meurs, | noix, | pieu, | quand, | sel, | sous, | tas, | veuf, |
| meut, | nœud, | pend, | que, | ses, | seoir, | tais, | vends, |
| mer, | nœuds, | plan, | quel, | saint, | sourd, | train, | vain, |
| mort, | | part, | qui, | si, | seul, | teint, | vu. |
| maux, | | peins, | qu'il, | saut, | stuc, | taux, | vaut, |
| mords, | on, | port, | qu'en, | sot, | sœur, | thym, | vient, |
| mur, | or, | plains, | qu'a, | sots, | seuil. | toux, | vains, |
| muid, | ou, | peint, | queue, | sec, | | tiers, | vaux, |
| mœurs, | ont, | porc, | quoi, | sers, | ta, | tour, | vieux, |
| Mai, | où, | parts, | qu'un, | sans, | ton, | trou, | vont, |
| main, | os, | plaint, | qu'on, | son, | te, | tut, | vous, |
| mus, | oie, | plais, | queux. | sert, | thé, | Turcs. | vrai. |
| mains, | oing, | plein, | | sang, | tes, | | |
| mots, | oui, | pan, | ras, | sont, | thon, | va, | yeux. |
| mou, | ours, | plomb, | rat, | sent, | tel, | vau, | |
| maint. | œuf, | pont, | rets, | saints, | toi, | veau, | Zest. |

## *First* Table *of the Consonants which are pronounced at the end of Syllables.*

| | |
|---|---|
| b. | Ab*s*ent, su*b*venir, radou*b*, Acha*b*, Jo*b*, &c. *rumb*, de Vent (pron. rom*b*.). |
| c. | Ave*c*, éche*c*, aspe*c*t, Mar*c*, Ar*c* (*but not in* arc-boutant), sa*c* (*though not in* un sac de blé), fro*c*, Tro*c*, &c. |
| f. and *ph*. | Che*f*, vi*f*, soi*f*, rétif, Asa*ph*, Jose*ph*, &c. |
| l. | Calcu*l*, fi*l*, poi*l*, se*l*, seu*l*, &c. *This consonant has a liquid articulation at the end of* Avri*l*, babi*l*, Brési*l*, grési*l*, mi*l*, péri*l*: *as likewise in these syllables*, ail, eil, ueil, euil, ouil, *as in* ma*il*, so-le*il*, écue*il*, deu*il*, trava*il*, *and* travai*ll*er, fenou*il*, *and in* gent*il* homme. |
| r. | Ca*r*, avoi*r*, ai*r*, auteu*r*, fe*r*, hive*r*, cuille*r*, enfe*r*, s'asseoi*r*, &c. Jupite*r*, Luthe*r*, Cranme*r*, &c. |
| y. | *This letter stands for two* ii's, *in the middle of words, as* vo*y*ons, mo*y*en, essa*y*er, nous emplo*y*-o*n*s, fu*y*ard, ennu*y*eux, &c. |

## *First* TABLE *of the Words wherein the same Consonants are dropt at the End of Syllables.*

b. Plom*b.*

c. Almanach, cotignac, cler*c*, échecs, estomac, banc, blanc, broc, flanc, franc (*except in* franc arbitre *and* franc alleu), instinc*t*, jonc, un marc, respec*ts*, tabac, croc (*except in* croc-en-jambe), *and* du pore (*except in* porc-épic, *wherein the first* c *is pronounced*).

f. Apprenti*f*, Cle*f*, che*f*-d'œuvre, Baillif, bœu*fs*, œu*fs*, neu*fs*, cer*f*.

l. Bari*l*, cheni*l*, couti*l*, cu*l*, un fi*ls*, fusi*l*, genti*l*, gri*l*, nombri*l*, outi*l*, persi*l*, le pou*ls*, soû*l and* sourci*l*.

r. Monsieur *and* messieurs (*though* r *is pronounced in* le sieur, les sieurs), volontier*s*, danger, berger, barbier (*with all nouns in* er, *without excepting the French proper Names, as* Didier, Roger, &c.): *as also* er *at the end of infinitives, as* chanter, &c

i. *This letter has in the following words the very same articulation as in the English words* yacht, yell, yon, you.

Aïeul, baïonnette, caïeu, camaïeu, faïence, glaïeul, païen, tavaïolle, Baïard, Baïeux, Baïonne, Caïenne, *and* Gaïette.

## *Second* TABLE *of the Consonants that are us dropt at the End of Syllables.*

m. *This consonant usually makes the foregoing vowel a one, as in* cha*m*bre, me*m*bre, ti*m*bre, o*m*bre, no*m*, no*m*, parfu*m*, &c.

p. dra*p*, sept, beaucou*p*, tro*p*, cou*p*, cam*p*, lou*p*, cc exempt, (*but not in* exemption,) prompt, prompte tem*p*s, &c.

s. *This consonant usually makes the foregoing vowel i as in* app*a*s, pal*a*is, effets, repos, &c.

d. lai*d*, froi*d*, cha*u*d, mui*d*, ni*d*, pie*d*, sourd, fon*d*, &c.

t. bâ*t*, mâ*t*, effe*t*, li*t*, veu*t*, mo*t*, bu*t*, goû*t*, tan*t*, ouve e*st*, &c.

n. *This consonant usually makes the foregoing vowel a nasa as in* bi*en*, ent*en*dre, pl*an*, fi*n*, br*un*, &c.

g. doigt, legs, vingt, long, rang, faubourg, &c.

x. pai*x*, pri*x*, chevau*x*, la tou*x*, des chou*x*, &c.

z. *This consonant gives the sound of* é *to the preceding* e, ne*z*, asse*z*, alle*z*, vous lise*z*, &c.

## *Second* TABLE *of the Words wherein these Consonants are pronounced at the End of Syllables.*

m. hem, item, Amsterdam, Abraham, Sem, Cham, Matusalem, Sélim, Stockholm, *with all proper names, except* Adam and Absalom.

p. cap, julep, Gap, *with* beaucoup *and* trop, *before a word beginning with a vowel, as* trop obligeant.

s. as, anus, agnus, bis, bibus, blocus, calus, gratis, iris, orémus, ours, Phébus, rébus, sinus, virus, vis, Amos, Céres, Pallas, Vénus, *and all proper names.*

d. addition, reddition, Sud, Ephod, David, &c. *It takes the articulation of* t *in* quand, *and adnouns before the nouns beginning with a vowel; as likewise in the third person singular of Verbs, before* il, elle, on; *as also in* de fond en comble.

t. brut, de but en blanc, correct, direct, dot, exact, échec & mat, Est, *and* Ouest, fat, un fait, pact, rapt, sot, zénith, Brest, &c.

n. ennemi, inné, innover, abdomen, amen, examen, hymen, *and in all proper names.*

g. Bourg-mestre, Agag, Sarug, *and all proper names: and* g *takes the articulation of* k *or* qu *in* suer sang & eau, le sang & le carnage, long espace; un Bourg; *but it is silent in* faubourg *and other compounds.*

x. *This consonant has the articulation of* cs *in* Ajax, Alix, Anthrax, Béatrix, du borax, Félix, Lynx, le larynx, onyx, le pharynx, phénix, préfix, perplex, Pollux, Siphax, Sphinx, Styx, Storax. *It takes the hissing sound of* s *in* Cadix; *and that of* z *at the end of adnouns before nouns beginning with a vowel, or* h *mute, as in* doux amusement, heureux homme.

z. *This consonant takes the hissing articulation of* s *in these proper names,* Rodez, Sénez, Usez; *but it is dropt in* Rez, Sèez, *and* Vivarez (*when so spelt*).

***A* TABLE *of the combination of letters which compose Syllables, or of the divers forms and various shapes which one and the same sound can receive.***

OBSERVE, 1*st*, that though one and the same sound can receive divers forms, and be represented in writing many various ways, yet one cannot indifferently spell a word or syllable in such or such a manner. Thus *an* (year) cannot be spelt like *en* (in); nor *dans* (in) like *dent* or *dents* (teeth); though *an* and *en*, *dans*, *dent*, and *dents*, have one and the same sound; this table showing only the circumstances, or rather words, wherein a certain number of letters, coupled together, express only the sound that is at the head of that class.

2*dly*, That those various ways of spelling one and the same sound, seldom take place, except in the final syllables of words, and that too, saving the observations that shall be made in their proper places, about final consonants.

| *Sounds.* | *Words wherein the sounds are found.* | | *Sounds.* | *Words wherein the sounds are found.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **a** | | aps. | des *draps*, | *sheets.* |
| | | | as. | des *bras*, | *arms.* |
| | *sounded like* a *in* at *and* ally. | | ât. | un *mât*, | *a mast.* |
| a. | il *a*, | *he has.* | ats. | des *chats*, | *cats.* |
| à. | *à* Paris, | *at Paris.* | | | |
| ac. | tab*ac*, | *tobacco.* | | an | |
| ach. | almanach, | *almanack.* | | | |
| al. | arsen*al*, | *storehouse of arms* | | *sounded like* an *in* want. | |
| ap. | dr*ap*, | *cloth.* | an. | un *an*, | *a year* |
| as. | un br*as*,* | *an arm.* | anc. | bl*anc*, | *white.* |
| at. | ch*at*, | *cat.* | ancs. | des b*ancs*, | *benches.* |
| | | | and. | un tisser*and*, | *a weaver.* |
| | â | | ands. | des *glands*, | *acorns.* |
| | *sounded like* a *in* all, *or* aw *in* law. | | ang. | du s*ang*, | *blood.* |
| | | | angs. | les ét*angs*, | *the ponds.* |
| à. | de la p*âte*. | *dough.* | ans. | d*ans*, | *in.* |
| acs. | des *lacs*†, | *nets.* | ant. | dev*ant*, | *before.* |
| achs. | almanachs, | *almanacks.* | ants. | sav*ants*, | *learned.* |

* It is only in this word that *as* has the slender acute sound of *a*, every where else *as* has the broad sound of *â*.

† *c* is sounded in *lacs* (and *a* is slender, acute, and short) when it signifies *lakes*.

| *Sounds.* | *Words wherein the sounds are found.* | |
|---|---|---|
| am. | Ad*am*, | *Adam.* |
| amp. | un c*amp*, | *a camp.* |
| amps. | les ch*amps*, | *the fields.* |
| en. | *en*tre, | *between.* |
| eng. | un har*eng*, | *a herring.* |
| engs. | des har*engs*, | *herrings.* |
| end. | il pr*end*, | *he takes.* |
| ends. | tu r*ends*, | *thou renderest.* |
| ens. | g*ens*, | *people.* |
| ent. | c*ent*, | *an hundred.* |
| ents. | les d*ents*, | *the teeth.* |
| em. | *emploi*, | *employment.* |
| empt. | ex*empt*, | *exempt* (or) |
| empts. | ex*empts*, | *free.* |
| emps. | le *temps*, | *the time.* |
| aen. | C*aen* (*the name of a city*). | |
| ean. | J*ean* | *John.* |
| aon. | un f*aon*, | *a fawn.* |
| aons. | des p*aons*, | *peacocks.* |

e

*sounded like* e *in* her.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| e. | le, | *the, him, it.* |
| | je, | *I.* |
| eu. | jeu, | *play.* |
| | jeune, | *young.* |
| euf. | v*euf*, | *a widower.* |
| eut. | il p*eut*, | *he can.* |
| œ. | œillet, | *pink.* |
| | œil, | *eye.* |
| œu. | un v*œu*, | *a vow.* |
| œud. | un n*œud*, | *a knot.* |
| œuf. | un b*œuf*, | *an ox.* |
| | un *œuf*, | *an egg.* |
| ue. | un écu*eil*, | *sands.* |

eux.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| eû. | jeûne, | *a fast.* |
| eux. | les f*eux*, | *the fires.* |
| eufs. | habits n*eufs*, | *new coats.* |

| *Sounds.* | *Words wherein the sounds are found.* | |
|---|---|---|
| œux. | v*œux*, | *vows.* |
| œufs. | des *œufs*, | *eggs.* |
| | des b*œufs*, | *oxen.* |
| eut.* | il v*eut*, | *he is willing.* |

eur.

*sounded like* er *in* summer, &c.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| eur. | une fl*eur*, | *a flower.* |
| eurs. | des pl*eurs*, | *tears.* |
| heur. | bon*heur*, | *happiness.* |
| heurs. | malh*eurs*, | *misfortunes.* |
| œur. | le *cœur*, | *the heart.* |
| œurs. | des ch*œurs*, | *choirs.* |
| eurre. | du b*eurre*, | *butter.* |
| heure. | une h*eure* | *an hour.* |
| eures. | dem*eures*, | *abodes.* |
| eurent. | ils m*eurent*, | *they die.* |

œil.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| œil. | un *œil*, | *an eye.* |
| euil. | le d*euil*, | *the mourning.* |
| ueils. | écu*eils*, | *sands.* |
| ueils. | faut*euils*, | *arm-chairs.* |
| euilles. | des f*euilles*, | *leaves.* |
| ueilles. | tu c*ueilles*, | *thou pickest.* |
| ueillent. | ils recu*eillent*, | *they gather* |

é

*sounded like* a *in* fate.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| é. | vérit*é*, | *truth.* |
| ed. | un pi*ed*, | *a foot.* |
| eds. | les pi*eds*, | *the feet.* |
| ef. | une cl*ef*, | *a key.* |
| efs. | des cl*efs* | *keys.* |
| er. | donn*er*, | *to give.* |
| ers. | dang*ers*, | *dangers.* |
| és. | les santés, | *the toasts.* |
| ez. | vous lis*ez*, | *you read.* |
| et *or* &, | | *and.* |

* In any other word *eut* sounds like *eu* in *jeu*.

| *Sounds.* | *Words wherein the sounds are found.* | |
|---|---|---|
| ai. | j'*ai*, | *I have.* |
| eai. | je mange*ai*, | *I ate.* |
| æ. | *Æ*gypte, | *Egypt.* |
| œ. | *œ*conomie, | *œconomy.* |

è

*sounded like* e *in* bell, fed, pen, &c.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| e. | *e*lle, | *she.* |
| ai. | vr*ai*, | *true.* |
| ay. | M*ay*, | *May.* |
| ei. | p*ei*ne, | *a pain.* |
| aid. | l*aid*, | *ugly.* |
| ait. | f*ait*, | *made.* |
| et. | eff*et*, | *effect.* |

oi.

*a double sound like* wea *in* sweat.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| oi. | m*oi*, t*oi*, | *I, thou.* |
| oit. | il d*oit*, | *he owes.* |
| oigt. | un d*oigt*, | *a finger.* |
| ouet. | un f*ouet*, | *a whip.* |
| ouhait. | un *souhait*, | *a wish.* |
| ouoit. | il l*ouoit*, | *he did praise.* |

è, ê

*sounded like* e *in* were, there, &c.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| es. | tu *es*, | *thou art.* |
| ès. | *très*, *most.* | th*èse*, *thesis.* |
| ê. | *fête*, | *a feast.* |
| aî. | *maître*, | *master.* |
| ais. | fr*ais*, | *fresh.* |
| aie. | fut*aie*, | *lofty trees.* |
| aies. | pl*aies*, | *wounds.* |
| aît. | il pl*aît*, | *it pleases.* |
| aits. | des tr*aits*, | *features.* |
| êt. | pr*êt*, | *ready.* |
| ets. | val*ets*, | *servants.* |
| aids. | l*aids*, | *ugly.* |
| aix. | p*aix*, | *peace.* |
| ecs. | échec*s*, | *chess.* |

| *Sounds.* | *Words wherein the sounds are found.* | |
|---|---|---|
| egs. | des l*egs*, | *legacies.* |
| est. | il *est*, | *he is.* |
| êts. | des for*êts*, | *forests.* |
| oî. | connoître, | *to know.* |
| oie. | monn*oie*, | *coin.* |
| oient. | ils dis*oient*, | *they said.* |
| ois. | je lis*ois*, | *I did read.* |
| eois. | je chang*eois*, | *I did change.* |
| eoient. | ils mang*eoient*, | *they did eat.* |
| être. | champ*être*, | *rural.* |
| êtres. | fen*êtres*, | *windows.* |
| aître. | n*aître*, | *to be born.* |
| aîtres. | m*aîtres*, | *masters.* |

oi

*a double sound pretty near like* why.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| oie. | la v*oie*, | *the way.* |
| oie. | une *oie*, | *a goose.* |
| ois. | du b*ois*, | *wood.* |
| oix. | une n*oix*, | *a walnut.* |
| oids. | le p*oids*, | *the weight.* |
| oigts. | les d*oigts*, | *the fingers.* |
| ouets. | f*ouets*, | *whips.* |
| ouhaits. | des *souhaits*, | *wishes.* |
| ouoient. | ils l*ouoient*, | *they praised.* |

er

*sounded like* ere.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| er. | du f*er*, | *iron.* |
| ers, | les m*ers*, | *the seas.* |
| air. | l'*air*, | *the air.* |
| airs. | des *airs*, | *tunes.* |
| aire. | f*aire*, | *to do.* |
| erc. | un cl*erc*, | *a clerk.* |

| *Sounds.* | *Words wherein the sounds are found.* | | *Sounds.* | *Words wherein the sounds are found.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ercs. | des cl*ercs*, | *clerks.* | its. | des hab*its*, | *clothes.* |
| erds. | tu p*erds*, | *thou losest.* | ix. | le pr*ix*, | *the price.* |
| erf. | un c*erf*, | *a stag.* | | | |
| erfs. | les c*erfs*, | *the stags.* | | in | |
| ert. | un d*ésert*, | *a desert.* | *sounded like* en *in* length, *or* ain *in* saint. | | |
| erts. | d*esserts*, | *deserts.* | | | |
| ère. | un p*ère*, | *a father.* | | | |
| ères. | des fr*ères*, | *brothers.* | in. | du v*in*, | *wine.* |
| èrent. | ils esp*èrent*, | *they hope.* | ins. | tu v*ins*, | *thou camest.* |
| erre. | la t*erre*, | *the earth.* | aim. | la f*aim*, | *hunger.* |
| uère. | g*uère*, | *seldom.* | aims. | des d*aims*, | *deers.* |
| uerres. | g*uerres*, | *wars.* | ain. | du p*ain*, | *bread.* |
| aires. | aff*aires*, | *affairs.* | ains. | tu cr*ains*, | *thou fearest.* |
| airent. | ils fl*airent*, | *they smell.* | aint. | s*aint*, | *holy.* |
| errent. | ils f*errent*, | *they shoe.* | aints. | les S*aints*, | *the Saints* |
| | | | eim. | R*eims*, | *(a French city).* |
| | oir | | ein. | f*eindre*, | *to feign.* |
| *a double sound, almost like* war *in* warm. | | | eint. | c*eint*, | *girt* |
| | | | eints. | t*eints*, | *dyed.* |
| | | | int. | il t*int*, | *he held* |
| oir. | n*oir*, | *black.* | inct. | l'inst*inct*, | *the instinct.* |
| oire. | gl*oire*, | *glory.* | ingt. | v*ingt*, | *twenty.* |
| oires. | des f*oires*, | *fairs.* | im. | le t*imbre*, | *the stamp.* |
| eoires. | nage*oires*, | *fins.* | | | |
| oirent. | ils f*oirent*, | *they squitter.* | | ien, *or* | |
| | | | en *after* i, *making a double sound* | | |
| | i | | | | |
| *sounded like* i *in* bit, fit, filial, &c. | | | ien. | b*ien*. | *well.* |
| | | | iens. | tu v*iens*, | *thou comest* |
| i. | *ici*, | *here.* | ient. | il t*ient*, | *he holds.* |
| y. | il *y* a, | *there is.* | | | |
| ie. | la l*ie*, | *the dreg.* | | oin | |
| ies. | des poul*ies*, | *pullies.* | *or* in *after* o, *making a double sound pretty near like* wen *in* went. | | |
| ient. | ils l*ient*, | *they tie.* | | | |
| id. | un n*id*, | *a nest.* | | | |
| ids. | des mu*ids*, | *hogsheads.* | oin. | du f*oin*, | *hay.* |
| il. | chen*il*, | *a dogkennel.* | oins. | m*oins*, | *less.* |
| ils. | le f*ils*, | *the son.* | oint. | p*oint*, | *not.* |
| is. | des am*is*, | *friends.* | oints. | des p*oints*, | *stitches.* |
| it. | il d*it*, | *he says.* | oing. | le p*oing*, | *the fist* |

| *Sounds.* | *Words wherein the sounds are found.* | | *Sounds.* | *Words wherein the sounds are found.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ouin. | mars*ouin*, | *a porpoise.* | ort. | f*ort*, | *strong.* |
| ouen. | St. *Ouen* (*a proper name*). | | orts. | des p*orts*, | *harbours.* |
| | | | ore. | hellébo*re*, | *hellebore.* |
| | o | | ores. | tu d*ores*, | *thou gildest.* |
| | *sounded like* o *in* not. | | orent. | ils d*orent*, | *they gild.* |
| o. | l'odorat, | *smelling.* | horrent. | ils ab*horrent*, | *they abhor.* |
| oc. | un cro*c*, | *a hook.* | aure. | un Cent*aure*, | *Centaur.* |
| op. | tro*p*, | *too much.* | aures. | les M*aures*, | *the Moors.* |
| ot. | un mo*t*, | *a word.* | aurent. | ils rest*aurent*, | *they restore* |

| | ô | | | ou | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *sounded like* o *in* old, *or* oa *in* coast. | | | *sounded like* ou *in* you, cou'd, &c. | |
| ô. | côte, | *coast.* | ou. | un f*ou*, | *a fool.* |
| | côté, | *side.* | où. | d'*où*, | *whence.* |
| os. | un *os*, | *a bone.* | oud. | elle c*oud*, | *she sews.* |
| ôt. | bient*ôt*, | *very soon.* | ouds. | tu c*ouds*, | *thou sewest.* |
| ocs. | des cro*cs*, | *hooks.* | oug. | un j*oug*, | *a yoke.* |
| ots. | des mo*ts*, | *words.* | ougs. | j*ougs*, | *yokes.* |
| oths. | les G*oths*, | *the Goths.* | oup. | un c*oup*, | *a blow.* |
| au. | la G*aule*, | *Gaul.* | oups. | des l*oups*, | *wolves* |
| aud. | ch*aud*, | *hot.* | ous. | n*ous*, | *we, us.* |
| auds. | réch*auds*, | *chaffing-dishes.* | out. | t*out*, | *all.* |
| aut. | un déf*aut*, | *a defect.* | outs. | des égo*uts*, | *sinks.* |
| auts. | des déf*auts*, | *faults.* | oux. | d*oux*, | *sweet.* |
| ault. | Pér*ault* (*a proper name*). | | oue. | une j*oue*, | *a cheek.* |
| eau. | de l'*eau*, | *water.* | oues. | les r*oues*, | *the wheels.* |
| aux *or* eaux. | des chap*eaux*, | *hats.* | ouent. | ils l*ouent*, | *they praise.* |
| ao. | la Saone (*a river's name*). | | Août. | le mois d'*Août*, | *August.* |
| | | | oul. | s*oul*, | *drunk.* |

| | or | | | our | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *sounded as in* Tudor. | | | *sounded like* oor *in* Moorish. | |
| | | | our. | un f*our*, | *an oven.* |
| or. | de l'*or*, | *gold.* | ours. | le c*ours*, | *the course.* |
| orc. | du p*orc*, | *pork.* | ourd. | l*ourd*, | *heavy.* |
| orcs. | des p*orcs*, | *pigs.* | ourds. | s*ourds*, | *deaf.* |
| ord. | le b*ord*, | *the brim.* | ourg. | un faub*ourg*, | *a suburb.* |
| orps. | un c*orps*, | *a body.* | ourgs. | les faub*ourgs*, | *the suburbs* |
| ors. | al*ors*, | *then.* | ourt. | c*ourt*, | *short.* |
| ords | tu t*ords*, | *thou wringest.* | ourre. | de la b*ourre*, | *cow's hair.* |

| *Sounds.* | *Words wherein the sounds are found.* | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| nds. | | | |
| es. | tu *fourres,* | *thou stuffest.* | |
| nt. | ils *courent,* | *they run.* | |
| | on | | |
| | *ounded like* on *in* won't. | | |
| | *non,* | *no.* | |
| | *donc,* | *(in the middle of a sentence,)* | *then.* |
| | des *joncs,* | *rushes.* | |
| | les *dons,* | *the gifts.* | |
| | un pi*geon,* | *a pigeon.* | |
| | mange*ons,* | *let us eat.* | |
| | le *fond,* | *he bottom.* | |
| | des *ronds,* | *circles.* | |
| | *long,* | *long.* | |
| | *longs,* | | |
| | le fr*ont,* | *the forehead.* | |
| | des p*onts,* | *bridges.* | |
| | un n*om,* | *a name.* | |
| | du plo*mb,* | *lead.* | |
| s. | des plo*mbs,* | *leads.* | |
| s. | tu r*omps,* | *thou breakest.* | |
| t. | pr*ompt,* | *quick.* | |
| ts. | pr*ompts,* | | |
| | un fact*um* | *(a law term).* | |
| | un t*aon,* | *an ox-fly.* | |
| | des t*aons,* | *ox-flies.* | |
| | u | | |
| | *nded almost as in* prostitute | | |
| | *usure,* | *usury.* | |
| | une nue, | *a cloud* | |

| *Sounds.* | *Words wherein the sounds are found.* | |
|---|---|---|
| ues. | des st*atues,* | *statues.* |
| ut. | sal*ut,* | *a salute.* |
| uts, | stat*uts,* | *the statutes.* |
| uent. | ils t*uent,* | *they kill.* |
| ux. | le fl*ux,* | *the ebb.* |
| us. | du p*us,* | *corrupted matter.* |
| eu. | ayant *eu,* | *having had.* |
| eus. | *j'eus,* | *I had.* |
| eut. | il *eut,* | *he had.* |
| eût. | il *eût,* | *he might have.* |
| | ur | |
| ur. | d*ur,* | *hard.* |
| urs. | des m*urs,* | *walls.* |
| ure. | m*ure,* | *ripe* |
| ures. | ord*ures,* | *filth.* |
| eures. | balay*eures,* | *sweepings.* |
| urent. | ils end*urent,* | *they endure.* |
| eurent. | ils *eurent,* | *they had* |
| | un. | |
| un. | chac*un,* | *every one* |
| uns. | les *uns,* | *the ones.* |
| um. | un parf*um,* | *a perfume.* |
| ums. | des parf*ums,* | *perfumes.* |
| unt. | déf*unt,* | *deceased* |
| unts. | des emp*runts,* | *loans* |
| eun. | à j*eun,* | *fasting* |

*Words difficult to pronounce.*

ır, gâre, qualité, casse, gai, geai, quai, gué, marque, guet, lo, ; guêtres, laquais, qu'est-ce, caisse, gain, Vulcain, publicain, dé, le quint, quintal, gueux, queue, belliqueux, vigueur, queur, aïgü, cu, qu'un, reçu, gui, qui, quoi, aigües, figue-

vogue, guidant, figuier, viguier, Echiquier, Perruquier, moyen, Roi, royal, voyons, voyions, payons, payions, pays, paye, Abbaye, ayant, aïeul, faïence, Naïade, Pleïades, louions, suppléions, de l'ail, mail, éventail, attirail, éventails, travail, travailler, travaillons, de la paille, des mailles, Versailles, qu'ils aillent, taille, Tailleur, elle, une aile, soleil, pareil, abeille, bouteilles, veiller, veillant, ils veillent, qu'ils veuillent, oseille, treille, seul, seuil, deuil, feuille, cerfeuil, fauteuils, écuelle, écueil, linceul, recueil, l'œil, ouille, ouaille, veille, vielle, vieille, quille, anguille, aigüille, du fil, le fils, une fille, coin, cogner, je cogne, baigner, régnant, ils règnent, hargneux, une oie, monnoie, grenouille, ils fouillent.

After exhibiting, in the preceding tables, all the sounds and articulations of the *French* language, we shall, in the following section, treat of each sound and articulation separately, and consider, in the minutest manner, 1*st*, the *Vowels*; 2*dly*, the *Diphthongs*; 3*dly*, the *Nasal Vowels*; 4*thly*, the *Consonants*; and 5*thly*, conclude with the several *Marks* used in writing *French Abbreviations*, &c.

## SECTION I.

*Of the sounds expressed by the six vowels,* a, e, i, o, u, y, *when not attended in the same syllable by another vowel, which makes them* Diphthongs, *nor followed by* n *or* m, *which makes them* Nasal.

### *a.*

THIS letter receives two alterations or two sounds: the one acute, slender, and commonly short; the other grave, broad, and always long; as they are expressed in these two words, *matin*, and *mâtin*, and these *English* words, *at, fat, rat, mad, alley*, and *all, awe, law*. *a* grave and broad is usually marked over with a circumflex, thus (*â*): or followed by a single *s*, thus *pas*; and its derivatives *passer, surpasser*, &c. though there are two *s*'s. Whenever *a* is named or spelt by itself, it is always by the grave and broad sound, (un *â*, an a).

In the syllables *ail*, and *aille*, *a* keeps its sound, as we shall see in its place; and it is always short when it is followed by *il* only (*ail*), and grave and long when followed by *ille* (*aille*). Therefore it takes its acute and short sound in *mail*, a mall, and the grave and long one in *maille*, a stitch; except in *médaille, ailleurs, d'ailleurs*, wherein *a* is acute and short.

This observation is not so strictly applicable to *ail* and *aille* when they meet in the middle of words. One may however say in general, that if the word is a *Derivative*, whether noun or verb, one must consider the final syllable of the *Primitive*, for *ail* and *aille* keep in the Derivative the same sound which they have at the end of the Primitive. Thus *a* is acute and short in *il travaille*, and *ils travaillent* (he works, they work), though at the end of words, because that verb is derived from *travail*, wherein *a* is acute and short; and for the same reason it is acute and short too in the middle of the words of the same verb *travailler* to work, *nous travaillons*, we work, &c. Thus again, *a* is grave and long in *tailler* to cut, *tailleur* a tailor, *paillasse* a straw-bed, &c. because it is so too in the Primitive *taille* cut, *paille* straw.

As for these persons of *aller* to go, *qu'il aille* let him go, *qu'ils aillent* let them go, *a* must be grave and long there by its nature, because these persons are irregularly formed, without being derived from any Primitive of that termination.

*a* followed by *y* don't make altogether a vowel or a syllable, because *y* stands for two *i*'s, the first whereof is joined to *a*, and makes the improper diphthong *ai*, and the second is blended with the following vowel to make a liquid articulation, or sounds by itself, as in *pays* country, which is pronounced as if it were written *pai-is*: the spelling of such words with an *ï* trema (that is, with two dots over it), as is but too commonly met with in books, is contrary to the analogy of the language.

The final *aye* of *paye* and *abbaye* are pronounced very differently: in *paye* the second *i* of *y* is blended with the following *e*, and sounds *yeu (pai yeu)*; in *abbaye* it sounds by itself as in *pays (a-bai-ie)*.

*e.*

This vowel expresses six different sounds, at least, in *French*; which, for clearness sake, I'll call the first *e guttural*, on account of its receiving its sound so immediately through the throat; the second *mute*, because it is not sounded; the third *acute*; the fourth *grave*; the fifth *circumflex*; and the sixth *intermediate*, that is, open and short; as in *belle, dentelle, blesser, peine, haleine, effet*, &c. Whenever this letter is named by itself, 'tis always by the acute sound, (*un é*, an e.)

*e guttural.*

*e guttural* is never accented. It is found in the monosyllables *je, me, te, se, le, que, de*, &c. in the two first syllables of *recevoir* spelt by themselves, and in a great many other words, wherein it

cannot be sounded like one of the *e*'s accented; I mean, neither acute nor grave, but has a sound peculiar to itself. That *e* is usually dropt in common conversation when coming after another syllable; as *si je dis*, if I say, pronounce as if it were spelt *j'dis*. But when two or three of these monosyllables meet together, one of them at least must be sounded, either the first or the last, as *je ne le veux pas*, I won't; pronounce *je n'le veux pas*. In this last sentence, as well as in repeating verses, and especially in the particle *de* in these words, *ordre* de *demeurer* de*hors*, order to stay without doors, that *e* expresses a sound exactly the same as that of the improper diphthong *eu* as expressed in the word *jeu*, play, these two monosyllables *je* and *jeu* being pronounced alike. And the sound *e* or *eu* is almost the same sound expressed in the *English* monosyllable *her* (which is pronounced almost like the *French* word *heure)*, and the last vowel of these words, *dinner*, *summer*, *maker*, *porter*, *parlour*, &c. these *English* syllables answering most precisely to the *French* ones *neur*, *meur*, *heur*, *teur*, *leur*. The only difference is, that the *English* make it an obtuse, deafened, and exceedingly rapid sound, the last consonant of which is articulated very strong; whereas the *French* do not articulate the consonant so much, and express the sound quite full, and dwell upon it longer. But whether the accent is upon a syllable or no; whether the consonants, which enter into the composition of the syllable, are articulated or not; the sound is, and must needs be, the same.

There is such a vast variety in the contradictions of that *e*, and wherein it is not pronounced, as can be learnt only by hearing one read and speak who has the true *French* accent. But besides the dropping of *e* guttural in the aforesaid syllable, there are more particular cases, as in the middle and end of words, wherein it must not be sounded at all; and 'tis in that quality only it has been hitherto considered by our Grammarians, under the appellation of *e mute*, or not sounded.

### *e mute.*

*e mute* is more particularly met with in the middle and at the end of words, either alone, as in nouns and adnouns of the feminine gender and singular number, as *âme* soul, *belle* fine; or followed by *s*, or even *nt*, as in all the plural numbers and in verbs, as *âmes* souls, *tu parles* thou speakest, *ils aiment* they love; or, in fine, preceded by another vowel, as in *vie* life, *armée* an army. In all which cases *e* discharges no other part than does the final *e* of these *English* words, *love*, *life*, *done*, *same*, *prince*, &c.

wherein it is not sounded at all; only in the latter case it causes the preceding vowel to be drawn out somewhat longer.

*e* is suppressed both in pronunciation and writing.

1*st*. In all monosyllables before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* not aspirated, and it is supplied by an *apostrophe* thus:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *l'enfant*, | the child, | instead of | *le enfant*, |
| *l'homme*, | the man, | | *le homme*, |
| *j'aime*, | I love, | | *je aime*, |
| *il n'aime pas*, | he don't love, | | *il ne aime pas*, |
| *l'amour qu'elle a*, | the love she has, | | *le amour que elle a* &c. |

The *apostrophe* is also put after *parce que*, and *jusque*, when a vowel follows: as *parce qu'il est*, because he is; *jusqu' à demain*, till to-morrow: and likewise after *lorsque, puisque, quoique*.

2*dly*, In the adnoun *grande* before the following nouns, tho' beginning with a consonant,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *grand'mère*, | grandmother, | *grand'pitié*, | great pity, |
| *grand'chambre*, | large chamber, | *grand'part*, | great share, |
| *grand'salle*, | large hall, | *grand'messe*, | high mass, |
| *grand'chère*, | great cheer, | *à grand' peine*, | with much difficulty, hardly, |
| *grand'faim*, | great hunger, | | |
| *grand'soif*, | great thirst, | *ce n'est pas grand' chose*, | 'tis no great matter. |
| *grand'peur*, | great fear *or* fright, | | |

It is better, in writing, to make no elision at the end of *grande* before these words, especially when this adnoun is preceded by one of these particles, *une, la, plus, très, fort:* nay, excepting, *grand'mère*, and *grand'messe*, when *une* comes before, 'tis better to pronounce *grande* than *grand*. Therefore, write and pronounce *une grande chambre, la plus grande chère, très-grande peur*, &c.

Those cases excepted, never suppress *e* in writing, nor spell *un' indign' action*, *entr'eux, entr'elles*, for *une indigne action*, an unworthy action, *entre eux, entre elles*, amongst them; *fair' un' éloquent' & merveilleus' histoire*, for *faire une éloquente & merveilleuse histoire*, to write an eloquent and marvellous history: tho' *e* is not sounded in all those cases, and you must pronounce as if it were written (in *French**) *fai ru nélokan, ét mèrvèilleu zistoire*.

*N. B.* Whenever, to represent the true pronunciation of one or many words together, I express them by other letters than those in use, that must always be understood with respect to the *French* language; it being, strictly speaking, absolutely impossible to represent such words or sentences as if they should be pronounced so with respect to the *English*. It is sufficient to have shown, as exactly as can possibly be, in the Tables prefixed to this Treatise, all the *French* sounds with their combinations, and the *English* sounds that answer to them. To pretend to more, that is, dressing *French* words and sentences in *English* sounds and letters, would be willingly running headlong into those gross, shocking absurdities, that are seen in a monstrous book extant, most impertinently usurping the title of a *French Grammar*.

3*dly*, *e* is quite dropt in future and conditional tenses of verbs: as,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Je serai*, | I shall or will be, | pronounce | *Je srai*, |
| *tu porteras*, | thou wilt carry, | | *tu portras*, |
| *il aimeroit*, | he would love, | | *il aimroit*, |
| *nous trouverons*, | we shall find, | | *nous trouvrons*. |

Except when it is followed by two consonants, the first of which is *r*, as in *je verrai* I shall see, *il enverroit* he would send, wherein *e* has the sonorous pronunciation that shall be described in the sequel

And in verbs ending in *ier*, as *prier* to pray, *étudier* to study, and even in *yer* preceded by a vowel, as *payer* to pay, and *employer* to employ, it is better to cut off the *e* not sounded in those tenses, and to write these words as they are pronounced. *Je prîrai* I shall pray, *vous étudiriez* you would study, *il emploiroit* he would employ, instead of *prierai*, *étudieriez*, *employeroit*.—It is the same with the nouns derived from those verbs, as *remercîment* for *remerciement*, from *remercier* to thank, &c.

4*thly*, *e* after *g* and followed by *o*, as in *pigeon* a pigeon, serves only to give *g* the articulation of *j*, which otherwise would take the hard articulation of *g*. For the same reason *e* is added in spelling before *a* and *o* in gerunds, and preterite tenses of verbs ending in *ger*, as *changer* to change, *manger* to eat, *juger* to judge: in all which cases *e* is no more sounded than in these words, *pigeon*, *changeable*. Therefore, don't write *changant*, *il juga*, *nous mangons*, as according to the analogy of the language, you must write *commençant*, and *commença*, from *commencer* to begin; but *changeant*, *jugea*, *mangeons*, and pronounce *chanjant*, *juja*, *manjons*, *pijon*, &c.

5*thly*, *e* is not sounded in the *penultima* (the last syllable but one) of nouns ending in *té* and derived from adnouns; as *dureté* hardness, *honnêteté* kindness, derived from *dur* hard, and *honnête* kind.

Except in such nouns in *té* as have *é* preceded by *i*, as *impiété* ungodliness, *sobriété* sobriety, &c. which are derived from *impie*, and *sobre*, &c. *é* in these words, takes both the acute sound and accent.

6*thly*, In the *penultima* of nouns in *ment* derived from verbs: as *jugement* judgment, *mouvement* motion, *contentement* contentment, derived from *juger*, *mouvoir*, *contenter*.

Except *agrément* liking, *supplément* supplement, and these three words *élément* element, *élément* element, and *véhément* vehement. *Vide p.* 33.

*7thly*, In the *penultima* of adverbs in *ment*; as *franchement* frankly, *sottement* sillily, *&c.*

Except 1*st*, these eight *aveuglément* blindly, *commodément* conveniently, *communément* commonly, *confusément* confusedly, *expressément* expressly, *impunément* with impunity, *profondément* deeply, *uniformément* uniformly: 2*dly*, adverbs derived from adnouns ending in *é (acute)*: as *aisément* easily, *effrontément* in a bold manner, *&c.* derived from *aisé* and *effronté*, &c.

8*thly*, In the *penultima* of the infinitive of verbs ending in *eler, emer, ener, eser, eter, ever, enir:* as *celer* to conceal, *jeter* to throw, *semer* to sow, *peser* to weigh, *venir* to come, *&c.*

Except in these verbs:

*aliéner*, to alienate,
*arrêter*, to stop,
*bêler*, to bleat,
*blasphémer*, to blaspheme,
*gangréner*, to gangrene,
*décréter*, to decree,
*égréner*, to take out the grain,
*empiéter*, to incroach upon,
*étrenner*, to hansel,
*s'endetter*, to run in debt,
*s'enquêter*, (at present very seldom used for *to inquire*),
*entêter*, to cause the head-ache, meaning smells,
*s'entêter*, to be obstinately resolved,
*exceller*, to excel,
*fêter*, to celebrate,
*fouetter*, to whip,
*guetter*, to spy,
*hébéter*, to besot,
*inquiéter*, to disquiet,
*interpréter*, to expound,
*mêler*, to mingle,
*prêter*, to lend,
*quereller*, to quarrel,
*quêter*, to go begging,
*regretter*, to grudge,
*se rebeller*, to rebel,
*répéter*, to repeat,
*réfréner*, to refrain,
*révéler*, to reveal,
*sceller*, to seal,
*seller*, to saddle,
*tempêter*, to storm.

'Tis to be observed, that tho' *e* is not sounded in the *penultima* of those verbs mentioned in the last observations, yet it takes the intermediate sound of *è* in the *penultima* of such tenses of the same verbs, wherein the final *er* of the infinitive becomes *e* not sounded, or when it becomes the *antepenultima*; as *je sème* I sow, *je pèserai* I shall weigh, *j'appellerois* I would call.

9*thly*, In the *penultima* of nouns in *eur*, derived from the verbs of the same terminations as those of the last observation; as *receleur* one that receives stolen goods, *semeur* a sower, from *semer* and *receler*; as likewise in the *penultima* of nouns ending in *tier*, as *pelletier* a skinner, *cabaretier* one who keeps an alehouse, *&c.*

10*thly*, In the syllable *re*, in the beginning of words, wherein it denotes reiteration or reduplication of the action expressed by

the word: as *redire* to say again, *refaire* to make again, *ressortir* to go out again, &c.

Except, *first*, when the reduplicative particle comes before words beginning with *e* sounded, or any vowel, or *h* not sounded; in which case *e* is sounded, and marked over with the accent acute, and the particle *re* loses its final *e*: as *récrire* to write again, from *écrire*; *ressuyer* to wipe again, from *essuyer*; *réunir* to reunite, from *unir*; *réhabituer* to use again to a thing, from *habituer*, &c.

2*dly*, When the word implies reiteration or reduplication, tho' the particle *re* cannot be said to be added to it, because, without it, it would not be a *French* word; such as these words and their derivatives,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *réduplicative*, | reduplicative, | *réhabiliter*, | to reinstate, |
| *récapituler*, | to resume, | *réparer*, | to repair, |
| *récidiver*, | to relapse, | *réclamer*, | to reclaim, |
| *réciter*, | to recite, to say by heart, | *récolte*, | the crop, |
| *répéter*, | to repeat, | *récollection*, | recollection, |
| *reïtérer*, | to reïterate, | *réconcilier*, | to reconcile, |
| *récollement*, | a re-examination, | *répercussion*, | repercussion, |
| *récrimination*, | recrimination, | *résipiscence*, | amendment of life, |
| *rédimer*, | to free, to exempt, | *résumer*, | to resume, to sum up, |
| *réfléchir*, | to reflect, | *réverbération*, | and *réverbère*, reverberation. |
| *régénérer*, | to regenerate, | | |
| *réintégrer*, | to restore, | | |

In *réconfronter* and *réformer*, *e* also is sounded, tho' we say *confronter* and *former*.

11*thly*, In the syllable *re* followed by a double *s*, as *ressembler* to resemble, *se ressouvenir* to remember, &c.

Except *résusciter* to rise again, and *résurrection*, wherein the first *e* is acute.

12*thly*, Sometimes, but in conversation only, *e* is not sounded in the pronouns demonstrative, *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, *ceci*, *cela*, this, or that; nor in the pronoun personal *le*, after a verb at the imperative, when the word is a polysyllable; as *cela* that, *ce livre* this book, *cet enfant* that child, *cette femme* that woman, *cherchez-le*, look for it: pronounce *sla*, *slivre*, *stenfant*, *stefemme*, *chercher-l'*; and never *cherchez lé* or *lè*. But when the verb is a monosyllable, or ends with mute *e*, *le* is sounded; as *dis-le*, *fais-le*; *dites-le*, *faites-le*.

13*thly*, *e* is not sounded in the *penultima* and *antepenultima* of these words and their derivatives:

*benêt*, booby,
*besogne*, work,
*besoin*, want,
*caqueter*, to prattle,
*chaperon*, a hood,
*chenil*, a dog-kennel,
*chenille*, a caterpillar,
*chenet*, an hand-iron,
*chemin*, a way,
*cheminée*, a chimney,
*chemise*, a shirt,
*cheville*, a peg,
*fenêtre*, a window,
*fenouil*, fennel,
*genou*, the knee,
*guenille*, a rag,
*guenon*, a monkey,
*hallebarde*, an halbert,
*hameçon*, a fish-hook,
*hanneton*, a cock-chafer,
*hoqueton*, a sort of serjeant,
*levain*, leaven,
*menin*, a minion,
*meneuse*, a nurse's deputy,
*menotte*, handcuff,
*menoux*, hog's feet,
*neveu*, nephew,
*passe-temps*, pastime,
*pelisse*, a furred cloak,
*pelote*, pincushion,
*petit*, little,
*retour*, eturn,
*secourir*, to succour,
*taffetas*, taffety.

¶ It must be observed that the above words and such like should be preceded by an article or another word not ending with an *e* mute: in *le chemin, la cheminée, ma chemise, ta besogne, sa fenêtre*, &c. the middle *e* is mute; but not in *votre chemin, grande cheminée, une chemise, bonne besogne, cette fenêtre*, &c. because *e* not accented cannot be dropt or mute in two successive syllables, and being final in *votre, grande, une, bonne, cette*, it must be dropt in preference.

For the very same reason the middle *e* not accented cannot be mute in *Arlequin* Harlequin, *arsenal* an arsenal, *arsenic* arsenick, *fortement* strongly, *fermement* firmly, *fermeté* firmness, *proprement* neatness, *propreté* neatness, *justement* justly, *simplement* simply, &c. because it comes after two consonants, the first of which is sounded, and the sounding of a consonant always supposes the dropping of an *e* mute. It seems, however, to be dropt in *forgeron* smith, *forteresse* fortress, on account of the rapidity with which it is sounded; but very few words admit of such glibness of utterance.]

Lastly, *e* not accented is not sounded (save the exception above stated) in any of the derived words that have it from their primitives. As, therefore, all adnouns feminine end with an *e* mute, and likewise the first person present tense indicative mood of most verbs, so that final *e* is not sounded neither in the words derived from them; as in *naïvement* ingenuously, from *naïve* ingenuous, *grandement* greatly, from *grande* great, *étrangement* strangely, from *étrange* strange, *extrêmement* extremely, from *extrême* extreme, *honnêteté* honesty, from *honnête* honest; *arrangement* ordering, *jugement* judgment, *logement* lodging, &c. from *j'arrange, je juge, je loge*, &c.

Except the adverbs mentioned above (7th parag. p. 31), *aveuglément, communément*, &c. In *agrément* an agreement, and *j'agrérai, j'agrérois*, I shall, I should like, and *supplément* supplement, *e* is acute, because they are derived from *agréer* and *suppléer*, whose first persons are *j'agrée, je supplée*, and the first *e* only is kept in the derivatives.

*é acute.*

This *e*, that has the sound of *a* in *hate, face, fate, made*, should always be marked over with an acute accent, as it is really at the

end of nouns of both numbers, and of the second person plural of verbs, when it is spelt with an *s*; for it is at present generally spelt with *z*, leaving out the accent: as *bonté* kindness, *aimé* loved, *bontés* kindnesses, *ils sont aimés* they are loved, *vous aimez* you love.—In words wherein that *é* is before another vowel, as in *géant* a giant, *réunir* to reunite, &c. it denotes for certain, that the two vowels keep each of them their proper sound.

*er*, at the end of infinitives, is sounded like *é* acute; as likewise at the end of nouns in *ger*, *cher*, *ier*, and *ied*: as,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *parler*, | to speak, | Pronounce | *parlé*, |
| *danger*, | danger, | | *dangé*, |
| *cocher*, | coachman, | | *coché*, |
| *barbier* | a barber, | | *barbié*, |
| *pied*, | a foot, | | *pié*. |

Except 1*st*, In all monosyllables in *er*, as *mer* sea, *cher* dear, *fer* iron, &c. wherein *e* is grave, and *r* strongly articulated.

2*dly*, In these following words:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *amer*, | bitter, | *cuillier*, | spoon, | *hiver*, | winter, |
| *belvéder*, | a belveder, | *enfer*, | hell, | *hier*, | yesterday. |
| *cancer*, | a canker, | *fier*, | proud, | | |

3*dly*, At the end of all *Latin*, and foreign proper names, as *Jupiter*, *Luther*, *Gunter*: but not in *French* proper names, as *Didier*, *Roger*, &c. pronounce *Lutèr*, *Rogé*, &c

At the end of a sentence, *es* in the pronoun *les* takes both the grave sound and accent; as also in *dès* preposition; as *renvoyez-les*, send them back again, and not *renvoyez-le*; *dés qu'il eut fait*, as soon as he had done, and not *dé qu'il*, &c.

As *e* is often met with in the beginning and middle of words, but, through the carelessness of printers and authors, not marked over with that accent which should denote its pronunciation, in order to supply that defect, we make the following observations:

1st, All *e*'s that have the sound of *e* acute at the end of a word, keep it also in any syllable whatever, in the derivations and in flexions of the same word. Thus *e* being sounded acute in the end of *aisé* easy, must be so too in *aisément* easily. Thus again *e* having the resonant sound of *e* grave in *amer* bitter, must have it too in the second syllables of *amèrement* bitterly, and *amertume* bitterness.

Except only in verbs in *er*, wherein *e* is never pronounced in future and conditional tenses, as we have said.

2dly, *e* is acute *é*, *dé*, *pré*, and *tré*, first syllables of a word: as *éclat* a crack, noise, *été* been, *écrit* writing, *dépit* spite, *détourner* to deter, *prélude* a prelude, *préparer* to prepare, *trépas* death, *trésor* a treasure, &c.

Except, 1*st*, *pre* in *premier* first, and its derivatives, and these persons of the verb *prendre* to take, *prenons*, *prenez*, *prenois*, &c. wherein *pre* is pronounced with the guttural sound of *e*, but short.

2*dly*, *de* in the following words and their compounds, wherein *e* is not sounded in a rapid conversation:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *demain*, | to-morrow, | *depuis*, | since, | *devancer*, | to outrun, |
| *demeurer*, | to live, | *Denis*, | Dionysius, | *devise*, | motto, |
| *demander*, | to ask, | *dedans*, | within, | *deviner*, | to guess, |
| *demi*, | half, | *dessus*, | upon, | *devoir*, | duty, |
| *demeurant*, | dwelling, | *dessous*, | under, | *il devient*, | he becomes, |
| *demoiselle*, | a miss, | *devant*, | before, | | |

tho' *de* in *devenir* has the guttural sound of *e*, and the second *e* is almost dropped. *e* in *de*, first syllable of *dégouter*, to make to loath, is acute, and in *dégoutter* to drop.

N. B. *Words beginning with* des *fall under the last observation*: as, *désabuser* to undeceive, *désavouer* to disavow, *désespérer* to despair, *désigner* to denote, *désister* to desist, *désoler* to vex.

3dly, *e* is sounded acute but short before *rer* in infinitives in *érer*: as *espérer* to hope, *digérer* to digest, *modérer* to moderate, &c.

4thly, *e* is sounded acute in the syllable *re* in the beginning of words, wherein it denotes neither reiteration nor reduplication of action: as *récent* recent, *réfugier* to fly for refuge, altho' it is mute in *refuge*.

Except the following words and their derivatives, wherein *e* is mute in *re*:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *rebut*, | cast out, | *recommander*, | to recommend, |
| *rebelle*, | rebellious, | *reconnoissance*, | gratitude, |
| *rebellion*, | rebellion, | *recourir*, | to have recourse, |
| *rebours*, | the wrong side of a thing, | *recevoir*, | to receive (but not *récipient*, nor *réception*. |
| *rebrousser*, | to go back, | *reculer*, | to draw back, |
| *rebuffade*, | rebuff, | *redevable*, | indebted to, |
| *rebuter*, | to dishearten, | *redoute*, | a redoubt, |
| *recéler*, | to receive stolen goods, | *redoutable*, | dreadful, |
| *recoin*, | a by-place, | *refrain*, | burden of a song, |
| *recueil*, | a collection, | *refrogner*, | to knit one's brows |
| *recueillir*, | to collect, | *refus*, | denial |

*regarder*, to look,
*regimber*, to kick,
*regret*, regret,
*relais*, post-stages,
*relent*, musty,
*reléguer*, to banish,
*relégation*, banishing,
*relief*, relievo,
*relier*, to bind,
*relique*, relick,
*reliquat*, remnants,
*religion*, religion (but *e* is acute in *irréligion*, irreligion),
*reluire*, to glitter,
*remarquer*, to remark,
*remède*, remedy,
*remercier*, to thank,
*remettre*, to remit (but not *rémission*, remitting),
*remuer*, to stir,
*renard*, a fox,
*renégat*, a renegado,
*renier*, to disown,
*renifler*, to snuff up one's snot,
*renoncer*, to renounce,
*renom*, renown, fame,
*repaire*, a lurking hole,
*repartir*, to set out again,
*repas*, a meal,
*se repentir*, to repent,
*repic*, repique,
*replique*, reply (but not *répliquer*, to reply),
*repos*, rest,
*reprendre*, to correct,
*représailles*, reprisals,
*reproche*, reproach,
*retrancher*, to cut off,
*requête*, a petition,
*requérir*, to request, (but not in *réquisition*, request),
*retenir*, to keep (but not in *rétention*, retention),
*retenue*, moderation,
*retentir*, to resound,
*se retirer*, to retire,
*revanche*, revenge,
*revêche*, froward,
*revers*, the reverse.

Some words have different significations, according as the *e* of their first syllable *re* is pronounced and marked over with the accent acute, or not pronounced at all; as,

*répondre*, to answer, *repondre*, to lay eggs again,
*répartir*, to divide, *repartir*, to reply, or to go back again.

Observe besides, that *ez* denotes only the sound of *é* acute; as *assez* enough, *nez* nose: as doth likewise the conjunction *et* or *&* and.

## *è grave.*

This *e*, the sound of which is sonorous, or resonant, is found,

1°. In the prepositions *dès* from, *près* near, the adverb *très* most, and in all nouns ending in *ès*, as *abcès* abscess, *profès* a professed monk.

2°. In all these monosyllables *des*, *les*, *mes*, *tes*, *ses*; as likewise the syllables of words wherein it is followed by *r* pronounced, as in *mer* the sea, *fer* iron, *enfer* hell, *amer* bitter, *ouvert* open.

But it has the sound of the following *ê* in the last syllable of the plural number of the words wherein it is indifferently resonant in the singular; as sing. *effet* effect, plur. *effets* effects; *projet* project, *projets* projects.

### *ê circumflex.*

*e* circumflex is always marked over with the accent which characterises it; and it is exceedingly broad and long, especially when it makes the penultima of a word, the last syllable whereof is *e* mute, as may be observed in *bête* beast, *ébêté* stupid; *grêle* hail, *grêler* to hail; *bêche* a spade, *bêcher* to dig; *pêche* a peach, *pêcher* a peach-tree; *tête* head, *entêté* strong-headed; *même* even, *champêtre* rural, &c. And both the grave *è* and circumflex *ê* express the same sound as *e* in *there* and *where;* or in these other *English* words, *fare, tare,* which exactly correspond, as to sound, to these *French* ones, *faire, taire.*

### *The intermediate sound of è.*

It is found 1°. in monosyllables, and all syllables of words where it is followed by any other consonant than *r* pronounced. Thus *e* has the intermediate sound in *bec* beak, *sel* salt, *effet* effect, *projet* project. I said in the last paragraph but one, that the final syllable of these words is very broad and long in their plural: I shall observe further here, that *et* is more open in *il met* he puts, than in *mettre* to put, but not so broad as *je mets* I put, *tu mets* thou puttest, which is the sound of the conjunction *mais* but.

2°. Before two consonants, or *x* in the beginning and middle of words, as *infecter* to poison, *ils prennent* they take, *ancienne* ancient, *examen* examination, and *examiner* to examine, tho' in these two last *e* takes a little of the acute sound.

Except when *n* or *m* is one of the two consonants with which it is followed: for they then denote either the nasal sound, as in *entrer* to enter, *emplir* to fill; or the third person plural of verbs, where the final *ent* is mute.

This intermediate sound of *e* is expressed in the *English* words *bell, fed, less, progress, effect, protect, amen, examen,* &c.

The *e* of the penultima of the words, the last syllable whereof is *e* mute, is either most sonorous, as in *grêle* hail, *problême* a problem, *tempête* a tempest; or but a little sonorous, as in *chandelle* a candle, *mèche* match, *trompette* a trumpet.

Except in these five words, *collége* college, *liége* cork, *piége* snare, *privilége* privilege, and *siége* seat, wherein the *e* of the penultima is acute and long.

All the words just mentioned prove how necessary the accents are to our *e's*, in order to show their pronunciation; and that the perpendicular accent proposed of late years by some Grammarians would have been as necessary as the acute, the grave, and the circumflex. But as it has not been adopted by the *French* Academy, and it is not to be found in any book, we have omitted it throughout in this present edition. See p. 89.

From these observations it follows, that the improper diphthong *ai*, which is naturally sounded like *é* acute, receives the same alterations of sounds as *e;* and is more or less resonant in a word, according to the consonants that follow it: as *faire* to do, *maître* master, *naîtrois* from *naître* to be born.

*i.*

This vowel has almost the same sound in *French* as in the *English* words, *bit, fin, pin, filial*, &c.

*i* followed by *n* or *m* in monosyllables, or in the beginning of words of two syllables, gives a sound like to that of *an* in *thank*, *en* in length, or *ain* in saint; as *vin* wine, *Indes* Indies, pronounce *vain, ainde;* and likewise in *imbu* imbued, *impur* impure, *ingrat*, ungrateful, *infini* infinite, *imprudent* imprudent.

*i* in the particle conditional *si* is contracted, both in writing and speech, before and with the pronouns *il* and *ils* only; and never before any other vowel, not even before *i* in any other word: as *s'il vient* if he comes, instead of *si il*, &c. *s'ils disent* if they say: but write and pronounce *si elle vient* if she comes, *si illustre* so illustrious, *si après cela* if after that; and not *s'elle vient*, &c.

*i* is not sounded in *encoignure* corner, pronounce *encognure*.

*i* is not sounded, and makes no diphthong with the preceding vowel, when it is followed by *l* or *ll;* it then serves only to give *l* or *ll* a particular articulation, called the liquid articulation of *l:* as in *soleil* the sun, *travail* work, *veiller* to sit up, *travailler* to work. That liquid articulation of *l* is the same that is heard in *English* in the articulation of the double *ll* of the words *million, billiards*: all the difference is, that that *i* which causes the liquid articulation is in *French* before *l*, whereas it is after it in *English*.

*o*

This vowel receives two sounds as well as *a;* the one acute, slender, and commonly short; and the other grave, broad, and

always long, as they are expressed in these words, *cotte*, or *cotillon*, a petticoat, and *côte* a coast. *o* acute and short has the same sound as in the *English* words *bog*, *bottle*, *not*, *pot*, *rob*, &c. and *ô* grave and long, as in *globe*, *robe*, *old*, &c. or *ou* in *coast*, *roast*, &c. *ô* long is usually marked over with a circumflex thus *(ô)*, or followed by a single *s*, thus *chose*: *gros*, and its derivative *grosse*, *grossir*, &c. tho' there be two *s*'s. Whenever *o* is named or spelt by itself, it is always by the long and broad sound of *ô (un ô*, an *o.)*

1. *o* is almost dropt in the second syllable of *accommoder* to fit up, and *raccommoder* to mend; and in the first of *commander* to command; is pronounced, as it were, *cmandé*, *acmodé*; but in conversation only.

2. In *coopérer* to cooperate, *coobligé*, &c. each *o* makes a syllable.

3. The pronunciation of *notre* and *votre* is worth observing. These words are pronounced with the broad and long sound of *ô* in the pronouns substantive, *le vôtre*, *la vôtre*, yours; *le nôtre*, *la nôtre*, ours; and *o* is marked over with a circumflex. When they are only pronouns adjective, or rather possessive articles, they are sounded with the short and slender sound of *o*, without being marked over with a circumflex: and if the substantive begins with a consonant, *r* is not pronounced in *votre* and *notre*; as *votre livre* your book, *notre maison* our house; pronounce *votte livre*, *notte maison*: but when the noun begins with a vowel, pronounce as it is spelt, *votre ami* your friend, *notre affaire* our affair: as also in *Notre Dame* Our Lady, and in the Lord's prayer, *Notre Père*, *qui es*, &c. Our Father, which art, *&c.*

*u.*

This vowel, which is expressed in *bu*, *tu*, *lu*, *statut*, *volume*, is the very same sound that the *English* express in *prostitute*, *imposthume*, *volume*; only the *English u* of these words is shorter and more obtuse.

*ui* makes a proper diphthong in *buisson* a bush.

*u* in foreign or *Latin* words that are become *French*, followed by *m*, takes the nasal sound of *on*; as *un factum* a plea, pronounce *facton*.

*un* has likewise the sound of a nasal *o* in *junte* a junto, but not in *défunt* dead, wherein it is pronounced as in the monosyllable *un* one.

## *y.*

*y*, generally speaking, has no other sound but that of the French *i*, and is used in *French* in the following circumstances only:

1*st*, As adverb of place or pronoun, and then *y* makes a word by itself; as *il y a*, there is; *y pensez-vous?* do you think of it?

2*dly*, In the beginning of these four words only, *yacht*, pron. *Iaque* yacht, *yeux* eyes, and *yeuse* a holm-oak; *ypreau* Dutch elm. Some add indeed *yvre* got drunk, *yvoire* ivory, and *yvraye* tare: but these words are now generally spelt with *i* by the best writers, *ivre*, *ivoire*, *ivraie*.

3*dly*, In the middle of some words wherein *y* stands for two *i*'s, the former whereof makes with the foregoing vowel an improper diphthong, and the latter with the following, or is sounded by itself, as in *royaume* kingdom, *pays* country, and its derivatives, *paysage* a landscape, and *paysant* a peasant, wherein *ay* is sounded as *ai*, with another *i* before *s*; *Abbaye* abbey, *essayer* to try, *voyons* let us see, *Royal*, *ayant*, &c. which words are pronounced as if they were written *pai-is*, *pai-izant*, *abai-ie*, *essai-ier*, *voi-ions*, *Roi-ial*, *ai-iant*, &c.

The following words, wherein *a* keeps its natural sound, making a vowel by itself, and *i* takes a liquid articulation as in *you*, are written now with an *ï trema*, that is marked over with two dots:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *aïeul*, | grandfather, | *faïence*, | Delft-water, | *Baïonne*, | (proper names.) |
| *baïonnette*, | a bayonet, | *glaïeul*, | corn-flag, | *Blaïe*, | |
| *camaïeu*, | a camaieu, | *païen*, | a pagan, | *Caïenne*, | |
| *caïeu*, | a sucker, | *tavaïole*, | a mantle, | *Maïenne*, | |
| *coïon*, | a trifling fellow | *Aïen*, | proper names, | *Maïence*, | |
| *coïonner*, | to trifle, | *Baïard*, | | *Caïette*, | |
| *coïonnerie*, | trifling, | *Baïeux*, | | *La Faïette*, | |

The two dots over *ï* show that the vowel makes a syllable by itself, as *haïr* to hate, *naïf* no way counterfeit, *héroïque* heroical, *Laïs*, &c. whereas otherwise it makes, with the foregoing vowel, an improper diphthong, as in *je hais* I hate.

Most writers preserve still *y* in the words derived from Greek, to show the etymology; as in these words, *étymologie*, *analyse*, *mystère*, *syllabe*, &c.

## SECTION II.

### *Of* Diphthongs.

THE meeting of many vowels in one and the same syllable, is called Diphthong. When many vowels together keep each of them in the syllable their particular and proper sound, they are called *Proper* or *Syllabic Diphthongs*; as *lui* he, *lier* to tie. When they all together make but one single sound, they are called *Improper* or *Orthographical Diphthongs*; as *air* air, *eau* water.

### *Proper Diphthongs.*

*ia, iai, ian, ié, iè, ien, ieu, io, ioi, ion, iau; oa, oé, oè, oi, eoi, oin, oua, ouan, oué, ouè; oui, ouen, ouin; ua, ué, uè, ui, uin.*

All that can be said of these Proper Diphthongs amounts to this: that though these vowels, united together, make really two distinct syllables, each of which keeps its natural and peculiar sound, yet they are sounded and pronounced as quickly, and in as small a compass of time, as a single ordinary syllable. Therefore never pronounce in two syllables *Di-eu* God, *di-able* devil, *li-er* to tie, *vi-olon* a fiddle, *jou-er* to play, *rou-et* a spinning wheel, *fu-ir* to avoid, *ro-i* king, *ou-i* yes, *Rou-en*: but sound the two vowels in one syllable quickly: *Dieu, diable, jouer, rouet*, &c. N. B. *ouen* in *St. Ouen* is not pronounced as in *Rouen* (a city in *Normandy*), but like *ain* in *foin* hay.

There is an exception to this, *viz.* when those diphthongs come after two consonants, the last of which is *r* or *l*; as *nous prions* we desire, *vous voudriez* you would, *il plioit* he bent, and the word *hier* yesterday, which are pronounced like two syllables. Nevertheless the adverb *hier* is sounded in one syllable only, when it comes with the other adverb *avant* (*avant-hier*, the day before yesterday).

In *coadjuteur* a coadjutor, *coactif* coercive, *coaguler* to coagulate, *cloaque* a common sewer, *croasser* to croak, *Croatie* Croatia, *Croate, retroactif* retroactive, and in *Goa, Moab, Soares*, and other foreign words, which are the only words wherein *oa* is found, each vowel makes a particular syllable; but in *aio* and *Aiol*, *a* makes a syllable by itself, and *io* a proper diphthong.

*Improper Diphthongs.*

*ae, ai, ay, ao, au; ea, eai, eau, ei, eo, eu; œ, œu, oi, ou; ui, uei.*

Observe first, that when these vowels together do not make the same syllable, but two distinct ones, two dots are put over that which begins the last syllable; as in *haïr*, *Pirithoüs*; or an accent over the first vowel when it is an *e*: as in *géant* a giant, *déisme* deism, *météore* a meteor, *Géorgie* Georgia, *Léonidas*, &c.

*2dly*, That, excepting *eu* and *ou*, the natural and peculiar sound of the other improper diphthongs is quite the same as, and not at all different from, that of some of the five vowels treated of before.

*ae.*

*ae* is found only in *Caen*, the name of a city, wherein *a* nasal only is sounded *(Can)*.

In *aérien*, *aérer*, *Danaé*, *Ticho-Braé*, and such other words, the accent that is over *é* shows its pronunciation, and that it makes a vowel by itself.

*æ.*

*æ* or *Æ* is now out of use in *French* words derived from the *Greek* and *Latin*, written formerly with *æ*, being at present written with an *e* sounded like *é* acute; as *Egypte* for *Ægypte*, Egypt, *Equinoxe* for *Æquinoxe*

*ai* and *ay.*

*ai* or *ay* denotes the sound of *e*, sounded sometimes acute, sometimes grave, and sometimes intermediate. Nay, it is not sounded at all in the gerund, present, and imperfect tenses of the verb *faire* to do; *ai* being now converted into *e* mute. *Faisant* doing, *je faisois* I did, *nous faisons* we do; pronounce *fesant*, *fezois*, *fezons*.

1*st*, *ai* or *ay*, being the two last letters of a word, is sounded like *é* acute; as *je parlai* I spoke, *je dirai* I say; pronounce *parlé*, *diré*.

Except in these four words, *vrai* true, *essai* an essay, *délai* delay, *Mai*, May, wherein *ai* has the intermediate sound, being pronounced as in *English* in the word *May*. But observe that the adnoun *vrai* true, takes the grave and broad sound of *è* long, when it comes before its noun, as in *le vrai sens d'une loi*, the true sense of a law; pronounce *vrès*, or *vrais*: whereas, when it is not followed by a noun, or when it terminates a sentence, it only has the short sound of *è*, as in *c'est vrai*, it is true; *il est vrai que*, it is true that, &c.

*2dly*, *ai* being followed by *s*, *ts*, *x*, (*ais*, *aits*, *aix*), or *e* not sounded (*aie*) at the end of a word, takes the most resonant sound of *è* grave; as *jamais* never, *des faits* facts, *paix* peace, *plaie* a wound, *vraie* true, (*fem*).

*3dly*, *ai* in the middle of a word, and followed by a consonant, is more or less resonant according to the consonant that follows. (See the observation at the end of the paragraph of *è* grave.)—*ai* has the most resonant sound of *è* in *haine* hatred, *traître* a traitor; and in the words wherein *ai* comes before *r*, as in *faire*, *braire* to bray, &c. pronounce *fer*, &c.

*4thly*, in *ai* followed by a double or single *l*, *a* keeps entirely its proper sound, *i* serving only to give *l* or *ll* a liquid articulation; as in *bail* a lease, *vaillant* courageous.

*ai* is likewise sounded as a single *a* in *St. Aignan* (a proper name).

In the interjection *ai* (for pain), *i* takes the liquid articulation of *ï*, so that *aï* is pronounced like *aï* in *aïeul*, or *Blaie*.

*aît* has the same pronunciation in *il fait*, *plaît*, *pait*, *naît*, and *braît* (third persons of *faire* to do, *plaire* to please, *paître* to graze, *naître* to be born, and *braire* to bray): but *fait* (a participle or noun) has the pronunciation of the intermediate *è*: as *Il fait beau*, It is fine weather; *J'ai fait*, I have done; *C'est fait*, It is over; *C'est un fait*, It is fact. On the contrary, *ais* in the two first persons of *savoir* to know, and *ait* in the third, have only the pronunciation of *é* acute. *Je sais*, *tu sais*, *il sait*, pronounce *je sé*, *tu sé*, *il sé*.

*ao.*

*ao* is found in the following words; 1*st*, In *aorte* (an artery), *aouara* (a fruit), *Aonie*, *Aonides*, *Aorne*, *Baao*, *Laocoon*, *Laodamie*, *Laodicée*, *Laomédon*, *Laonice* (proper names), and *extraordinaire* extraordinary, wherein *a* and *o* make each a syllable, and keep their proper sound.

*2dly*, In *paon* a peacock, *faon* a fawn, *Laon* (the name of a city), which are pronounced with the nasal sound of *a*, as if they were spelt *pan*, *fan*, *Lan*.

*3dly*, In *aorasie*, *aoriste*, *aoste*, *Saone*, wherein *a* is quite lost, these words being pronounced *orasie*, *oriste*, *oste*, *Sône*.

*4thly*, In *taon* ox-fly, which is sounded with the nasal sound of *o*, like the pronoun *ton*.

*5thly*, In *Août* August (a month), which is pronounced *ou*, or in English *oo*; but *a* is sounded in its derivative *aoûter*; not in the other derivative *aouteron*, wherein *a* is silent: pronounce then *Oût*, *aoûter*, *outeron*. *Raoul* (a proper name) is pronounced *Ra-oul*.

*au* and *eau*.

*au* and *eau* at the end of words are sounded a little more open than the short and slender sound of *o*, as *chapeau* a hat, *marteau* a hammer, &c. but not quite so broad as the word *eau* water, and the particle *au* to the, which have the long and broad sound of *ô*, or *au* followed by *d*, *t*, *x*, in the last syllable; as *chaud* hot, *défaut*, defect, *chapeaux* hats.

*au*, in the middle of dissyllables, always has the broad and long sound of *o*, as in *beauté* beauty, *baudrier* a belt, *faucher* to mow: but in the beginning of words it is pronounced sometimes like *ô* long, and sometimes like *o* short.

*au* has the slender and short sound of *o* in the beginning of the following words:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| auberge, | *an eating-house.* | austère, | *austere* |
| audace, | *audaciousness.* | austral, | *austral* |
| audience, | *audience.* | authentique, | *authentical* |
| auditoire, | *congregation.* | automate, | *automaton* |
| auditeur, | *auditor.* | automne (*n* is silent), | *autumn.* |
| augmenter, | *to augment.* | autorité, | *authority.* |
| augure, | *omen.* | autoriser, | *to authorise.* |
| augurer, | *to augurate.* | auxiliaire, | *auxiliary.* |
| Aurore, | *Aurora.* | mauvais, | *bad.* |

But *au* has the broad sound of *ô* in the beginning of the following words:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| aubade, | *waits.* | autruche, | *ostrich.* |
| aubaine, | *escheat.* | auteur, | *author* |
| aube, | *dawn of the day.* | autour, | *about.* |
| aucune, | *none.* | autre, *other*, with its derivatives. | |
| auguste, | *august.* | auvent, | *a pent-house.* |
| aujourd'hui, | *to-day.* | aumône, | *alms.* |
| aulique, | *aulick.* | auprès, | *near, by.* |
| aumuce, | *an amice.* | auspice, | *auspice.* |
| aune, | *an ell.* | aussi, | *also.* |
| auparavant, | *before.* | autant, | *as much.* |
| Autriche, | *Austria.* | autel, | *altar.* |

*Beau* has the broad sound of *ô*: as *Cela est beau*, That's fine; *Voilà un beau coup*, That's a fine stroke: pronounce *ça è bô*, *voilà un bô cou.*

*fléau* a scourge, is pronounced like a proper diphthong, *flé-au*; as likewise *préau* a little meadow, and *eaux* in *Despréaux* (a proper name), wherein *s* is mute; and in *féaux*, plural of *féal* trusty, (used only in royal patents, proclamations, *&c.*)

*ea.*

*ea* is found only in the words *Jean* and *Jeanne*, John, Jane; *e* is left out in the diminutives *Janot*, *Janette*, *Janneton*. *Jean* is pronounced with the nasal sound of *a*, as *Jan*; *Jeanne* with the long and broad sound of *â*, as *Jâne*; and *Janot*, *Janette*, and *Janneton*, with the short and slender one.

*ea* is also found in some verbs after *g*, as in *mangea*, wherein (as we have seen before) *e* loses its sound, and serves only to make *g* take the articulation of *j*, as if it were spelt *manja*.

*eai.*

*eai* is found only in the word *geai* a jack-daw, and in the same verbs just mentioned after *g*, wherein *eai*, or rather *ai*, takes the sound of *e* intermediate *(un jè)*; *e* serving to the same purpose as in the words of the last paragraph; *eai* takes the sound of *é* acute in *je mangeai* I did eat: pronounce *manjé*.

*ei* and *ey.*

*ei*, or *ey*, denotes the same sound as in English *e* before a consonant, as in the word *pen*, which answers exactly to the sound of this *French* word *peine* pains.—Except in *Reine* a queen, *seize* sixteen, and *seizième* sixteenth, wherein *ei* has the most resonant sound of *è* long.

In *ei* followed by *l* or *ll*, *e* keeps its sound (the resonant sound of the intermediate *è*), and *i* serves only to give *l* or *ll* the liquid articulation; as in *soleil* sun, *veiller* to sit up. (See the paragraph of *i*.)—*eil* in *orgueil* pride, *recueil* a collection, and *cueillir* to gather, is not pronounced as in *soleil*, but as *eu* in *deuil* mourning: but it keeps its proper sound in its derivatives *orgueilleux* proud, *&c.*

*eo.*

*eo* is found in the verb *asseoir* to sit down, in the syllable *geon* or *geons* of some verbs, and in the word *geolier* a jailor, and *George*; in which cases *e* quite loses its sound, and the preceding *g* is sounded like *j*. Pronounce *assoir*, *Jorge*, &c. (See the 4th paragraph of *e* not sounded.)

Observe, that when there are two dots over *o*, or an accent acute over *e* as in *géographie* and *météore*, both vowels keep their proper sounds.

### *eu.*

*eu* receives two sounds; the first of which is the guttural sound of *e*, and is found in *feu* fire, *il peut* he can, *&c.* which is (I say) the very same sound as *e* in the English monosyllable *her.* (See page 28.)—*x* joined to *eu (eux)* gives it another peculiar sound not to be found in English, but not hard to express.—*eu* in *jeune* young, *filleul* and *filleule* a god-child, is sounded as in *feu;* but in *jeûne* and *jeûner* fasting, it is sounded as *eux*, tho' not in *déjeûner* to breakfast. *eu* in *Hebreu* is pronounced like *eux.*

The second sound of *eu* is that of the vowel *u*, and is found only in these two or three words, *eunuque* an eunuch, *Eustache* (a proper name), *gageure* a wager, and *eu* had, and the other tenses of *avoir* to have. Pronounce *unuc, ustache, gajure, u, vous utes.*—We now write *vu* seen, *vue* sight, *sûr* sure, *mûr* ripe, *reliûre* binding, *tu pusses* thou could'st, and all participles without *e*, instead of the old way of writing *veu, veue, seur, relieure, tu peusses*, &c. *eut* in *il veut* he is desirous, is not sounded as in *il peut* he can, but like *eux in je veux*, but it is in that word only: and *eus* or *eux* in *je peux* I can, is not pronounced as in *je veux.* but like *eut* in *il peut* he can.

### *æ* and *oe.*

*æ* is found in *cœur* heart, and *chœur* choir or chorus, *mœurs* manners, *œuf* egg, *œuvres* works, *sœur* sister, and *vœu* a vow, in which words *o* quite loses its sound: and in *œil* eye, its derivatives *œillade* an ogle, and *œillère (les dents œillères*, the eye-teeth); as also in *œillet* a pink, *æ* takes the first sound of *eu.* Some authors think it better to write all these words without *o*, but the contrary custom is prevailing. Therefore pronounce *keur, meur, euil, euillè*, &c.

*æ* denotes only the sound of *é* acute in *œconomie, œcuménique*, and *Œdipe*, which even now are spelt as pronounced with *é*, *économie* œconomy.

*o* and *e* in *poëte* a poet, *moëlle* marrow, and other such like words, wherein *e* is marked over with two dots, make a proper diphthong, wherein *e* takes the intermediate sound of *è*; as likewise in *coercible, coercitif*, and *coertion.* In *coégal* coequal, *coéternel* coeternal, &c. the acute accent over the *é* shows its pronunciation, and is a proof at the same time that the *e* of the preceding words should be marked over with the straight accent.

## *oi* and *oy*.

*oi* and *oy* are sometimes improper diphthongs that take only the resonant sound of *e* grave; but more commonly they are proper diphthongs expressing the two distinct sounds of *o* and *è* or *é*.

*oi* is an improper diphthong; 1*st*, in the imperfect and conditional tenses of verbs: as *j'aimois* I loved, *tu dirois* thou would'st say, *il parleroit* he would speak, *&c.* pronounce *aimais, dirais, parleret.*

2*dly*, In verbs which have more than two syllables in the infinitive, as *paroître* to appear, *connoître* to know, and their derivatives; pronounce *parêtre, connêtre.*

3*dly*, In these words *foible* weak, *foiblesse*, weakness, *foiblement* weakly, *affoiblir* to weaken, *roide* stiff, *roideur* stiffness, *roidir* to stiffen, *harnois* harness, and *monnoie* coin, pronounce *fèble, fèblesse, rède, harnê, monnê:* but pronounce *oy* like a proper diphthong, in *monnoyé* coined, thus: *monnoi-ié.*

These persons of *être, sois, soit, soyons, soyez, soient*, and even the verb *croire* throughout, *je crois, il croit, nous croirions*, &c. *froid* cold, *froideur* coldness, *froidement* coldly, *adroit* skilful, *adroitement* skilfully; the adnoun *droit* right; the adverb *tout-droit* straight along, *endroit* place, *étroit* narrow, *nettoyer* to clean, *croître* to grow, throughout, with its derivatives, and all monosyllables, are pronounced with the sound of the proper diphthong *o-è*. Some people, I know, thinking themselves fine speakers, adopt the affected utterance of the *petites maîtresses*, and pronounce in an effeminate way *craire, craître, fraid, sayons, que je sais, qu'ils sayent;* which is very bad, as in repeating verses, in the pulpit, and at the bar, those words are pronounced with the double sound of *o-è*. In the conjunction of *soit* either, or let it be so, *soit que* whether, in the phrase *ainsi-soit-il* so be it, *tant soit peu* ever so little, and in the beginning of the Lord's prayer, *soit* is pronounced with the two sounds of the proper diphthong, even by those who pronounce *oi* like *ai* in the aforesaid words.

But *oi* and *oy* are always proper diphthongs sounded like *o-e* in the noun *droit* right, in *effroi* fright, *effroyable* frightful, *un noyer* a walnut-tree, and *se noyer* to drown oneself; and before *g* and *n*, as *témoigner* to show, *joindre* to join. Therefore pronounce, like a proper diphthong with the two sounds, the following monosyllables and other words:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *moi*, | I, | *foire*, | a fair, | *poison*, | poison, |
| *toi*, | thou, | *fois*, | time, | *une oie*, | a goose, |
| *soi*, | oneself, | *voir*, | to see, | *miroir*, | looking-glass, |
| *quoi*, | what, | *soin*, | care, | *mouchoir*, | handkerchief, |
| *roi*, | king, | *soir*, | evening, | *mademoiselle*, | miss, |
| *loi*, | law, | *joie*, | joy, | *écritoire*, | a standish, |
| *foi*, | faith, | *pois*, | peas, | *devoir*, | duty, |
| *bois*, | wood, | *poids*, | weight, | *recevoir*, | to receive |
| *choix*, | choice, | *poix*, | pitch, | *Je reçois*, | I receive, |
| *voix*, | voice, | *moitié*, | half, | *concevoir*, | to conceive, |
| *croix*, | cross, | *poitrine*, | breast, | *appercevoir*, | to perceive, |
| *foie*, | liver, | *poisson*, | fish, | *&c.* | |

*oi* takes only the sound of *o* short in *poignet* wrist, *poignée* handful, *poignard* a dagger, and *poignarder* to stab, *coignée* a hatchet, and *coigner* to knock (when these two last are spelt with *i*).

*ois* takes the most resonant sound of *è* grave in the following names of nations and countries:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Anglois*, | English. | *Milanois*, | Milanese. | *Bourbonnois*, | (Inhabitants of provinces.) |
| *François*, | French. | *Lionnois*, | of Lyons. | *Charolois*, | |
| *Ecossois*, | Scotch. | *Béarnois*, | of Bearn. | *Orléannois*, | |
| *Irlandois*, | Irish. | *Nantois*, | of Nantes, | *Nivernois*, | |
| *Hollandois*, | Dutch. | *Rouennois*, | of Rouen. | *Soissonnois*, | |
| *Polonois*, | Pole. | *Caennois*, | of Caen. | *Ferrarois*, | |
| | | | | *Piémontois*, | |

But it is sounded like the proper diphthong *oè* in

*Bavarois*, of Bavaria, *Chinois*, Chinese, *Génevois*, of Geneva,
*Danois*, Dane, Danish, *Suédois*, Swede, Swedish, *Gaulois*, a Gaul,
*Hongrois*, Hungarian, *Gallois*, Welsh,
*Liégeois*, of Liege, *Hessois*, Hessian, *Carthaginois*, a Carthaginian,
*Siamois*, of Siam, *Génois*, of Genoa,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Crétois*, | *Dunois*, | *Rémois*, | *Gantois*, |
| *Japonois*, | *Navarrois*, | *Gatinois*, | *Condomois*, |
| *Iroquois*, | *Arragonois*, | *Angoumois*, | *Vermandois*, |
| *Maroquois*, | *Narbonnois*, | *Champenois*, | *Rhételois*, |
| *Hibernois*, | le *Modénois*, | le *Blésois*, | *Valois*, |
| *Vaudois*, | le *Barrois*, | l'*Auxerrois*, | *Bazadois*, |
| *Malthois*, | *Crémonois* | *Agénois*, | *Bruxellois*, |
| *Comtois*, | *Albigeois*, | *Artois*, | |
| *Franc-Comtois*, | *Rochelois*, | *Valentinois*, | |

*Sénonois* and *Châlonois*, if ever used, as likewise all names of cities and towns in *France* ending in *oi*, *oie*, or *ois*, are pronounced like the proper diphthong *o-è*: as *Blois*, *Croie*, *Foix*, *Mirepoix*, *Roie*, *Rosoi*, *Rocroi*, &c. But we say, *un Malóin*, and not *Málois* (of *St. Malo*), *un Lorrain*, (of Lorrain), *un Prussien*, a Prussian, *un Russe* a Russian, and *un Moscovite* a Muscovite, *un Suisse* a Swiss, *un Croate* a Croatian, *&c.*

Observe that *ois* in the proper name *François*, *Françoise*, Francis, is sounded *o-è*, like a proper diphthong, and not with one sound only as the noun or adnoun of the nation, *un François* a Frenchman, *une Françoise* a French woman.

*oît* takes the most resonant sound of broad and long *è* in *il paroît* it appears, and *il connoît* he knows, which are pronounced like the first persons *parois*, *connois*: every where else *oit* has the sound of *e* intermediate.

*ou.*

*ou* is sounded as *u* in *pull*: the French word *poule* a hen, being pronounced exactly like the English word *pull*. Nay the English have the same improper diphthong in *could*, *would*, *should*, *you*.

*ui.*

*ui* (improper diphthong) is found only in the words *vuide* and *vuider* to empty, wherein *u* is quite lost. These words are now written and pronounced *vide*, *vider*.

*vuei.*

*uei* is found only before liquid *l*, and then it takes the first sound of *eu*; as in *recueil* a collection, *cueillir* to pick. N. B. These words are, and very properly, written by some *cœuillir*, *recœuil*; *orgœuil*, *orgœuilleux*, &c.

*cui.*

*eui* is found in *deuil* mourning, *feuillet* a leaf, *&c.* wherein, as in the above *uei*, *i* only serves to make *l* liquid.

## SECTION III.

### *Of Nasal Vowels.*

Besides the vowels that have been considered in the first section, the *French* have five others derived from them; each of the vowels having its nasal one that answers it, and makes really a quite different vowel. (See the forms of those nasal vowels in the Tables.)

That difference of sounds which the English are at a loss now to express (tho' they have them in their language except nasal *u* or

*un*), consists only in being formed through the nose, whence they are called *nasal;* that is, in causing a part of the air, in expressing them, driven by the lungs to pass through the nose, instead of causing the whole to pass through the mouth; but observe that your mouth must still be open, and your teeth not close.

*The Nasal Vowels with their corresponding Sounds.*

| *Nasal Vowels.* | *English words where the same sounds are expressed.* |
|---|---|
| an, | *want.* |
| en (*after* i) or in *and* ain, | *length, strength, thank, saint,* |
| in *and* im, | *loving, doing, reading,* &c. |
| on, | *won't.* |
| un, | * * * |

*a, e, i, o, u,* followed by *n* or *m,* take the nasal sound; or in other terms, *n* or *m* usually gives the nasal sound to the vowels which come before them; as *an* year, *ambre* amber, *rien* nothing, *instruire* to instruct, *bon* good, *un* one. Except,

1*st,* In some proper names, as in *Amsterdam, Cham, Abraham,* though not in *Adam.*

2*dly,* When *n* and *m* are between two vowels; as in *animal, émeraude* an emerald, wherein each of these three letters *a, n, i,* and *é, m, e,* keeps its proper sound and articulation: whereas in *enfant* a child, *emploi* an employment, *rien* nothing, *en, an, em,* and *ien,* are nasal.

3*dly,* When *n* or *m* are followed by another *n* or *m;* for then the foregoing vowels *a, e, i, o,* are not sounded nasal, but keep their peculiar proper sounds; as *année* a year, *homme* a man, *bonne* good, *ennemi* an enemy: pronounce *a-née, o-me, bo-ne, en-mi:* except that in *ennui* weariness, *emmener* to carry away, and in the beginning of like words that have more than two syllables, *en* and *em* are sounded like the nasal *an.* Thus pronounce *an-nui, am-mener;* but *condamner* to condemn, *enflammer* to inflame, *femme* a woman, *innocent* innocent, *innocence* innocence, *solemnel* solemn, *solemnité, indemniser* to indemnify, with *indemnité, hennir* to neigh, *hennissement* neighing, are pronounced *condâné, enflamé, fame, innocent, solanel, indamniser, indamnité, hanir, hanissement.*

In *Grammaire* a Grammar, and *Grammairien* a Grammarian, the first *a* is nasal; but it is not nasal (and therefore the double *m* is articulated) in *Grammatical* and *Grammaticalement,* Grammatical, &c. In *lemme* a lemma and *dilemme* a dilemma, the first *e* is pronounced with the most resonant sound of *è grave* (*dilème*)

In some few words the two *mm*'s or *nn*'s are articulated, as in *inflammation* inflammation, and *annotation* annotation.

Observe here, that the doubling of *n* in all adverbs derived from adnouns in *ent*, causes the foregoing *e* to be sounded as *a* short, as in *innocemment* innocently, from *innocent*: *ardemment* eagerly, from *ardent* eager; *prudemment* prudently, from *prudent* prudent, *&c.* pronounce *arda-ment*, *pruda-ment*, &c.

*en* and *em* before any other consonant but *n*, take the nasal sound of *an*: as *enfant* a child, *emploi* business: pronounce *an fan*, *amploi*; but to this rule there are three exceptions.

1*st*, In the syllable *ien* not ending with *t* in its original or root: as *rien* nothing, *tu viens* thou comest, *il tient* he holds. I say *not ending with* t *in its original or root*: for *viens*, *tient*, and their compounds *il convient*, *il soutient*, &c. being derived from their first persons *je viens* I come, *je soutiens* I maintain, the final *t* serves only to characterise the third person of the singular that keeps the same sound as the first, which I call here its *original* or *root*. Whereas *ent* is sounded *ant* in *Orient* East, *patient* patient, *&c.* because *t* ends the last syllable of these words which are not derived from any other.

Observe all along what has been said several times before, that *ent*, in the plural of verbs, far from taking any nasal sound, is quite dropt like *e* not sounded; as *ils disent* they say, pronounce *il dize*: and you may know that a word, the last syllable whereof ends in *ent*, is the third person plural of a verb, and therefore that *ent* is not sounded, when the *e* of the *penultima*, or the syllable coming before (when 'tis *e*) has or should have either the grave accent or the intermediate one, as in *ils diffèrent* they differ, *ils précèdent* they go before: whereas in the adnouns *différent* different, and *précédent* foregoing, the accent acute of the *penultima* shows that the last syllable is sounded with the nasal sound of *an*. Again, the third persons plural of verbs have always the pronouns *ils*, *elles*, or a noun plural before them, which the other words ending with *ent* have not.

2*dly*, *en* is pronounced *ein*, or *ain*, in *Benjamin*, *Agen*, *benjoin*, *placenta*, *agenda*, and *commensurable*, as likewise when it is preceded by *é* (at the end of words in *éen*), as in *Europé-en*, *Galilé-en*, &c.

3*dly*, *en* and *em* keep the peculiar sound and articulation of *e*, and *n* and *m* in foreign words, and such as have passed entire from the *Latin* and *Greek* languages into *French*, both in the middle and end of words; as *abdomen*, *amen*, *examen* examination, *item*, *Hymen*, *Jérusalem*, *Matusalem*, *Empédocle*, *Agamemnon*, &c.

but in *Encyclopédie*, *enclitique*, and *nomenclature*, &c. *en* keeps the nasal sound of *a*. *Mentor* is pronounced *Maintor*.

Observe, moreover, that the proper sound of *e* nasal *(en)* is not (as one might happen to mistake it) the same as that of *a* nasal *(an)*, but that which is in *rien;* *e* having two nasal sounds, which must be carefully distinguished from one another, according to the aforesaid observations.—The true sound of *e* nasal is never found in the beginning of words, but only in the middle and end, and after *i;* as *bien* well, *il vient* he comes, *je viendrai* I'll come: whereas in *enfant*, and *entendre*, *en* takes the sound of *a* nasal. The true sound of *e* nasal is in the words of the second observation just mentioned, *Benjamin*, *agen*, *benjoin*, &c.

The nasal *in* and *im*, which (as has been said in the paragraph of *i*) express a sound like that in the English termination *ing*, take also the sound of *ain* and *en* in *rien;* but *in* and *im*, beginning a word, are pronounced with their proper nasal sounds *in* and *im*, which one must take care not to mistake for the other nasal sound of *ain* or *ein*. Thus pronounce *imbu* imbued, *inhumain* inhuman, with the proper sound of *i* nasal, and not as if it was spelt *aimbu:* but pronounce *Indes*, as if it was spelt *aind*. The true and proper sound of nasal *in* and *im* are found only in the beginning of words, never in the middle nor end. *Inde* and *Indien* are the only words excepted. (See further what has been said concerning the letter *i*.)

In final *im* and *in*, *m* and *n* are articulated in *intérim*, and all foreign names, as *Ibrahim*, *Selen*, *Aïn*, the desert of *Sin*, &c.

There is hardly any thing to observe about the nasal *un* but its sound, the only nasal French sound that is not in English: it is in the French words *parfum* perfume, *chacun* every one.

But *um* and *un* are pronounced like the nasal *on* in *factum*, as also in some proper names, as *Humbert*, *Dunkerke;* and like *omme* in these two Latin words frenchified, *opium* and *Te Deum*.

But concerning the spelling of those nasal vowels observe, that as to the choice between the several combinations serving to the same sound, *m* is always used before *b*, *p*, and *n* before the other consonants; as *ambassade* an embassy, *emploi* an employment, *symbolique* symbolical, *tomber* to fall, *humble* humble; *antimoine* antimony, *endormi* sleepy, *intérieur* inward, *songe* dream, &c. but in *immolé* sacrificed, *immense* immense, *im* is not nasal, and the two *m*'s are sounded.

Again, *ant* is consecrated to the gerunds, and *ent* to the nouns and adverbs.

## SECTION IV.

### *Of Consonants.*

#### *b.*

*B* always keeps the same articulation as in English, except that before *s* and *t* it sounds pretty near *p*; as *observer* to observe, *obtenir* to obtain. Pronounce *opserver, optenir.*

*b* is found at the end of these three words only, *plomb* lead, *romb de vent* (a sea term), and *radoub* the refitting of a ship. It is not sounded in *plomb*; but it is in *romb* and *radoub*, as also in foreign names; as *Achab, Job, Caleb*, &c.

*b* is hardly doubled but in these two words, besides foreign names; *abbé* an abbot, and *Sabbat*, wherein *bb* is pronounced only like *b*; but the two *b*'s are strongly articulated in *abbatial, Sabbatique, Barabbas*, and other foreign names.

#### *c.*

*c* before *a, o, u*, and the improper diphthong *ai*, and the consonants *l, r, t*, denotes the articulation marked in the table, which is properly that of *k*: but before *e* and *i*, it takes the hissing articulation of *s*; *camard* a flat-nosed man, *cochon* a hog, *cure* a cure, *caisse* a chest; *céder* to yield, *civil* civil; *clou* nail, &c. pronounce *kamar, koshon, kaisse, kure; sédé, sivil; klou*, &c. It takes also the hissing sound of *s* before *a, o, u*, when there is a *cedilla* under it thus (ç); as in *força* he forced, *garçon* a boy, *reçu* received; pronounce *garson, ressu, forsa*, &c.

*c* is kept in the word *contracter* to contract, though left out in the root *contrat* contract. It is likewise dropt, as well as *t*, at the end of *instinct* instinct, and *succinct*, and in *succinctement* succinctly, when spelt with *c* before *t*. It is quite turned out of *bienfaiteur* benefactor, and *bienfaitrice* benefactress. It is preserved still in *amict* (a sort of vestment), but without being articulated.

*c* takes the articulation of *g*, especially in conversation, in *Claude* Claudius, and *Claudine, Czar*, and *Czarine, second* second, *secondement* secondly; *seconder* to second, to assist, *secret* secret, *secrettement* secretly, *secrétaire* a secretary, *secrétariat* a secretary's office or place; and in the second syllable of *cicogne* stork,

Therefore pronounce *Glaude, Gzar, segon, segondè, legret, ligogné.*

*c* is pronounced in *respect,* only at the end of a sentence, or before a word beginning with a consonant; and the second *e* has the intermediate sound of *e*; as *sans respect* without any respect, *le respect que je lui dois* the respect which I owe him; pronounce *sans respèc, le respèc que je lui dois.* When the next word begins with a vowel, *c* likewise is articulated, but not the final *t*; as *portez respect à qui il est du,* respect or reverence your betters: pronounce *respèc a qui il,* &c. and in the plural *(respects) cts* are altogether mute, the final *s* being not articulated even before a vowel: but *e* has the most resonant sound of *e* grave; as *présentez mes respects à madame,* present my respect to my Lady; pronounce *mes respé à Madame.*

In *lacs* nets, *c* is mute and *a* is broad; but it is articulated when that word signifies *lakes,* and *a* is not broad.

*c* is articulated at the end of words, as *roc* a rock, *sac* a sack, *avec* with, &c. Except, 1st, in *un sac de blé,* a sack of wheat, though it is articulated in *un sac de farine,* &c.

2*dly,* At the end of the following words, *accroc* a rent, *almanach* an almanack, *arsenic* arsenic, *brock* a large jug, *cotignac* marmalade of quinces, *clerc* a clerk, *croc* a hook, *estomac* stomach, *tabac* tobacco, *marc* (weight of eight ounces, or the gross substance that remains of any thing strained), and *porc* pork. But in *porc-épic* porcupine, *c* is articulated at the end of *porc,* and not at the end of *épic;* as also in *Marc* (a proper name), and in *croc-en-jambe,* the tripping up one's heels.

3*dly,* At the end of such words as have a nasal vowel before *c*: as *banc* bench; *donc* then, in the middle of a sentence; *il convainc* he convinces. Except *blanc* white, and *franc* free, when before a conjunctive beginning with a vowel; as *du blanc au noir,* going upon extremes, *franc arbitre* free-will, *franc alleu* free-hold, allodial lands: pronounce *fran kalleu, du blanc kau noir,* &c. but pronounce *ban, don, convain,* and other like words ending in *c,* without articulating final *c:* unless in reading verses, when the next word begins with a vowel. Except also *donc* beginning a sentence, which is a consequence drawn from two or more premises, as *donc vous vous imaginez,* therefore you think, &c.

*c* doubles in the beginning of words between the vowels *a, o, u,* when one of them begins the word, and *l* or *r* comes between the consonant and the latter vowel: as also when this last makes a diphthong jointly with another; as may be seen in *accabler* to

overcharge, *accommoder* to fit, *accumuler* to heap up, *occurrence* emergency, *acclamation* acclamation, *accrédité* in authority, *accroissement* increase, *accoucher* to lay in, *accueillir* to make welcome, &c.

Except in *acabit* good or bad taste in fruit, *acanthe* bear's foot, *acariâtre* peevish, *âcre* acrid, *acrimonie* acrimony, *acre* oker, *acrostiche* acrostic, *académie* academy, with their derivatives.

After *e* and *i*, *c* is always single; as in *écarter* to scatter, *écouter* to hearken, *écolier* a scholar, *ecume* the scum, *écrevisse* a crawfish, *iconoclaste* image-breaker.

Double *c* is pronounced only before *e* and *i*, the first with the articulation of *k*, and the other with the hissing articulation of *s*; as in *accident* accident, *accélerer* to accelerate, *succéder* to succeed: pronounce *ak-sidan, akséléré, suksédé*. But the two *c's* are always articulated in proper names, as in *Accaron*.

## *d*.

*d* is not articulated, nor even written at present in *amiral* admiral, *amirauté* admiralty, *blé* wheat, and *Piémont* Piedmont.

*d* final is articulated only, 1*st*, at the end of *sud* south, and foreign words, as *Ephod, David*, &c.

2*dly*, At the end of the word *fond*, in this expression only, *de fond en comble* utterly to the ground; of *quand* when, before pronouns of the third person; and of adnouns before nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute: as *grand esprit* great wit, *grand homme* a great or tall man, *quand il* or *elle parle* when he or she speaks, *quand on dit* when they say: in which cases final *d* has the articulation of *t*; *quan ton di, gran tespri, de fon tan comble, gran tome, quan til parle*.

3*dly*, At the end of the third person singular of verbs, but only when they are immediately followed by their pronouns subjective *il, elle, on*; as *prend-il* or *elle*, does he *or* she take? *répond-on*, do people answer? pronounce, articulating *d* like *t*, *repon-ton, prenti:* but pronounce *il répon en Norman*, for *il répond en Normand*, he answers like a Norman, without articulating *d* at all.

*d* before *re* in the infinitive of verbs *(dre)*, is cut off in the two persons singular of the present of the indicative of the polysyllables, but is kept in monosyllables, except in the same persons of *plaindre* to pity, *craindre* to fear, and *joindre* to join. Thus write *je vends, tu vends*, from *vendre* to sell; *je défens, tu défens*, from *défendre* to defend; *je répons*, from *répondre* to answer, &c.

but write *je plains, tu plains; je crains, tu crains; je joins, tu joins;* instead of *je plaints, je craints, je joints.*

*d* is double in some words derived from the *Latin* only; as *addition* addition, *reddition* reddition, wherein the two *d*'s are articulated.

## *f*

*f* is articulated at the end of words; as *chef* chief, *vif* alive, *soif* thirst, *suif* tallow, *bœuf* an ox, *nerf* sinew, &c.

Except, 1*st*, in *chef-d'œuvre* a master-piece of work, *clef* a key, *cerf* a stag, and at the end of *apprentif* an apprentice, and *baillif* bailiff, which are at present spelt *apprenti, bailli.*

2*dly*, At the end of these words in the plural number, *bœuf* an ox, *neuf* new, and *œuf* egg: as *des bœufs* oxen, *des habits neufs* new coats, *des œufs à la coque* eggs in the shell; *un nerf de bœuf* a bull's pizzle; but pronounce with the articulation of *f de la corne de cerf*, hart's horn.

*f* is articulated at the end of *neuf* nine, when that word of number is alone, or at the end of a sentence; as *j'en ai neuf* I have got nine. But when in a sentence *neuf* is followed by a word beginning with a consonant, as *neuf guinées*, or *neuf livres sterling* nine guineas or pounds sterling, *f* final is not articulated at all: and when it is followed by a vowel, as *neuf écus* nine crowns, *neuf ans* nine years, *f* takes the soft articulation of *v*. Therefore pronounce *neu guinées, neu vécu, neuv an.*

*f* doubles after the vowels *a, e, o,* and the syllables *di* and *su* in the beginning of words; but double *f* is only articulated like single *f*, as in *affaire* an affair, *affront* affront, *effroi* fright, *effet* effect, *offense* an offence, *office* an office, *diffamant* defaming, *différent* different, *difficile* difficult, *diffus* prolix, *suffisant* sufficient, *suffrage* vote, &c.

Except in *afin* to the end that, *bafouer* to abuse, *café* coffee, *défense* defence, *réforme* reform, *refaire* to do again.

## *g.*

This consonant has three different articulations, all included in the word *gagnages* (a hunting term which signifies the ploughed grounds where cattle and deer are used to feed).

*g* immediately before *a, o, u,* and the improper diphthong *ai*, and consonants except *n*, takes an articulation very near like *k*, except that it is not quite so hard. Nay, in *gangrene* gangrene, the first *g* is articulated quite like *k*: and very likely this word will be spelt in time with *c*, as it is pronounced: as has been the

case with others.—There are two different articulations of *g* expressed in the word *Gregory:* the others are in *garni* garnished, *gorge* throat, *aigu* acute, *cargaison* a cargo, &c.

*g* before *e*, and *i*, *ea*, *eo*, and *eu*, denotes the articulation of *j* consonant; as *manger* to eat, *régir* to rule, *mangeons* let us eat, *il jugea* he judged, *gageure* a wager; pronounce *manjé*, *juja*, *gajure*, &c. *e*, in the improper diphthongs, serving only to give *g* the articulation of *j* which falls upon *a* or *o*, it being quite dropt before these two vowels, as has been already said, except it is marked over with an accent, as in *géant*.

When after *g* there follows *u*, followed too by another vowel, *g* keeps its hard articulation (in English *ghee*), which falls not upon *g*, that is then quite dropt, and serves only (as Dr. *Wallis* says) to make *g* a palate letter, but upon the following vowel; as in *guérir* to cure, *guide* a guide, *anguille* an eel: pronounce *ghéri*, *ghid*, *anghille*. Except in *aiguille* needle, *aiguiser* to whet, and their derivatives: *ciguë* hemlock, *contiguë* contiguous, *ambiguë* ambiguous, and *ambiguïté* ambiguity, *arguër* to argue, *Güise* and *Güide* (proper names). In which case two dots are put over the vowel that follows *u*, or rather upon *ü*, as *Güise*, *Güide*, *Cigüe*; to show that the articulation of *g* falls upon *u*, which is drawn out upon the account of the final *e* not being sounded: whereas, when that *e* or that *u* is not marked over with two dots, as in *figue*, *vogue*, &c. *g* has no other articulation than that of the final *g* in the English word *fig*: the *English* have the same syllable and articulation in *fatigue*, *vogue*, *plague*, &c.

*g* is not articulated in *doigt* finger, *legs* legacy, *vingt* twenty.

*gh* is articulated like *gu* in these proper names, *Berghen* and *le Ghilan*.

*gn* expresses a certain liquid articulation like that of *n* between two *i*'s in English *(minion)*, as in *mignon* delicate, *digne* worthy, *compagnon* companion, *régner* to reign.

Except in *agnat* and *agnation*, *cognat* and *cognation*, *bagnauder* and *bagnaudier*, *Gnidien*, *Gnome*, *Gnomonique*, *Gnostique*, *magnésie*, *magnétisme régnicole*, *Prugni*, and other proper names, wherein *g* and *n* keep each their proper articulation.

*g* at the end of words is not articulated.

Except, 1*st*, in *sig-zag*, and at the end of proper and foreign names: as *Agag*, *Sarug*.

2*dly*, In these expressions, *suer sang & eau*, to labour with might and main, *le sang & le carnage*, the blood and slaughter, *long espace*, a long space; and

at the end of the words *sang* blood, *rang* rank, *joug* yoke, only in repeating verses when the next word begins with a vowel: in which cases *g* is quite articulated like *k*. Therefore pronounce *san ké eau, un lon kespace, le san ké le karnage.*

Double *g* is always pronounced, as in *suggérer* to suggest; except however in *aggrave, aggraver,* and *réaggrave:* but it is not an easy matter to determine when *g* is double, and when it is single.

## *h.*

*h* in the beginning and middle of words is either *aspirated,* or *not aspirated;* that is, either it is pronounced with a hard aspiration, as in *host, hunting,* or not pronounced at all, as in *hour, honour:* for, strictly speaking, *h* is no letter, but only a mark of aspiration, though not always so in our modern languages.

In order to know in what cases *h* must be aspirated, and when it must not be heard at all, French Grammarians have laid for a constant principle, that the words beginning with *h,* that are derived from Latin, in the beginning of which Latin words there is also *h,* have that *h* not aspirated; and that, on the contrary, *h* is aspirated in words merely French, and by no means derived from Latin. Thus *honneur* honour, being derived from the Latin word *honor,* beginning with *h,* you must pronounce without *h,* and write with the elision *l'honneur,* and not *le honneur; haut* is indeed derived from *altus;* but as there is no *h* in the Latin word, you must pronounce it hard in French, and read with aspiration *en haut* up, and not *en nhaut; la hauteur* the height, and not *l'hauteur: honte* shame, is not derived from Latin; therefore you must pronounce with aspiration, and write without elision *la honte,* and not *l'onte,* nor *l'honte.*

From French words derived from Latin, beginning with *h,* wherein however *h* is aspirated, seven are excepted; *héros* (though *h* is not aspirated in its derivatives *heroïne, héroïque*), &c. *hennir* to neigh, *hennissement* neighing, *harpe* a harp, *harpie* a harpy, *hargneux* morose, *haleter* to breathe short, *hareng* herring. And from words merely French, or derived from Latin words not beginning with *h,* wherein however *h* is not aspirated, eight also are excepted: *hermine* an ermine, *hermite* an hermit, *huit* eight (with its derivatives), *huître* oyster, *huile* oil, *huis* a door, *huissier* usher, and *hièble* wallwort.

This observation, though ever so infallible, being of no use to youth, and especially to young ladies, wh› oftentimes prove the

best French scholars, I will, for their sake, make, at the end of this treatise, an exact list of all the words of the language wherein *h* is to be aspirated, and wherein it is not. You must only observe here,

1*st*, That *h* is not aspirated in the middle of words, or in compound words, when it is not aspirated in the beginning of the simple; as *honneur, honorer, déshonneur, déshonorer,* to dishonour; pronounce *onorer* and *dézonoré*. On the contrary, as it is aspirated in the beginning of *hardi* bold, it must be so too in *hardiment* boldly, and *enhardir* to embolden; except in the word *exhausser* to raise higher, which is pronounced as *exaucer* to grant, though being derived from *haut.—h* in *trahir* to betray, *trahison* betraying, *envahir* to invade, and other like words not compound, is left out also in the pronunciation, and serves only to cause both the vowels to be sounded as two distinct syllables *(tra-ir)*.

2*dly*, That *h* is aspirated in the plural of the word *Henri (les Henris)*, as likewise in its derivative *la Henriade*, in *Hesse*, and *m Hollande, Hongrie*, when these words have not the particle *de* before them; for when they follow that particle, *h* is not aspirated. Thus, though we say *la Hollande & la Hongrie*, and not *l'Hollande & l'Hongrie*, yet we say *de la toile d'Hollande* Holland cloth, *du fromage d'Hollande* Dutch cheese, *la Reine d'Hongrie* the Queen of Hungary, *du vin d'Hongrie* wine of Hungary, and not *la Reine* de *Hongrie, du fromage* de *Hollande*. We say, however, *venir* de *Hollande* to come from Holland.

3*dly*, Though *h* is not aspirated in *huit* eight, nor in its derivatives, *huitième* eighth, *huitain* (a stanza of eight verses), and *huitaine* (a space of eight days), yet we don't say or write with the elision *l'huit, l'huitième*, as we do *l'huile, l'huître;* but *le huit, le huitième, un huit, un huitième, la huitaine, &c.* as if *h* were aspirated.

✓ *h* following *c (ch)* answers the English *sh*, and expresses the same articulation; as *chats* cats, *chérir* to cherish, *chiffre* cypher &c. pronounce as in English *shaw, shiffr*, &c. We now write as we pronounce *colère* anger, *colique* colick, *caractère* character, without *h;* but we write still *chaos* chaos, to distinguish it from *cahot* jolt.

But the difference is however to be observed in regard to the pronunciation of the following words derived from *Greek* and *Hebrew*, as some being pronounced according to the proper articulation of *ch:*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Achéen,* | Achean, | *Chymie,* | Chymistry, |
| *Achéron,* | Acheron, | *Chymiste,* | Chymist, |
| *Achille,* | Achilles, | *Chirurgie,* | Surgery, |
| *Alchymie,* | Alchymistry, | *Chirurgien,* | Surgeon, |
| *Alchymiste,* | Alchymist, | *Eustochie,* | Eustochium, |
| *Antioche,* | Antioch, | *Eutyche,* | Eutyche, |
| *Archidame,* | Archidamus, | *Eutychéen,* | |
| *Archipel,* | Archipelago, | *Eschyle,* | Eschyle, |
| *Achitophel,* | Achitophel, | *Eschines,* | Eschines, |
| *Anarchie,* | Anarchy, | *Ezéchias,* | Ezechiah, |
| *Anchise,* | Anchises, | *Ezéchiel,* | Ezechiel, |
| *Archevêque,* | Archbishop, | *Hiérarchie,* | Hierarchy, |
| *Archidiacre,* | Archdeacon, | *Joachim,* | Joachim, |
| *Archiprêtre,* | Archpriest, | *Malachie,* | Malachi, |
| *Archiduc,* | Archduke, | *Machiavel,* | Machiavel, |
| *Archiduché,* with | | *Manichéen,* | Manichean, |
| *Archiduchesse,* | Archduchess, | *Melchisédec,* | Melchisedeck, |
| *Archimède,* | Archimedes, | *Michée,* | Micah, |
| *Architecte,* | Architect, | *Michel,* | Michael, |
| *Archives,* | Records, | *Monarchie,* | Monarchy, |
| *Bachique,* belonging to *Bacchus,* | | *Patriarche,* | Patriarch, |
| *Barachie,* | Barachius, | *Psyché,* | Psyche, |
| *Chérubin,* | Cherubim, | *Rachel,* | Rachel, |
| *Chéronée,* | Cheronea, | *Schisme,* | Schism, |
| *Cacochyme,* | ill complexioned, | *Sichée,* | Sicheus, |
| *Chyle,* | Chyle, | *Tétrarchie,* | Tetrarchy, |
| *Chiron,* | Chiron, | *Trochisque,* | |
| *Colchide,* | Colchis, | *Tychique,* | Tychicus, |
| *Chimère,* | Chimæra, | *Zachée,* | Zaccheus. |

But *ch* is articulated like *k* in the following words, and all other foreign names, which therefore should be better spelt with *k*, especially if we consider what an idle letter *k* is in French.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Achaie,* | Achaia, | *Archéarnasse,* | Archearnassus, |
| *Acheloüs,* | Achelous, | *Archestratus,* | Archestratus, |
| *Antiochus,* | Antiochus, | *Archiépiscopal,* | Archiepiscopal, |
| *Archélaüs,* | Archelaus, | *Archiépiscopat,* | Archbishoprick, |
| *Achilous,* | Achilous, | *Archigénès,* | Archigenes, |
| *Archêtype,* | Archetype, | les *Archontes,* | Archontes, |
| *Archange,* | Archangel, | *Bacchus,* | |
| *Archangel,* | Archangel, | les *Bacchantes,* | Bacchantes, |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *les Bacchânales,* | Bacchanals, | *Choriste,* | Chorist, |
| *Charybde,* | Charybdis, | *Chorographie,* | Chorography, |
| *les Charites,* | Charities, | *Dyrrhachium,* | Dyrrhachium, |
| *Charron* (the ferryman of hell); for *ch* is sounded like *sh* in *un charon,* a cartwright. | | *Echinades,* | Echinades, |
| | | *Epicharme,* | Epicharmus, |
| | | *Exarchat,* | Exarchate, |
| *Chélidoine,* | Celandine, | *Echo,* | Echo, |
| *Cham,* | Cham, | *Eucharistе,* | Eucharist, and |
| *Chanaan,* | Canaan, | *Eucharistie,* | Lord's Supper, |
| *Chus,* | Chus, | *Leschès,* | Lesches, |
| *Calchas,* | Calchas, | *Michol,* | Michol, |
| *Chélydre,* | a water-snake, | *Nabuchodonosor,* | Nebuchadnez- |
| *Charès,* | Chares, | | zar, |
| *Charchédon,* | Charchedon, | *Orchestre,* | Orchestra, |
| *Chosroès,* | Chosroes, | *Pulchérie,* | |
| *Chabrias,* | Chabrias, | *Réchabite,* | |
| *Chersonèse,* | Chersonesus, | *Scholastique,* | Scholastic, |
| *Chio,* | Chio, | *Scholiaste,* | Scholiast, |
| *Chiliarque,* | Chyliarchus, | *Scholie,* | Scholium, |
| *Chiromancie,* | Chyromancy, | *Synecdoche,* | Synecdoche, |
| *Chorèbe,* | Choreb, | *Tycho Brahé,* | |
| *Chœur,* | Chorus, a Choir, | *Zacharie,* | Zachariah, |

and the syllables in *chal* of foreign words become French; as *Monachal,* &c.

*ch* is pronounced in *catéchèse,* and *catéchisme* a catechism, and it is articulated like *k* in *catéchumène.* We pronounce *machine* and *stomachique* French like, and *méchanique* and *stomachal,* Greek like, when these words are spelt with *h.*

We now write *pascal,* instead of *paschal.*

*Chypre* Cyprus, is sometimes spelt and pronounced with *ch,* and sometimes with *c* only, according to the circumstances of the time spoken of; for if one speaks of something relating to ancient geography, one must spell and pronounce *l'île de Cypre,* the island of Cyprus; and *l'île de Chypre,* if what one says relates to modern geography. Therefore we always say *de la poudre de Chypre,* powder of Cyprus: as likewise,

*Caton fut envoyé par le peuple Romain dans l'île de Cypre,*
Cato was sent by the Roman people into the island of Cyprus.
*Les Turcs se rendirent maîtres de l'île de Chypre sous Sélim II.*
The Turks made themselves masters of the island of Cyprus under Selim II.

*ch*, in common conversation, is articulated like *j* in *j'achète*, with the two other persons sing. of *acheter* to buy, and *revenche* revenge. Pronounce *revenje, j'ajéte.*

*ch* before *r* is articulated like *k* in *chrême* chrism, *Christ*, and other words beginning with *chr*, wherein it is pronounced as in English *Christ*.

*lh* takes the liquid articulation of *l* in these two proper names, *Milhaut* and *Pardalhac.*

*h* after *p* (*ph*) is articulated like *f*, as in *philosophe* philosopher. But *ph* is no longer found, except in proper names, and some scientific words, as in *Phaéton, Philippe, Physicien, Pharmacie Phénomène, Phthisie, Physionomie:* as to the others used in common discourse, they are spelt French like, in spite of their Greek derivation. Thus we write *fantaisie* fancy, *fantôme* a phantom, *faisan* a pheasant, *frénésie* phrensy, &c.

*h* after *r* or *t* is not pronounced at all; as *rhétorique* rhetorick, *thèse* thesis; pronounce *tèse, rétorique.*

*h* in *hiérarchie* is aspirated: it is not in *hiéroglyphe* and *hiéroglyphique.* We now write *Jérusalem, Jérôme, jacinthe,* instead of *Hiérusalem, Hiérôme, hyacinthe.*

Final *h* is found only at the end of *Auch* (a city in *France*), and some foreign and chiefly Hebraic words, wherein it is not pronounced; as in *Abimelech, Enoch*, &c. At the end of *Joseph*, it forms with *p* the sound of *f.* Pronounce *Josef, Enoc*, &c. *ch* is dropt at the end of *almanach:* but *Auch* is pronounced *ôche.*

In the interjections *ah, eh, oh! h* is sometimes pronounced with aspiration, as if it were the first letter.

*j.*

*j* consonant is of the same use in French as in English, but is articulated like *s* in the words *pleasure, leisure*, &c. It differs from the English *j*, in that one must express no articulation of *d* before, no more than before *g;* for these two consonants are pronounced in English with a double articulation.

*k.*

*k* is used in French only in the word *kyrielle*, which signifies, in familiar discourse, a *long and grievous series of things* in a story, and abusively formed from the litany *Kyrie eleison.* As to the foreign words wherein *k* is found, as in *Stockholm, k* is articulated *as in* English.

## *l.*

*l* is not articulated in *fils* son; it is silent also in *quelque* some, *quelquefois* sometimes, *quelqu'un* somebody, but only in conversation; though it is always pronounced in *quelconque* any body whatever. Neither is it pronounced in *Chaulnes* (a proper name).

Double *l* is no otherwise articulated but as a single *l*, as in *mollir* to soften, *salle* a hall. Except in the following words, and when *i* comes before double *l* in the beginning of words, as *illustre* illustrious, *illégitime* illegal, *&c.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Allégorie,* | allegory, | *ébullition,* | ebullition, |
| *allusion,* | allusion, | *ellébore,* | ellebore, |
| *allision,* | allision, | *flagellation,* | scourging, |
| *appellatif,* | appellative, | *flageller,* | to scourge, |
| *Apollon,* | Apollo, | *Gallicane,* | Gallic, |
| *Bellone,* | Bellona, | *imbécillité,* | imbecility, |
| *belligérant,* | at war, | *intelligence,* | understanding, |
| *belliqueux,* | warlike, | *intelligent,* | intelligent, |
| *bellissime,* | extraordinary fine, | *intelligible,* | intelligible, |
| *circonvallation,* | circumvallation, | *intellectuel,* | intellectual, |
| *collatéral,* | collateral, | *millénaire,* | millenary, |
| *collateur,* one that has a living in his gift, | | *millésime,* the year or date of a medal, | |
| *collation,* | collation, | *Magellanique,* | Magellanic, |
| *collationner,* but not in a meal, *&c.* | *collation,* | *nullité,* | nullity, |
| | | *Palladium,* | Palladium, |
| *colloquer,* | to rank, | *Pallas,* | Pallas, |
| *colliger,* | to collect, | *pallier,* | to palliate, |
| *récolliger,* to recollect, but not in *récollection,* | | *polluer,* | to pollute, |
| | | *Pollux* (and all proper names spelt with double *l*), | |
| *collusion,* | collusion, | | |
| *collusoire,* | collusory, | *pusillanime,* | *pusillanimous,* |
| *constellation,* | constellation, | *pusillanimité,* | pusillanimity. |

Therefore pronounce *il-lustre, il-legitime, Pal-las, bel-liqueux, intel-ligent, pel-licule,* &c. but pronounce *molir, sale,* &c.

You may pronounce *syllogisme* a syllogism, as you please; but it is better to pronounce the two *ll*'s.

It is not therefore an easy matter to determine when *l* doubles in words. It may be said only in general for the adnouns, when the masculine ends in *l*, it is doubled in the feminine; but remains single, if the final *l* of the masculine is followed by *e* not sounded; as,

M. *bel**, F. *belle*, handsome. M. *cruel*, F. *cruelle*, cruel.
M. *mol**, F. *molle*, soft. M. *fol*, F. *folle*, fool.

* Old Masculines still used before nouns beginning with a vowel.

M. and F. *fidelle* faithful, *tranquille* quiet, *utile* useful, *frivole* frivolous, *&c.*

There is another exception from nouns in *il*, as *vil* vile, *subtil* subtile, *&c.* in whose feminine *vile, subtile, l* is not doubled.

*i* before double *l* in the middle of words, denotes only the liquid articulation of *l*; as in *fille* a daughter, *sillon* a furrow, except in these words,

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Achille,* | Achilles, | *Gilles,* | St. *Giles,* | *Séville,* | Seville, |
| *argille,* | clay, | *imbécille,* | feeble, an | *syllabe,* | a syllable, |
| *armillaire,* | armillary, | | idiot, | *vacillant, vaciller,* | &c. |
| *camomille,* | camomile, | *mille,* | a thousand(with | | reeling, |
| *il distille,* | he distils, | | its derivatives), | *ville,* | city, town. |
| *idylle,* | idyl, | *pupille,* | an orphan, | | |

*l* takes the liquid articulation at the end of *Avril* April, *babil* rattling, *béril, Brésil* Brasil, *grésil* (a sort of rime or hoar-frost), *mil* millet, and *péril* peril; as likewise at the end of the improper diphthongs *ail, eil, ueil, euil,* and *ouil:* as *de l'ail* garlick, *mail* mall, *soleil* sun, *deuil* mourning, *fenouil* fennel; and in *gentilhomme* nobly descended: but *l* is quite dropt in the pronunciation of the plural of that noun *gentils-hommes,* which is pronounced *jantizom;* and likewise in *fils* son, which is pronounced *fi* (as has been said before).

Double *l* takes likewise the liquid articulation in these two proper names *Nulli* and *Sulli;* as also *lh* in these two others, *Milhaut* and *Pardalhac.*

*l* is pronounced at the end of words; as *sel* salt, *fil* thread, *royal* royal.

Except, 1*st*, in

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *baril,* | barrel, | *gril,* | gridiron, | *pouls,* | pulse, |
| *chenil,* | dog-kennel, | *nombril,* | navel, | *soul,* | fuddled, |
| *fusil,* | a gun, | *outil,* | a tool, | *sourcil,* | eye-brow, |
| *gentil,* | genteel, | *persil,* | parsley. | | |

2*dly*, In the pronoun *il* before a consonant in common conversation, (nay *il* coming after its verb don't articulate its *l* even before a vowel); and in the plural *ils*, even before a vowel, and final *s* before a vowel is articulated like *z*: as *il dit* he says, *ils ont fait* they have done, *parle-t-il encore?* is he speaking still? Pronounce *i di, i zon fai, parl ti encor:* but to avoid double meanings, the best is to sound *l:* besides, in reading, it cannot be silent. In the phrase *ainsi soit-il, l* must be articulated.

We spell and pronounce *fou* for *fol* a fool, *sou* for *sol* a penny, *cou* for *col* a neck, and *mou* for *mol* soft. But we still spell and pronounce *sol* soil, *le col d'une chemise* the neck of a shirt, *un col* a stock, as likewise when *col* signifies a *défilé*, or narrow passage between two hills; as *le col de Tende* the straights of *Tend*; as also *le col de la vessie & de la matrice* the neck of the bladder and matrice; and *un* b *mol* a *b* flat in music.

We say, in terms of hawking, that *un oiseau a fait un beau vou* for *vol*, the bird has made a fine flight.

*m.*

*m* after a vowel, and followed by a consonant, serves, like *n*, to give the nasal sound to the vowel; as *prompt* quick, *sembler* to seem; pronounce *pron sambler*. Except,

1*st*, *amnistie* amnesty, *hymne* hymn, *Amsterdam*, and some other foreign words, wherein *m* keeps its peculiar articulation, though followed by a consonant.

2*dly*, *immédiat* immediate, *immoler* to sacrifice, and all words beginning with *im* followed by another *m*, wherein both *m*'s must be articulated; pronounce *am-nistie*, *im-médiat im-moler*.

3*dly*, *om* followed by *m* is not nasal, but *o* keeps its slender and short sound, and the two *m*'s are pronounced only by a single one; as in *commun* common, *commander* to command, *commode* convenient, *sommer* to summon, *&c.* pronounce *comande*, *comode*, &c. but articulate the double *m* in these four words, *commuer*, *commutation*, *commutatif*, and *incommuniquable*.

Neither is *am* nasal in *damner* to damn, nor in its derivatives, *condamner* to condemn, *&c.* pronounce *dâner*.——*m* is articulated in *indemniser* to indemnify, and *indemnité* indemnity; but it causes the foregoing *e* to take the sound of slender *a (indam-nité)*. ——It is not articulated in *solemnel* solemn, though the foregoing *e* is sounded like *a (solanel)*.

*m* at the end of words sounds like *n*, to give the nasal sound to the vowel: as *nom* name, *parfum* perfume; pronounce *non*, *parfun*.

Except in the interjection of *hem*, wherein *h* and *m* are articulated hard; in *item*, and in foreign words; as *Matusalem*, *Amsterdam*, *Stockholm*, wherein *m* keeps its peculiar articulation: though at the end of *Adam*, and *Absalom*, final *m* gives the preceding vowel the nasal sound; as also doth *n* at the end of *Salomon*.

*m* is commonly doubled after *im*, *com*, *gom*, *pom*, *hom*, *som*, beginning a word; as *immense* immense, *comme* as, *commerce* trade,

*gomme* gum, *pomme* an apple, *sommet* the top, *homme* a man, *sommer* to summon, *&c.*

Except in these words, *comète* a comet, *comite* (an officer on board a galley), *comité* a committee, *comédie* a comedy, *comique* comical, *concomitance* concomitancy, *homogène* homogeneous.

*m* is also doubled in these six words, *dommage* damage, *femme* a woman, *lemme* lemma, *dilemme* a dilemma, *nommer* to name, *nommément* namely; pron. *domage, fame, lême, dilême, nomé,* &c.

Double *m* is articulated in foreign words, as *Ammoniac, Ammonite,* after the same manner as in French words beginning with *imm,* as *im-médiat* immediate, *im-moler* to sacrifice, *immense.*

*n.*

*n* keeps its peculiar and proper articulation (such as it is expressed in the English monosyllables *not* and *in*), 1*st,* when it begins a syllable, or is between two vowels, as in *nonagénaire* one fourscore and ten years old, *inimitié* enmity.

2*dly,* When *in,* beginning a word, is followed by another *n;* as in *innover* to make innovations: pronounce *in-nover, in-i-mitié,* &c.

Except *innocent* innocent (with its derivatives), which is pronounced as if it were spelt with a single *n, i-nocent.*

In all other cases *n* serves only to give the nasal sound to the foregoing vowel, as has been said in the third section about nasals: where we have seen, that *in* beginning a word, and followed by a vowel, is not nasal; *i* and *n* keeping each of them its peculiar sound and articulation, as in *inattention* want of attention, *inouï* unheard of; pronounce *i-nattention, i-noui.*

*n* at the end of words is not pronounced before consonants; but as for those words beginning with a vowel, make these following observations:

*bien* well, and *rien* nothing, articulate in a particular manner their final *n* before a vowel, even in common and familiar discourse. Therefore pronounce

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *bien néloquent,* | for | *bien éloquent,* very eloquent. |
| *bien nétudier,* | | *bien étudier,* to study well. |
| *ne rien napprendre,* | | *ne rien apprendre,* to learn nothing. |
| *rien nau monde,* | | *rien au monde,* nothing in the world. |

But custom is against pronouncing final *n* in the noun *bien,* in the pronouns *mien, tien, sien:* in *vin* wine, *dessein* design, and *rien* before *ouï* heard. Therefore don't pronounce

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *je n'ai rien nouï dire,* | but | *rien ouï dire,* I've heard nothing, |
| *un dessein nadmirable,* | | *dessein admirable,* a marvellous design, |
| *du vin nexcellent,* | | *du vin excellent,* mighty good wine, |
| *le mien nest meilleur,* | | *le mien est meilleur,* mine is better, |
| *un bien na désirer,* | | *bien à désirer,* a thing to be wished for. |

*en,* either preposition or pronoun relative, always articulates its *n* before a vowel; as,

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *en un clin d'œil,* in a trice, | pro- | *en nun clin d'œil,* |
| *en entrant,* as he went in, | | *en nantrant,* |
| *en êtes-vous sûr,* are you sure of it? | nounce | *en nêtes-vous sûr,* |
| *j'en ai dit assez,* I've said enough on't, | | *j'en nai dit assez.* |

Except after the imperative: as *donnez-en à tous,* give some to every body, and not *donnez en nà tous. Parlez-en encore,* not *en nencore,* speak of it again.

*on* always articulates its final *n* before a vowel, except in sentences of interrogation: as,

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *on observe,* | pronounce | *on nobserve,* it is observed, |
| *on en peut être assuré,* | | *on nen peut,* &c. one may be sure of it. |

But when a question is asked, pronounce

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *en peut-on être sûr,* | and not | *en peut-on nêtre sûr,* can one be sure of it? |
| *apprend-on avec joie,* | | *apprend-on navè joie,* can one hear with gladness? |

*un* articulates its *n* before its noun beginning with a vowel: but never when it is a noun of number. Therefore pronounce *un narbre* for *un arbre* a tree, *un nami* for *un ami* a friend, *il n'y a qu'un homme* there is but one man; pronounce *un nome.* But *il y en eut un assez hardi,* and not *un nassez hardi* there was one so bold as to, *&c*

As to the other final nasals, they articulate *n* before a vowel in all words, especially adnouns immediately followed by their nouns; as *d'un commun accord* unanimously, *mon âme* my soul, *certain auteur* a certain author, *ancien établissement* ancient establishment; pronounce *mon nâme, commun accord, certain nauteur,* &c.

Nay *bon* and *divin* seem to lose entirely their nasal sounds before their nouns beginning with a vowel; as *bon orateur* a good orator, *divin amour* divine love; pronounce *bon orateur, divi namour;*

as also *bien aise* very glad; pronounce *bié-naise.*——*Bénin* benign, and *malin* malign, are seldom met with before nouns beginning with a vowel, except that *malin esprit* (an evil spirit) are construed together.

*n* is pronounced at the end of foreign words, or those derived from Latin; *e* (as has been said) being not nasal in these words, *hymen, examen,* &c.

*n* is quite dropt in all the third persons of the plural number of verbs before *e*; as *ils aiment* they love, *ils aimoient* they loved; pronounce *izaime, izaimê; nt* serving to make that syllable a little longer than it is in the third person singular; *il aime* he loves, *il aimoit* he loved. That final *t* is articulated in repeating verses before the next word beginning with a vowel, as *elles aiment à parler* they love speaking; pronounce *el zaime tà parler.*

We write *couvent* a convent, and *Marmoutier,* instead of the old manner of *convent, Marmontier* (a proper name).

*n* is, of all consonants, that which is most frequently doubled in words, though it is single in a great many cases. Generally speaking, it does not double between two *o*'s. Thus we write with a single *n, sonore* sonorous, *honorable* honourable, and *honorer* to honour; though we write with a double *n sonner* to ring *or* resound, *honneur* honour, *honnête* honest, &c.

We most commonly double it in derivatives, when the primitives end in *n* coming after *a, e, o*; as *an, année* year, *le mien, la mienne* mine, *pardon* pardon, *pardonnable* what is to be forgiven, *occasion* occasion, *occasionner* to occasion, *marron* a horse-chesnut, *marronnier* a horse-chesnut tree, *savon* soap, *savonnette* a wash-ball, *&c.* But when that final consonant comes after *i* or *u,* or any diphthong, it remains single in the derivative; as *badin* wanton, *badine; fin* fine, *fine*; *brun* brown, *brune; soin* care, *soigner* to take care, *&c.*

Double *n* is pronounced in these words only, *annale* annal, *annuité* annuity, *annulaire* annular, *annuler* to annul, *inné* innate, *innover* to innovate, *connexité* connexion, *connixer* to connive, and their derivatives.

## *p.*

*p* is not pronounced in *baptême* baptism, *baptiser* to christen, *baptistère* and *baptiste:* but it is in *baptismal* and *baptismaux.*—It is not articulated in *sept* seven, but it is in its derivatives *septante* seventy, *septuagénaire* one seventy years old, and *septuagésime* septuagesima.—Neither is it pronounced by some people

in *pseaume* psalm, *pseautier* psalter, nor in *psalmiste* psalmist, tho' it is in *psalmodie* psalmody, and *psalmodier* to sing.

*p* is likewise dropt in

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *corps*, | body, | *manuscript*, | manu- | *sculpture*, | statuary, |
| *compte*, | account, | | script, | | with its deriva- |
| *compter*, | to reckon, | *prompt*, | quick, | | tives, *sculpter and* |
| *exempt*, | free, | *promptitude*, | quick- | | *sculpteur*, |
| *exempter*, | to ex- | | ness, *promptement*, | *symptome*, | symptom, |
| | empt, | | quickly, | *temps*, | time, |

But *p* is pronounced in *dompter* to tame, *exemption, impromptu, accepter, rédempteur, contemptible.*

*p* at the end of words is not articulated; as *drap* cloth, *loup* wolf, *champ* field, *&c.*

Except these, *cap* a cape, *Gap* (the name of a city), *julep* a julep, *jalap* jalap; and the adverbs *beaucoup* much, and *trop* too much, before a word beginning with a vowel; as *beaucoup aimé* much loved, *trop obligeant* too obliging; pronounce *dra, lou, tro poligeant, julep, Gap, cap, jalap.*

Good writers double *p* in most words, only to preserve etymology: in proper names, as *Appius*, &c. it is sounded.

## *q.*

*q* is always followed in words by u *(qu)* even before another *u*, and articulated like *k* or *c* in *call;* as *quatre* four, *quelque* some, *qui* who, *quintal, piquure*, pricking, *&c.* pronounce *katr, ki*, &c. but in *questeur* questor, *équestre* equestrian, *équiangle* equiangular, the first syllables of *Quinquagésime* Quinquagesima, *Quirinal, Quintilien, Quinte-Curce* Quintus Curtius, and the third of *ubiquiste*, with their derivatives, pronounce *ku-esteur, écu-estre, cuincouagésime, ubicu iste:* and in *aquatique* marshy, *quadragénaire* one forty years old, *quadragésime* quadragesima, *quadrature* quadrature, *quadruple* four-fold, *quadrupède* a quadruped, *équateur* equator, *équation*, and the second syllable of *quinquagénaire* one fifty years old, and *quinquagésime, qua* is pronounced like *quoua*, or *kwa*. Therefore pronounce *akwatic, ékwateur, kwadratur*, &c. It is not amiss to observe here, that *ua* is likewise pronounced like *oua*, in *linguale, la Guadeloupe*, and *la Guadiane.*

*qu* followed by nasal *i (quin)*, is pronounced in *Charles-quint* Charles the fifth, and *Sixte-quint* Sixtus the fifth, like *Kent* without sounding the final *t.*

*q* takes the articulation of *g* hard in *souquenille* a frock, as also in *Don Quixotte*, which is pronounced *Don Ghishot.*

*q* is articulated like *k* at the end of *coq* a cock; but it is not pronounced in *coq d' Inde* a Turkey-cock; nor at the end of *cinq* five, when in a sentence the next word begins with a consonant: but when *cinq* comes before a vowel, or at the end of a sentence, final *q* is articulated, as in *coq*. Therefore pronounce *un coq, co-dinde, cin soldâ* for *cinq soldats* five soldiers, *cin kofficié* for *cinq officiers* five officiers, *j'en ai cink* for *cinq* I have got five.

Pronounce also *cink* in *cinq pour cent*, five per cent.

*r.*

*r* is not pronounced in common discourse, in *votre* your, *notre* our, *quatre* four; as also most times in *autre* other, immediately followed by their nouns beginning with a consonant. Thus pronounce *vote sœur* your sister, *note maison* our house, *quate guinées* four guineas, *un aute cheval* another horse. Otherwise, that is, when those words meet before a vowel, or alone, or at the end of a sentence, *r* is articulated; as, *c'est votre ami & le nôtre* he is your friend and ours, *un autre ouvrage* another work, *quatre écus* four crowns, *il en a quatre* he has four.—— *r* is also pronounced in *Notre-Dame* Our Lady, and in the Lord's prayer, *Notre Père qui es aux Cieux* Our Father which art in heaven.

Sometimes, in common conversation, *r* is not pronounced in the first syllable of *Mercredi* Wednesday, in the second of *chirurgien* a surgeon (though it is articulated in *chirurgie* surgery), and the last of *volontiers* willingly (no more than the final *s*). Pronounce *Mècredi, volontié, chirugien*, and *chirurgie*.——It is usually dropt in common conversation, in *être* to be, before a word beginning with a consonant; as *il doit être convaincu que je l'estime* he ought to be persuaded that I esteem him; pronounce *il doit ète convaincu*, &c. The ear only is to judge when *r* in *être* sounds too harsh, as in the aforesaid example.

*r* is articulated at the end of words, as *car* for, *bonheur* good fortune, *pur* pure, *avoir* to have, *&c.*

Except, 1*st*, In *monsieur*, sir, and its plural *messieurs* gentlemen, though it is articulated in *sieur* and *sieurs*: pronounce *monsieu, messieû, le sieur, les sieurs*.

It is indifferent to articulate it or no in *sur*, and to pronounce *su la terre*, or *sur la terre*, upon the earth.

2*dly*, At the end of infinitives in *er*, even before a vowel, except in reading verses; as *chanter* to sing, pronounce *chanté un air* to sing an air.

3*dly*, At the end of nouns in *er*; as *danger* danger. (See in the paragraph *of é acute*, what concerns those words and their exceptions.)

*r* doubles after *a, e, o*: as in *arracher* to pluck out, *guerre* war, *horrible* horrid: except in some words, as *araignée* a spider, *aride* dry, *mère* mother, *sonore* sonorous. It is doubled also in *résurrection:* but the two *r*'s are articulated only in *Corrégidor, corroder* to corrode, *corrosif* corrosive, *corroboratif* corroborative, *corroborer* to corroborate; *errant, errata, errer,* and *erreur; horreur,* (though not in *horrible,* &c.) *irrégulier,* &c. *irréligion, irrésolu,* and in all words beginning with *ir* followed by another *r:* as likewise in the future and conditional tenses of *courir* and *mourir.* Therefore pronounce *courrois, mourra,* snoring half a dozen of *r*'s between your teeth.

*s.*

This letter has two articulations. *s* in the beginning of words, and in the middle before a vowel, and after a consonant, expresses the same articulation as *s* in *so* or *slow* (which articulation I shall call the hissing articulation of *s*), as *si* if, *persécuter* to prosecute, &c.

Except in these five words, *Alsace, balsamine, balsamique, balsan,* and *balsane.*

And when it is between two vowels, it has the articulation of *z:* as also at the end of the preposition *trans,* followed by a vowel, as in *transaction* transaction, *oser* to dare, *baiser* to kiss: pronounce *ózé, baizé, tranzaction.*

Double *s* between two vowels, denotes only the hissing articulation of *s;* as *baisser* to stoop, *ressort* a spring, &c.——*s* in the following words keeps its hissing articulation, though between two vowels, because, they being compounds, it is considered as if it were in the beginning of the simples:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Melchisedech,* | | *resaisir,* | to seize again, |
| *monosyllable,* | monosyllable, | *tournesol,* | turnsol, |
| *polysyllable,* | polysyllable, | *vraisemblable,* | likely, |
| *preséance,* | precedence, | *vraisemblablement,* | |
| *parasol,* | an umbrella, | *vraisemblance,* | likelihood, |
| *présupposer,* | to presuppose, | | |

Pronounce *présséance,* &c. whereas it is pronounced with the soft articulation of *z* in *réserver* to reserve, *résister* to resist, and *présumer* to presume, though these words are compounds, because their simples are not in use.

*sc* are articulated before *a, o, u,* and any consonant, as in *scapulaire* scapulary, *scorpion* scorpion, *scrupule* a scruple; but before

*s* and *i*, or when *e* has a *cedilla* under it *(sç)*; they take the hissing articulation of *s*, as *science* science, *sceau* seal, *sçavoir* to know, (when so spelt, for it is generally spelt *savoir*).

*s* is not pronounced in the beginning of *schisme* schism, nor in its derivatives; pronounce *chisme*, and *chismatique* a schismatic. But it is articulated in *scholastique* scholastic, *scholiaste* scholiast, and *scholie*, when the words are so spelt.

*s* at the end of words is not pronounced, even before a vowel; as *un bras estropié* a maimed arm; pronounce *bra estropié*. Except,

1*st*, In *un as* an ace, *l'as de pique* the ace of spades, *un ours* a bear, *une vis* a screw, and *le cens* (census) but not in *deux cens*, *trois cens*, &c. two hundred, three hundred, *&c.*

2*dly*, At the end of foreign words and proper names, as *Aloës*, *Fabius*, *Vénus*, *Daphnis*, *Cérès*, *Pallas*, *Esdras*, *Josias*, &c. except *Barnabas*, *Judas*, *Lucas*, *Mathias*, and *Thomas*. It is likewise pronounced in these Latin words, become French, *ânus*, *agnus*, *bis*, *bibus*, *bolus*, *blocus*, *calus*, *fœtus*, *iris*, *gratis*, *orémus*, *phébus*, *rébus*, *sinus*, *virus* (but not *chaos*) at the end of which *s* is pronounced with its hissing articulation.——*s* is articulated in *Mars*, the name of the god of war. It is pronounced in *Thémis*, *des Jacobus* (but not in *des Carolus*). It is articulated at the end of *Rheims*, *Sens*, *and Senlis* (cities of *France*); but not of *Charles*, *Jules*, and *Pâques*, when spelt with *s*.

3*dly*, At the end of articles, pronouns, and prepositions before a vowel, or *h* not aspirated, and the imperative before the pronouns *en* and *y* only, in the other persons of verbs, it is omitted in common discourse; as *les enfans* the children, *nous aimons* we love, *viens-y* come thither, *faites-en* make some, *dès à présent* from this time forward, *j'avois été* I had been, *vous avez eu mes habits* you have had my coats, *nous irons à Paris*, &c. we shall go to Paris; give it the sound of *z*, and pronounce *dè za présen*, *vien zi*, *nou zèmon*, *j'avoi zété*, *vou zavé u mè zabits*, *nou ziron à Paris*, &c. But when *nous* and *vous* are used interrogatively, we don't pronounce their final *s* before the next vowel. Therefore pronounce, without sounding *s*, *avons-nous à manger* have we something to eat? *viens avec moi* come along with me, *lis encore* read again.——Neither is *s* pronounced at the end of the pronoun *les* before a vowel, but only gives *e* the most resonant sound of *è* grave; as *donnez-les à votre sœur* give them to your sister: pronounce *donnez-lé à votre sœur*, tho' we pronounce *il lé za donné* for *il les a donnés* he has given them.

*4thly*, In the first syllable of *vis-à-vis* over against, and *de temps en temps* from time to time, as also most commonly in that of *pas à pas* step by step, *de pis en pis* worse and worse, and *de plus en plus* more and more.

5thly, *s* is not pronounced in *puis* then, nor *depuis* since, even before a vowel. It is articulated in *puisque* since, and *lorsque* when.

6*thly*, *s* is always pronounced at the end of adnouns plural, before their nouns beginning with a vowel; but when the nouns come first, their final *s* is seldom articulated before their adnouns, except in repeating verses; as *les belles âmes* noble souls, *les grands hommes* great men; pronounce *bel zames, gran zomes.*

Observe besides, 1*st*, that excepting *às, ours, viz, le cens*, and foreign words wherein final *s* is pronounced with the hissing articulation: in all other cases wherein it is pronounced at the end of words, it is always with the soft articulation of *z*.

2*dly*, There were formerly a great many French words spelt with *s*, though not pronounced at all. They particularly used to write with *s* all the preterite tenses of the subjunctive; *fust* for *fût* were, *vist* for *vit*, *aimast* for *aimât* loved, and *abysme* for *abyme* abyss; *chrestien* for *crétien* christian, *mesme* for *même* even, *maistre* for *maître* master, *naistre* for *naître* to be born, *&c.* But the new orthography having suppressed *s*, which was useless in all those words, and substituted in its place the syncope (^) over the foregoing vowel, and there being no modern book or dictionary but what is conformable to this new way of spelling, so *s* is not now found in the middle of words, but when it is necessarily pronounced; except in *est* is (3d pers. pres. of *être* to be), and *Basle* (the name of a city when spelt with *s*).

3*dly*, *s*, which is pronounced in *Christ* (as well as *t*), when that word is alone, is dropt with the final *t* when they come after *Jésus*, the final *s* whereof is never articulated neither. Therefore pronounce *Jésu* and *Jésu Cri.*

4*thly*, *s* in the middle of words has the soft articulation of *z* before *b, d, v, g*, called weak consonants; and the hissing articulation before *c* and *k, f, m, p, q, t.* Thus *Asdrubal, presbytère* parsonage, *&c.* are pronounced *Azdrubal, prezbytèr:* but do not pronounce *Jazpe, jazmin, auztère, prezque*, for *Jaspe* Jasper, *jasmin* jessamin, *austère* austere, *presque* almost, &c.

You may pronounce it or not in *enregistrer* to register; but it is never pronounced in *registre*, when this noun is spelt with *s*.

*s* is not sounded in this word *tous* all, when it is followed by some other words; as *tous vos livres* all your books, pronounce

*tou vô livr:* but when *tous* is at the end of a sentence, *s* is sounded, as *je les ai vus tous* I have seen them all, pronounce *je lè zé vu tous.*

*t.*

*t* followed by *i (ti)* before *a, e, o,* in the middle of words, has the hissing articulation of *s;* as in *action* action, *martial* warlike, *patience* patience, *&c.* pronounce *pacience, accion,* &c. but *ti* keeps its proper articulation.

1*st*, After *x* and *s;* which extends only to these twelve words:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *bastion,* | a bastion, *hostie,* | a victim, |
| *bestial,* | bestial, *indigestion,* | surfeit, |
| *bestiole,* | a little beast, *mixtion,* | mixture, |
| *bestion,* | the head of a ship, *question,* | a question, |
| *combustion,* | combustion, *suggestion,* which is | |
| *digestion,* | digestion, pronounced *sug-* | suggestion, |
| *gestion,* | management, *jestion,* | |

and these two proper names, *Ephestion* and *Sébastien.*

2*dly*, Before *en,* being the proper sound of nasal *e,* and not that of nasal *a;* as *je tiens* I hold, *soutien* support.

3*dly*, After *en* pronounced like *a* nasal, or *an,* as in *entier* entire, *entièrement* entirely. Therefore the spelling *essenciel* and *essenciellement, pénitencier* and *pénitenciel,* with *t* instead of *c,* is contrary to all analogy.

4*thly*, In verbs; as *châtier* to chastise, *nous étions* we were, *vous battiez* ye did beat, *&c.*

5*thly*, In words ending in *tie, tié,* and *tier;* as *partie* a part, *amitié* friendship, *métier* a trade.

Except *minutie, impé itie, ineptie, inertie,* and some names of countries; as *Dalmatie, Galatie, Nigritie;* and other words derived from the Greek, as *primatie* primacy, *prophétie* prophecy, *aristocratie:* pronounce *aristocraci, prophéci, Dalmaci,* &c.

But *t* keeps its proper articulation in *Corinthie* and *Gothie,* wherein *thie* is articulated as in *partie;* and these three proper names, *Fortia, Nantia,* and *Santia.*

*t* as well as *h* is suppressed in *asthme* asthma, and *asthmatique;* pronounce *asme, asmatic.*

In the plural of monosyllables ending in *nt* in the singular; as sing. *un enfant* a child; plu. *des enfants* children; *un bâtiment* a building, *des bâtiments* buildings: sometimes *t* is left out, and you may write likewise *enfans, bâtimens:* but monosyllables retain it; as *un pont* a bridge, *des ponts* bridges; *une dent* a tooth, *des dents* teeth. Except *cent* and *tout,* which makes in the plural *cens* and *tous.*

*t is put* between two hyphens (-t-) between a verb and the pronouns *il, elle, on,* when questions are asked and the verb ends in

a vowel; *y a-t-il* is there? *parle-t-elle*, does she speak? *va-t-on*, do they go?

*t* is pronounced at the end of these words only:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *brut*, | rough, | *correct*, | correct, | *rit*, | a rite, |
| *dot*, | portion, | *direct*, | direct, | *sot*, | a fool, |
| *exact*, | exact, | *un fait*, | a fact, | *tact*, | touching, |
| *échec & mat*, | check-mate, | *indult*, | indult, | *zénit*, | zenith, |
| | | *lest*, | ballast, | *zest*, | zest, |
| *fat*, | a dunce, fop, | *pact*, | pact, | *Apt* | (the name of a town). |
| *est* and *ouest*, | east *and* west, | *rapt*, | a rape, | | |

*t* is also pronounced at the end of the impersonals, *il faut, il plaît;* and of *vingt* twenty, *prêt* ready, and some other adnouns; but is only when the next word begins with a vowel; as *il faut y aller* one must go thither, *s'il plaît à Dieu* if God pleases, *vingt écus* twenty crowns, *savant esprit* a learned mind.—And yet we do not only pronounce *t* in *vingt & un* one and twenty, but also in *vingt-deux, vingt-trois*, &c. and what is still more remarkable, we do not pronounce it in *quatre-vingt un, quatre-vingt-deux*, &c. pronounce *vin-té-un, vint-deux; quâtre-vin-un, quatre vin-deu*, &c. *t* is also pronounced in *est* is, before a vowel; as likewise at the end of a verb, when a question is asked; as *c'est un grand fou* he is a great fool, *que fait-on* what are they doing? *doit-il* does he owe? pronounce *doi ti, fai ton, c'ê tun gran fou.*

*t* at the end of *cent* is pronounced only before a noun beginning with a vowel: as *cent écus* a hundred crowns, *cent hommes* a hundred men; but never in *cent un* one hundred and one, *cent onze* one hundred and eleven, *un cent ou deux* one hundred or two.

*t* is articulated in the first syllable of *mot à mot* word for word; pronounce *mo ta mo.*—*t* is not pronounced at the end of *contrat;* *c* and *t* are articulated in *contracter* to contract.

In *avant-hier* the day before yesterday, some pronounce *t*, but the best way is to drop it.

*t* is not pronounced in *Dantzique* (the name of a city), in *Metz* (another name of a city), nor in *Retz* (that of a cardinal), wherein *e* has the most resonant sound of *e* grave, and *tz* that of the hissing articulation of *s (mèss)*. Neither is it pronounced in the plural of nouns that end their singular in *t:* as *un chat* a cat, *des chats* cats; *un habit* a suit of clothes, *des habits* suits of clothes: pronounce *un sha, des shaw, dè zabi;* *s* serving only to make the syllable long in the plural, which was short in the singular.

This word *fort* is sometimes an adnoun, signifying *strong;* sometimes an adverb, signifying *very*. When it is an adnoun, as fort &

*grand* strong and tall, the final *t* is silent, and *r* only is joined to the next word beginning with a vowel, and you pronounce *fo-é-gran:* when it is an adverb, as *fort aimable* very amiable, *t* is joined to the next word beginning with a vowel, and you say *for taimable:* in *fort & ferme* stoutly, *t* is sounded likewise.

*t* is never pronounced in the enclitic *et* or *&* (and), which is sounded like *é* acute; and *et* at the end of words is sounded like *ai* in *May*; as *net* clean, *placet* a petition.——*t* is articulated in *sept* seven, and *huit* eight, when alone, or at the end of a sentence, and before a word beginning with a vowel: as *sept ou huit* seven or eight, pronounce both final *t's*; as also in *j'en ai sept* I have got seven; but do not pronounce it in *sept guinées,* seven guineas.

Two *t's* together *(tt)* are sounded like a single one; as *frotter* to rub, *attirer* to attract: *t* is doubled only to make the foregoing syllable short

*t* hardly doubles but after *a* and *o* (tho' not always), as in *attaquer* to attack, *combattre* to fight, *botte* a boot, *sotte* foolish, *sottise,* &c. but write with a single *t: établir* to establish, *citron* citron, *brutal* brutish, *tutélaire* tutelar, and other words wherein *t* comes after *e, i, u,* &c. though we also spell with a single *t: matière* matter, *latitude* latitude, and some others: and with a double *t: bette* beet, *betterave* red beet.

The two *t's* *(tt)* are sounded in *Attique, Atticisme, Atticus.*

*v.*

There is no occasion for any particular observations upon the consonant *v,* it having in French the same articulation, and being of the same use as in English.

*x.*

*x* denotes either of these two articulations *cs* and *gz.*

*x* has the articulation of *cs,* in all proper names, both in the beginning, middle, and end; before consonants, except *h;* and between two vowels, except when the word begins with *e;* as *Xavier, Xerxès, Ximénès, Alexandre, Mexique, axiome, axe* axis, *extrait* extract, *maxime, luxe* luxury, *flexible,* &c. pronounce *acsiome, Alecsandre, Csersès, ecstrai, lucse,* &c.

*x* has the articulation of *gz* between two vowels, the first whereof is *e,* even tho' the second vowel should be preceded with *h,* as in *examen, exil, exarque, exaucer* to grant, *exemple* example, *exhumer* to unbury: pronounce *egzil, egzumé,* &c.

*x* in *soixante* sixty, and *soixantième* sixtieth, takes the hissing articulation of *s;* but the soft one of *z* in *deuxième* second,

*deuxièmement* secondly, *dixième* tenth, *dixaine* ten, *dixain* a stanza of ten verses, and *dixièmement* tenthly, *dix-huit* eighteen, *dix-neuf* nineteen, *sixième* sixth, *sixièmement* sixthly, and *sixain* a stanza of six verses. Therefore pronounce *soissante, deuzième, sizain,* &c. nay we write *sizain* and *dizain.*

*x* takes also the hissing articulation of *s* in the following names of places, which even are commonly spelt with *s; Xaintes, Xaintonge, Bruxelles, Flexelle, Auxerre, Auxonne, St. Maixant, Uxell,* ou *Uxelles,* and the second *x* in *Xerxes:* pronounce *Saintes, Brussels, Xersès,* &c.

*x* takes the articulation of *sh* in *Don Quixote,* which is pronounced *Ghishot.*

*x* takes the articulation of *k* before *ce* and *ci; excellence* excellency, *exciter* to excite: pronounce *ekciter, eksellance,* &c.

*x* has the articulation of *cs* at the end of these Greek and Latin names only, *Ajax, Alix, Anthrax, Béatrix, du borax, Contumax, Felix, index, Linx, Lârinx, Phénix, Onyx, Pollux, Sphinx, Styx, Storax, Syphax, préfix* prefixed, and *perplexe* perplexed.—It has the hissing articulation of *s* at the end of *Cadiz,* but that of *z* at the end of adnouns before nouns beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute, as *doux amusement* sweet amusement, *heureux homme* happy man: as likewise at the end of plural nouns that have no *x* in their singular, when they are followed by an adnoun beginning with a vowel, as *cheveux épars* dishevelled hair. Those aforesaid cases excepted, *x* is not pronounced at the end of words; as *des choux* cabbages, *toux* cough; pronounce *chou, tou:* but in the former *dou zamuseman,* &c. *Aix* (the name of a city) is pronounced like *Aisse,* or *est-ce.*

There are three observations to make upon *x* at the end of *dix* ten, *six* six.

1*st*, *x* is not pronounced at all in *dix* and *six* before nouns beginning with a consonant; as *dix guinées* ten guineas, *six livres sterling* six pounds sterling.

2*dly*, *dix* and *six,* being at the end of a sentence, or in the middle before words beginning with a consonant, but not their nouns, articulate their final *x* like hissing *s;* as *j'en ai dix* I have ten, *les six que vous avez* the six which you have. It is also after this manner that *x* is pronounced in *dix sept* seventeen.

3*dly*, *x* in *dix* and in *six,* before nouns beginning with a vowel, takes the soft articulation of *z;* as also in *dix-huit* eighteen, and *dix-neuf* nineteen. Therefore pronounce *diz-huit, diz-neuf, di-zécu* ten crowns, *dis-set, siss, diss, di guiné, si livres,* &c.

*z.*

*z* is used only in the four following cases: 1°, In the end of the second person plural of verbs, as *vous aimez* you love, *vous faisiez* you did, *&c.* 2°, In these three words only, *le nez* the nose, *assez* enough, *chez* at: for we no longer write with *z un dé* a die, *un pré* a meadow. 3°, In the beginning of some words derived from the Greek; as *zèle* zeal, *zéphire* zephyrus, *&c.* and in the numbers *onze, douze, treize, quatorze, quinze,* and *seize,* with their derivatives. 4°, In the end of these proper names, wherein it takes the hissing articulation of *s; Booz, Rhodez, Sénez, Usez;* except *Sées, Rèz, Milanèz,* and *Vivarèz* (when so spelt, for they are better spelt with *ois*), wherein *z* is not pronounced at all: but the foregoing *e* has the most resonant sound of *è* grave.—In *l'Abruzze,* the double *z* takes the hissing articulation of *s,* as if it were *l'Abrusse.*

*z* is not pronounced (except in solemn speech and reading verses) at the end of the few words wherein it is used before a vowel: *assez aimable* agreeable enough, *vous avez eu* you have had: pronounce *asse aimable, avé u;* but it is never pronounced after *nez* nose.

All that has been said throughout this last section concerning final consonants, is to be understood only of the pronunciation practised in common conversation; for in declamation, that is, in the pulpit, or at the bar, as also in reading verses, we always pronounce before vowels final consonants that are quite dropt in common conversation. And as we make it our chief task in this treatise to instruct the learner in that true, familiar, and ordinary way of speaking, which *Tully* calls *Sermo quotidianus,* and make him perfect master of it, he must, in order to speak properly and politely, observe the following rules as constantly true:

1*st,* That when the final consonant of a noun is not pronounced in the singular number, it is also mute in the plural, as well as the final *s,* which only serves to make that syllable long, or longer, in the plural, which was short, or already long, in the singular; as sing. *un chat,* a cat; plur. *des chats* cats; sing. *un bourg* a borough; plur. *des bourgs* boroughs: pronounce *shaw* and *boorc.*

2*dly,* That final consonants are always pronounced in words immediately before their conjunctives, beginning with a vowel; as,

*First*, The article and adnoun before its noun (*les amis* the friends, *sot ouvrage* silly work, *franc animal* mere brute or blockhead).

*Secondly*, The preposition or adverb before its regimen (*chez eux* at their house, *bien habile* very learned, *fort adroit* very skilful, *trop irrité* too much incensed.)

*Thirdly*, The pronoun personal before its verb (*il aime* he loves, *vous offrez* you offer, *on apprend* we learn): pronounce *on naprend, i laime, tro pirité, ché zeux, so touvage, lè zamis*, &c.

3*dly*, That final consonants are pronounced in proper and foreign names; as *Jâcob*, *Périclès*, *Stanislas*, *Norris*, &c. Except, 1*st*, when it is *s* after *e* not sounded, as in *Athènes;* or after *i* in common French names, as *Paris*, *Louis* (tho' *s* is pronounced in *Pâris*, *Priamus*'s son). 2*dly*, When there is a nasal vowel before the final consonant; as in *St. Cloud*, *St. François*, *Pharamond*, &c. pronounce *St. Clou, la ville de Pari, le perfide Pâriss, Athène, Périclèss, Stanislass*, &c.

As to orthography, or spelling, we generally leave out all those useless consonants which are not pronounced, when the suppression of them causes no ambiguity. Thus we write *avis* advice, *ajouter* to add, *lait* milk, *sujet* subject, *révondre* to answer, *tête* head, *&c.* instead of the old way of spelling *advis, adjouster, laict, subject, respondre, teste*, &c. Some authors write a circumflex over most of those syllables, to show that a letter has been suppressed; but first, to act consistently with themselves, they should put the circumflex over all those syllables, in *âvis* as well as *âjoûter*, and *laît*. In the next place, it is using an useless mark to show, to no purpose, that an useless letter is suppressed: the scholars don't want that mark to know the etymology of the word, and the illiterate are not a bit the wiser for it: and, finally, that mark may occasion a false pronunciation; for, as it is also used to denote long syllables, people are apt to think that *ou* in *ajoûter* is long, as *e* in *tête*, which is the *Norman* accent and pronunciation.

If we keep still some useless consonants in some words, it is both to denote their derivation *(etymology)*, and distinguish them from other words that are pronounced alike. Thus we spell *poids* weight, with *d*, to distinguish it from *pois* peas, *poix* pitch, which have the same sound; *compte* account, with *p*, to distinguish it from *comte* earl, and *conte* a story.

And as to the double consonants (which are pronounced in some cases only), observe, moreover, that these seven consonants

never double *h*, *j*, *k*, *v*, *x*, *z*; neither do the others double after a long vowel, or marked over with a circumflex, or after a vowel nasal, or an improper diphthong (except however these three, *l*, *r*, and *s*); and it is therefore after short vowels only double consonants may come. Thus we write with single consonants *côte* coast, *bâtiment* building, *tête* head, *encourager* to encourage, *enfanter* to be delivered, *entendre* to hear, *traiter* to treat, *goûter* to taste, *&c.*

But we spell these following with double consonants, *bouffon* a buffoon, *botte* a boot, *battre* to beat, *nette* clean, *affecter* to affect, *syllabe* syllable, *&c.*

The characteristic consonant of verbs must be kept in the tenses, such as it is in the infinitive; that is, if it is single in the infinitive, it must be so too all along the verb, and double if it is double in that root. Therefore *j'abhorre* I abhor, *vous luttez* you wrestle, *nous promettons* we promise, *il donne* he gives, *ils se rebellent*, they rebel, *&c.* are spelt with double consonants, because the consonants are double in their infinitives *abhorrer*, *lutter*, *promettre*, &c. and *je colore* I colour, *vous rebutez* you repulse, *nous dotons* we endow, *ils volent* they fly, *&c.* are spelt with a single consonant, because there is but one in their infinitive.

Except *épeler* to spell, *appeler* to call, and a few others.

I shall conclude this treatise with two tables of the Terminations wherein the *Penultima* is pronounced short, and wherein it is pronounced long; which will be a great help to attain to the harmony of the pronunciation.

## TERMINATIONS *whose* PENULTIMA *is short.*

| *Terminations.* | *Words of the same terminations, with their exceptions.* |
|---|---|
| *abe* and *able.* | syllabe, table, érable, aimable, agréable, *&c.* *Except* diable, sable, fable, cable, rable, *and* accable. |
| *acre.* | diacre, fiacre, massacre, *&c.* *Except* âcre. |
| *ade* and *adre.* | fade, malade, pommade, salade, ladre, *&c.* *Except* Câdre. |
| *age* and *ache.* | page, courage, image, nage, rache, tache, panache, nager, *&c.* *Except* âge, âche, tâche, *and others, whose* a *is circumflexed.—*a *is likewise long in* âgé, âcher, tâcher, *&c.* |

| *Terminations.* | *Words of the same terminations, with their exceptions.* |
|---|---|
| *afe* and *aphe.* | agrafe, épitaphe, géographe, paragraphe, *&c.* |
| *agne.* | campagne, montagne, Ascagne, *&c.* *Except* gagne, *with* gagner, *and other derivatives.* |
| *ale, alle,* and *acle.* | balle, halle, scandale, ovale ; spectacle, receptacle, *&c.* *Except* râle, pâle, le hâle, mâle, râcle, *and* râcler, *&c.* |
| *ane, anne.* | cane, chicane, canne, *&c.* *Except* âne, crâne, mânes, manne, *and* damne, *&c.* |
| *ape* and *aque.* | attrape, frappe, cloaque, *&c.* *Except* Jaques *and* Pâques. |
| *arbe, arbre, arde.* | barbe, marbre, bâtarde, moutarde, *&c.* |
| *arme, arte, asme, astre.* | carte, charme, désastre, asthme, cataplasme, *&c.* |
| *ame.* | dame, lame, polygame, nous aimames *(and all persons plural of the perfect tense of the 1st conjugation.* *Except* l'âme, flamme, infâme, blâme, pâme, pâmer, blâmer. |
| *ate, atte,* and *attez.* | pirate, patte, agate, gratte, *and* gratter ; battez, battons, *&c. and the termination of the second pers. plur. perf. of the 1st conjugation,* priates, animates, *&c.* *Except* pâte *(dough)*, gâte, hâte, hâter, gâter, *&c.* |
| *attre* and *atre.* | battre, quatre, *&c.* *Except* l'âtre, théâtre, blanchâtre, noirâtre, *&c.* châtre, *and in* châtrer, *and* châtier. |
| *ave.* | brave, cave, rave, lave, laver, *&c.* *Except* esclave ; *but both* a's *are short in* esclavage. |
| *aite, ette, ede,* and *aide.* | défaite, retraite, *&c.* sonnette, remède, laide, *&c.* *Except* faîte. |
| *eil, eille, oil, oile.* | soleil, veille, *and* veiller ; poil, toile, voile, *and* voiler, *&c.* |
| *oible* and *oide.* | foible, roide, *&c. with their derivatives,* foiblesse, roidir, *&c.* |
| *oine* and *oite.* | avoine, pivoine, il boite, boiter, *with deriv.* |
| *ome* and *one.* | homme, personne, colonne, *&c.* *Except* atome, Dôme, Jérôme, Vendôme, prône, trône, *and others wherein* ô *is circumflexed.* |
| *ole, otte, oxe* | monopole, polyglotte, botte, cotte, paradoxe, *&c.* *Except* pôle, côte, *and others wherein* ô is circumflexed. |

| *Terminations.* | *Words of the same terminations, with their exceptions.* |
|---|---|
| *ouble,ouple,ouille.* | double, couple, souple; rouille, la Trimouille, *&c.* |
| *ourse* and *ousse.* | bourse, je tousse, *&c.* *Except* pouce, *and* je pousse, *&c.* |
| *ourpre, ouve,* and *ouvre.* | pourpre, couve, couvre, Louvre, *as likewise in* couver, couvrir, *and their derivatives.* |
| *ougue,igue,ugue,uge.* | fougue, figue, fugue, déluge, refuge, *&c.* |
| *ique, uque, uffe.* | domestique, perruque, tartuffe, *&c.* |

## TERMINATIONS *whose* PENULTIMA *is long.*

| | |
|---|---|
| *abre.* | cabre, sabre, délabre, *&c.* (a *is long likewise in* délabrer, *and deriv.)* *Except* cinabre. |
| *are* and *arre.* | barbare, barre, gârre, *&c.* *Except* égare, mare, fanfare, pare, répare, compare, *and derivatives* égarer, *&c.* *N. B. These words are not excepted, because the* a *of the* Penultima *is short; but because it is sounded with the slender sound of* a, *though long.* |
| *ace,asse,ase,&aze.* | espace, grâce, tasse, base, gaze, *&c.* *Except* besace, glace, coriace, bécasse, liasse, chasse *and* chasser; agace *and* agacer. |
| *aine* and *êne.* | chaîne, entraîne, gêne, *&c.* *Except* vaine *and* veine. |
| *aille.* | bataille, raille, taille, vaille, *&c.* *Except* médaille, *and* travaille, *&c. from* travailler. |
| *ape* and *apre.* | rape, *as also* raper, *&c.* câpre, *&c.* *Except* attrape, *with its deriv. from* attraper, *and* Satrape. |
| *aindre,eindre,inde, eindre, einte.* | contraindre, feinte, feindre, coq d'Inde, cylindre, *&c.* |
| *aire, erre, oire.* | chaire, faire, terre, *&c.* |
| *aise,aisse,est-ce,èse, eze, oise, oisse.* | bien-aise, thèse, baise, baisse *(from* baiser *and* baisser, *wherein* ai *is long too),* qu'est-ce, l'Oise, croisse, *&c.* |
| *aître* and *oître.* | maître, connoître, cloître, *&c.* |
| *aube, auce, ausse.* | daube, sauce, exauce, *and* exhausse, *with derivatives.* |
| *auche, aude, ause.* | gauche, Claude, cause, *&c.* |

| *Terminations.* | *Words of the same terminations, with their exceptions.* |
|---|---|
| *auge, aule, ôle.* | sauge, gaule, drôle, *&c.* |
| *aume, aune.* | baume, jaune, *with derivatives,* embaumer, *&c.* |
| *aure, ore, aute, autre,* and *ôtre.* | centaure, aurore, haute, saute, apôtre, un autre, *&c.* |
| *auve* and *auvre.* | chauve, pauvre, *&c.* |
| *éche* and *aîche.* | bêche, fraîche, *as also in* bêcher. *Except* brèche, flèche, mèche, sèche. |
| *ême.* | crême, extrême, *&c. but not in* sème; *and others without a circumflex.* |
| *enre* and *endre.* | genre, entendre, défendre, *&c.* |
| *épe* and *épre.* | guêpe, Vêpres, *&c. Except* lèpre, *and* Dieppe. |
| *éte* and *être.* | bête, prêtre, fenêtre, *&c. but not in the terminations in* ete, *or* ette, *as* sonnette. |
| *eûne.* | jeûne *(fast) but not without a circumflex, as* jeune *young.* |
| *euse* and *euze.* | gueuse, heureuse, scrupuleuse, *&c.* |
| *ympe* and *uimpe.* | olympe, guimpe, *&c.* |
| *imple* and *ymphe.* | simple, nymphe, *&c.* |
| *ingle* and *inte.* | épingle, pinte, *&c.* |
| *ire, uire, ivre.* | lire, détruire, confire, vivre, suivre, *&c.* |
| *ise* and *ize.* | église, frise, dise, *from* dire, *and* friser, *&c.* |
| *oindre, ointe.* | joindre, pointe, *&c.* |
| *oire, oivre.* | boire, croire, poivre, *&c.* |
| *ôme* and *aume.* | dôme, royaume, baume, *&c.* |
| *ose* and *osse.* | repose, grosse, *&c. Except* bosse. *o is also long in* engrosser. |
| *oule* and *oudre.* | foule, coudre, moudre, *&c. Except* boule. |
| *ourre.* | il fourre, bourre, *&c.* |
| *ouse oute, outre.* | blouse, croûte, coûte, goûte, *&c Except* doute, goutte, route, tonte. |
| *ure* and *use.* | coupure, foulure, muse, amuse, *&c. but not* u *in* amuser. |

Moreover, *first,* the *penultima* is long in terminations made of two vowels, the latter whereof is *e* not sounded; as in *armée, voie, joie, vue, rue, jolie, aimée,* and all participles feminine.

*2dly,* The last syllable of words terminating in a consonant or diphthong, which is short in the singular, becomes long in the

plural, by the addition of *s* or *x*; as sing. *chef, fagot, lieu, trait, sac*, &c. plur. *chefs, fagots, lieux, traits, sacs*, &c.

3*dly*, *a* being a monosyllable, or the last syllable of a word, either absolutely, or with one or more consonants, is short and slender, so *s* be not the final consonant; as *il a, sac, chat, animal, dard, magistrat*, &c. but in the plural number, or with a final *s*, it is long and broad; as *sacs, chats, magistrats, tu vas, tu feras, un bas.*

Except *les arts, darts, regards, renards*, and the monosyllable *bras* in the singular, with *je bats*, which are short.

So much concerning the termination of words, considered with respect to prosody. As to the quantity that syllables bear in the middle of words, it may be said in general, that they are all short; as *abus, abréger, babil, babiller, cacher, deviner, flatter, hostie, plaider, juste, loger, peler, docile, frapper, couper, fanfaron, cousin, douter, peste, quitter, triste, voisiner*, &c. Except those which consist of nasal vowels; as *entrer, chambranle, branler, montrer, instruire, tremblant, trompons, tomber*, &c.

*a* is also long and broad in the middle of words before a double *r*, or single *r* followed by *e* not sounded; as *barreau, bigarreau, parrain*, &c. as likewise before the termination *tion* or *ssion*, as in *nation, création, passion*, &c.

*a* is short and slender in *Paris* (the name of the capital of *France*), and long and broad in *Pâris* (a man's name).——It is short and slender in *Madrid*, and long and broad in *Cadiz* and *Calais*.

Most of the aforesaid observations would be needless, if the long vowels were always marked with a circumflex; which is the true, and ought to be the only, use of that accent, as will be proved in the following section.

## SECTION V.

### *Of the several Marks used in writing* French.

THESE marks are of six sorts: the Elision, Hyphen, Cedilla, Dialysis *or* Diæresis, Accents, Capital Letters, and Stops

ELISION is the cutting off of a final vowel before a word beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute; and the vowel thus cut off is supplied by a comma, called *Apostrophe*, and set above the empty place, thus (').

*These three* vowels, *a, e, i*, suffer elision in *French.*

*a* and *e* are cut off in *la* and *le*, whether articles or pronouns; in all monosyllables, as *je, me, se, te, de, ce, ne, que;* and the conjunctions composed of *que*, as *jusque, parceque, puisque*, &c. and *i* in the conjunction *si* if, before *il* and *ils* only.

Thus we write

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *l'âme,* | *la âme,* | the soul |
| *l'héroïne,* | *la héroïne,* | the heroine |
| *l'homme,* | *le homme,* | the man. |
| *l'esprit,* | *le esprit,* | mind. |
| *j'aime,* | *je aime,* | I love. |
| *je l'estime,* | *je le* or *la estime,* | I esteem him *or* her. |
| *m'entendez-vous,* | *me entendez vous,* | do you understand me? |
| *s'en aller,* | *se en aller,* | to go away. |
| *c'est fait,* instead | *ce est fait,* | it is done *or* over. |
| *l'âge d'or,* of | *le âge de or,* | the golden age. |
| *n'allez pas,* | *ne allez pas,* | do not go. |
| *qu'a-t-il dit,* | *que a-t-il dit,* | what did he say? |
| *jusqu'au soir,* | *jusque au soir,* | till night. |
| *quoiqu'il dise,* | *quoique il dise,* | altho' he says. |
| *puisqu'il sait,* | *puisque il sait,* | since he knows. |
| *lorsqu'il vit,* | *lorsque il vit,* | when he saw. |
| *s'il vient,* | *si il vient,* | if he comes. |
| *s'ils veulent,* | *si ils veulent,* | if they please. |

But when *si* coming after *&* (*& si*) signifies *yet*, *i* is not contracted with the next vowel; as *il le sait, &* si il *n'en dit rien*, he knows it, yet he says nothing of it.——We also write and say *m'amie* and *m'amour* (love), for *ma*, or rather *mon amie, mon amour*, and *quelqu'un* for *quelque un.*

There are two cases wherein *le* and *la* and *ce* don't suffer elision.

1*st*, The articles *le* and *la* and the pronoun demonstrative *ce* before *onze* and *onzième*, and *oui* yes. Thus we spell and pronounce *le onze du mois* the eleventh of the month, *il est le onzième, elle est la onzième*, he *or* she is the eleventh, *le oui qu'il prononça* the yes which he spoke, *ce oui-là lui a couté cher* that yes has cost him dear: but it is only *le* and *la* and *ce* which suffer no elis on before these two words; for all the other monosyllables do. Thus we spell and pronounce *je n'en ai qu'onze*, and not *que onze*, I have got but eleven, *je dis qu'oui*, and not *que oui*, I say yes.

Observe moreover, concerning *onze* and *oui*, that the final consonant of the particles coming before these two words, is not articulated as it is before any other word beginning with a vowel.

Therefore pronounce without joining *s*, *les onze mille vièrges. un oui, des oui*; not *lè zonze*, &c. *un noui, de zoui.*

2*dly*, *le* and *la* being pronouns governed of an imperative, do not suffer elision, unless they are followed by either of these two other pronouns *en* and *y*; as *Portez* le *au logis* carry him *or* it home (tho' we pronounce *portél au logis)*; *Mariez*-la *au plutôt* marry her as soon as possible. But we write and pronounce *Tirez l'en au plutôt* get him, her, *or* it, from thence as fast as you can; *Laisser l'y aller* let him *or* her go thither.

*e* suffers elision also at the end of the adnoun feminine *grande*, before these words beginning with a consonant; *grand' chambre* great chamber, *grand' messe* high mass, *grand' peur* great fright, *grand' chose* a great matter, *grand' chère* a great cheer, *grand' faim & grand' soif* a great hunger and great thirst, *grand' pitié* ten thousand pities, *grand' peine* great trouble, *la grand' chambre* the high court of parliament at *Paris*, *ma* or *sa grand' mere* my *or* his grand-mother, *grand' salle* a large room or hall, *grand' part* a great share.

HYPHEN is a short line across, marked thus (-), and used, 1*st*, to join pronouns expressing the subject with their verbs, especially in interrogations; as likewise the particles *en* and *y*, and other conjunctive pronouns, with an imperative: as *que dit-elle* what does she say? *irons-nous* shall we go? *vient-il* does he come? *vas-y* go thither, *prends-en* take some, *sauvons-nous* let us take to our heels, *allons-nous-en* let us go away, *donnez-les-lui* give them to him.

*N. B.* When the verb ends in *a* or *e*, the expletive *t* ought to be inserted between two *Hyphens*, between the verb and pronoun subjective or the particle *on*, in order to soften the pronunciation; as *parla-t-elle* did she speak? *va-t-on* do they go? *mange-t-il* does he eat?

2*dly*, To join the particles *ci*, *là*, *çà*, to the words which are attended by them, and from which they cannot be properly parted in speech; as likewise *ce* after *être*; as *celui-ci* this, *celui-là* that, *cet-homme-ci* this man, *cette femme-là* that woman, *demeurez-là* stay there, *là-haut* above, *là-bas* below, *venez-çà* come hither, *est-ce-là le livre* is that the book? *sont-ce-là vos gens* are these your servants?

3*dly*, To join together the parts of a compound word: as *porte-manteau* portmanteau, *arc-en-ciel* rainbow, *c'est-à-dire* that is to say.

4*thly*, At the end of a line, to denote that a word is parted which could not be writ entirely in the line, and that the remain

der of it is at the beginning of the next line; as in this word *présentement* presently. But note, that whenever a word is thus parted, the part which begins the next line must always begin with a consonant.

CEDILLA is a short curve line, or a comma, put under *c* before *a*, *o*, *u*, to divest it of the articulation of *k*, and give it the hissing articulation of *s*, which it always has before *e* and *i*; as in *menaça* he threatened, *leçon* lesson, *conçu* conceived.

DIALYSIS } is two dots put over the last of the two vowels
DIÆRESIS } that meet together in a word, to part them into two several syllables: as *haï* hated, makes two syllables; whereas *je hais* I hate, makes but one. In *Saül* the king of *Israel*, *a* and *ü* make two syllables, and so distinguish it from *Saul (Paul)* wherein *au* makes but an improper diphthong.

*e*, *i*, *u*, are the only vowels on which the two dots are marked, custom having not as yet prevailed to put them over *o* in *géomètre*, and other such words wherein *e* and *o* make two distinct vowels, very differently pronounced from the same in *geolier*. It is therefore sufficient to mark the preceding *e* with an accent, to make it keep its proper sound, and at the same time part it from *o*.

It is moreover usual to put the two dots over *e* final, not sounded, in *aiguë*, *ambiguë*, *ciguë*, &c. or better upon the *u*, as *aigüe*, *cigüe*, to denote that the hard articulation of *g* falls upon *u*, as it does in *aigüille* a needle, and so distinguish it from that which *gu* has in *figue*, *guide*, *guérir*, *guenon*, &c. (See the letter *g* in the treatise on the pronunciation.) These cases excepted, never put the two dots over any vowel that makes but one and the same syllable with the foregoing vowel, as in *jouer* to play, *avouer* to own, &c. which some writers very viciously spell *joüer*, *avoüer*, as if these words were to be pronounced *avo-u-er*, *jo-u-er*, and not avoü-er, joü-er: whilst, on the contrary, others, in omitting, the two dots over the second syllable of *aigüille*, induce the reader to pronounce it as in *anguille* an eel.

ACCENT is a note put chiefly over our *e*'s, to denote their several pronunciations; as likewise over some words, to distinguish their nature and signification.

There are three sorts of accents; Acute (´), Grave (`), and Circumflex (^).

The accent *acute* is put over all *e*'s which our Grammarians have been pleased to call *é* masculine; as in *prémédité* premeditated.

The accent *grave* over those called *è* open; as in *très* most, *près* near, *dès* from; and the last syllables of words ending in *ès*, as *excès* excess, *après* after, *&c.*

With what ground our Grammarians have distinguished our *e's* by these several appellations of *é masculine, é feminine, é open, e shut, é French,* and *é Latin,* I am not able to apprehend, and therefore have chosen to call them by that accent which distinguishes them. When two syllables made of *e* follow one another, without having any accent over them, the first is always to be pronounced grave, and the last is not sounded.

The nature of these following particles is distinguished by the accent grave, being both articles and adverbs, verbs, or prepositions, or conjunctions.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *a,* | has, | *à,* | at *or* to, |
| *la,* | the, | *là,* | there, |
| *de la,* | of *or* from the, | *de là,* | from thence, |
| *des,* | of *or* from the, | *dès,* | from, |
| *ça,* | come on, | *çà,* | hither, |
| *ou,* | or, | *où,* | where, |

It is also usual to mark over with the accent grave these two particles, *holà* hold, and *oui dà* ay, ay.

The accent *circumflex is* used in words, over a syllable which has lost a vowel or an *s* of its own spelling, and the circumflex makes that syllable long; as *âge* age, *bête* beast, *être* to be, *le nôtre* ours, *vû* seen, &c. which were formerly spelt *aage, beste, stre, le nostre, veu,* &c.

The last syllable of the 3d pers. sing. of the preterite subj. is also marked over with a circumflex, to distinguish it from the same person of the pret. ind. *qu'il aimât, parlât, fût, crût, entendît, vît,* &c. of which *s* is cut off; but these syllables are not pronounced long.

Some other words take also the circumflex, to prevent one's mistaking their signification; as *dû,* from *devoir* to owe, to distinguish it from *du* of the; *crû,* from *croître* to grow, to distinguish it from *cru* believed; *sûr* sure, to distinguish it from *sur* upon: but this practice is not generally received.

The tone of words is not then the proper object of accents in our language. Their office is not to mark the raising or sinking of the voice on syllables: they were at first introduced only to ascertain the pronunciation of our *e's.* Our forefathers, surprised to see different sounds represented by the same sign, bethought them-

selves of remedying that disorder, by adopting the accents which the Greeks and the Latins had instituted, though for a different purpose. This practice, had it been carefully observed, would have effectually supplied the want of other signs: but it was no sooner established, than it was again almost entirely laid aside, through the negligence of Printers and Authors. It has however been insensibly re-established, and even perfected. A perpendicular accent * has moreover been introduced for some years, to mark the intermediate *e*, that *e* which has a middle sound between the sonorous *e* and that which is most sonorous: so that as these accents characterise our *é*'s, so they are more essential to them than the dots over our *i*'s, of which I know not the use.

And indeed our *e* is either guttural, or mute, or acute, or grave, or circumflex, or intermediate, or nasal. There can be no possibility of mistaking the *e* guttural and mute in reading, if the others are accented; and a few observations will sufficiently enable us to distinguish the mute *e* from the guttural. The whole difficulty lies in being acquainted with the others, so as to pronounce them according to their powers: now the accents entirely remove this difficulty. The *e* which is called *fermé* is marked with an acute accent. The *e* called *ouvert*, is (according to the authors of these denominations) either simply open, or most open, or keeps a medium between these two sounds. If it is simply open it *is* marked with a grave accent, as in *très, après, père, mère.* If most open, with the circumflex, as in *bête, grêle, même, pêche.* And the intermediate *e* is marked with the perpendicular accent, as in *règle, fidèle, flèche, amène.* As this same accent serves likewise to distinguish, without confusion, the true nasal *e*, from that which has only the sound of nasal *a*, one can no longer mistake the pronunciation of the following words, *bièn, rièn, soutièn, je viens, il tient; prudent, entièrement, orient, patient,* &c. *ger* is not pronounced in *légèr*, as in *bèrger.* As the termination *eve* is pronounced quite differently in these three words *séve, Geneviève, Genève,* so the accent determines their true pronunciation. The acute accent on the penultima of *différent* shows it to be an adnoun, and the grave in *diffèrent* to be a verb. The same rule holds good with respect to *précédent* adnoun, and *précèdent* verb, and many other words, which cannot be distinguished in writing otherwise than by the accent. The grave and perpendicular accents show moreover, that the *e* following or preceding them is

* As custom has not authorised that perpendicular accent, we have laid it aside in this new edition; particularly as it is not to be found in any book printed since the French Academy have published a new edition of their Dictionary (in 1762).

mute, as in *amèrement, tellement.* They indicate also, that in the words, *fièl, manière, tièrs, muèt,* &c. the vowel that precedes the *e* forms with it a proper diphthong, and not an improper one, as happens very frequently in the English.

Custom has not yet authorised our affixing the acute accent to the last syllable of the infinitive and nouns ending in *er,* as *parlér, dangér.* It would certainly be more uniform to mark all the *e*'s with the accent that determines their pronunciation: but after all, the omission of the accent on these occasions, where the eyes are not accustomed to see it, can produce no great inconvenience, if it is not omitted on the others. The true use and destination of the circumflex is to mark a long syllable: therefore it ought to be set over not only the long *e*'s, but also over all the other long vowels; as in the words *âme, île, abîme, côte, côté, les aûtres, nôs, hûre, ils pûrent;* as likewise over these improper diphthongs, *chaîne, reîne, haîne, seîze, je faîs,* whose pronunciation is thereby distinguished from the same syllables, when this improper diphthong is short, as in the following words, *laine, peine, une plaine, elle est pleine, fontaine, tréize* *, *il a fait, c'est un fait.*

To conclude; it is evident from the aforesaid observations, that the accents show the pronunciation of our vowels, and ought to be the most essential part of orthography. Their omission bewilders the reader: nay, I have strong reasons to believe that it is often owing to the ignorance of the writer. I myself have been sometimes at a loss how to read some words, which I never heard read or spoken, and have therefore applied to the French Academy, to be informed of their pronunciation. An accent over an *e* would have cleared the point.

Such is the use of our accents; from whence it appears, that accent in French is of a very different use than in English, wherein it denotes that *the tone,* or *stress of the voice in pronouncing is upon the syllable over which it is placed,* and therefore serves only to show the quantity of syllables. The French language has indeed its quantity: the length and shortness of syllables must be so carefully observed in pronouncing, that the mistaking a long vowel for a short one is enough, in some words, to change their signification; as *aveuglement,* which is a noun signifying *blindness* when the penultima is short, or (as the English phrase it) when the accent is over the last syllable but two; and an adverb signifying *blindly,* when *e* is long with an accent acute over it, or (according to the English) when the accent is over the last syllable

* *ei* in *treize* is long, as in *seize,* but it has the acute sound.

but one. Mr. *Rollin* observes, that the vowel *e* in these words, *sévère* severe, *évêque* bishop, *repêché* got out of water, and *revêtir* to put on, has three different sounds, and three *quantities*, of which perhaps no instance can be found in the Greek and Latin tongues; and it is by their accent, so different from the true French accent, that the people of the divers provinces in France are known. But notwithstanding what I have said of that quantity which syllables have in words, and the great help which I have laboured to give the learner to attain the harmony of the pronunciation, it is altogether impossible to become master of it, otherwise than by hearing such speak and read who have the true French accent, and are perfect masters of their language.

A late writer, who, some years ago, read Lectures on the English Language in the City, the design of which was, as far as I could apprehend, to convince his hearers and readers of this great and important point, namely, that the English, as well as other nations, spell otherwise than they pronounce; and who has been since labouring very hard to make the two Universities learn reading English; advances, in his Lectures on Elocution, that the French have no quantity, or, which is the same, that they make all their syllables long *. The contrary is so evident to any body who has the least tincture of French, that it is difficult to say which is the most amazing, the ignorance or assurance of the author, who treats of matters to which he is quite a stranger: for in those very lectures, all notions of Grammar and Oratory are confounded and mistaken. The French Language abounds in Dactyles, Iambes, Troches, Anapests, and Choriambes. The Spondees are few in comparison of the other metres, the variety of which makes it a most harmonious language. And notwithstanding its nasal sounds, and guttural *e*, which, though a little grating to the ear, an able Poet

* The best way of seeing clearly the difference between the genius of the French tongue and ours in this respect, will be to sound a number of words immediately borrowed from them, and see in what the diversity of pronunciation consists. Such as ābāndŏn, ăbandŏn; cōmbăt, cōm'băt; cōllĕge, collĕge; cōm'mun, commŏn; cōmpăgnōn, compan'iŏn; Eūrōpe, Êûrŏpe; obstăcle, ob'stăcle; sŏlīde, solid; Dōcteūr, Doc'tor; faveur, fâvoŭr; hōnneūr, hon'oŭr; &c. in most of which words the syllables are all long in the French, and short in the English, as the accents are placed on the vowels in the French, and on the consonants in the English. This it is which makes most of their words appear to an English ear to have as many accents as syllables, by obliging them to give an equal stress to them. *A Course of Lectures on Elocution, Lect. 3d, on Accent.*

and Musician can nevertheless use to advantage, it may claim the preference of all modern languages, without excepting even the Italian. But this same writer has, by an extraordinary effort of reason, found out that England never could have been, or continue to be, a flourishing nation without a revelation*. *Risum teneatis?* A true Comedian indeed!

CAPITALS or GREAT LETTERS are used,

1*st*, In the beginning of a sentence in prose, and every line or verse in poetry.

2*dly*, All Christian and proper names of persons, places, ships, rivers, arts, sciences, dignities, titles of honour and professions; as also adnouns derived from them, begin with the great letter; as *George Roi* George Rex, *un Mathématicien Anglois* an English Mathematician, *un Tailleur François* a French Taylor.

3*dly*, Such nouns in a sentence that bear some considerable, stress of the author's sense upon it, to make it the more remarkable and conspicuous. The introduction to this work contains several examples of such words. Sometimes the Italic letters are used for that purpose: tho' these are particularly appropriated to distinguish the words and sentences cited as examples of what is advanced. Those cases excepted, do not begin with a capital any common noun, as was most generally, and abusively too, done in English some years ago. At present the other extreme is prevailing, and every noun is printed in a small letter, even to the very names of countries and professions: yet is it not as absurd to write *king* and *god* with a small *k* or *g*, as *bread* and *beer* with a capital *B*? The writing the initials of the nouns mentioned in the second paragraph with a small letter, or those of appellatives with a capital, is nothing less than entirely disfiguring our writings, whether in manuscript or from the press, and totally abolishing that distinction which different characters should preserve.

* If ever a divine revelation was necessary to man, it was more particularly so to the British nation, than to any other upon earth: it was impossible without such a revelation, we should ever be, or continue to be, a great and flourishing people: and the system now nominally established amongst us as the revealed will of God, were it really believed to be such universally, and accordingly practised, would raise us above all other nations that either do, or ever did, exist upon earth, and preserve us unalterably such to the end of time, provided that system continued to retain its due influence. *British Education, Book I. Chap. XIV.*

This system was not only calculated in the most exact manner for all the purposes of society in general, but peculiarly adapted to the particular circumstances of this country above all others. *Ibidem.*

STOPS are of six sorts, whose names and shapes are thus:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *une virgule* | , | a comma | , |
| *un point-virgule* | ; | a semicolon | ; |
| *deux points* | : | a colon | : |
| *un point* | . | a period *or* full stop | . |
| *un point d'interrogation* | ? | a note of interrogation | ? |
| *un point d'admiration* | ! | a note of admiration | ! |

The use of these stops, which the French call *Punctuation*, seems pretty arbitrary, and to differ not only according to the genius of languages, but also according to the style of authors; yet as they are necessary to avoid obscurity, and prevent misconstructions, and therefore for the better understanding of what we write and read, here follows the use which the generality of the learned make of them; which use is itself grounded upon reason.

A *comma* is used to distinguish the several parts of a sentence, and give the reader a proper time for breathing; as likewise to distinguish, in enumerations, the things that are enumerated, whether they be of the same or of a different kind: as,

*Si tant de gens se plaisent à lire des bagatelles, c'est peut-être que leur esprit ayant peu de force, ils aiment les choses aisées à comprendre.*

If so many people take a pleasure in reading trifles, it is perhaps because, being of a little genius, they like things easy to understand.

*Les neuf parties du discours sont le nom, l'adnom, le pronom, le nombre, le verbe, l'adverbe, la préposition, la conjonction, & la particule.*

The nine parts of speech are these; noun, adnoun, pronoun, number, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and particle.

*On ne devient point savant, que l'on n'étudie constamment, méthodiquement, & avec application.*

One cannot get learning without studying steadily, methodically, and with application.

A *semicolon* is used likewise to distinguish a part of a sentence of a pretty good length, but in such a manner, that the remaining part of the sentence is not necessary to make a complete sense, which is perfect at the semicolon: as,

*Le siècle d'Auguste a tellement été celui des excellens Poëtes, qu'ils ont servi de modèles à tous les autres; cependant il n'a point produit de Poëtes tragiques.*

The Augustan Age has in such a manner been that of excellent Poets, that they have served as models to all others; yet it has produced no tragic writers.

A *colon* marks a sense that seems to be complete, but so that something may still be added to it. The colon and semicolon may sometimes indeed be used promiscuously; but when the sentence is tolerably long, or the period composed of four or five sentences, one must observe to make the pauses in the order of the aforesaid stops; finishing by the full stop, when the sense of the sentence is quite out. More examples would be needless.

A note of *interrogation* is used when a question is asked; as, *Quelle heure est-il?* What o'clock is it?

A note of *admiration* is used when we express our wonder or admiration of something; as, *O temps! O mœurs!* O times! O manners!

There are besides some other figures in writing: as,

PARENTHESIS, which is a distinct sentence interposed in the main sentence within these two figures ( ), which being left out, the sense of the sentence is entire. If the occasional sentence is a short one, it is not necessary to use the two aforesaid figures, but only to inclose it in two commas. But the parenthesis is of no use in French, because no long occasional sentence is suffered in the style.

INDEX ☞, the fore-finger pointing, signifies that passage to be very remarkable against which it is placed.

OBELISK (†) and ASTERISK (*) are used to refer the reader to some remark in the margin, or at the foot of the page. And several stars set together *** signify that there is something wanting, defective, or immodest in that passage of the author. In dictionaries, *Obelisk* commonly denotes a word to be obsolete. or little used.

QUOTATION (") or a double comma turned, is put at the beginning and end of such lines as are quoted out of another author in his own words.

SECTION or Division (§) is used in subdividing a chapter or book into lesser parts.

PARAGRAPH (¶) is the part of a section or chapter, comprehending several sentences under one head or subject.

CARET (^) is placed underneath a line between two words, to denote that some letter or syllable, or word, has, by inadvertence, been left out in writing or printing. Several points ....., or a *dash* ——, denotes a reticence, or a sense that is imperfect.

ABBREVIATIONS *sometimes used in writing and printing, especially in foreign Gazettes.*

| | |
|---|---|
| S. M. | Sa Majesté, *his* or *her Majesty.* |
| L. M. | Leurs Majestés, *their Majesties.* |
| S. M. Imp. | Sa Majesté Impériale, *his* or *her Imperial Majesty* |
| L M. Imp. | Leurs Majestés Impériales, *their Imperial Majesties.* |
| S. M. T. C. | Sa Majesté très-Chrétienne, *his most Christian Majesty.* |
| S. M. Cath. | Sa Majesté Catholique, *his Catholic Majesty.* |
| S. M. Brit. | Sa Majesté Britannique, *his* or *her Britannic Majesty.* |
| S. M. Pruss. | Sa Majesté Prussienne, *his Prussian Majesty.* |
| S. M. Polon. | Sa Majesté Polonoise, *his Polish Majesty.* |
| S. A. R. | Son Altesse Royale, *his* or *her Royal Highness.* |
| S. A. E. | Son Altesse Electorale, *his Electoral Highness.* |
| S. A. S. | Son Altesse Sérénissime, *his most Serene Highness* |
| L. N. & H. P. | Leurs Nobles & Hautes Puissances, *their High Mightinesses.* |
| S. E. | Son Excellence, *his* or *her Excellence.* |
| S. S. | Sa Sainteté, *his Holiness.* |
| S. Emin. | Son Eminence, *his Eminence.* |
| V. S. | Vieux Style, *Old Style.* |
| N. S. | Nouveau Style, *New Style.* |
| J. C. | Jésus-Christ, *Jesus Christ.* |
| N. D. | Notre-Dame, *Our Lady.* |
| C. P. | Constantinople. |
| M$^{r.}$ | Monsieur, *Sir* or *Master.* |
| M$^{de.}$ *or* M$^{e.}$ | Madame, *Madam* or *Mistress.* |
| M$^{lle.}$ | Mademoiselle, *Miss* or *Madam.* |
| Mess. *or* MM. | Messieurs, *Gentlemen, Masters, Messieurs.* |
| MS. | Manuscript, *Manuscript.* |
| Sept. *or* 7$^{bre.}$ | Septembre, *September.* |
| Oct. 8$^{bre.}$ | Octobre, *October.* |
| Nov. 9$^{bre.}$ | Novembre, *November.* |
| Déc. x$^{bre.}$ | Décembre, *December.* |

## *A* LIST *of the words wherein* h *is*

| *aspirated.* | | *not aspirated* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ha ! | *oh ! ah !* | habile, | *fit, able.* |
| habler, | *to romance, tell stories.* | habiller, | *to clothe.* |
| hablerie, | *romancing.* | s'habiller, | *to dress oneself.* |
| hableur, | *a romancer, a liar.* | habit, | *a suit of clothes.* |
| hache, | *axe.* | habiter, | *to inhabit.* |
| hacher, | *to mince.* | habitable, | *inhabitable.* |
| hachette, | *hatchet.* | habitant, | *inhabitant.* |
| hachis, | *chopped meat.* | habitude, | *habit, custom.* |
| hachure, | *hatching.* | habitué, | *used.* |
| hachoir, | *a chopping board.* | habituel, | *habitual.* |
| hagard, | *haggard, fierce.* | haleine, | *breath.* |
| haïr, | *to hate.* | hameçon, | *a fishing-hook.* |
| haîne, | *hatred.* | harmonie, | *harmony.* |
| haïssable, | *hateful.* | hast, | *haft.* |
| haie, | *hedge.* | hebdomadaire, | *weekly.* |
| haillon, | *rag, tatter.* | héberger, | *to harbour, lodge.* |
| Hainaut, | *(a country).* | hébêter, | *to besot, make dull.* |
| haire, | *hair-shirt.* | Hébreu, | *Hebrew.* |
| halage, | *towage,* or *towing.* | Hébraïque, | |
| halbran, | *a young wild duck.* | Hécatombe, | *an hecatomb.* |
| hâle, | *drying wind,* or *weather.* | hégire, | *hegira.* |
| hâlé, | *sun-burnt.* | Hélicon, | *Helicon.* |
| halener, | *to smell one's breath.* | héliotrope. | *turn-sol.* |
| hâler, | *to tow,* or *hale.* | hellébore, | *hellebore.* |
| halle, | *market-place.* | hémisphère, | *hemisphere.* |
| halebarde, | *halberd.* | hémistiche, | *hemistich.* |
| halebardier, | *halbardier.* | hémorrhagie, | *bloody flux.* |
| haleter, | *to pant.* | hémorrhoides, | *piles.* |
| hallier, | *thicket.* | hépatique, | *hepatical.* |
| halte, | *halt.* | heptagone, | *an heptagon.* |
| hamac, | *hammock.* | herbage, | *grass, pasture.* |
| hameau, | *hamlet.* | herbe, | *herb, grass.* |
| hampe, | *the staff* or *shaft of a halberd.* | herboriste, | *an herbalist.* |
| | | héréditaire, | *hereditary.* |
| hanche, | *hip.* | hériter, | *to inherit.* |
| hanap, | *a sort of bowl.* | héritage, | *inheritance.* |
| hanneton, | *a cock-chafer.* | héritier, | *an heir* |
| hangar, | *a cart-shed.* | hérésie, | *heresy.* |
| hanter, | *to keep company with.* | hérétique, | *heretic.* |
| hapelourde, | *a false stone.* | hermaphrodite, | *hermaphrodite.* |

| *aspirated.* | | *not aspirated.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| happer, | *to snap.* | hermétique, | *hermetical.* |
| haquenée, | *ambling nag.* | hermine, | *ermine* |
| haquet, | *a dray.* | hermite, | *an hermit.* |
| hareng, | *a herring.* | hermitage, | *hermitage.* |
| harangère, | *a fish-woman.* | héroïne, | *an heroine.* |
| harangue, | *speech, oration.* | héroïque, | *heroical.* |
| haranguer, | *to make a speech.* | hésiter, | *to hesitate* |
| harangueur, | *a speech-maker.* | hésitation, | *hesitation.* |
| haras, | *stud* or *breed of horses.* | hétéroclite, | *heteroclite.* |
| harasser, | *to harass, tire.* | hétérodoxe, | *heterodox.* |
| harceler, | *to tire, teaze.* | hétérogène, | *heterogeneous.* |
| hardes, | *clothes.* | heure, | *hour* |
| hardi, | *bold, daring.* | heureux, | *happy* |
| hardiesse, | *boldness.* | heureusement, | *happily.* |
| hardimen, | *boldly.* | hexagone, | *an hexagon.* |
| hargneux | *cross, peevish.* | hexamètre, | *hexameter.* |
| haricots, | *French beans.* | hiatus, | *a gap.* |
| haricot, | *(a sort of French dish.)* | hièble, | *wall-wort.* |
| haridelle, | *a sorry horse, a jade.* | hier, | *yesterday.* |
| harnache | *to harness.* | hiéroglyphique, | *hieroglyphick.* |
| harnois, | *harness.* | hippocras, | *hippocrass.* |
| haro, | *a hue and cry.* | hypocrite, | *hypocrite,* |
| harpe, | *harp.* | hirondelle, | *a swallow.* |
| harpon, | *a harping iron.* | histoire, | *history.* |
| harpie, | *harpy.* | historien, | *historian.* |
| hart, | *a faggot-band.* | historique, | *historical.* |
| hasard* | *chance.* | histrion, | *a buffoon.* |
| hasarder, | *to venture.* | hiver, | *winter* |
| hase, | *a doe-hare,* or, *coney.* | hiverner, | *to winter.* |
| hâte, | *haste.* | hoir *and* hoirie, | *heir, inheritance.* |
| hâter, | *to hasten.* | holocauste, | *a burnt offering.* |
| se hâter, | *to make haste,* | homélie, | *an homily.* |
| hâtif, | *hasty, forward.* | homicide, | *an homicide.* |
| havage, | *hangman's fees.* | hommage, | *homage.* |
| have, | *wan, pale.* | homme, | *man.* |
| havir, | *to burn.* | homogène, | *homogeneous.* |
| havre, | *haven, harbour.* | homologuer, | *to confirm.* |
| havre-sac | *knapsac.* | homologation, | *confirmation.* |
| haubert, | *a coat of mail.* | honnête, | *honest.* |
| haut-bois | *hautboy.* | honnêtement, | *honestly.* |
| hausser, | *to raise.* | honneur, | *honour.* |

* *We also say, une chose d'hasard* a second-hand thing.

| *aspirated.* | | *not aspirated.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| hausse-col, | *a neck-piece.* | honorer, | *to honour.* |
| haut, | *high.* | honnêteté | *honesty.* |
| haut-mal, | *falling-sickness.* | honourable, | *honourable.* |
| hautain, | *haughty.* | hopital, | *hospital.* |
| hautement, | *with a loud voice.* | hospitalier, | *hospitable.* |
| hauteur*, | *height.* | hospitalité, | *hospitality.* |
| hautesse, | *Grand Signor's title.* | horizon, | *horizon.* |
| haute-contre, | *counter-tenor.* | horloge, | *a clock.* |
| hé! hem! | *(interjections).* | horloger, | *watch-maker.* |
| heaume, | *helm, helmet.* | horoscope, | *horoscope.* |
| hennir (*pron.* hanir), | *to neigh.* | horreur, | *horror.* |
| hennissement, | *neighing.* | horrible, | *horrible.* |
| hérault, | *herald.* | horriblement, | *horribly.* |
| héros, | *an hero.* | hostie, | *victim.* |
| hérisser, | *to stand on end.* | hostilité, | *hostility.* |
| hérisson | *a hedge-hog, urchin.* | hôte, | *landlord.* |
| hernie, | *rupture.* | hôtesse, | *landlady.* |
| héron, | *a heron.* | hôtel, | *a great man's house.* |
| herse, | *harrow.* | hôtellerie, | *an inn.* |
| herser, | *to harrow.* | huile, | *oil* |
| herseur, | *a harrower.* | huiler, | *to oil.* |
| hêtre, | *beech-tree.* | huileux, | *oily.* |
| heurt, | *a knocking, a hit.* | huis, | *door.* |
| heurter, | *to knock.* | huissier, | *usher, door-keeper.* |
| hibou, | *an owl.* | huit, (V. p. 59.) | *eight.* |
| le hic, | *the difficulty.* | huître, | *oyster.* |
| hideux, | *hideous, dreadful.* | humain, | *humane.* |
| hie, | *a paviour's beetle.* | humainement, | *humanely.* |
| ho! | *oh.* | humaniser, | *to tame* |
| hobereau, | *hobby.* | humaniste, | *humanist.* |
| hoçà, | *now.* | humanité, | *human nature.* |
| hoche, | *notch.* | humble, | *humble.* |
| hochement, | *shaking of the head.* | humblement, | *humbly.* |
| hocher, | *to shake.* | humecter, | *to moisten.* |
| hochepot, | *hotch-potch.* | humectation, | *moistening* |
| nochequeue, | *a wag-tail.* | humeur, | *humour* |
| hochet, | *a coral.* | humide, | *damp, moist* |
| holà, | *hold.* | humidité, | *dampness* |
| Hollande (V. p. 59.), | *Holland.* | humilier, | *to humble* |

* *We* write and pronounce *le hauteur*, though we nevertheless say in common *conversation, un homme de six pieds d'hauteur*, a man six feet high.

| *aspirated.* | | *not aspirated.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| homard, | *a large lobster.* | humiliant, | *mortifying.* |
| hongre, | *a gelding.* | humiliation, | *humiliation.* |
| Hongrie, | *Hungary.* | humilité, | *humility.* |
| honni, | *dishonoured, evil.* | hyperbole, | *hyperbole.* |
| honte, | *shame.* | hypocondre, | *hypochondriac.* |
| honteux, | *shameful.* | hypocrisie, | *hypocrisy.* |
| honteusement, | *shamefully.* | hypocrite, | *hypocrite.* |
| hoquet, | *hiccough.* | hypostase, | *hypostasis.* |
| hoqueton, | *a sort of serjeant.* | hypothéquer, | *to mortgage.* |
| horion, | *a great blow.* | hypothèque, | *a mortgage.* |
| hormis, | *but, besides.* | hyacinthe, | *a hyacinth.* |
| hors, | *out.* | hyades, | *hyades.* |
| hotte, | *scuttle, dorser.* | hydre, | *hydra.* |
| hotteur, | *one who carries a dorser.* | hydrocèle, | *a sort of watery swelling.* |
| hottée, | *a scuttle-full.* | | |
| houblon, | *hops.* | hydrographie, | *hydrography.* |
| houblonnière, | *hop ground.* | hydromancie, | *hydromancy.* |
| houe, | *hoe, a grubbing axe.* | hydromel, | *mead.* |
| houer, | *to hoe, to dig.* | hydropisie, | *dropsy.* |
| houlette, | *a crook, a sheep-hook.* | hydropique, | *hydropic.* |
| houppe, | *a puff, a tuft.* | hymen, | *hymen.* |
| houppelande, | *a great coat.* | hyménée, | *hymeneus.* |
| hourdage, | *rough-walling.* | hymne, | *hymn.* |
| hourder, | *to rough-wall.* | hypothèse, | *hypothesis.* |
| houx, | *holly.* | hyssope, | *hyssop.* |
| houspiller, | *to towse, tug.* | hystérique, | *hysteric.* |

| *aspirated.* | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| houssart, *or* housard, *or* hussart, | *a hussart.* | huguenote, | *a kind of kettle.* |
| houssaie, | *a holly grove.* | humer, | *to sup up.* |
| housse, | *case for a chair* or *bed.* | hune, | *the round top of a mast.* |
| houssoir, | *a hair-broom.* | hunier, | *top-mast.* |
| housser, | *to sweep.* | huppe, | *a whoop or hoop.* |
| houssine, | *a switch.* | huppé, | *topping.* |
| hoyau, | *a mattock.* | hure, | *the head of a wild boar.* |
| huche, | *kneading-trough, hutch.* | hurler, | *to howl.* |
| huée, | *a hollow,* or *hooting.* | hurlement, | *howling.* |
| huer, | *to hoot at.* | hutte, | *a hut.* |
| huguenot, | *huguenot.* | hutté, | *lodging in a hut.* |

# PART II.

## *Of the* PARTS *of* SPEECH.

THE French Tongue may be considered as composed of, and every word of which is comprehended under, one of the nine parts of speech following:

Noun, Adnoun, Pronoun, Number, Verb, } { Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Particle.

Of which the first five receive several variations in their terminations, and are therefore called *declinable:* the four last receive no such variations (except the *Article*), and are therefore called *indeclinable.*

## CHAP I.

### *Of* NOUNS.

THE Noun is a part of speech which serves to name every thing that can be considered, as subsisting either in nature, or in our ideas or imagination, which one can possibly speak of.—— Nouns are also called *substantives;* as *un homme* a man, *une femme* a woman, *une maison* a house, *un arbre* a tree, *&c.*

Three things called *Accidents* are to be considered in nouns; the NUMBER, the GENDER, and the extent of the sense in which they are taken, denoted by the ARTICLE.

Nouns have two numbers, the *singular* and the *plural.*

A noun is said to be of the singular number, when it denotes one thing only; as *un homme* a man, *une femme* a woman, *&c.* It is said to be of the plural, when it denotes two or more things at once; as *des hommes* men, *des femmes* women, *&c.*

### SECTION I.

#### *Of the formation of the* PLURAL *number of Nouns.*

Generally speaking, in French as in English, the plural number differs from the singular only by the addition of *s:* as,

| Sing. Numb. | | Plur. Numb. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *un homme,* | a man, | *des hommes,* | men, |
| *une maison,* | a house, | *des maisons,* | houses, |
| *un jour,* | a day, | *des jours,* | days, |
| *une dé,* | a thimble. | *des dés,* | thimbles. |

Nouns ending their singular in *s*, or *x*, have their plural alike, without any alteration or addition: as,

| Sing. Numb. | | Plur. Numb. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *le fils,* | the son, | *les fils,* | the sons, |
| *une voix,* | a voice, | *des voix,* | voices, |
| *un nez,* | a nose. | *deux nez,* | two noses. |

Nouns ending in *é* acute might formerly take indifferently for their plural either *s* or *z*, leaving out the accent of the singular, as *bonté* kindness, *bontés* or *bontez* kindnesses; which sort of spelling some authors keep to still. But the best writers keep to the general rule of forming the plural by adding *s* to the singular of nouns in *é*, reserving *ez* for the second person plural of verbs only; as *vous aimez* ye *or* you love.

In nouns ending in *nt*, it is become usual to leave out the final *t* in the plural before *s*; as *enfant* child, *enfans* children, instead of *enfants*; *prudent* prudent, *prudens*, &c. but monosyllables retain it; as *des ponts* bridges, *des dents* teeth, from *pont* and *dent*; Except *cent* and *tout*, as *deux cens hommes* two hundred men, *tous les ans* every year.

*Exceptions.*

1*st*, Nouns ending in *au* or *eau*, *eu* or *œu*, and *ieu*, take *x* instead of *s* for their plural: as,

| Sing. | | | Plur. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *chapeau,* | hat, | | *chapeaux,* | hats, |
| | *jeu,* | game, | | *jeux,* | games, |
| | *lieu,* | place, | | *lieux,* | places. |

Except the adnoun *bleu* blue, which keeps the *s*, and makes *bleus*.

Nouns in *ou* take also *x* instead of *s*: as *un chou* a cabbage, *des choux* cabbages, *le genou* the knee, *les genoux* the knees, &c. Except *trou* hole, *cou* neck, *clou* nail, *filou* pickpocket, *fou* fool, *matou* a large cat, *mou* soft, *hibou* owl, *licou* halter, and *loupgarou* a were-wolf, which follow the general rule, and make *trous*, *clous*, *matous*, &c.

2*dly*, Nouns ending in *al* and *ail*, change *al* and *ail* into *aux* for their plural: as,

| Sing. | | | Plur. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *animal,* | a living creature, | | *animaux,* | living creatures, |
| | *travail,* | work, | | *travaux,* | works. |

*ail* garlic, makes *aulx*, though very seldom used

Nevertheless these six, *bal* a ball or masquerade, *cal* (or rather *calus*) a hard skin, *carnaval* carnaval, *pal* pale (a term of heraldry), *régal* a noble treat, *bocal* a kind of vessel or bottle, follow the general rule, and make in their plural *bals*,

*bocals, cals, carnavals, pals, régals:* as also proper names in *al;* as *deux Juvenals* two Juvenals, *trois Martials* three Martials.

The following nouns in *ail* follow also the general rule:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *attirail,* | train. | *éventail,* | fan. | *portail,* | front-gate of a church. |
| *camail,* | a sort of priest-dress. | *épouvantail,* | scarecrow. | | |
| | | *gouvernail,* | helm. | *sérail,* | seraglio, |
| *détail,* | particulars. | *mail,* | mall. | | |

These two, *bercail* sheepfold, and *poitrail* the breast of a horse, have no plural. ——*Bétail* cattle, is a noun of multitude singular without a plural; as *bestiaux,* a noun plural of the same signification without singular.

These following adnouns in *al* have no plural in use for the masculine:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *austral,* | southern. | *frugal,* | frugal. | *nuptial,* | nuptial. |
| *boréal,* | northern. | *jovial,* | jovial. | *pastoral,* | pastoral. |
| *claustral,* | claustral. | *lustral,* | lustral. | *pascal,* | paschal. |
| *conjugal,* | conjugal. | *littéral,* | literal. | *total,* | total. |
| *diamétral,* | diametral. | *matinal,* | early. | *trivial,* | trivial. |
| *fatal,* | fatal. | *nasal,* | nasal. | *vénal,* | venal. |
| *filial,* | filial. | *natal,* | native. | *spécial,* | special. |
| *final,* | final. | *naval,* | naval. | *libéral,* | liberal. |

Except that we say *les arts libéraux* liberal arts, and *des cierges pascals* (large wax-tapers burnt in churches at Easter among the Roman Catholics).—Neither is *martial* warlike, used at all in the plural.

We do say *des armées navales* sea-armaments: but instead of *combats navals,* or *batailles navales,* we say *des combats sur mer.*——We say *les pseaumes pénitentiaux* the penitential psalms; but not *un pseaume pénitential* or *pénitentiel,* but *un des pseaumes pénitentiaux,* one of the penitential psalms, that adnoun being not used in the singular.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Ædly, ciel,* | heaven, | make in the plural | *cieux*,* heavens, |
| *œil,* | eye, | | *yeux,* eyes, |
| *aïeul,* | grandfather, | | *aïeux,* grandfathers, |
| *gentil-homme,* | one nobly descended (*l* is liquid), | | *gentils-hommes,* nobly descended (*l* is silent). |

* However, we say, in painting, *le ciel, les ciels;* but we mean only the air, the clouds, not the skies or heavens.

*Loy* and *loix,* as also *Roy* and *Roix,* are quite obsolete: we now-a-days spell *loi* a law, and *Roi* a king, and their plural *lois* and *Rois* are regular.

When a compound noun is formed of a noun and adnoun, both take the mark of the plural. Thus we say,

*un arc-boutant,* a buttress; *des arcs-boutans,* buttresses.
*un cerf-volant,* a paper-kite; *des cerfs-volans,* paper-kites.
*des bouts-rimés,* rhymes of verses given to fill up.
*les gardes Françoises,* the French guards.

When a compound noun is formed of a preposition and a noun, or of a verb and a noun, the noun only takes the mark of the plural. Thus we say,

*un avant-coureur,* a fore-runner; *des avant-coureurs,* fore-runners.
*un entre-sol,* an enter-sole; *des entre-sols,* enter-soles.
*un abat-jour,* a sky-light; *des abat-jours,* sky-lights.
*un cure-dent,* a tooth-picker; *des cure-dents,* tooth-pickers.
*un tourne-broche,* a jack; *des tourne-broches,* jacks.
*un garde-fou,* a rail; *des garde-fous,* rails.

When a compound noun is formed of two nouns united by a preposition, the first only must take the mark of the plural. Thus we say,

*un œil-de bœuf,* an oval window; *des œils-de-bœuf,* oval windows.

*un-ciel-de-lit*, a tester; *des ciels-de-lit*, testers.
*un jet-d'eau*, a water-spout; *des jets-d'eau*, water-spouts.
*un chef-d'œuvre*, a master-piece; *des chefs-d'œuvre*, master-pieces.
*un cul-de-lampe*, a tail-piece; *des culs-de-lampe*, tail-pieces.
*un arc-en-ciel*, a rainbow; *des arcs-en-ciel*, rainbows.

¶ I cannot help mentioning a gross mistake that has crept into the French Academy's Dictionary, and misled some modern Grammarians, who write *des chefs d'œuvres, des arc-en-ciels, des ciels-de-lits*; which implies contradiction, and even nonsense. Can the mark of the plural be affixed to a thing which is not presented as numerable?

Nouns compounded of the pronoun *mon, ma*, change *mon, ma*, into *mes* in the plural, besides the characteristic final letter of that number; as,

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *monsieur*, | master, | Plur. | *messieurs*, | gentlemen. |
| | *madame*, | madam, | | *mesdames*, | ladies. |
| | *monseigneur*, | my lord, | | *messeigneurs*, | my lords. |
| | *mademoiselle*, | miss, | | *mesdemoiselles*, | ladies. |

In all languages several nouns have no plural; such are,

1*st*, Nouns of virtues and vices; as, *la charité* charity, *la haine* hatred, *la foi* faith, *l'orgueil* pride, *&c.* so far only as they express habits; for when they express acts, they are used in the plural: as *faire des charités* to give alms.

2*dly*, Nouns of metals; as *de l'or* gold, *du cuivre* copper, *du plomb* lead, *&c.* but in another sense we say *des plombs* leaden vessels, *des fers* fetters.

3*dly*, These following:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *absinthe*, | wormwood. | *courroux*, | wrath. | *le toucher*, | feeling. |
| *artillerie*, | artillery. | *Eucharistie*, | Lord's Supper. | *repos*, | rest. |
| *attirail*, | implements. | *Extrême onction* *, | | *naturel*, | nature. |
| *bonheur*, | happiness. | *faim*, | hunger. | *noblesse*, | nobility. |
| *colère*, | anger. | *fiel*, | gall. | *pauvreté*, | poverty. |
| *gloire*, | glory. | *fumée*, | smoke. | *soif*, | thirst. |
| *honte*, | shame. | *disette*, | scarcity. | *sang*, | blood. |
| *jeunesse*, | youth. | *fuite*, | flight. | *salut*, | salvation. |
| *lait*, | milk. | *enfance*, | infancy. | *sommeil*, | sleep. |
| *mollesse*, | effeminacy. | *la vue*, | the sight. | *total*, | whole. |
| *le prochain*, | our neighbour. | *l'ouie*, | hearing. | *vieillesse*, | old age. |
| *réputation*, | reputation. | *l'odorat*, | smelling. | *virilité*, | manhood. |
| *renommée*, | fame. | *le goût*, | the taste. | *miel*, | honey. |

* One of the seven sacraments of the church of *Rome*.

As also infinitives and adjectives used substantively; as *le boire & le manger* eating and drinking, *l'utile & l'agréable* profit and pleasure.

4*thly*, Nouns of number have no plural in French; or rather, though they are plural by their nature, except *un*, yet they do not take the final *s* which characterises that number: as *trois deux* three twos, *deux quatre* two fours, *quatre six*, four sixes, *dix mille* ten thousand, *&c.* Except *vingt, cent*, and *million*; as *six vingts hommes* six score men, *deux cens écus* two hundred crowns, *&c.*——*oui* and *non* used substantively, have no plural neither; as, *je ne me soucie ni de vos* oui *ni de vos* non, I care neither for your *yea*'s nor your *no*'s.

Proper names have no plural, unless they are used metaphorically.

Thus we say, *les deux Corneille, les Turenne, les Lamoignon, &c.* but we say, *ils ont les Césars & les Alexandres de leur siècle*, they are the Cesars and Alexanders of their age.

The following nouns have only the plural in use:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Alpes*, | Alps. | *délices*, | delight. | *matériaux*, | materials. |
| *annales*, | annals. | *dépens*, | cost. | * *matines*, | matins. |
| *ancêtres*, | ancestors. | *écrouelles*, | the king's evil. | *mœurs*, | manners. |
| *aïeux*, | forefathers. | *entraves*, | shackles. | *mouchettes*, | snuffers. |
| *aguets (être aux)*, | to be upon the watch. | *entrailles*, | entrails. | *munitions*, | ammunitions †. |
| *arrérages*, | arrears. | *entrefaites*, | transactions. | *nippes*, | goods, things. |
| *assises*, | assises. | *étrivières*, | soundly lashing. | * *nones*, | the nones. |
| *atours*, | apparel. | *épousailles*, | espousals. | *obsèques*, | obsequies. |
| *avives* | vives (in horses, a disease). | *fiançailles*, | betrothing. | *pleurs*, | tears. |
| *béatilles*, | dainties. | *funérailles*, | funerals. | *proches*, | relations. |
| *besicles*, | spectacles. | *fonts*, | the font for christening. | *prémices*, | first-fruits. |
| *broussailles*, | briars. | *frais*, | expenses. | *Pyrénées*, | Pyrenees. |
| *Calendes*, | Calends. | *gallions*, | galleons. | *représailles*, | reprisals. |
| *catacombes*, | catacombs. | *gens*, | people. | *rets*, | a net. |
| *ciseaux*, | scissars. | *hardes*, | clothes. | *rogations*, | rogation-day. |
| * *complies*, | closing prayers of the day. | *hémorrhoïdes*, | piles. | *stigmates*, | prints, marks. |
| *confins*, | confines. | *immondices*, | filth. | *ténèbres*, | darkness. |
| *confitures*, | sweet-meats. | * *laudes*, | morning-prayers. | * *vêpres*, | vespers. |
| *décombres*, | rubbish. | *limites*, | limits. | *vergettes*, | a brush. |
| | | *mânes*, | the ghost of one deceased. | *vivres*, | victuals. |

* *Matines*, *laudes*, *nones*, *vêpres*, and *complies*, are part of the divine service, called in the church of *Rome* the *Canonical Hours*.

† Except that we say *du pain de munition*, ammunition-bread.

The following nouns, merely Latin, are of both numbers:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *des* alleluia, | | *huit* in-octavo, | eight octavo's. |
| *des* libera, | (church terms). | *cinq* pater & *cinq* ave, | five pater-nosters. |
| *des* alibi, | (a law term). | *des* ave, | *des* ave Maria. |
| *des* alinea, | (new paragraphs). | *des* orémus, | collects |
| *des* accessit, | (certificates). | *des* Te Deum, | Te Deum's. |
| *de petits* item, | small articles. | *ses* ergò, | his therefore's. |
| *des* duo, *des* trio, *des* quatuor, | | And *des* a-parte, | aside (what an actor speaks aside upon the stage). |
| *trois* errata, | three errata's. | We likewise say, | |
| *quatre* duplicata, | four duplicata's. | *des in-douze.* | duodecimo, in twelves. |
| *des* Acacia, | Acacias. | *des in-seize*, | sixteens. |
| *des* exeat, | (leave to go out). | *des in dix-huit*, | eighteens. |
| *des* fac-totum, | people who do all in a family. | *des in-vingt-quatre*, | twenty-fours. |
| *trois* in-folio, | three folio's. | *des* a, *des* b, *des* i, | a's, b's, i's, &c. |
| *six* in-quarto, | six quarto's. | | |

## SECTION II.

### *Of the* GENDER *of Nouns.*

Nouns are either of the *masculine* or of the *feminine* gender.

Nouns relating to males, or *he's*, are masculine; and those relating to females, or *she's*, are feminine: *as*,

| Masc. Gend. | | Fem. Gend. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *un Dieu,* | a God, | *une Déese,* | a Goddess, |
| *un Roi,* | a King, | *une Reine,* | a Queen, |
| *le Jupiter de Phidias,* | Phidias's Jupiter, | *la Diane d'Ephèse,* | the Diana of Ephesus, |
| *un male,* | a male, a cock, or a buck, | *une femelle,* | a female, hen, or doe, |
| *un chien,* | a dog, | *une chienne,* | a bitch, |
| *un cheval,* | a horse, | *une jument,* | a mare. |

Except these two, *gardes* guards, and *troupes* troops, which are feminine, though they relate to men; as *les gardes Françoises sont de bonnes troupes,* the French guards are good troops. Except also *tendron,* which is masculine, though it relates to a girl; as *un jeune tendron,* a young lass.

Family names, common to both sexes, are masculine or feminine, according as they are said of a man or woman; as *le savant Dacier,* the learned Mr. Dacier, *la savante Dacier,* the learned Madam Dacier.

In other nouns the gender is known by their terminations.

Nouns of the following terminations are of the feminine gender.

1*st*, Nouns in *tié* and *té;* as *une amitié* a friendship, *la santé* health, *&c.*

Except of those in *té* these eight or nine:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *un arrêté de compte,* | a settled account. | *un traité,* | a treaty. |
| *le côté,* | the side. | *du thé,* | tea. |
| *un été,* | a summer. | *le bénédicité,* | (the first word of the prayer said by the Roman Catholics before their meals. |
| *un comité,* | a committee. | | |
| *un comté,* | a county *or* earldom. | | |
| *un pâté,* | a pye. | | |

2*dly*, Nouns in *ion;* as *une action* an action, *une passion* a passion, *&c.*

Except these twenty-four:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *un alérion,* | an eaglet. | *un horion,* | a blow. |
| *l'alcyon,* | the halcyon. | *un lampion,* | a sort of lamp for illuminations in rejoicing nights. |
| *un bastion,* | a bastion. | *un million,* | a million. |
| *le bestion,* | the head of a ship. | *le morion,* | a sort of military punishment. |
| *un camion,* | a short pin. | *un morpion,* | a crab-louse. |
| *un champion,* | a champion. | *l'Orion,* | Orion (a constellation). |
| *le chorion,* | the chorion. | *un pion,* | a man at chess *or* draughts. |
| *le croupion,* | the rump. | *le Septentrion,* | the North. |
| *un embrion,* | an embryo. | *un scion,* | a sprig. |
| *un fanion,* | a standard. | *un scorpion,* | a scorpion. |
| *un gabion,* | a gabion. | *le talion,* | retaliation. |
| *les gallions,* | the galleons. | | |
| *gavion,* (a low word,) | throat. | | |

N.B. Crayon *and* rayon, *which are masculine, do not fall under this rule.*

*3dly,* Nouns in *zon* and *son,* after a vowel or diphthong; as *une saison* a season, *une prison* a prison, *&c.* Except these eight:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *le blason,* | heraldry. | *un oison,* | a young goose. |
| *un frison,* | an under-petticoat. | *un peson,* | a steel-yard. |
| *un gason,* | a green plot. | *du poison,* | poison. |
| *l'horizon,* | the horizon. | *un tison,* | a brand. |

N. B. *Nouns in* sson *don't fall under this rule.*

*4thly,* Nouns in *eur,* as also in *eure:* as *une peur* a fear, *la chaleur* heat, *une heure,* an hour, *&c.*

Except of the first these twelve:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *un bonheur,* | good luck. | *l'Equateur,* | the Equator. |
| *un malheur,* | a misfortune. | *l'honneur,* | honour. |
| *le cœur,* | the heart. | *un déshonneur,* | a dishonour. |
| *un chœur,* | a choir *or* chorus. | *le labeur,* | the labour. |
| *l'intérieur,* | the inward part. | *le lecteur,* | the reader. |
| *l'extérieur,* | the outside. | *le faiseur* (pron. *feseur*), | the maker. |

And all other nouns in *eur,* derived from verbs, which change *eur* into *euse* for their feminine, or are only applicable to men; *un docteur* a doctor, *un voleur, une voleuse,* a thief, *&c.*

Except also *pleurs* tears, which is masculine.—Of nouns in *eure,* except these three, *du beurre* butter, *le leurre* a lure (for a hawk), and *du feurre* straw.

*5thly,* Nouns ending in *x:* as *la paix* peace, *une noix* a walnut, *de la chaux* lime, *&c.*

Except these twelve:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *du borax,* | borax. | *le reflux,* | the ebb. |
| *le choix,* | the choice. | *un lynx,* | a lynx. |
| *un crucifix,* | a crucifix. | *le prix,* | the price. |
| *le faix,* | the weight. | *le Styx,* | the Stygian river. |
| *du houx* | holly. | *du storax,* | a sweet smelling gum. |
| *un phénix* | a phœnix. | And the letter *x.* | |
| *le flux,* | the flowing. | | |

*6thly,* The following nouns, which cannot be brought under a particular class of termination:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *une brebis,* | a sheep, | *de la glu,* | bird-lime, | *la nuit,* | the night |
| *une clé* or *clef,* | a key, | *la gent,* | the race *or* nation*, | | (but not *minuit,* midnight†), |
| *de la chair,* | flesh, | | | | |
| *une cour,* | a court, | *la hart d'un fagot,* | a band for a faggot, | *la loi,* | the law, |
| *une cuiller,* | a spoon, | | | *la soif,* | thirst, |
| *une dent,* | a tooth, | *une iris,* | a crocus, | *une souris,* | a mouse, |
| *une dot,* | a portion, | *une part,* | a share, | *une tour,* | a tower |
| *de l'eau,* | water, | *la peau,* | the skin, | | (but not *un tour* a turn), |
| *la faim,* | hunger, | *une main,* | a hand, | | |
| *la fin,* | the end, | *la merci,* | the mercy, | *une tribu,* | a tribe, |
| *une fois,* | a time, | *la mer,* | the sea, | *la vertu,* | virtue, |
| *la foi,* | faith, | *la mort,* | death, | *une vis,* | a screw. |
| *une forêt,* | a forest, | *la nef,* | the body of a church, | | |
| *une fourmi,* | an ant, | | | | |

* *la gent* is a burlesque sort of word, used only in poetry.

† *la nuit passée,* last night; *il est minuit sonné,* it has struck twelve (at night).

As to the other nouns ending in *e* not sounded, as there are as many of them of the masculine gender as of the feminine, and both in a very great number, I shall set down in the *Appendix* a list of all the nouns masculine the end in *e* not sounded, as also another of those which admit either gender, according to their several significations. One must only observe here, that the nouns of the following termination, with *e* not sounded, are of the feminine gender.

1*st*, Nouns ending in any vowel or diphthong before *e* not sounded: such as these terminations, *ée, aie, ie* and *uie, oie* and *oye, oue* and *ue:* as *une armée* an army, *une plaie* a wound, *de la soie* silk, *la joie* joy, *une ortie* a nettle, *la pluie* the rain, *une roue* a wheel, *de la morue* cod-fish, *&c.*

Except from nouns in *ée* these twenty:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *l'Apogée,* | Apogee. | *le nymphée,* | Nympheum. |
| *un caducée,* | a caduceum. | *le périgée,* | perigee. |
| *un colisée,* | a collisæum. | *le périnée,* | the perinæum. |
| *le coryphée,* | the chief. | *le Pyrée,* | a celebrated haven of Athens. |
| *l'Empyrée,* | the empyrean heaven. | | |
| *les champs élysées,* | the elysian fields. | *les Pyrénées,* | the Pyreneans. |
| *le gynécée,* | Gynæceum. | *un spondée,* | a spondee. |
| *un hyménée,* | marriage, wedlock. | *un trochée,* | a trochee. |
| *le Lycée,* | the Lyceum. | *les testacées,* and *les crustacées,* | testaceous and crustaceous fish. |
| *un mausolée,* | a mausoleum. | | |
| *le Musée,* | the Museum. | *un trophée,* | a trophy. |

And these twelve from those in *ie, oie,* and *ue.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Aphélie,* | Aphelion. | *un pavie,* | a nectarine |
| *un génie,* | a genius. | *le périhélie,* | perihelium. |
| *un incendie,* | a conflagration. | *un parhélie,* | (*mock-sun*). |
| *le Messie,* | Messiah. | *le bain-marie,* | balneum mariæ. |
| *un menstrue,* | a menstruum. | *le foie,* | the liver. |
| *un parapluie,* | an umbrella. | *du pou de soie,* | paduasoy. |

2*dly*, Nouns ending in *ance* or *anse, ence* or *ense;* as *une balance* a pair of scales, *une anse* an ear or handle (of a pot), *la conscience* conscience, *une défense* a defence, *&c.* Except *le silence* silence.

3*dly*, Nouns ending in *aille, eille,* and *elle:* as *de la paille* straw, *une oreille* an ear, *une chandelle* a candle, *&c.* Except *un cure-oreille* an ear picker, and *un perce-oreille* an ear-wig: but those in *ail eil,* and *el* are masculine

4*thly*, All nouns ending in *ace* and *asse:* as *de la glace* ice, *une paillasse* a straw-bed, *&c.*

*5thly,* Nouns ending in *ile* and *ille, uille, üille,* and *euille, ise,* and *ise* or *ize:* as *une ville* a city, *une anguille* an eel, *une aiguille* a needle, *une feuille* a leaf, *de la réglisse* liquorice, *une église* a church, *&c.*

Except these twelve from those in *ile* and *ille:*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *un asyle,* | an asylum, a sanctuary. | *un domicile,* | an abode. |
| *le cadrille,* | quadril. | *l'évangile,* | the gospel. |
| *le chyle,* | the chyle. | *spadille forcé,* | spadil forced. |
| *un codicile,* | a codicil. | *un style,* | a style. |
| *codille,* | codil. | *un ustensile,* | an utensil. |
| *un crocodile,* | a crocodile. | *un vaudeville,* | a ballad. |

And these two from those in *euille, du chèvre-feuille* honeysuckle, and *un porte-feuille* a pocket-book.

*6thly,* Nouns ending in

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *igue,* | as | *une brigue,* | a cabal. |
| *ougue,* | | *la fougue,* | the fury. |
| *oure,* | | *la bravoure,* | valour. |
| *ine,* | | *une cuisine,* | a kitchen. |
| *une,* | | *la rancune,* | grudge. |
| *ure,* | | *une ordure,* | filth. |
| *ière,* | | *une tabatière,* | a snuff-box. |
| *yre,* | | *une lyre,* | a lyre. |

Except from nouns in *ure* *un bon ou mauvais augure,* a good or bad omen; *un murmure,* murmur; *du mercure,* mercury; *un parjure,* perjury; and *les Colures,* Coluri.

And from those in *ire, le délire,* delirium; *un navire,* a ship; *un empire,* an empire; *du porphyre,* porphyry.

Though the aforesaid observations upon the nouns feminine might be sufficient to know the gender of the other nouns; yet, for a further help in this matter, I shall also add the terminations of those in the masculine gender.

*1st,* All nouns in *ail* and *al, eil* and *el;* as *un bail* a lease, *le carnaval* the carnaval, *le soleil* the sun, *un autel* an altar, *&c.* as also all nouns whose last syllable is *a* followed by one or many consonants whatever; as *un a* an a *, *un sopha* a sofa, *un sac* a sack, *un art* an art, *un almanach* an almanac, *un plat* a dish, *&c.* Except *une part* a share, and *la hart* the band of a faggot.

* *The letters of the alphabet are masculine, except these seven consonants,* f, h, l, m, n, r, s.

*2dly,* All nouns ending in the nasal *an,* under whatever combination of letters that sound may be considered, as under *en, anc, ant, ang, ens, ent, ment,* and *tent:* as *un an* a year, *un enfant* a child, *un accent* an accent, *le temps* the time, *&c.* Except *une dent* a tooth.

*3dly,* All nouns ending in *œil, ueil,* and *euil;* as *un œil* an eye, *un deuil* a mourning, *un accueil,* a reception, *&c.*

*4thly,* All nouns ending in *é* acute without *t* before; as *du caffé* coffee; as also those in *e* followed by any consonant, with those in *ier; ais* and *ois, air* and *oir, ait:* as *du bled* or *blé,* wheat; *un bec,* a beak; *du sel,* salt; *un arrêté,* a proclamation; *de l'acier,* steel; *le biais,* the obliquity; *un anchois,* an anchovy; *un mouchoir,* an handkerchief; *un attrait,* a bait; *un balai,* a broom, *&c.* Except *une clé* or *clef,* a key; *une cuiller,* a spoon; *la forêt,* the forest; *la mer,* the sea; *la soif,* thirst; and *la nef,* the body of a church.

*5thly,* All nouns in *eu* and *ieu;* as *un aveu,* a confession; *un lieu,* a place, *&c.*

*6thly,* Nouns in *au* or *eau;* as *un chapeau,* a hat; *un couteau,* a knife, *&c.* *Except de l'eau,* water; and *une peau,* a skin.

7*thly*, Nouns whose last syllable is *o*, followed by any consonant; as *de l'or*, gold; *un croc*, a hook; *un pot*, a pot; *le bord*, the brim; *un fort*, a fort, *&c.* Except *une dot*, a portion; and *la mort*, death.

8*thly*, Nouns whose last syllable is *i* or *ui*, followed by any consonant; as *un abri*, a shelter; *un Lundi* *, one Monday; *le lit*, the bed; *un ennui*, a weariness; *un puits*, a well; *du bruit*, a noise, *&c.* Except *une brebis*, a sheep; *une fourmi*, an ant; *la merci*, mercy; *la nuit*, the night; *une souris*, a mouse; *une vis*, a screw.

* *Nouns* of days, months, *and* seasons, *are masculine; as* un beau Dimanche, *a fine Sunday;* Lundi dernier, *last Monday;* le mois prochain, *the next month;* un été sec & chaud, *a dry and hot summer*, &c. *Except* automne, *which is of both genders*, une automne froide & pluvieuse, *a cold and rainy autumn. But when nouns of months take* mi *before them, they are feminine, as* la mi-juin, *Midsummer*; la mi-Août (mi-ou), *the middle of August.*

*Nouns of holidays are feminine*, la Toussaint, *All-Saints;* la Saint-Jean, *Midsummer;* la Saint-Martin, *Martinmas*, &c. *except* Noël *and* Pâques: Noël *takes no article. See in the Appendix the observation concerning* Pâque.

9*thly*, Nouns ending in *ain*, *aim*, *in*, *ins*, *uin*, *oin*, and *ien*; as *un bain*, a bath; *du vin*, wine; *un béguin*, a bigging; *du foin*, hay; *du bien*, wealth, *&c.* Except *la main*, the hand; *la fin*, the end; and *la faim*, hunger.

10*thly*, Nouns ending in *ou*, either alone or followed by a consonant; as *un bijou*, a jewel; *un coup*, a blow; *un détour*, a by-way; *le cours*, the course; *le bourg*, the borough, *&c.* Except *la cour*, the court; and *une tour*, a tower.

11*thly*, Nouns ending in *sson*, or *çon*, and all those of the nasal *on*, through all its combinations that have not *i* or *s* or *z* before *on*; as *le poisson*, the fish; *un poinçon*, a bodkin; *un bâton*, a stick; *un bourgeon*, a bud; *du bouillon*, broth, &c. Except of nouns in *sson*, *la boisson*, drinking; and *la moisson*, a harvest; and of the others, *une chanson*, a song; *la façon*, the making; *une leçon*, a lesson; *la rançon*, the ransom; which are feminine, as nouns in *son*.

12*thly*, Nouns whose last syllable terminates in *u*, or have the *u* of the last syllable followed by any consonant; as *le but*, the aim; *un aqueduc*, an aqueduct; *le tribut*, the tribute; *du pus*, matter out of a wound, *&c.* Except *de la glu*, birdlime; *la vertu*, virtue; and *une tribu*, a tribe.

*Lastly*, Nouns ending in *age*, *uge*, *acle*, *ême*, *aume*, *ôme*, *isme*, *iste*; as *un héritage*, an heritage; *le déluge*, the flood; *un tabernacle*, a tabernacle; *le baptême*, baptism; *du baume*, balm; *un dôme*, a cupola; *le catéchisme*, catechism; *un antagoniste*, an antagonist. Except these nine, *une cage*, a cage; *une image*, an image; *une page*, a page; *la rage*, the rage; *une plage*, a flat shore; *de la crême*, cream; *la paume*, the palm of the hand; *une list*, a list; *une piste*, a track.

Observe further, that nouns of countries, kingdoms, counties, and provinces, ending in *e* not sounded, are feminine; as *l'Europe*, Europe; *la France*, France; *la Bretagne*, Britain, *&c.* except this one, *le Mexique*, Mexico. The others are masculine; as *le Danemark* Denmark, *le Portugal* Portugal, *le Chili* Chili, *le Poitou*, &c. Those of cities, towns, and boroughs, most commonly follow the gender of their terminations; but in case of doubt, you need only add the word *ville* to them, and so make them feminine. Thus, instead of saying *Londres est bien grand* or *grande*, say *Londres est une ville bien grande*; which is the best manner of expression, even with respect to those nouns of cities whose gender (feminine) is certain; as *la Rochelle est une belle ville*, rather than *la Rochelle est belle*, Rochelle is a fine city; *la Haye est un gros bourg* ou *un village bien peuplé*, and not *la Haye est grande*, or *bien peuplée*, the Hague is a large or populous place.

Names of mountains are masculine: as *le Caucase* Caucasus, *le Parnasse* Parnassus, *&c.* Except *les Alpes couvertes de neige*, the Alps covered with snow.

Names of winds are masculine; as *le Sud* the South, *le Nord* the North, *un Zéphyr* a Zephyrus, *&c.* Except *la Bise* the North-east wind, and *la Tremontane*.

In poetry, *Zéphire*, a god, is spelt so, and goes without the article.

As to the names of rivers, they follow their termination; as *le Rhin* the Rhine, *le Pô*, *le Nil* the Nile, *la Seine*, *la Tamise* the Thames, *la Moselle* the Moselle: but as there are a good many of the masculine gender, tho' ending in *e* not sounded, as *le Rhône*, *le Tibre*, *le Danube*, &c. I have set in the Vocabulary the

names of the most noted rivers; and besides, exact lists of animals, birds, fishes, &c. trees, plants, and flowers, whose names are mostly used.

*Comté* a county or earldom, and *Duché* a duchy, formerly used in both genders, are now masculine: but we say in the feminine *la Franche Comté* (the County of Burgundy), and *une Vicomté* a Viscounty, as likewise *une Comté-Pairie*, and *une Duché-Pairie*.

*Epithalame* epithalamium, is masculine; but *épigramme* an epigram, and *thériaque* treacle, are feminine.

*Couple* is feminine in the signification of number only; as *une couple d'œufs* a couple of eggs: but when it comprehends besides another accessory idea, as of union, &c. it is masculine; as *un beau couple* a fine couple (meaning two married people).

*Amour* love, and *orgue* organ, are masculine in the singular, and feminine in the plural: as,

Sing. { *l'amour divin*, the love of God. / *un bel orgue*, a fine organ. } Plur. { *de folles amours*, foolish amours. / *de belles orgues*, fine organs. }

But *orgue* is very seldom used in the singular; and *amours*, signifying cupids, are masculine; as *les amours rians & badins la suivent par-tout*, wanton cupids follow her every where.

*anagramme*, anagram, / *énigme*, an enigma, / *épitaphe*, an epitaph, / *épithète*, an epithet, / *équivoque*, equivocation, / *horoscope*, horoscope, } are feminine. *hymne*, hymn, / *dialecte*, dialect, / *épisode*, an episode, } are masculine.

Moreover, adjectives used substantively; nouns of number, ordinal, proportional, and distributive; infinitives, adverbs, and prepositions also, taken substantively, are masculine; as,

*le rouge*, red. / *le noir*, black. / *le nécessaire*, what is requisite, &c. / *un deux*, a two. / *un quatre*, a four. / *un cinq*, a five. / *un cinquième*, a fifth. / *un dixième*, a tenth. / *le double*, the double. / *un triple*, the treble. / *le boire*, drinking. / *le manger*, eating. / *le devant*, the fore-part. / *le derrière*, the hind-part, &c. / *le peu que je sais*, the little I know.

Except that we make *antique* feminine (*une antique*), *statue* or *médaille* being understood. We also say in mathematics, *une courbe*, a curve; *une perpendiculaire*, a perpendicular; *une tangente*, a tangent; *ligne* being likewise understood.

Nouns compound of a noun and a verb, are likewise masculine. Thus tho' *oreille*, *noisette*, *broche*, &c. are feminine, yet we say *un cure-oreille*, an ear-picker; *un casse-noisette*, a nut-cracker; *un tourne-broche*, a jack; *un passe-velours*, a velvet-flower. Except *une garderobe* a wardrobe.

## SECTION III.

### *Of the* ARTICLE.

The noun performs divers offices in speech. Sometimes it expresses the subject of which something is spoken, and sometimes the object which particularises that which is said of the subject.

At other times, we consider in the noun the relation which one thing bears to another, or to an action: as *le Roi aime le peuple*, the king loves the people; *le peuple aime le Roi*, the people love the king; *la sagesse du Roi*, the king's wisdom; *présenter un*

*placet au Roi*, to present a petition to the king; *ressembler au Roi*, to be like the king; *un présent pour le Roi* a present for the king; *aller chez le Roi*, to go to the king, *&c.*

Those different states or relations of the noun, those various respects in which it may be considered, are denoted in Latin by a variety of terminations in the noun, which they call *cases*. In French, as well as in English, they are denoted by the place which the noun has in the sentence, and by a particular sort of words called prepositions. The noun, considered as the subject, comes before verb, and after it, when considered as the object. The abovementioned examples, where the same nouns are used in different states, ought to make this plain, without any other illustration. *Roi* is subject in the first, and object in the second: on the contrary *peuple* is object in one and subject in the other. In the other examples, the noun is not used either as subject or object, but its other relations to the preceding noun or verb are denoted by the words immediately coming before it: things being always in relation to each other, either of union or separation, fitness or unfitness, quality, effect, cause, end, order, dependence, situation, *&c.*

Therefore there are no such things as cases and declensions in our languages, wherein the several states or relations of the noun are marked by the place which they keep in the sentence, and by prepositions. But as none of them denotes so many various relations as these two *de* and *à*, which are contracted with the article in two particular cases, though each of them remain the same in English, I will set down examples of the ways of considering the noun in French, with respect to its chief relations, for method's sake only, and to accustom the beginner to that contraction, which is a little puzzling at first.

The article is a particle established to specify the extent of the sense in which the noun is taken.

| | | *Sing. Numb.* | | | *Plur. Numb.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *M. & F.* | *Masc. & Fem.* | |
| *First* | *State* | le, | la, | l' | les, | *the.* |
| *Second* | *State* | du, | de la, | de l' | des, | *of the.* |
| *Third* | *State* | au, | à la, | à l' | aux, | *to the.* |

The article agrees with the noun in gender and number, *the* being in French *le*, for the masculine gender; *la* for the feminine, when the noun begins with a consonant or *h* aspirate; the letter *l'* only, with the elision, when it begins with a vowel or *h* mute; and *les* for the plural number, with all sorts of nouns.

The preposition *de* (in English *of, from*) and *à* (to) are contracted with the article, when the noun is masculine, and begins with a consonant or *h* aspirate; so that, instead of *de le*, we say *du* (for *of the, from the*), and instead of *à le* we say *au* (for *to the*), and likewise we say, with all plural nouns, *des* instead of *de les*, and *aux* instead *à les*.

Therefore, to make the article agree with the noun, consider, 1°. Whether the noun is masculine or feminine. 2°. Whether it begins with a consonant or with a vowel: and if with *h*, whether that *h* is aspirate or mute. 3°. Whether or no the sense of the noun is limited. 4°. Whether, in the limited sense, the noun is attended with an adnoun, and which of the two comes first. 5°. Whether the noun is common or proper: proper names taking no article.

*1st. Example of a noun masculine beginning with a consonant.*

| *States.* | *Singular Number.* | | *Plural Number.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* & 4*th.* | le Prince, | *the Prince.* | les Princes, | *the Princes.* |
| 2*d.* | du Prince, | *of the Prince.* | des Princes, | *of the Princes.* |
| 3*d.* | au Prince, | *to the Prince.* | aux Princes, | *to the Princes.* |

¶ N. B. The first state answers to the nominative of the Latins; the 2d, to their genitive and ablative; and the 4th, to their accusative: in French the 4th state of nouns is like the 1st.

*2d. Example of a noun masculine beginning with* h *aspirate.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* & 4*th.* | le héros, | *the hero.* | les héros, | *the heroes.* |
| 2*d.* | du héros, | *of the hero.* | des héros | *of the heroes.* |
| 3*d.* | au héros, | *to the hero.* | aux héros, | *to the heroes.* |

*3d. Example of a noun masculine beginning with a vowel.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* & 4*th.* | l'oiseau, | *the bird.* | les oiseaux, | *the birds.* |
| 2*d.* | de l'oiseau, | *of the bird.* | des oiseaux, | *of the birds.* |
| 3*d.* | à l'oiseau, | *to the bird.* | aux oiseaux, | *to the birds.* |

*4th. Example of a noun masculine beginning with* h *mute.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* & 4*th.* | l'homme, | *the man.* | les hommes, | *the men.* |
| 2*d.* | de l'homme, | *of the man.* | des hommes, | *of the men.* |
| 3*d.* | à l'homme, | *to the man.* | aux hommes, | *to the men.* |

*5th. Example of a noun feminine beginning with a consonant.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* & 4*th.* | la Princesse, | *the Princess.* | les Princesses, | *the Princesses.* |
| 2*d.* | de la Princesse, | *of the Princess.* | des Princesses, | *of the Princesses.* |
| 3*d.* | à la Princesse, | *to the Princess.* | aux Princesses, | *to the Princesses.* |

*6th. Example of a noun feminine beginning with* h *aspirate.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* & 4*th.* | la harangue, | *the speech.* | les harangues, | *the speeches.* |
| 2*d.* | de la harangue, | *of the speech.* | des harangues, | *of the speeches.* |
| 3*d.* | à la harangue, | *to the speech.* | aux harangues, | *to the speeches.* |

*7th. Example of a noun feminine beginning with a vowel.*

| *States.* | *Singular Number.* | | *Plural Number.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st* & 4*th*. | l'âme, | *the soul.* | les âmes, | *the souls.* |
| 2*d*. | de l'âme, | *of the soul.* | des âmes, | *of the souls.* |
| 3*d*. | à l'âme, | *to the soul.* | aux âmes, | *to the souls.* |

*8th. Example of a noun feminine beginning with* h *mute.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st*, & 4*th*. | l'habitude, | *the habit.* | les habitudes, | *the habits.* |
| 2*d*. | de l'habitude, | *of the habit.* | des habitudes, | *of the habits.* |
| 3*d*. | à l'habitude, | *to the habit.* | aux habitudes, | *to the habits.* |

*9th. Example of a noun masculine taken in a limited sense, and beginning with a consonant.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st*. & 4*th*. | du pain, | *bread.* | des pains, | *loaves.* |
| 2*d*. | de pain, | *of bread.* | de pains, | *of loaves.* |
| 3*d*. | à du pain, | *to bread.* | à des pains. | *to loaves.* |

¶ N. B. When a noun is used in a limited or partitive sense, the particles *au* and *aux* cannot be used, because there is no possibility of contracting *à* with *le* or *les*, on account of the preposition *de* happening to be betwixt them: *à*, therefore, is managed with the partitive art. *de, du, de la, des*; just as the other prepositions.

*10th. Example of a noun feminine beginning with a consonant, and taken in a limited sense.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st*. & 4*th*. | de la viande, | *meat.* | des viandes, | *meats.* |
| 2*d*. | de viande, | *of meat.* | de viandes, | *of meats.* |
| 3*d*. | à de la viande, | *to meat.* | à des viandes, | *to meats.* |

*11th. Example of a noun masculine beginning with a vowel, and taken in a limited sense.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st*. & 4*th*. | de l'esprit, | *wit.* | des esprits, | *wits.* |
| 2*d*. | d'esprit, | *of wit.* | d'esprits, | *of wits.* |
| 3*d*. | à de l'esprit, | *to wit.* | à des esprits, | *to wits* |

*12th. Example of a noun feminine beginning with a vowel, and taken in a limited sense.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st*. & 4*th*. | de l'eau, | *water.* | des eaux, | *waters.* |
| 2*d*. | d'eau, | *of water.* | d'eaux, | *of waters.* |
| 3*d*. | à de l'eau, | *to water.* | à des eaux, | *to waters.* |

*13th. Examples of nouns taken in a limited sense, when the adnoun comes first.*

| | *Sing. Masc.* | | *Sing. Fem.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st*. & 4*th*. | de bon pain, | *good bread.* | de bonne viande, | *good meat.* |
| 2*d*. | de bon pain, | *of good bread.* | de bonne viande, | *of good meat.* |
| 3*d*. | à de bon pain, | *to good bread.* | à de bonne viande, | *to good meat.* |
| 1*st*. & 4*th*. | d'excellent vin, | *excellent wine.* | d'excellente eau, | *excellent water.* |
| 2*d*. | d'excellent vin, | *of excellent wine.* | d'excellente eau, | *of excellent water.* |
| 3*d*. | à d'excellent vin, | *to excellent wine,* | à d'excellente eau, | *to excellent water.* |

*14th. Examples of nouns taken in a limited sense, when the adnoun comes last.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st*. & 4*th*. | du pain blanc | *white bread.* | de la viande crue, | *raw meat.* |
| 2*d*. | de pain blanc, | *of white bread.* | de viande crue, | *of raw meat.* |
| 3*d*. | à du pain blanc, | *to white bread.* | à de la viande crue, | *to raw meat* |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* & 4*th.* du vin excellent, | *exceeding good wine.* | de l'eau excellente, | *exceeding good water.* |
| 2*d.* de vin excellent, | *of exceeding good wine.* | d'eau excellente, | *of exceeding good water.* |
| 3*d.* à du vin excellent, | *to exceeding good wine.* | à de l'eau excellente, | *to exceeding good water.* |

See p. 214, the examples of that limited sense.

15*th.* *Example of nouns taking no article before them.*

| *States.* | *Sing. Numb.* | | *Plur. Numb.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* & 4*th.* Dieu, | *God.* | Londres, | *London.* | Newton, *Newton.* |
| 2*d.* de Dieu, | *of God.* | de Londres, | *of London.* | de Newton, *of Newton.* |
| 3*d.* à Dieu, | *to God.* | à Londres, | *to London.* | à Newton. *to Newton.* |
| 1*st.* & 4*th.* Monsieur, | | *master.* | Messieurs, | *gentlemen.* |
| 2*d.* de Monsieur, | | *of master.* | de Messieurs, | *of gentlemen.* |
| 3*d.* à Monsieur, | | *to master.* | à Messieurs, | *to gentlemen.* |

16*th.* *Example of nouns used with the particle* un, *and* une.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* & 4*th.* un Roi, | *a King.* | des Rois, | *Kings.* |
| 2*d.* d'un Roi, | *of a King.* | de Rois, | *of Kings.* |
| 3*d.* à un Roi, | *to a King.* | à des Rois, | *to Kings.* |
| 1*st.* & 4*th.* une Reine, | *a Queen.* | des Reines, | *Queens.* |
| 2*d.* d'une Reine, | *of a Queen.* | de Reines. | *of Queens* |
| 3*d.* à une Reine, | *to a Queen.* | à des Reines, | *to Queens.* |

# CHAP. II

## *Of* ADNOUNS.

THE ADNOUN is a part of speech serving to express the *qualities* of things, or what they are.

They are called *adnouns* or *adjectives*, because they are as added to the *nouns* or *substantives*, which they are either joined with, or supposed in the sentence, to *qualify* the things which the others serve to *name:* as *savant* learned, *beau* and *belle* handsome, *commode* convenient, *&c.* which are qualities that may be considered in, and affirmed of, the nouns *man, woman, house:* as *un homme savant* a learned man, *une belle femme* a handsome woman, *une maison commode* a convenient house, *&c.*

The adnouns agree with the nouns in gender and number; and therefore it is of moment to know how to form their genders.

## SECTION I.

### *Of the Formation of the Feminine Gender of Adnouns.*

Adnouns ending in *e* not sounded, are of both genders; that is, the same for the masculine and feminine: as,

| *Masc. Gend.* | | *Fem. Gend.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| un honnête homme, | *an honest man.* | une honnête femme, | *an honest woman.* |
| un procédé indigne, | *unworthy proceeding.* | une conduite indigne, | *unworthy way of behaving.* |

The others, generally speaking, only add *e* not sounded for their feminine gender; as,

| *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Masc.* | *Fem.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| grand, *great,* | grande. | savant, *learned,* | savante. | rond, *round,* | ronde. |

This rule never varies with respect to the adnouns that end with a vowel, and all participles: as,

| *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Masc.* | *Fem.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| aisé, *easy,* | aisée. | aimé, *loved,* | aimée. | fait, *done,* | faite. |
| joli, *pretty;* | jolie. | perdu, *lost,* | perdue. | pris, *taken,* | prise. |

Except however *béni* holy, and *favori* darling, which make *bénite* and *favorite* in their feminine.

Here follow rules for forming the feminine gender of the other adnouns, which all end their masculine with one of these consonants, *c, f, l, n, t,* or in *eux* and *eur.*

1*st,* Adnouns ending in *eur* and *eux,* change *eur* and *eux* into *euse* for the feminine: as,

| *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Masc.* | *Fem.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| raill*eur,* *jeering,* | raill*euse.* | heur*eux,* *happy,* | heur*euse.* |

Except these eleven, *antérieur,* foregoing, former; *postérieur,* hind, latter; *citérieur,* citerior; *ultérieur,* furthermost; *intérieur,* inward; *extérieur,* outward; *majeur,* senior; *mineur,* junior; *supérieur,* superior; *inférieur,* inferior; and *meilleur,* better; which follow the general rule, and make *antérieure, intérieure, &c.*

Except also *vieux,* which makes *vieille,* from its old masculine *vieil,* still used before some substantives beginning with a vowel, or *h* not aspirate: as *un vieil habit* an old suit of clothes. We use it with *homme* only in this phrase of the Gospel, *dépouiller le vieil homme* to put off the old man; otherwise we express an old man by *vieillard,* as an old woman by the feminine of *vieil,* taken substantively, *une vieille;* that word being the feminine of *vieux:* as *une vieille maison* an old house.

2*dly,* Adnouns ending with *c,* which are only eight in number, form their feminine, the three first, in changing their final *c* into *che,* and the five others into *que:* as,

| *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Masc.* | *Fem.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| blanc, *white,* | blanc*he.* | public, *public,* | public*que* |
| franc, *sincere,* | franc*he.* | Grec, *Greek,* | Grec*que.* |
| sec, *dry,* | sèc*he.* | Turc, *Turkish,* | Turc*que.* |
| caduc, *in decay,* | caduc*que.* | ammoniac, *ammoniac,* | ammoniaq*ue.* |

3*dly*, Adnouns ending with *f*, form their feminine in changing their final *f* into *ve*: as,

| *Masc.* | | *Fem.* | *Masc.* | | *Fem.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| neu*f*, | *new*, | neu*ve*. | vi*f*, | *quick*, | vi*ve*. |

4*thly*, Of adnouns ending with *l*, those which have *a* or *i* before *l* follow the general rule; and the others which have *e*, *o*, *u*, or *ei* before *l*, double that final *l* before *e*; as does also *gentil*: as,

| *Masc.* | | *Fem.* | *Masc.* | | *Fem.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| fata*l*, | *fatal*, | fatale. | nu*l*, | *no man*, | nulle. |
| subti*l*, | *subtle*, | subtile. | pare*il*, | *alike*, | pareille. |
| cruel, | *cruel*, | cruelle. | gentil*, | *genteel*, | gentille. |

* *l is silent in* gentil, *and liquid in* gentille.

mou, *soft*, fou, *foolish*, beau, *fine*, nouveau, *new*, } form their feminine of their old masculine { mol, fol, bel, nouvel; } and double also *l* before *e*, making in their feminine { molle, folle, belle, nouvelle;

which old masculines are still used before nouns beginning with a vowel; as *un fol entêtement* a foolish infatuation, *un bel esprit* a wit, *un nouvel amant* a new lover, &c.—The masculine *bel* is not only retained in this phrase, *cela est bel & bon* that is very well, or very good, but also in the surname of some of the French kings, without being followed by a word beginning with a vowel; as *Charles le Bel* Charles the Fair, *Philippe le Bel* Philip the Fair, &c.

5*thly*, Of adnouns ending with *n*, those only double *n* in their feminine which have *o* before *n*, or end in *ien*; the others follow the general rule: as,

| *Masc.* | | *Fem.* | *Masc.* | | *Fem.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| bo*n*, | *good*, | bo*nne*. | divin, | *divine*, | divine. |
| ancie*n*, | *ancient*, | ancie*nne*. | plein, | *full*, | pleine. |

6*thly*, Of adnouns ending with *t*, those only double *t* in their feminine which have *e* or *o* before it (few only being excepted, such as *secret*, *complet*, *dévot*); the others that have *i* or *a*, or an improper diphthong, or a consonant before *t*, follow the general rule; as,

| *Masc.* | | *Fem.* | *Masc.* | | *Fem.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| net, | *clean*, | ne*tte*. | ingrat, | *ungrateful*, | ingrate. |
| so*t*, | *foolish*, | so*tte*. | droit, | *right*, | droite. |
| petit, | *little*, | petite. | constant, | *constant*, | constante. |

These six following double their final *s* before *e*: the eleven others are not so regular:

| *Masc.* | bas, | épais, | exprès, | gras, | gros, | las, |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *low*, | *thick*, | *express*, | *fat*, | *big*, | *tired*, |
| *Fem.* | basse. | épaisse. | expresse. | grasse. | grosse. | lasse. |

| *Masc.* | | *Fem.* | *Masc.* | | *Fem.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| bénin, | *benign,* | bénigne. | jaloux, | *jealous,* | jalouse. |
| malin, | *malignant,* | maligne. | nu, | *naked,* | nue. |
| ong, | *long,* | longue. | vert, | *green,* | verte. |
| doux, | *sweet,* | douce. | *To which add these two participles.* | | |
| frais, | *cool, fresh,* | fraîche. | | | |
| roux, | *reddish,* | rousse. | | | |
| cru, | *raw,* | crue. | absous | *absolved,* | absoute. |
| faux, | *false,* | fausse. | dissous, | *dissolved,* | dissoute. |

## SECTION II.

### *Of the Comparison of Adnouns.*

As an adnoun expresses the quality of a thing, and, when compared with that of another, that quality may be found more or less such, or equal others, or exceed them all; hence arise what Grammarians call the three degrees of comparison, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative: which they should have rather called degrees of *signification;* since the positive is never used with comparison, and the signification of the adnoun is most times increased to the highest pitch, without any comparison at all. However,

The adnoun, in as much as it expresses only the quality of a thing, is called *positive;* as *sage* wise, *beau* handsome, *méchant* bad, &c.

The quality of a thing compared with another's, and affirmed to equal it, or exceed, or come short of it, is called *comparative:* which therefore is threefold; as *aussi sage que lui* as wise as he, *plus beau qu'elle* handsomer than she, *moins méchant qu'eux* less bad than they.

The quality of a thing affirmed in the highest degree is called *superlative*; which is either *absolute,* as *très-sage* most wise, *fort beau* very handsome, *bien méchant* very bad; or *relative,* as *le plus sage, le plus beau, le plus méchant de tous,* the wisest, the handsomest, the worst of all.

That comparison of adnouns, that is, the rising or lessening their signification, or denoting equality in the quality of things, is made in French by placing some of these particles before them, *plus* more, *moins* less, *aussi, si,* as, so, *tant, autant* (so much, so many, as much, as many), and *mieux* better, before participles: as *aussi sage que lui, plus beau qu'elle, moins méchant qu'eux, mieux*

*fait* better made, *il n'est pas si* grand qu'*elle,* he is not *so* tall *as* she.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Elle n'a pas* tant *d'esprit* que *sa sœur, mais elle a* autant *de vivacité, & elle est* aussi *aimable.* | She has not *so much* wit as her sister, but she has *as much* liveliness, and is *as* amiable *as* she. |

And for denoting the highest or lowest degree of the adnoun, we put one of the adverbs of excess before it, *très* most; *bien, fort,* very; *infiniment, extrêmement, prodigieusement* (extremely, vastly, mightily); or if there is relation, we put the article before the comparative adverbs, which we make agree in gender and number with the noun; as masc. *le plus sage,* fem. *la plus sage,* the wisest; masc. *le mieux fait,* fem. *la mieux faite,* the best made; masc. *les moins mauvais,* fem. *les moins mauvaises,* the least bad.

Three adnouns only, in French, denote by themselves the comparison; *meilleur* better, *pire* worse, and *moindre* less.

*Meilleur* is the comparative of *bon* good, whose relative superlative is formed by putting the article before its comparative; as,

Pos. *bon* good; Comp. *meilleur* better; Sup. *le meilleur* the best.

After the same manner, *mauvais* bad, has for its comparative *pire* worse; and for its superlative *le pire* the worst: and *petit* little, for its comparative *moindre* less; and for its superlative *le moindre* the least; though we also say,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *petit,* little, | *plus petit,* or *moindre,* } less, | *le plus petit,* or *le moindre,* } | the least. |
| *mauvais,* bad, | *plus mauvais,* or *pire.* } worse, | *le plus mauvais,* or *le pire,* } | the worst. |
| *méchant,* wicked, | *plus méchant,* or *pire,* } more, wicked, or | *le plus méchant,* or *le pire,* } | the most wicked. |

But we don't say *bon,* *plus bon,* *le plus bon,*
instead of *bon* good, *meilleur* better, *le meilleur* the best.

Observe that the pronouns adjective have the same effect as the article in making the superlative degree; and *mon meilleur ami* is equal to *le meilleur de mes amis* the best of my friends.

Adverbs increase or decrease also in their signification; as *très-sagement,* very wisely; *fort habilement* very artfully; *plus finement qu'on ne peut dire,* more cunningly than can be said; *le plus subtilement qu'on puisse imaginea,* with the greatest subtlety one can

imagine. And these three form their comparative and superlative irregularly.

| *Posit.* | | *Comp.* | | *Superl.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *bien,* | well, | *mieux,* | better, | *le mieux,* | the best. |
| *mal,* | ill, | *pis,* or *plus mal,* | worse, | *le pis,* or *le plus mal,* | the worst. |
| *peu,* | little, | *moins,* | less, | *le moins,* | the least. |

*bien* denotes either the *quality* or the *quantity*: if it is used in the former sense, its comparative is *mieux*; if in the latter, it is *plus*; as *bien fait* well made, *mieux fait* better made; *bien fatigué* much tired, *plus fatigué* more tired.

These two adnouns, *prochain* and *voisin*, next, near, can be used only in the positive, and never in the comparative or superlative. They are supplied by the comp. and superl. of the other adnoun *proche* near, *plus proche* nearer, *le plus proche* the nearest, instead of *plus prochain, le plus prochain, plus voisin, le plus voisin*.—However, *voisin* may well take *fort* or *trop* before it: as *nous sommes fort voisins* we live very near one another, *nos maisons sont trop voisines* our houses are too near one another.

There are besides six other words of a superlative kind and signification, that end in *issime*: as *sérénissime* most serene, *éminentissime* most eminent, *révérendissime* most reverend, *illustrissime* most illustrious, *généralissime* generalissimo, and *savantissime* most learned: this last is of the burlesque style.

## CHAP. III.

### *Of* PRONOUNS.

PRONOUNS are words which usually stand for the particular noun of a thing or person.

There are four sorts of Pronouns: the Personal, the Relative, the Demonstrative, and the Intermediate.

### *Of Pronouns Personal.*

Pronouns Personal are divided into five orders or classes; 1*st*, those of the first person; 2*dly*, of the second; 3*dly*, of the third masculine; 4*thly*, the third feminine; 5*thly*, the third indeterminate.

*Pronouns of the first Person.*

| *State.* | *Sing. Numb.* | | *Plur. Numb.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | Je, moi, | *I.* | Nous, | *we.* |
| 2*d.* | de moi, | *of me.* | de nous, | *of us.* |
| 3*d.* | à moi, moi, me, | *to me.* | à nous, nous, | *to us.* |
| 4*th.* | me, moi, | *me.* | nous, | *us* |

*Pronouns of the second Person.*

| *State.* | *Sing. Numb.* | | *Plur. Numb.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | Tu, toi, | *thou.* | Vous, | *you.* |
| 2*d.* | de toi, | *of thee.* | de vous, | *of you.* |
| 3*d.* | à toi, toi, te, | *to thee.* | à vous, vous, | *to you.* |
| 4*th.* | te, toi, | *thee.* | vous, | *you.* |

*Pronouns of the third Person Masculine.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | Il, lui, | *he, it.* | Ils, eux, | *they.* |
| 2*d.* | de lui, | *of him, of it.* | d'eux, | *of them.* |
| 3*d.* | à lui, lui, | *to him, to it.* | à eux, leur | *to them.* |
| 4*th.* | le, lui, | *him, it.* | les, eux, | *them.* |

*Pronouns of the third Person Feminine.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | Elle, | *she, it.* | Elles, | *they.* |
| 2*d.* | d'elle, | *of her, of it.* | d'elles, | *of them.* |
| 3*d.* | à elle, lui, | *to her, to it.* | à elles, leur, | *to them.* |
| 4*th.* | la, elle, | *her, it.* | les, elles, | *them.* |

*Pronouns of the third Person Indeterminate.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | On, soi, | *oneself.* | 3*d. St.* à soi, se, | *to oneself.* |
| 2*d.* | de soi, | *of oneself.* | 4*th.* se, soi, | *oneself.* |

Out of the pronouns personal are made some adnouns called *Possessive*, because they show, that the thing spoken of belongs to the person or thing which they serve to denote. It is wrongfully they are reckoned a particular class of pronouns, since their office is not to stand for the name of a thing, but only to qualify it. These pronominal adnouns are of two sorts, absolute and relative.

*Pronominal adnouns absolute*, or rather *possessive articles*, always come before the nouns which they qualify, doing the office of the article. They are six in number, *viz.*

| | *Sing. M. & F.* | | | *Plur. M. & F.* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st. State.* | mon, | ma, | mes, | *my.* | 2*d. State.* | de mon, de ma, de mes, *of my.* |
| | ton, | ta, | tes, | *thy.* | 3*d.* | à mon, à ma, à mes, *to my.* |
| | son, | sa, | ses, | *his, her, its.* | | |

| | *Sing. M. & F.* | | | *Plur. M. & F.* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st. State.* | notre, | nos, | | *our.* | 2*d. St.* | de notre, de nos, *of our.* |
| | votre, | vos, | | *your.* | | |
| | leur, | leurs, | | *their.* | 3*d. St.* | à notre, à nos, *to our.* |

*Prominal adnouns relative*, or rather *possessive pronouns*, are so called, because they, not being joined to their noun, suppose it either expressed before or understood, and are related to it. They are also six, which answer to each of the pronominal *adnouns* absolute, and take the article.

| *Stat.* | *Sing. Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Plur. Masc.* | *Fem.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | le mien, | la mienne, | les miens, | les miennes, | *mine.* |
| | le tien, | la tienne, | les tiens, | les tiennes, | *thine.* |
| | le sien, | la sienne, | les siens, | les siennes, | *his, hers.* |

2*d.* du mien, de la mienne, des miens, des miennes *of mine.*
3*d.* au mien, *to mine*, &c.

*Masc. and Fem.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | le nôtre, | la nôtre, | les nôtres, | *ours.* |
| | le vôtre, | la vôtre, | les vôtres, | *yours.* |
| | le leur, | la leur, | les leurs, | *theirs.* |

2*d.* du nôtre, de la nôtre, des nôtres.
3*d.* au nôtre, à la nôtre, aux nôtres, &c.

*Of Pronouns Relative.*

Pronouns relative are used after nouns and pronouns personal, as part of their retinue; and to which they are so nearly related, that without them they have no signification.

There are four pronouns relative, *qui, quel, quoi,* and *le: qui, quoi,* and *le,* are for both genders and numbers, and take no article; but *quel* takes the article, and forms with it but a single word, viz. *lequel,* &c.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st. State.* | qui | *who, what.* | quoi, que, | *what* |
| 2*d.* | de qui, dont, | *of whom, of that, whose.* | de quoi, dont, | *of what* |
| 3*d.* | qui, | *to whom, to that.* | à quoi, | *to what.* |
| 4*th.* | que, qui, | *whom, that.* | que, quoi, | *what.* |

| *Sing. Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Plur. Masc.* | *Fem.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* lequel, | laquelle; | lesquels, | lesquelles, | *which* |
| 2*d.* duquel, | de laquelle; | desquels, | desquelles, dont, | *of which, whose.* |
| 3*d.* auquel, | à laquelle; | auxquels | auxquelles, | *to which.* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1*st. State.* | le, | *him, it.* |
| 2*d.* | en, | *of him, of her, of it, of them.* |
| 3*d.* | y, | *to him, to her, to it, to them.* |

These pronouns, (except *le*) are used for asking questions, to which add *quel,* another pronominal adnoun, which is never used without a noun or pronoun after it: as,

*Quel est cet homme-là?* Who is that man?
*Quels sonts-ils? Quelles sont elles?* Who *or* what are they?

| *Stat.* | *Sing. Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Plur. Masc.* | *Fem.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st. State.* | quel, | quelle; | quels, | quelles, | *what.* |
| 2*d.* | de quel, | de quelle; | de quels, | de quelles, | *of what.* |
| 3*d.* | à quel, | à quelle; | à quels, | à quelles, | *to what* |

*Of Pronouns Demonstrative,* which are,

*ce, cet, cette, ces.* || *ceci, cela.* || *celui, celle, ceux, celles.* || *celui-ci, celle-ci, ceux-ci, celles-ci.* || *celui-là, celle-là, ceux-là, celles-là.* || *ce que, ce qui.*

These pronouns are called Demonstrative, because they denote more precisely, and, as it were, demonstrate either the nouns before which they come, or those they stand for; therefore they have no article, but with great propriety may be called *demonstrative articles.* The pronoun *ce,* from which the others are derived, and which is for that reason called *Primitive,* is used only before nouns masculine beginning with a consonant, or *h* aspirate: *cet* is used before nouns masculine beginning with a vowel or *h* not aspirate; *cette* before all nouns feminine; and *ces* before all nouns of the plural number, and for both genders.

| *States.* | *Sing Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Plur. M. & F.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | ce, *or* cet, | cette, *this* or *that.* | ces, *these* or *those.* |
| 2*d.* | de ce, cet, | de cette, *of this, that.* | de ces, *of these, those.* |
| 3*d.* | à ce, cet, | à cette, *to this, that.* | à ces, *to these, those.* |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | celui, *he* or *that,* | celle, *she* or *that,* | ceux, | celles, | *they* or *those.* |
| 2*d.* | de celui, *of him,* | de celle, *of her,* | de ceux, | de celles, | *of them.* |
| 3*d.* | à celui, *to him,* | à celle, *to her,* | à ceux, | à celles, | *to them.* |
| 1*st.* | celui-ci, celle-ci, | *this,* | ceux-ci, | celles-ci, | *these.* |
| 2*d.* | de celui-ci, de celle-ci, | *of this,* | de ceux-ci, | de celles-ci, | *of these.* |
| 3*d.* | à celui-ci, à celle-ci, | *to this,* | à ceux-ci, | à celles-ci, | *to these.* |
| 1*st.* | celui-là, celle-là, | *that,* | ceux-là, | celles-là, | *those.* |
| 2*d.* | de celui-là, de celle-là, | *of that,* | de ceux-là, | de celles-là, | *of those.* |
| 3*d.* | à celui-là, à celle-là, | *to that,* | à ceux-là, | à celles-là, | *to those.* |
| 1*st.* | ceci, *this,* cela, *that,* | | ce qui, ce que, | | *which, that which, what.* |
| 2*d.* | de ceci, *of this,* de cela, *of that,* | | de ce qui, de ce que, | | *of which, of that,* &c. |
| 3*d.* | à ceci, *to this,* à cela, *to that,* | | à ce qui, à ce que, | | *to which, to that,* &c. |

## *Of Pronouns Indeterminate.*

These pronouns are called Indeterminate, because they denote and express their object in a general indeterminate manner. Besides *on* already mentioned, these pronouns are *quelqu'un, quelqu'une; chacun, chacune; nul, nulle; pas un, pas une; aucun, aucune; quiconque, personne, l'un l'autre, l'un & l'autre, l'un ou l'autre, ni l'un ni l'autre, plusieurs, tout,* and *rien.*

| *States.* | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | chacun, | chacune, | *every body,* or *every one.* |
| 2*d.* | de chacun, | de chacune, | *of every body, every one.* |
| 3*d.* | à chacun, | à chacune, | *to every body, every one.* |

| *States.* | *Sing. Masc.* | *Fem.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | quelqu'un, | quelqu'une, | *somebody,* or *some one.* |
| 2*d.* | de quelqu'un, | de quelqu'une, | *of somebody, some one.* |
| 3*d.* | à quelqu'un, | à quelqu'une, | *to somebody, some one.* |
| | *Plur. Masc.* | *Fem.* | |
| 1*st.* | quelques-uns, | quelques-unes, | *some ones.* |
| 2*d.* | de quelques-uns, | de quelques-unes, | *of some ones.* |
| 3*d.* | à quelques-uns, | à quelques-unes, | *to some ones* |

| *States.* | *Sing. Masc.* | *Fem.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | aucun, | aucune, | *nobody*, or *none.* |
| 2*d.* | d'aucun, | d'aucune, | *of nobody, none.* |
| 3*d.* | à aucun, | à aucune, | *to nobody, none.* |
| 1*st.* | nul, | nulle, | *none*, or *nobody* |
| 2*d.* | de nul, | de nulle, | *of none, nobody.* |
| 3*d.* | à nul, | à nulle, | *to none, nobody.* |
| 1*st.* | pas un, | pas une, | *not one, never a one, none, nobody* |
| 2*d.* | de pas un, | de pas une, | *of not one*, or *none*, &c. |
| 3*d.* | à pas un, | à pas une, | *to not one*, or *none*, &c. |

| | *Sing. Masc.* | *Fem.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | l'un l'autre, | une l'autre, | *one another.* |
| 2*d.* | l'un de l'autre, | une de l'autre, | *of one another.* |
| 3*d.* | l'un à l'autre, | une à l'autre, | *to one another.* |
| | *Plur. Masc.* | *Fem.* | |
| 1*st.* | les uns les autres, | les unes les autres, | *one another.* |
| 2*d.* | les uns des autres, | les unes des autres, | *of one another.* |
| 3*d.* | les uns aux autres, | les unes aux autres, | *to one another.* |
| | *Sing. Masc.* | *Fem.* | |
| 1*st.* | l'un & l'autre, | l'une & l'autre, | *both.* |
| 2*d.* | de l'un & de l'autre, | de l'une & de l'autre, | *of both.* |
| 3*d.* | à l'un & à l'autre, | à l'une & à l'autre, | *to both.* |
| | *Plur. Masc.* | *Fem.* | |
| 1*st.* | les uns & les autres, | les unes & les autres, | *both.* |
| 2*d.* | des uns & des autres, | des unes & des autres, | *of both.* |
| 3*d.* | aux uns & aux autres, | aux unes & aux autres, | *to both.* |
| | *Sing. Masc.* | *Fem.* | |
| 1*st.* | l'un ou l'autre, | l'une ou l'autre, | *either.* |
| 2*d.* | de l'un ou de l'autre, | de l'une ou de l'autre, | *of either.* |
| 3*d.* | à l'un ou à l'autre, | à l'une ou à l'autre, | *to either.* |
| | *Plur. Masc.* | *Fem.* | |
| 1*st.* | les uns ou les autres, | les unes ou les autres, | *either.* |
| 2*d.* | des uns ou des autres, | des unes ou des autres, | *of either.* |
| 3*d.* | aux uns ou aux autres, | aux unes ou aux autres, | *to either.* |
| | *Sing. Masc.* | *Fem.* | |
| 1*st.* | ni l'un ni l'autre, | ni l'une ni l'autre, | *neither.* |
| 2*d.* | ni de l'un ni de l'autre, | ni de l'une ni de l'autre, | *of neither.* |
| 3*d.* | ni à l'un ni à l'autre, | ni à l'une ni à l'autre, | *to neither.* |
| | *Plur. Masc.* | *Fem.* | |
| 1*st.* | ni les uns ni les autres, | ni les unes ni les autres, | *neither.* |
| 2*d.* | ni des uns ni des autres, | ni des unes ni des autres, | *of neither.* |
| 3*d.* | ni aux uns ni aux autres, | ni aux unes ni aux autres, | *to neither* |

| *Stat.* | *Sing. Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Pl. Masc.* | *Fem.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | tout, | toute, | tous, | toutes, | *all, every thing.* |
| 2*d.* | de tout, | de toute, | de tous, | de toutes, | *of all, every thing.* |
| 3*d.* | à tout, | à toute, | à tous, | à toutes, | *to all, every thing.* |

*These two are of the Singular number only, and both Genders.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | quiconque, | *any body.* | personne, | *nobody.* |
| 2*d.* | de quiconque, | *of any body.* | de personne, | *of nobody.* |
| 3*d.* | à quiconque, | *to any body.* | à personne, | *to nobody.* |

*These are likewise of both Genders.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | plusieurs, | *many.* | rien, | *nothing.* |
| 2*d.* | de plusieurs, | *of many.* | de rien, | *of nothing.* |
| 3*d.* | à plusieurs, | *to many.* | à rien, | *to nothing.* |

## CHAP. VI.

### *Of* NUMBERS.

NUMBERS are words established to denote the computation, that is, to reckon the things and actions spoken of, and are of five sorts, namely, Cardinal, Ordinal, Collective, Distributive, and Multiplicative.

*Cardinal* numbers join units together; such are, in their several forms,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Un (*femin.* une), | *One,* | 1. | I. |
| Deux, | *Two,* | 2. | II. |
| Trois, | *Three,* | 3. | III. |
| Quatre, | *Four,* | 4. | IV. |
| Cinq (q is *sounded*), | *Five,* | 5. | V. |
| Six (*pron.* siss), | *Six,* | 6. | VI. |
| Sept (*pron.* set), | *Seven,* | 7. | VII. |
| Huit (t *is sounded*), | *Eight,* | 8. | VIII. |
| Neuf (f *is sounded*), | *Nine,* | 9. | IX. |
| Dix (*pron.* diss), | *Ten,* | 10. | X. |
| Onze, | *Eleven,* | 11. | XI. |
| Douze, | *Twelve,* | 12. | XII. |
| Treize, | *Thirteen,* | 13. | XIII. |
| Quatorze, | *Fourteen,* | 14. | XIV. |
| Quinze, | *Fifteen,* | 15. | XV. |
| Seize (*sei* is broad), | *Sixteen,* | 16. | XVI. |
| Dix-sept (*pron.* diss-set), | *Seventeen,* | 17. | XVII. |
| Dix-huit (*pron.* diz-uit), | *Eighteen,* | 18 | XVIII. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| f (*pron.* uf), | *Nineteen,* | 19. | XIX |
| t are ed), | *Twenty,* | 20. | XX. |
| un, | *One and Twenty,* | 21. | XXI. |
| eux, | *Two and Twenty,* | 22. | XXII. |
| ois, | *Three and Twenty,* | 23. | XXIII. |
| natre | *Four and Twenty,* | 24. | XXIV. |
| nq, | *Five and Twenty,* | 25. | XXV. |
| x, | *Six and Twenty,* | 26. | XXVI. |
| pt, | *Seven and Twenty,* | 27. | XXVII. |
| uit, | *Eight and Twenty,* | 28. | XXVIII. |
| euf, | *Nine and Twenty,* | 29. | XXIX. |
| | *Thirty,* | 30. | XXX. |
| & un, | *Thirty-one,* | 31. | XXXI. |
| deux, *&c.* | *Thirty-two, &c.* | 32,&c. | XXXII,&c |
| te, | *Forty,* | 40. | XL. |
| nte, | *Fifty,* | 50. | L. |
| e (*pron.* nte), | *Sixty,* | 60. | LX. |
| e & un, | *Sixty-one,* | 61. | LXI |
| e & deux, | *Sixty-two, &c.* | 62,&c. | LXII, &c. |
| e & dix, | *Seventy,* | 70. | LXX. |
| e & onze, | *Seventy-one,* | 71. | LXXI. |
| e & douze, | *Seventy-two, &c.* | 72,&c. | LXXII. &c. |
| vingts, (*gts* ropped, and e following | *Eighty,* | 80. | LXXX. |
| vingt-un, | *Eighty-one,* | 81. | LXXXI. |
| vingt-deux, | *Eighty-two, &c.* | 82,&c. | LXXXII, &c. |
| vingt-dix, | *Ninety,* | 90. | XC. |
| vingt-onze, | *Ninety-one, &c.* | 91,&c. | XCI, &c. |
| t *in* cent *is* , *and in the* ving *too),* | *an Hundred,* | 100. | C. |
| , *&c.* | *an Hundred and one,* | 101. | CI, &c. |
| ngt, | *an Hundred & Twenty,* | 120. | CXX. |
| ngt & un, | *an Hundred and Twenty-one.* | 121,&c. | CXXI,&c. |

*&c. drop, but it is sounded.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Cent-trente, *&c. an* | *Hundred & Thirty,* | 130, | &c. CXXX, &c. |
| Deux cents, *or rather* cens (*x* is dropped, and the final consonants in the following also, as before any other word, beginning with a consonant), | *Two Hundred,* | 200. | CC. |
| Trois cens, | *Three Hundred,* | 300. | CCC. |
| Quatre cens, | *Four Hundred,* | 400. | CD. |
| Cinq cens, | *Five Hundred,* | 500. | D *or* IↃ. |
| Six cens, | *Six Hundred,* | 600. | DC. |
| Sept cens, | *Seven Hundred,* | 700. | DCC. |
| Huit cens, | *Eight Hundred,* | 800. | DCCC. |
| Neuf cens, | *Nine Hundred,* | 900. | CM *or* DCCCC. |
| Mille, | *a Thousand,* | 1000. | M *or* CIↃ. |
| Deux Mille, | *Two Thousand,* | 2000. | IIↃ *or* II.M. |
| Trois Mille, | *Three Thousand,* | 3000. | III.M. |
| Quatre Mille, | *Four Thousand,* | 4000. | IV.M. |
| Cinq Mille, | *Five Thousand,* | 5000. | V.M. |
| Six Mille, | *Six Thousand,* | 6000. | VI.M. |
| Sept Mille, | *Seven Thousand,* | 7000. | VII.M. |
| Huit Mille, | *Eight Thousand,* | 8000. | VIII.M |
| Neuf Mille, | *Nine Thousand,* | 9000. | IX.M. |
| Dix Mille, 10000. | | *Ten Thousand,* | XM *or* CCIↃↃ *or* XCIↃ. |
| Vingt Mille, 20000. | | *Twenty Thousand,* | XXCIↃ. |
| Trente Mille, 30000. | | *Thirty Thousand,* | XXXCIↃ. |
| Quarante Mille, 40000. | | *Forty Thousand,* | XLCIↃ. |
| Cinquante Mille, 50000. | | *Fifty Thousand,* | LCIↃ. |
| Cent Mille. 100000. | | *an Hundred Thousand,* | CCCIↃↃↃ. |
| Deux Cent Mille, 200000. | | *Two Hundred Thousand,* | CCM *or* CCoo. |
| Cinq Cent Mille, 500000. | | *Five Hundred Thousand,* | DM. *or* D. oo. |
| un Million, *1000000.* | | *a Million,* | CCCIↃↃↃↃ. |

*Ordinal* numbers denote the order and rank of things: such are

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| le Premier, | 1r. | *the First.* | 1*st.* |
| le Second, le Deuxième, | 2e. | *the Second.* | 2*d.* |
| le Troisième, | 3e. | *the Third.* | 3*d.* |
| le Quatrième, | 4e. | *the Fourth.* | 4*th.* |
| le Cinquième, | 5e. | *the Fifth.* | 5*th.* |
| le Sixième, | 6e. | *the Sixth.* | 6*th.* |
| le Septième, | 7e. | *the Seventh.* | 7*th.* |
| le Huitième, | 8e. | *the Eighth.* | 8*th.* |
| le Neuvième, | 9e. | *the Ninth.* | 9*th.* |
| le Dixième, | 10e. | *the Tenth.* | 10*th.* |
| le Onzième, | 11e. | *the Eleventh.* | 11*th.* |
| le Douzième, | 12e. | *the Twelfth.* | 12*th.* |
| le Treizième, | 13e. | *the Thirteenth.* | 13*th.* |
| le Quatorzième, | 14e. | *the Fourteenth.* | 14*th.* |
| le Quinzième, | 15e. | *the Fifteenth.* | 15*th.* |
| le Seizième, | 16e. | *the Sixteenth.* | 16*th.* |
| le Dix-septième, | 17e | *the Seventeenth.* | 17*th.* |
| le Dix-huitième, | 18e. | *the Eighteenth.* | 18*th.* |
| le Dix-neuvième, | 19e. | *the Nineteenth.* | 19*th.* |
| le Vingtième, | 20e. | *the Twentieth.* | 20*th.* |
| le Vingt & unième, | | *the Twenty-first.* | |
| le Vingt-deuxième, *&c.* | | *the Twenty-second, &c.* | |
| le Trentième, | | *the Thirtieth.* | |
| le Quarantième, | | *the Fortieth.* | |
| le Cinquantième, | | *the Fiftieth.* | |
| le Soixantième, | | *the Sixtieth.* | |
| le Soixante & dixième, | | *the Seventieth.* | |
| le Quatre-vingtième, | | *the Eightieth.* | |
| le Quatre-vingt-dixième, | | *the Ninetieth.* | |
| le Centième, | | *the Hundredth.* | |
| le Cent-cinquantième, | | *the Hundred and Fiftieth.* | |
| le Deux-centième, | | *the two Hundredth* | |
| le Millième, | | *the Thousandth.* | |

*Collective* Numbers denote a plurality of things expressed by a denomination of the singular number. Such are,

| | |
|---|---|
| Un tercet, | *a stanza of three verses.* |
| une tierce, | *a tierce, a sequence of three cards* |
| un tricon, | *a prial* or *pair royal.* |

un quatrain, *a quatrain, a stanza of four verses.*
une quarte, *a quart, a fourth.*
un sixain (*pron.* sizain), *a stanza of six verses,* also *six packs of cards.*
un huitain, *a stanza of eight verses.*
une huitaine *se'nnight, eight days together.*
un huitième, *the eighth part.*
une huitième, *a sequence of eight cards.*
une octave, *an octave, a stanza of eight verses,* &c.
une neuvaine, *a novena, a nine days devotion.*
un neuvième, *the ninth part.*
un dizain, *a stanza of ten verses.*
une dizaine, *ten, tithing.*
un dixième, *the tenth part.*
une douzaine, *a dozen.*
une demi-douzaine, *half a dozen.*
un quinzain, *(terms of tennis-court), fifteen all.*
une quinzaine, *a fortnight, fifteen things.*
une quinte, *a quint, fifth.*
une vingtaine, *a score,* or *twenty.*
un vingtième, *a twentieth part.*
une trentaine, *thirty.*
un trentain, *(terms of tennis-court), thirty all.*
une quarantaine, *forty, quarantain.*
une cinquantaine, *fifty.*
une soixantaine, *the number of sixty.*
une centaine, *an hundred.*
un millier, *a thousand.*
un million, *a million.*
un milliar, *ten hundred thousand millions.*
une milliasse *(a term of contempt, or of familiarity),* *thousands and thousands, a vast number.*

*armée* an army, *peuple* people, &c. are also collective nouns; but they differ from the numbers in this, that they indicate no *quantum.*

*Distributive* Numbers are those that express the parts of a *totum* or whole divided; as *la moitié* the half, *le tiers, le quart,* &c. the third or fourth part.

*Multiplicative* Numbers, also called *Proportional,* indicate an increase both of number and quantity; as *le double* double, *le triple* treble, *le centuple* an hundred fold.

# CHAP. V.

## *Of* VERBS.

THE VERB is a part of speech which serves to express that which is attributed to the subject, in denoting the *Being* or *Condition* of the things and persons spoken of, the *Actions* which they do, or the *Impressions* they receive.

Four sorts of verbs may be distinguished in French.

1*st*, The verb *substantive*, which declares what the subject is, and is always followed by an adnoun, that particularises what that subject is: as *être riche, sage, savant*, &c. to be rich, wise, learned, *&c.*

2*dly*, The verb *active*, which denotes the action or impression of the subject, and is attended by a noun which is the object of that action or impression; as *aimer la vertu* to love virtue, *recevoir des lettres* to receive letters.

3*dly*, The verb *neuter*, which is neither substantive nor active, tho' it often has the same signification; that is, it comprehends in itself the term of the action, impression, or condition, which it serves to denote, but without being followed by any noun, specifying still more that action; as *agir* to act, *marcher* to walk, *obéir* to obey, *languir* to languish; which signifies as much as *faire quelque chose* to do something, *exercer l'obéissance* to practise obedience, *être languissant* to be languishing.

4*thly*, The verb *reflected*, whose subject and object, the principle and term of the action, have a reflected relation to each other; and which governs no other noun, but that which it is governed by: as *je m'ennuie* I am weary, from *s'ennuyer* to be weary; *vous vous plaignez* you complain, from *se plaindre* to complain; *il se blesse* he hurts himself, from *se blesser* to hurt oneself. In the first instance it is *I*, who am both the principle and term of weariness; in the second it is *you*, who are the principle and term of *complaint*: in the third it is *he*, who *hurts* and is *hurted*.——Sometimes the preposition *entre* is put between the two pronouns and the verb, or the pronoun *l'un l'autre* after the verb, as this makes the relation quite reciprocal: as *ils s'entretuent*, they kill one another; *ils se ruinent l'un l'autre*, they ruin each other.

As to the verbs *Passive* and *Impersonal*, they are not particular sorts of verbs in French.

The verbs passive (so called, because they express not the action produced by the subject, but that which it suffers from, and is occasioned by a foreign cause acting upon it) are composed of the verb substantive *to be*, and a participle.

The verbs impersonal are only verbs neuter; so called from their being conjugated with the third person singular only; as *il pleut* it rains: whereas the four other sorts of verbs are also called *personal*, because they are conjugated with all the pronouns personal, both in the singular and plural number.

It is to be observed, that any verb active may become a reflected one, whenever the principle of the action acts upon itself; and therefore that many reflected verbs, as also impersonal, are so only grammatically, or arbitrarily, with respect to language, and not by their significations: as *je me plains* I complain, *il faut* one must, *&c.*

One must distinguish in verbs the Mood, the Tense, the Number, and the Person.

They call *Moods* the divers uses that are made of a verb, in using it either directly and positively, or indirectly and conditionally or in an indeterminate and unspecified manner.

In each verb there are four moods: the Infinitive, the Indicative, the Subjunctive, and the Imperative.

The *Infinitive* expresses the very action of the verb, but in an indefinite, indeterminate sense, without specifying any particular agent or time, and is the root of the tenses of the verb; as *aimer* to love, *faire* to do.

The *Indicative* shows, in a direct and positive manner, the divers tenses of the verb; that is, the particular times wherein any action may happen: as *je fais* I do, *je fis* I did, *je ferai* I shall *or* will do

The *Subjunctive* shows also divers tenses of the verb; but indirectly and conditionally, always supposing another verb affirming directly (or in the indicative), which it follows and belongs to; or after conjunctions (that shall be taken notice of in the Syntax), and by which it is governed; as *il faut que je fasse* I must do, *afin qu'il vienne* that he may come.

The *Imperative* commands, desires, entreats, exnorts: as *faites cela* do that, *qu'il parle* let him speak.

*Tenses* are the periods of time, denoting when such actions of verbs are, were, or shall be done; or impressions made; or conditions any one is, was, or shall be under; and properly are only three. Past, Present, and Future: tho' these are again subdivided, for a greater distinction, as will be seen in the tenses themselves.

Each tense has two numbers, the singular and the plural; as *j'aime* I love, *nous aimons* we love: and each number three persons. The first is that who speaks, expressed by *je* I, for the sing. and *nous* we, for the plur. The second that is spoken to, expressed by *tu* thou, and *vous* you or ye. The third that is spoken of, expressed by *il* he, for the sing. masc. *ils* they, for the plur. *elle* she, for the sing. fem. *elles* they, for the plur. or *on*, or some noun; which noun always demands the third person, and regulates the sing. or plur. of the verb, according to its own number.

Observe, that in French, as in English, the second pers. plur. *(vous)* is used in speaking to one single person: the second sing. *(tu)* being used (in prose), only either with familiarity, intimacy, and tenderness, or out of scorn; in which two respects it is of great use; but the following adnoun referring to *vous*, must be of the singular: as *vous êtes sage & prudent*, or *belle & vertueuse*, you are wise and prudent, *or* beautiful and virtuous.

In the *Indicative* mood there are *ten* tenses, five of which are *simple*, and five *compound*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| The Present. | | The Compound of the Present. |
| The Imperfect. | | The Compound of the Imperfect |
| The Preterite. | | The Compound of the Preterite. |
| The Future. | | The Compound of the Future. |
| The Conditional. | | The Compound of the Conditional |

The *Subjunctive* has *four* tenses, two whereof are likewise compound of the two first.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| The Present. | | The Compound of the Present. |
| The Preterite. | | The Compound of the Preterite. |

As there are in French ten sorts of verbs, that have divers terminations in their infinitive, so I shall divide the regular verbs into ten Conjugations; and as those verbs form their compound tenses by the help of two others, called from thence *Auxiliaries*, so I shall begin with those *Auxiliary* verbs, and first with *avoir*, which serves itself to conjugate *être*, and even itself.

Observe, that to conjugate a verb, is to express all its natural forms, in going through all the inflexions and variations, which it can admit of in Speech; that is, considering the action which it expresses, in all the different periods of time, wherein it may take place, and in the various divers subjects to which it may be applied. And here it may not be amiss to mention the necessity of having the Auxiliary verbs fixed in the memory to the utmost exactness; since the compound tenses of all the verbs, and the expressing, what the Latins called the Passive verbs, so entirely depend upon them.

## AVOIR.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Present Tense* ..... | avoir, | *to have.* |
| *Gerund* ..... | ayant, | *having.* |
| *Participle* ..... | eu, | *had.* |
| *Compound of the Present* .... | avoir eu, | *to have had.* |
| *Compound of the Gerund* .... | ayant eu, | *having had.* |

### INDICATIVE.

*Present.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* J'ai, *I have.* | tu as, *thou hast.* | il a, *he has.* |
| *P.* Nous avons, *we have.* | vous avez, *ye* or *you have.* | ils ont, *they have.* |

*Imperfect Tense.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* J'avois, *I had.* | tu avois, *thou had'st.* | il avoit, *he had.* |
| *P.* Nous avions, *we had.* | vous aviez, *ye* or *you had.* | ils avoient, *they had.* |

*Preterite Tense.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* J'eus, *I had.* | tu eus, *thou had'st.* | il eut, *he had.* |
| *P.* Nous eumes, *we had* | vous eutes, *ye* or *you had.* | ils eurent, *they had.* |

*Future Tense.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* J'aurai, *I shall* or *will have.* | tu auras, *thou shalt* or *wilt have.* | il aura, *he shall* or *will have.* |
| *P.* Nous aurons, *we shall* or *will have.* | vous aurez, *ye* or *you shall* or *will have.* | ils auront, *they shall* or *will have.* |

*Conditional Tense.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* J'aurois, *I should, would, could,* or *might have* | tu aurois, *thou should'st, would'st, could'st,* or *might'st have.* | il auroit, *he should, would, could,* or *might have.* |
| P. nous aurions, *we should, would, could,* or *might have.* | vous auriez, *ye* or *you should, would, could,* or *might have.* | ils auroient, *they should, would, could,* or *might have.* |

*Compound of the present Tense.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| S. J'ai eu, *I have had.* | tu as eu, *thou hast had.* | il a eu, *he has had.* |
| P. Nous avons eu, *we have had.* | vous avez eu, *ye or you have had.* | ils ont eu, *they have had.* |

*Compound of the Imperfect Tense.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S. J'avois eu, *I had had.* | tu avois eu, *thou had'st had.* | il avoit eu, *he had had.* |
| P. Nous avions eu, *we had had.* | vous aviez eu, *ye or you had had.* | ils avoient eu, *they had had.* |

*Compound of the Preterite Tense.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S. J'eus eu, *I had had.* | tu eus eu, *thou had'st had.* | il eut eu, *he had had.* |
| P. Nous eumes eu, *we had had.* | vous eutes eu, *ye or you had had.* | ils eurent eu, *they had had.* |

*Compound of the Future Tense.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S. J'aurai eu, *I shall have had.* | tu auras eu, *thou shalt have had.* | il aura eu, *he shall have had.* |
| P. Nous aurons eu, *we shall have had.* | vous aurez eu, *ye or you shall have had.* | ils auront eu, *they shall have had.* |

*Compound of the Conditional Tense.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S. J'aurois eu, *I should, would, could,* or *might have had.* | tu aurois eu, *thou should'st, would'st, could'st,* or, *&c.* | il auroit eu, *he should, would, could,* or *might have had.* |
| P. Nous aurions eu, *we would, could,* &c. *have had.* | vous auriez eu, *ye or you would,* &c. *have had.* | ils auroient eu, *they would, could,* &c. *have had.* |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present Tense.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| S. que | J'aie, *I may have.* | tu aies, *thou may'st have.* | il ait, *he may have.* |
| *that* P. | Nous ayons, *we may have.* | vous ayez, *ye or you may have.* | ils aient, *they may have.* |

*Preterite Tense.*

| | *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | J'eusse, *I had,* | tu eusses, *thou had'st,* | il eût, *he had,* or |
| que | or *might have.* | or *might'st have.* | *might have.* |
| *that* | Nous eussions, | vous eussiez, *ye* or | ils eussent, *they had,* |
| *P.* | *we had,* or, *&c.* | *you had,* or, *&c.* | or *might have.* |

*Compound of the Present.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | J'aie eu, *I may,* | tu aies eu, *thou,* | il ait eu, *he may* |
| que | or *can have* | *mayest have had.* | *have had.* |
| *that* | *had.* | | |
| *P.* | Nous ayons eu, | vous ayez eu, *ye* or | ils aient eu, *they* |
| | *we may,* &c. | *you may have had.* | *may have had.* |

*Compound of the Preterite Tense.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | J'eusse eu, *I* | tu eusses eu, *thou* | il eût eu, *he had* |
| | *had,* or *might* | *had'st had,* or | *had,* or *might* |
| que | *have had.* | *might'st have had.* | *have had.* |
| *that* | Nous eussions | vous eussiez eu, *ye* | ils eussent eu, *they* |
| *P.* | eu, *we had* | or *you had had,* or | *had had,* or *might* |
| | *had,* or, *&c.* | *might have had.* | *have had.* |

IMPERATIVE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Aie, *have,* or *have thou.* | qu' | il ait, *let him have.* |
| *P.* Ayons, *let us have.* | ayez, *have,* or *have ye.* | qu' | ils aient, *let them have.* |

## ETRE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Present Tense* | être, | *to be.* |
| *Gerund* | étant, | *being* |
| *Participle* | été, | *been.* |
| *Compound of the Present* | avoir été, | *to have been.* |
| *Compound of the Gerund* | ayant été, | *having been.* |

INDICATIVE.

*Present Tense.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je suis, *I am.* | tu es, *thou art.* | il est, *he is.* |
| *P.* Nous sommes, *we are.* | vous êtes, *ye* or *you are.* | ils sont, *they are* |

*Imperfect Tense.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* J'étois, *I was.* | tu étois, *thou wast.* | il étoit, *he was.* |
| *P.* Nous étions, *we were.* | vous étiez, *ye* or *you were.* | ils étoient, *they were.* |

*Preterite Tense.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je fus, *I was.* | tu fus, *thou wast.* | il fut, *he was.* |
| *P.* Nous fumes, *we were.* | vous futes, *ye* or *you were.* | ils furent, *they were.* |

*Future Tense.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je serai, *I shall* or *will be.* | tu seras, *thou shalt* or *wilt be.* | il sera, *he shall* or *will be.* |
| *P.* Nous serons, *we shall* or *will be.* | vous serez, *ye* or *you shall* or *will be.* | ils seront, *they shall* or *will be.* |

*Conditional Tense.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je serois, *I should, would, could,* or *might be.* | tu serois, *thou should'st, would'st, could'st,* &c. | il seroit, *he should, would, could,* or *might be.* |
| *P.* Nous serions, *we should, would,* &c. | vous seriez, *ye* or *you should, would,* &c. | ils seroient, *they should, would,* &c. |

*Compound of the Present Tense.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* J'ai été, *I have been.* | tu as été, *thou hast been.* | il a été, *he has been.* |
| *P.* Nous avons été, *we have been.* | vous avez été, *ye* or *you have been.* | ils ont été, *they have been.* |

*Compound of the Imperfect Tense.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* J'avois été, *I had been.* | tu avois été, *thou had'st been.* | il avoit été, *he had been.* |
| *P.* Nous avions été, *we had been.* | vous aviez été, *ye* or *you had been.* | ils avoient été, *they had been* |

*Compound of the Preterite Tense*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* J'eus été, *I had been.* | tu eus été, *thou had'st been.* | il eut été, *he had been.* |
| *P.* Nous eumes été, *we had been.* | vous eutes été, *ye* or *you had been.* | ils eurent été, *they had been.* |

*Compound of the Future Tense.*

| | *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | J'aurai été, *I shall have been.* | tu auras été, *thou shalt have been.* | il aura été, *he shall have been.* |
| *P.* | Nous aurons été, *we shall have been.* | vous aurez été, *ye* or *you shall have been.* | ils auront été, *they shall have been.* |

*Compound of the Conditional Tense.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | J'aurois été, *I should, would, could,* or *might have been.* | tu aurois été, *thou should'st, would'st, could'st,* or, *&c.* | il auroit été, *he should, would, could,* or *might have been.* |
| *P.* | Nous aurions été, *we should, would, &c.* | vous auriez été, *ye should, would, &c.* | ils auroient été, *they should, would, &c.* |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *that* *P.* | Je sois, *I may be,* or *I be.* | tu sois, *thou may'st be.* | il soit, *he may be.* |
| | Nous soyons, *we may be.* | vous soyez, *ye* or *you may be.* | ils soient, *they may be.* |

*Preterite Tense.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *that* *P.* | Je fusse, *I was,* or *were,* or *might be.* | to fusses, *thou wast,* or *wert,* or *mightest be.* | il fût, *he was, were,* or *might be.* |
| | Nous fussions, *we were, &c.* | vous fussiez, *ye* or *you were,* or, *&c.* | ils fussent, *they were,* or *might be.* |

*Compound of the Present Tense.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *that* *P.* | J'aie été, *I may have been.* | tu aies été, *thou mayest have been.* | il ait été, *he may have been.* |
| | Nous ayons été, *we may have been.* | vous ayez été, *ye* or *you may have been.* | ils aient été, *they may have been.* |

*Compound of the Preterite Tense.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *that* *P.* | J'eusse été, *I had been,* or *might, &c.* | tu eusses été, *thou had'st been,* or *might'st, &c.* | il eût été, *he had been,* or *might have been.* |
| | Nous eussions été, *we had been,* or, *&c.* | vous eussiez été, *ye* or *you had &c.* | ils eussent été, *they had been, &c.* |

### IMPERATIVE.

| *First Person.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Sois, *be*, or *be thou.* | qu'il soit, *let him be.* |
| *P.* Soyons, *let us be.* | soyez, *be*, or *be ye.* | qu'ils soient, *let them be.* |

It is not with the French Verbs as with the English ones. The English distinguish the moods and tenses of their verbs by these particles, *do, did; shall, will; can, may; should, could, would, might*, and *let*, prefixed to the word of the verb, which is the same throughout, except in the participles and preterites; whereas French verbs change their inflections and terminations, not only in every mood and tense, but even in every person; the different ways of expressing the action of the verb amounting to no less than ninety-four; which makes the conjugation of them pretty hard, though it is at the same time so important, that Foreigners cannot too much apply themselves to it. In order therefore to do it more effectually, I shall set down rules whereby the Learner may easily arrive at the exact and ready formation of the tenses of the verbs, and the persons of those tenses: which being once well considered and learnt, the conjugating of the verbs will be freed from that difficulty which otherwise it would be necessarily attended with.

Besides that, I have joined a table of all the conjugations, wherein one may see at one view how each tense simply is derived, and formed from its infinitive. I cannot too much recommend the Students to make themselves familiar with it, since tho' one could not lay down principles common to all verbs in the forming of their several tenses, those ten conjugations include an infallible way of conjugating above 3000 Regular Verbs: so that after knowing in what consists the difference of those called Irregular, which shall be also set in order, one will be thoroughly acquainted with the French verbs.

Before I lay down rules for the forming of the verbs, it is to be observed, that there will be none about the forming of the Participle, and Preterite and Present tenses: not that there can be no rules contrived for the forming of those tenses; but because the ten different conjugations would require twice ten different and particular rules; and the perusing of the following table, with ever so little attention, will sufficiently supply the want of such further rules. It will therefore be enough to take notice of all that is general to the regular verbs.

### *Rules for the Formation of the Tenses of the French Verbs.*

*1st Rule.* In all verbs the Gerund ends in *ant*, the Imperfect in *ois*, the Future in *rai*, and the Conditional in *rois*.

*2d R.* The *Imperfect* is formed from the *Gerund*, by changing *ant* into *ois*: as,

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Ger.* | Parl-ant, | *speaking.* | *Imperf.* | Je parl-ois, | *I did speak.* |
| | Lis-ant, | *reading.* | | Je lis-ois, | *I did read.* |

*3d R.* The *Future* is formed from the *Infinitive*, by adding *ai* to the final *r*, or if it ends in an *e* mute, by changing that *e* into *ai*; as,

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Infinit.* | Parler, | *to speak.* | *Future* | Je parler-ai, | *I shall speak.* |
| | Lire, | *to read.* | | Je lir-ai, | *I shall read.* |

*4th R.* The *Conditional* is likewise formed from the *Infinitive*, by adding *ois* to the final *r*, or changing the final *e* mute into *ois*: as,

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Infinit.* | Parler, | *to speak.* | *Condition.* | Je parler-ois, | *I would speak* |
| | Lire, | *to read.* | | Je lir-ois, | *I would read.* |

*Exceptions.*

1st The verb *faire* to do, changes *ai* into *e* mute in its future and conditional tenses. Thus spell and read *je ferai* I shall do, *je ferois* I would do. In its gerund, present, and imperfect tenses, though you spell *faisant* doing, *nous faisons* we do, *je faisois* I did; you pronounce all these words as if they were written with *fe* instead of *fai*.

2*dly*. Verbs ending in *enir*, as *tenir* to hold, change *enir* into *iendrai* and *iendrois*, for their future and conditional; *je tiendrai* I will hold, *je tiendrois* I would hold, instead of *tenirai* and *tenirois*.

3*dly*. Verbs in *evoir*, as *recevoir* to receive, change *evoir* into *evrai* and *evrois*, for their future and conditional; *je recevrai* I shall receive, *je recevrois* I would receive, instead of *recevoirai* and *recevoirois*.

5*th R*. The *Present* of the *Subjunctive* is formed from the *Gerund*, by changing *ant* into *e* mute: as,

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Ger.* | Parl-ant, | *speaking.* | *Pres.* | que | je parl-e, | *I may speak.* |
| | Lis-ant, | *reading.* | *Subj.* | | je lis-e, | *I may read.* |

*Exceptions.*

1*st*. The verb *faire* changes *aisant* of its gerund, into *asse* for its subjunctive present: as from *faisant* doing, *que je fasse* that I may do, instead of *faisse*.

2*dly*. Verbs in *enir* form their subjunctive, by changing *enant* into *ienne*: *tenant* holding, *que je tienne* that I may hold, instead of *tene*.

3*dly*. Verbs in *evoir* change *evant* into *oive* for the subjunctive: *recevant* receiving, *que je reçoive* I may receive, instead of *receve*.

6*th R*. The *Preterite* of the *Subjunctive* is formed from the *second* person of the *Preterite* of the *Indicative*, by adding *se* (mute), as,

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Pret. Indic.* | tu parlas, lus, | *thou spok'st. read'st.* | *Pret. Subj.* | que | je parlas-se, lus-se, | *I might speak. I might read.* |

And though the final *s* of the preterite of the indicative is preceded by *n*, as in preterites of verbs in *enir*, that *s* is doubled in the subjunctive, and the third person takes *t* instead of *sse*: as *tu tins* thou heldest, *que je tinsse* that I might hold, *qu'il tint* he might hold.

*Rules for forming the* second *and* third *Persons of the Sing. Numb. in all Verbs.*

1*st Rule*. The first person of every tense always ends either in *e* mute, or in *s* or *x*, or in *ai*. When it ends in *e* mute, the second person adds *s* to it, and the third is like the first: as,

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st. P.* | Je parle, | *I speak.* | que | je souffre, | *I may suffer.* |
| 2*d.* | Tu parles, | *thou speakest.* | | tu souffres, | *thou mayest suffer.* |
| 3*d.* | Il parle, | *he speaks.* | | il souffre, | *he may suffer.* |

2*d R*. When the first person ends with *s* or *x*, the second is like the first, and the third takes *t* instead of the final *s* or *x*: as,

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | Je lis, | *I read.* | Je veux, | *I am willing.* |
| 2*d.* | Tu lis, | *thou readest.* | Tu veux, | *thou art willing.* |
| 3*d.* | Il lit, | *he reads.* | Il veut, | *he is willing.* |

In verbs that have *d* or *t* immediately before the final *s* of the first person, that *s* is left out in the third person: as,

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | J'entends, | *I hear.* | Je mets, | *I put.* |
| 2*d.* | Il entend, | *he hears.* | Il met, | *he puts.* |

*3d R.* When the first persons ends in *ai* (as in the Preterite and Future tenses), the second changes the final *i* into *s*, and the third leaves it out quite: as,

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *1st.* | Je parlai, | *I spoke,* | | Je parlerai, | *I shall speak.* |
| *2d.* | Tu parlas, | *thou spokest.* | | Tu parleras, | *thou shalt speak.* |
| *3d.* | Il parla, | *he spoke.* | | Il parlera, | *he shall speak.* |

Except the third person of the preterite of the subjunctive, which ends with *t* in all verbs, *sse* of the first person being changed into *t* with a circumflex over the preceding vowel: as,

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *1st.* Que | je parlasse, | *I might speak.* | Que | je fisse, | *I might do.* |
| *2d.* | il parlât, | *he might speak.* | | il fît, | *he might do.* |

*Rules for forming the* three Persons *of the* Plural *Number of Tenses in all Verbs.*

*1st Rule.* The plural number of the present tense of the indicative is formed from the gerund, by changing *ant* into *ons* for the *first* person, into *ez* for the second, and into *ent* (mute) for the third: as from

| | *Ger.* parl-ant, *speaking.* | | | lis-ant, *reading.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *Pres. Plur.* | | | *Pres. Plur.* | |
| *1st. P.* | Nous parl-ons, | *we speak.* | | Nous lis-ons, | *we read.* |
| *2d.* | Vous parl-ez, | *ye speak.* | | Vous lis-ez, | *ye read.* |
| *3d.* | Ils parl-ent, | *they speak.* | | Ils lis-ent, | *they read.* |

Except, *1st.* The two last persons of the present of *faire*, which, though it forms its first plural *faisons* from its gerund *faisant*, yet makes *faites* in the second, instead of *faisez*, and in the third *font*, instead of *faisent*.

The same exception takes place for the second person plural of the same tense in the verb *dire, disant,* which makes *dites* instead of *disez*.

*2dly.* The last person of verbs in *enir*, which ends in *iennent*, as from *tenant* holding, *nous tenons* we hold, *vous tenez* you hold, *ils tiennent* they hold, instead of *tennent*.

*3dly.* The last persons of verbs in *evoir*, which ends in *oivent*, as from *recevant* receiving, *nous recevons* we receive, *vous recevez* you receive, *ils reçoivent* they receive, instead of *recevent*.

*2d R.* The plural of the imperfect is formed from the first person singular, by changing *ois* into *ions* for the first person, into *iez* for the second, and into *oient* (pronounced like the first person) for the third: as from

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Sing.* | Je parl-ois, | *I* | *did speak.* | Je lis-ois, | *I did* | *read.* |
| *Plur.* | Nous parl-ions, | *we* | | Nous lis-ions, | *we did* | |
| *2d. P.* | Vous parl-iez, | *ye* | | Vous lis-iez, | *ye did* | |
| *3d.* | Ils parl-oient, | *they* | | Ils lis-oient, | *they did* | |

*3d R.* The plural of the preterite is formed from the first person singular (always ending in *ai* or *s*), by changing *ai* into *ames* for the first person, into *ates* for the second, and *èrent* (sounded only as the letter *r*) for the third; or by changing *s* into *mes* (mute) for the first person, into *tes* (mute) for the second, and *rent* (*ent* also mute) for the third; as from

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Sing.* | Je parl-ai, | *I spoke.* | Je lu-s, | *I read.* |
| *Plur.* | Nous parl-ames, | *we spoke.* | Nous lu-mes, | *we read.* |
| *2d.* | Vous parl-ates, | *ye spoke.* | Vous lu-tes, | *ye or you read.* |
| *3d.* | Ils parl-èrent, | *they spoke.* | Ils lu-rent, | *they read.* |

*4th R.* The plural of the future is formed from the first person singular, by changing *rai* into *rons* for the first person, into *rez* for the second, and into *ront* for the third; as from

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Sing.* | Je parle-rai, | *I* | | Je li-rai, | *I will read.* |
| *Plur.* | Nous parle-rons, | *we* | | Nous li-rons, | *we will read.* |
| *2d.* | Vous parle-rez, | *ye* | *will speak.* | Vous li-rez, | *ye will read.* |
| *3d.* | Ils parle-ront, | *they* | | Ils li-ront, | *they will read.* |

*5th R.* The plural of the conditional is formed from the first person singular, by changing *rois* into *rions* for the first person, into *riez* for the second, and into *roient* (pronounced like the first person) for the third; as from

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Sing.* | Je parle-rois, | *I would* | | Je li-rois, | *I* |
| *Plur.* | Nous parle-rions, | *we would* | | Nous li-rions, | *we* |
| *2d.* | Vous parle-riez, | *you would* | *speak.* | Vous li-riez, | *ye* *would read.* |
| *3d.* | Ils parle-roient, | *they would* | | Ils li-roient, | *they* |

*6th R.* The plural of the present and preterite of the subjunctive is formed from the first person singular, by changing *e* mute into *ions* for the first person, into *iez* for the second, and into *ent* (mute) for the third; as from

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Sing.* | Que je parl-e, | *that I* | | Que je parlass-e, | *that I might* |
| *Plur.* | Nous parl-ions, | *we* | | Nous parlass-ions, | *we might* |
| *2d.* | Vous parl-iez, | *ye* | *may speak.* | Vous parlass-iez, | *ye might* *speak.* |
| *3d.* | Ils parl-ent, | *they* | | Ils parlass-ent, | *they might* |

Except again, 1*st*, In the verbs in *enir*, the plural number of the present, which is not formed from the first pers. sing. ending in *ienne*, but makes *enions*, *eniez*, *iennent*; *que je tienne* I may hold, *nous tenions* we may hold, *vous teniez* you may hold, *ils tiennent* they may hold.

2*dly*, In verbs in *evoir*, the plural of the present, which is not formed from the first person ending in *oive*, but makes *evions*, *eviez*, *oivent*; *que je reçoive* I may receive, *nous recevions* we may receive, *vous receviez* you may receive, *ils reçoivent* they may receive.

Observe moreover, 1*st*, That the verbs of the first conjugation, ending in *er*, have the three persons singular, and the third plural of the subjunctive, like the same persons of the indicative: as,

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st. Sing.* | Je parle, | *I speak.* | Que | je parle, | *I may speak.* |
| 2*d.* | tu parles, | *thou speak'st.* | | tu parles, | *thou may'st speak.* |
| 3*d.* | il parle, | *he speaks.* | Qu' | il parle, | *he may speak.* |
| 3d. *Pl.* | ils parlent, | *they speak.* | | ils parlent, | *they may speak.* |

Verbs of the other conjugations have only the third plural alike.

2*dly*, The first and second persons plural of the subjunctive are in all verbs alike to the same persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative: as,

| | *Ind. Imperfect.* | | | *Sub. Present.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st.* | Nous parlions, | *we did speak.* | Que | nous parlions, | *we may speak.* |
| 2*d.* | Vous parliez, | *ye did speak.* | | vous parliez, | *ye may speak.* |

Except again in *faire*, which, as it does not form regularly its subjunctive from its gerund *faisant*, but makes *fasse* in the first person sing. so consequently makes in the plural *fassions*, and *fassiez*. *See the 6th Conjugation.*

As for the Imperative mood, the second person singular (for it has no first person) and the first and second plural are the same as those of the present of the indicative; leaving out the pronouns; *tu fais* thou dost, *nous faisons* we do, *vous faites* ye do, and the third persons of both numbers the same as those of the subjunctive; *qu'il fasse* let him do, *qu'ils fassent* let them do.

But take notice, 1*st*, that the verbs of the first conjugation, and others too ending the first person of the indicative in *e* not sounded, leave out in the second person of the imperative the final *s* of the same of the indicative, unless that second person be immediately followed by the relative pronouns *en* and *y*,

in which case it keeps *s*: as *cherches-en*, seek for some; *vas-y*, go thither say without *s*, *cherche un meilleur ami*, seek for a better friend; *va en Fran* to France; *en* being here a preposition.

*2dly*, Verbs of the other conjugations keep in the second person of the rative the final *s* of the indicative.

Tenses compound are always formed from the participle of the verb in tion, joined to the tenses simple of the auxiliary *avoir*; as in *parler* to spea

The compound of the present tense is formed from the present of *avoir* the participle *parlé* spoken: as,

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Sing.* | J' | ai | parlé, | *I* | *have* | *spoken.* |
| | tu | as | | *thou* | *hast* | |
| | il | a | | *he* | *has* | |
| *Plur.* | nous | avons | | *we* | *have* | |
| | vous | avez | | *ye* | *have* | |
| | ils | ont | | *they* | *have* | |

The Compound of the Imperfect is formed from the imperfect of the auxi and the participle: as,

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Sing.* | J' | avois | parlé | *I* | *had* | *spoken.* |
| | tu | avois | | *thou* | *had'st* | |
| | il | avoit | | *he* | *had* | |
| *Plur.* | nous | avions | | *we* | *had* | |
| | vous | aviez | | *ye* | *had* | |
| | ils | avoient | | *they* | *had* | |

The Compound of the Preterite is formed from the preterite of the aux and the participle: as,

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Sing.* | J' | eus | parlé, | *I* | *had* | *spoken.* |
| | tu | eus | | *thou* | *had'st* | |
| | il | eut | | *he* | *had* | |
| *Plur.* | nous | eumes | | *we* | *had* | |
| | vous | eutes | | *ye* | *had* | |
| | ils | eurent | | *they* | *had* | |

The Compound of the Future is formed from the future of the auxiliary the participle: as,

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Sing.* | J' | aurai | parlé, | *I* | *shall have* | *spoken* |
| | tu | auras | | *thou* | *shalt have* | |
| | il | aura | | *he* | *shall have* | |
| *Plur.* | nous | aurons | | *we* | *shall have* | |
| | vous | aurez | | *ye* | *shall have* | |
| | ils | auront | | *they* | *shall have* | |

The Compound of the Conditional is formed from the conditional of the liary and the participle: as,

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Sing.* | J' | aurois | parlé, | *I* | *would have* | *spoken.* |
| | tu | aurois | | *thou* | *would'st have* | |
| | il | auroit | | *he* | *would have* | |
| *Plur.* | nous | aurions | | *we* | *would have* | |
| | vous | auriez | | *ye* | *would have* | |
| | ils | auroient | | *they* | *would have* | |

Likewise in the Subjunctive, the Compound of the Present is formed fro present of the subjunctive of the auxiliary, and the participle: as,

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Que* | J' | aie | parlé, | *I* | *may have* | *spoken* |
| *Sing.* | tu | aies | | *thou* | *may'st have* | |
| | il | ait | | *he* | *may have* | |
| *Plur.* | nous | ayons | | *we* | *may have* | |
| | vous | ayez | | *ye* | *may have* | |
| | ils | aient | | *they* | *may have* | |

The Compound of the Preterite is formed from the preterite of the subjunctive of the auxiliary, and the participle: as,

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Sing.* | J' eusse<br>tu eusses<br>il eût | parlé, | *I had*<br>*thou hadst*<br>*he had* | or *might have spoken.* |
| *Plur.* | nous eussions<br>vous eussiez<br>ils eussent | | *we had*<br>*ye had*<br>*they had* | |

In the Infinitive mood the Present and Gerund have also each its compound; *viz.* from the present of the infinitive, and the Gerund of the auxiliary, and participle: as,

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* | avoir | parlé, | *to have* | *spoken.* |
| *Part.* | ayant | | *having* | |

## *First* CONJUGATION.

### *Of Verbs in* er.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *esent Tense* ..... | Parler, | *to speak.* |
| *rund* ..... | Parlant, | *speaking.* |
| *rticiple* ..... | Parlé, | *spoken.* |
| *mpound of the Present* .... | Avoir parlé, | *to have spoken.* |
| *mpound of the Gerund* .... | Ayant parlé, | *having spoken.* |

#### INDICATIVE.

*Present Tense.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| Je parle, *I speak**. | tu parles, *thou speak'st.* | il parle, *he speaks.* |
| Nous parlons, *we speak.* | vous parlez, *ye* or *you speak* | ils parlent, *they speak.* |

*Imperfect.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Je parlois, *I did speak*†. | tu parlois, *thou did'st speak.* | il parloit, *he did speak.* |
| Nous parlions, *we did speak.* | vous parliez, *ye* or *you did speak.* | ils parloient, *they did speak.* |

* or I do speak, or I am speaking; thou dost speak, or thou art speaking, &c.

† or I spoke, or I was speaking; thou wast speaking, &c.

‡ It may not be amiss to observe that the French imperfect answers better to its English location *I was* speaking, than to the two others.

*Preterite.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je parlai, *I spoke.* | tu parlas, *thou spokest.* | il parla, *he spoke* |
| *P.* Nous parlames, *we spoke.* | vous parlates, *ye* or *you spoke.* | ils parlèrent, *they spoke.* |

*Future.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je parlerai, *I shall* or *will speak.* | tu parleras, *thou shalt* or *wilt speak.* | il parlera, *he shall* or *will speak.* |
| *P.* Nous parlerons, *we shall* or *will*, &c. | vous parlerez, *ye* or *you shall* or *will*, &c. | ils parleront, *they shall* or *will speak.* |

*Conditional.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je parlerois, *I should, would, could,* or *might speak.* | tu parlerois, *thou should'st, could'st, would'st,* or, *&c.* | il parleroit, *he should, would, could,* or, *&c.* |
| *P.* Nous parlerions, *we should, would,* &c. | vous parleriez, *ye,* or *you should,* &c. | ils parleroient, *they should, would,* &c. |

*Comp. of Pres.* J'ai
*Comp. of Imp.* J'avois
*Comp. of Pret.* J'eus
*Comp. of Fut.* J'aurai
*Comp. of Cond.* J'aurois
} parlé, *&c.* { *I have* * / *I had* / *I had* / *I shall have* / *I should,* &c. *have* } *spoken,* &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *that* *P.* | Je parle, *I may speak.* / Nous parlions, *we may,* &c. | tu parles, *thou may'st speak,* &c. / vous parliez, *ye* or *you may speak.* | il parle, *he may speak.* / ils parlent, *they may speak.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *that* *P.* | Je parlasse, *I spoke,* or *might speak.* / Nous parlassions, *we,* &c. | tu parlasses, *thou spokest,* &c. / vous parlassiez, *ye* or *you spoke.* | il parlât, *he spoke* / ils parlassent, *they spoke.* |

*Comp. of Pres.* que { J'aie } parlé, { *I have* or *may have* } *spoken*
*Comp. of Pret.* that { J'eusse } *&c.* { *I had* or *might have* } *&c.*

* *or* I spoke, *or* I did speak, *or* I have been speaking.

IMPERATIVE

| *irst Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| | Parle, *speak thou**. | qu'il parle, *let him speak.* |
| ırlons, *let us* | Parlez, *speak*, or | ils parlent, *let them* |
| *ık.* | *speak ye* †. | *speak.* |

* *or* do thou speak. † *or* do ye speak.

er the same manner are conjugated about 2700 verbs end- *er*, most of which are inserted in the Vocabulary, there but two irregular in the language. (See page 168.)

ıe manner in which Chambaud has presented the French verbs is merely ıical, and of course the best contrived to learn them, but at the same time, ıys (page 167), is of no great service for the use of the tenses, which, how- ıe scholar cannot know too soon; it may not be amiss, therefore, to insert e table annexed to the Exercise-book (page 270) in which the verbs are ed in the progressive order of their tenses.

| TENSES. | 1st AUXILIARY. | 2d AUXILIARY. | A VERB regular *of the 1st Conjugation.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | INFINITIVE MOOD. | | |
| *ıent Tense.* | avoir, *to have.* | être, *to be.* | parler, *to speak.* |
| *'und.* | ayant, *having.* | étant, *being.* | parlant, *speaking.* |
| *'ticiple.* | eu *or* eue, *had.* | été, *been.* | parlé, *spoken.* |
| *fect Tense.* | avoir eu, *to have had.* | avoir été, *to have been.* | avoir parlé, *to have spoken.* |
| *'und past.* | ayant eu, *having had.* | ayant été, *having been.* | ayant parlé, *having spoken.* |
| | INDICATIVE. | | |
| | 1*st Pers. Sing.* | | |
| *ıent Tense.* | j'ai, *I have.* | je suis, *I am.* | je parle, *I speak.* |
| *ıerfect.* | j'avois, *I had.* | j'étois, *I was.* | je parlois, *I was speaking.* |
| *fect Indef.* | j'ai eu, *I have had.* | j'ai été, *I have been.* | j'ai parlé, *I have spoken.* |
| *perfect.* | j'avois eu, *I had had.* | j'avois été, *I had been.* | j'avois parlé, *I had spoken.* |
| *fect Definite Historical.* | j'eus, *I had.* | je fus, *I was.* | je parlai, *I spoke.* |
| *perfect Def.* | j'eus eu, *I had had.* | j'eus été, *I had been.* | j'eus parlé, *I had spoken.* |
| *ure.* | j'aurai, *I shall have.* | je serai, *I shall be.* | je parlerai, *I shall speak.* |
| *ure Relative.* | j'aurai eu, *I shall have had.* | j'aurai été, *I shall have been.* | j'aurai parlé, *I shall have spoken.* |
| *ıditional.* | j'aurois, *I should have.* | je serois, *I should be.* | je parlerois. *I should speak.* |
| *ıditional past.* | j'aurois eu, *I should have had.* | j'aurois été, *I should have been.* | j'aurois parlé, *I* should have spoken. |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| p. | *Pres.Tense.* | que j'aie, *that I may have.* | que je sois, *that I may be.* | que je parle, *that I may speak.* |
| q. | *Imperfect.* | que j'eusse, *I might have.* | que je fusse, *I might be.* | que je parlasse, *I might speak.* |
| r. | *Perfect.* | que j'aie eu, *I may have had.* | que j'aie été, *I may have been.* | que j'aie parlé, *I may have spoken.* |
| s. | *Pluperfect.* | que j'eusse eu, *I might have had.* | que j'eusse été, *I might have been.* | que j'eusse parlé, *I might have spoken.* |

IMPERATIVE.

t. | *Pres.Tense.* | aie, *have thou.* | sois, *be thou.* | parle, *speak thou.*

---

*Conjugate after* Parler. INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* Lever, *to raise.* *Ger.* Levant, *raising.* *Part.* Levé, *raised.*
*C. Pres.* Avoir levé, *to have raised.* Ayant levé, *having raised.*

INDICATIVE.

*Pres.* Je lève, I *raise.* *Imperf.* Je levois, *I did raise.* *Pret.* Je levai, *I raised.*
*Fut.* Je leverai, *I shall raise.* *Cond.* Je leverois, *I should raise.* *Compound.*
J'ai levé, *I have raised.* J'avois levé, *I had raised.* J'eus levé, *I had raised.*
J'aurai levé, *I shall have raised.* J'aurois levé, *I should have raised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Pres.* Que je lève, *that I may raise.* *Pret.* Que je levasse, *that I might raise.*
*Comp.* Que j'aie levé, *that I may have raised.* Que j'eusse levé, *that I might have raised.*

IMPERATIVE.

Lève, *raise thou.* Qu'il lève, *let him raise.* Levons, *let us raise.* Levez, *raise.*
Qu'ils lèvent, *let them raise.*

*Conjugate the same verb* REFLECTIVELY.

It has been said, (page 129), that reflected verbs are so called, because they govern no other object but the subject they are governed by. They are therefore conjugated with a double pronoun before each person, one of which governs the verb as its subject, and the other is governed as its object; as *se blesser*, to hurt oneself; *je me blesse*, I hurt myself; in which instance the English verb answers exactly to that which the French call Reflected. But we have a great many more that are rendered into English by mere neuter; as *se lever* to rise, which shall be set down here as an example of conjugating this sort of verbs.

¶ It must be observed that a verb activ used reflectively has the true force of a verb passive; consequently it does not form its compound tenses from *avoir*, as in English, but from the other auxiliary *être*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* Se lever, *to rise.* *Ger.* Se levant, *rising.* *Part.* Levé, *risen.*
*C. Pres.* S'être levé, *to have risen.* *C. Ger.* S'étant levé, *having risen.*

INDICATIVE.

| | *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| S. | Je me lève, *I rise.* | tu te lèves, *thou risest.* | il se lève, *he rises.* |
| P. | Nous nous levons, *we rise.* | vous vous levez, *ye* or *you rise.* | ils se lèvent, *they rise.* |

*Imperfect.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je me levois, *I did rise, or better, I was rising.* | tu te levois, *thou didst rise.* | il se levoit, *he did rise* |
| *P.* Nous nous levions, *we did rise.* | vous vous leviez, *ye did rise.* | ils se levoient, *they did rise.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je me levai, *I rose.* | tu te levas, *thou*, &c. | il se leva, *he rose.* |
| *P.* Nous nous levames, *we rose.* | vous vous levates, *ye rose.* | ils se levèrent, *they rose* |

*Future.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je me leverai, *I shall or will rise,* | tu te leveras, *thou shalt or wilt rise.* | il se levera, *he shall* or *will rise.* |
| *P.* Nous nous leverons, *we shall*, &c. | vous vous leverez, *ye shall* or *will*, &c. | ils se leveront, *they shall* or *will rise.* |

*Conditional.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je me leverois, *I should* or *would rise.* | tu te leverois, *thou would'st* or, *&c.* | il se leveroit, *he would* or *should*, &c. |
| *P.* Nous nous leverions, *we should* or *&c.* | vous vous leveriez, *ye would* or, *&c.* | ils se leveroient, *they would* or *should*, &c. |

*Compound of Present.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je me suis levé, *I have risen.* | tu t'es levé, *thou hast risen.* | il s'est levé, *he has risen.* |
| *P.* Nous nous sommes levés, *we*, &c. | vous vous êtes levés, *ye have risen.* | ils se sont levés, *they have risen.* |

*Compound of Imperfect.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je m'étois levé, *I had risen.* | tu t'étois levé, *thou had'st risen.* | il s'étoit levé, *he had risen.* |
| *P.* Nous nous étions levés, *we had risen.* | vous vous étiez levés, *ye had risen.* | ils s'étoient levés, *they had risen.* |

*Compound of Preterite.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je me fus levé, *I had risen.* | tu te fus levé, *thou hadst risen.* | il se fut levé, *he had risen.* |
| *P.* Nous nous fumes levés, *we had*, &c. | vous vous futes levés, *ye*, &c. | ils se furent levés, *they had risen.* |

*Compound of Future.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je me serai levé, *I shall have risen.* | tu te seras levé, *thou shalt have risen.* | il se sera levé, *he shall have risen.* |
| *P.* Nous nous serons levés, *we shall*, &c. | vous vous serez levés, *ye*, &c. | ils se seront levés, *they shall*, &c. |

*Compound of Conditional.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je me serois levé, *I should have risen.* | tu te serois levé, *thou would'st have risen.* | il se seroit levé, *he would, have risen.* |
| *P.* Nous nous serions levés, *we*, &c. | vous vous seriez levés, *ye*, &c. | ils se seroient levés, *they would*, &c. |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present Tense.*

| | *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| S. que *that* P. | Je me lève, *I may rise.* / Nous nous levions, *&c.* | tu te lèves, *thou may'st rise.* / vous vous leviez, *ye* or *you*, &c. | il se lève, *he may rise.* / ils se lèvent, *they may rise.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| S. que *that* P. | Je me levasse, *I rose* or *might rise.* / Nous nous levassions, *we, &c.* | tu te levasses, *thou*, &c. / vous vous levassiez, *ye* or, *&c.* | il se levât, *he rose.* / ils se levassent, *they rose.* |

*Compound of the Present.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| S. que *that* P. | Je me sois levé, *I may have risen.* / Nous nous soyons levés, *we may*, &c. | tu te sois levé, *thou mayest have risen.* / vous vous soyez levés, *ye may*, &c. | il se soit levé, *he may have risen.* / ils se soient levés, *they may have risen.* |

*Compound of the Preterite.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| S. que *that* P. | Je me fusse levé, *I might have risen.* / Nous nous fussions levés, *we might*, &c. | tu te fusses levé, *thou mightest have risen.* / vous vous fussiez levés, *ye might*, &c. | il se fût levé, *he might have risen.* / ils se fussent levés, *they might have*, &c. |

IMPERATIVE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | Lève-toi, *rise*, or *rise thou.* | qu' il se lève, *let him rise.* / qu' ils se lèvent, *let them rise.* |
| P. | Levons-nous, *let us rise.* | levez-vous, *rise*, or *rise ye*, or *you.* | |

*The same* IMPERATIVE *negatively.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | Ne te lève pas, *rise thou not.* | qu' il ne se lève pas, *let him not rise.* / qu' ils ne se lèvent pas *let them rise.* |
| P. | Ne nous levons pas, *let us not rise.* | ne nous levez pas, *do not rise.* | |

Observe that *I am risen*, *I was risen*, &c. that are seen in some grammars to answer the French of the compound tenses, and signify properly in French *je suis levé*, *j'étois levé*, &c. imply quite another sense than that of *I have risen*, *I had risen*, &c.

¶ It is not unworthy of notice that these reflected pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, &c. serve to express sometimes the object of the action, or the accusative, and sometimes the term to which the action tends, or the dative. (See Exercises, p. 16.) In this phrase, *Je me donne à vous*, I give myself up to you, *me* is the object; whereas in this, *Je me donne bien de la peine*, I give myself much trouble, *me* is the term, and signifies *to myself*, *to* being understood in English.

¶ Many persons have judiciously observed that Chambaud has gone rather too far in his Grammar (see p. 240), before he acquaints the scholar with the *manner* of managing the verbs negatively and interrogatively, and the more so,

as he himself in his examples makes use of negative and interrogative phrases. In order, therefore, to make amends for this delay, we shall here present the learner with the following tables.

### 1st TABLE. The French Verbs used negatively.

| Tenses. | 1st *Auxiliary.* | 2d *Auxiliary.* | *A Verb active or neuter.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| **INFINITIVE MOOD.** | | | |
| *Pres. Tense.* | n'avoir pas *or* ne pas avoir, *not to have.* | n'être pas *or* ne pas être, *not to be.* | ne pas parler, *not to speak.* |
| *Gerund.* | n'ayant pas, *not having.* | n'étant pas, *not being.* | ne parlant pas, *not speaking.* |
| *Perfect Tense* | n'avoir pas eu, *not to have had.* | n'avoir pas été, *not to have been.* | n'avoir pas parlé, *not to have spoken.* |
| *Gerund past.* | n'ayant pas eu, *not having had.* | n'ayant pas été, *not having been.* | n'ayant pas parlé, *not having spoken.* |
| **INDICATIVE.** | | | |
| *Pres. tense.* | je n'ai pas, *I have not.* | je ne suis pas, *I am not.* | je ne parle pas, *I do not speak.* |
| *Imperfect.* | je n'avois pas, *I had not.* | je n'étois pas, *I was not.* | je ne parlois pas, *I did not speak.* |
| *Perf. indef.* | je n'ai pas eu, *I have not had.* | je n'ai pas été, *I have not been.* | je n'ai pas parlé, *I have not spoken.* |
| *Pluperfect.* | je n'avois pas eu, *I had not had.* | je n'avois pas été, *I had not been.* | je n'avois pas parlé, *I had not spoken.* |
| *Perf. def. or Exist.* | je n'eus pas, *I had not.* | je ne fus pas, *I was not.* | je ne parlai pas, *I did not speak.* |
| *Pluperf. def.* | je n'eus pas eu, *I had not had.* | je n'eus pas été, *I had not been.* | je n'eus pas parlé, *I had not spoken.* |
| *Future.* | je n'aurai pas, *I shall not have.* | je ne serai pas, *I shall not be.* | je ne parlerai pas, *I shall not speak.* |
| *Fut. relat.* | je n'aurai pas eu *I shall not have had.* | je n'aurai pas été, *I shall not have been.* | je n'aurai pas parlé, *I shall not have spoken.* |
| *Conditional.* | je n'aurois pas, *I should not have.* | je ne serois pas, *I should not be.* | je ne parlerois pas, *I should not speak.* |
| *Condit. past.* | je n'aurois pas eu, *I should not have had.* | je n'aurois pas été, *I should not have been.* | je n'aurois pas parlé, *I should not have spoken.* |
| **SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.** | | | |
| *Pres. tense.* | que je n'aie pas, *that I may not have.* | que je ne sois pas, *that I may not be.* | que je ne parle pas, *that I may not speak.* |
| *Imperfect.* | — je n'eusse pas, — *I might not have.* | — je ne fusse pas, — *I might not be.* | — je ne parlasse pas, — *I might not speak.* |
| *Perfect.* | — je n'aie pas eu, — *I may not have had.* | — je n'aie pas été, — *I may not have been.* | — je n'aie pas parlé, — *I may not have spoke.* |
| *Pluperfect.* | — je n'eusse pas eu, — *I might not have had.* | — je n'eusse pas été, — *I might not have been.* | — je n'eusse pas parlé, — *I might not have spoken.* |
| **IMPERATIVE.** | | | |
| *Present.* | n'aie pas, *have thou not.* | ne sois pas, *be thou not.* | ne parle pas, *speak thou not.* |

## 2d TABLE. The French verbs conjugated *interrogatively*.

| Tenses. | 1st *Auxiliary.* | 2d *Auxiliary.* | *A Verb active or neute* |
|---|---|---|---|

**No other mood but the INDICATIVE can be used in interrogations.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Pres. Tense.* | ai-je, *have I?* | suis-je, *am I?* | parlé-je, *do I speak* |
| | as-tu, *hast thou?* | es-tu, *art thou?* | parles-tu, *dost tho* *speak?* |
| | a-t-il, *has he?* | est-il, *is he?* | parle-t-il, *does h* *speak?* |
| *Imperfect.* | avois-je, *had I?* | étois-je, *was I?* | parlois-je, *did I speak* |
| *Perfect indefinite.* | ai-je eu, *have I had?* | ai-je été, *have I been?* | ai-je parlé, *have* *spoken?* |
| *Pluperfect.* | avois-je eu, *had I had?* | avois-je été, *had I been?* | avois-je parlé, *had* *spoken?* |
| *Perfect definite or historical.* | eus-je, *had I?* | fus-je, *was I?* | parlai-je, *did I speak* *speak?* |
| *Pluperf. definite.* | eus-je eu, *had I had?* | eus-je été, *had I been?* | eus-je parlé, *had* *spoken?* |
| *Future.* | aurai-je, *shall I have?* | serai-je, *shall I be?* | parlerai-je, *shall* *speak?* |
| | aura-t-il, *will he have?* | sera-t-il, *will he be?* | parlera-t-il, *will* *speak?* |
| *Future rel.* | aurai-je eu, *shall I have had?* | aurai-je été, *shall I have been?* | aurai-je parlé, *shall* *have spoken?* |
| *Conditional.* | aurois-je, *should I have?* | serois-je, *should I be?* | parlerois-je, *should* *speak?* |
| *Conditional past* | aurois-je eu, *should I have had?* | aurois-je été, *should I have been?* | aurois-je parlé, *shou* *I have spoken?* |

**The French verbs used *interrogatively* and *negatively*.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| n'ai-je pas, *have I not?* | ne suis-je pas, *am I not?* | ne parlé-je pas, *do I n* *speak?* |
| n'avois-je pas, *had I not?* | n'étois-je pas, *was I not?* | ne parlois-je pas, *did* *not speak?* |
| n'ai-je pas eu, *have I not had?* | n'ai-je pas été, *have I not been?* | n'ai-je pas parlé, *have* *not spoken?* |
| n'avois-je pas eu, *had I not had?* | n'avois-je pas été, *had I not been?* | n'avois-je pas parlé, *ha* *I not spoken?* |
| n'eus-je pas, *had I not?* | ne fus-je pas, *was I not?* | ne parlai-je pas, *did* *not speak?* |
| n'eus-je pas eu, *had I not had?* | n'eus-je pas été, *had I not been?* | n'eus-je pas parlé, *had* *not spoken?* |
| n'aurai-je pas, *shall I not have?* | ne serai-je pas, *shall I not be?* | ne parlerai-je pas, *shall* *not speak?* |
| n'aurai-je pas eu, *shall I not have had?* | n'aurai-je pas été, *shall I not have been?* | n'aurai-je pas parlé, *shall* *I not have spoken?* |
| n'aurois-je pas, *should I not have?* | ne serois-je pas, *should I not be?* | ne parlerois-je pas, *should* *I not speak?* |
| n'aurois-je pas eu, *should I not have had?* | n'aurois-je pas été, *should I not have been?* | n'aurois-je pas parlé, *should I not have spoken?* |

## *Second* CONJUGATION.

### *Of Verbs in* ir *in general; Gerund in* issant.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* Agir, *to act.* *Ger.* Agissant, *acting.* *Part.* Agi, *acted.*
*C. Pres.* Avoir agi, *to have acted.* *C. Ger.* Ayant agi, *having acted.*

#### INDICATIVE.

*Present Tense.*

| | *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | J'agis, *I act.* | tu agis, *thou actest.* | il agit, *he acts.* |
| *P.* | Nous agissons, *we*, &c. | vous agissez, *ye* or *&c.* | ils agissent, *they act.* |

*Imperfect.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | J'agissois, *I did act.* | tu agissois, *thou*, &c. | il agissoit, *he did act.* |
| *P.* | Nous agissions, *we did act.* | vous agissiez, *ye* or *you did act.* | ils agissoient, *they did act.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | J'agis, *I acted.* | tu agis, *thou acted'st.* | il agit, *he acted.* |
| *P.* | Nous agimes, *we*, &c. | vous agites, *ye* or, *&c.* | ils agirent, *they*, &c. |

*Future.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | J'agirai, *I shall* or *will act.* | tu agiras, *thou shalt* or *will act.* | il agira, *he shall* or *will act.* |
| *P.* | Nous agirons, *we shall* or *will act.* | vous agirez, *ye* or *you shall* or, *&c.* | ils agiront, *they shall* or *will act.* |

*Conditional.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | J'agirois, *I should, would, could*, &c. | tu agirois, *thou should'st act.* | il agiroit, *he should, would, could*, &c. |
| *P.* | Nous agirions, *we should, would*, &c. | vous agiriez, *ye* or *you should*, &c. | ils agiroient, *they should, would*, &c. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Comp. of Pres.* J'ai | agi, &c. | *I have* | acted |
| *Comp. of Imp.* J'avois | | *I had* | |
| *Comp. of Pret.* J'eus | | *I had* | |
| *Comp. of Fut.* J'aurai | | *I shall have* | |
| *Comp. of Cond.* J'aurois | | *I should, &c. have* | |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

| | *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *that* | J'agisse, *I may act.* | tu agisses, *thou may'st act.* | il agisse, *he ma* |
| *P.* | nous agissions *we may act.* | vous agissiez, *ye* or *you may act.* | ils agissent, *may act.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *that* | J'agisse, *I acted* or *might act.* | tu agisses, *thou actest.* | il agît, *he* |
| *P.* | nous agissions, *we acted.* | vous agissiez, *ye* or *you acted.* | ils agissent, *acted.* |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Comp. of Pres.* que | J'aie | agi, &c. | *I have* or *may have* |
| *Comp. of Pret. that* | J'eusse | | *I had* or *might have* |

IMPERATIVE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Agis, *act thou* | il agisse, *let hi* |
| *P.* Agissons, *let us act.* | agissez, *act* or *act ye* | qu'ils agissent, *let act.* |

About 200 verbs in *cir, dir, mir, nir, tir, &c.* are conju after this verb, and are set down in the Vocabulary.

*Conjugate after* agir. *Infinitive Mood.*

Divertir *to divert,* divertissant *diverting,* diverti *div* avoir diverti *to have diverted,* ayant diverti *having diverted.*

INDICATIVE. Je divertis, je divertissois, j'ai diverti, j' diverti; je divertis, j'eus diverti; je divertirai, j'aurai di je divertirois, j'aurois diverti.

SUBJUNCTIVE. Que je divertisse, que je divertisse, qu diverti, que j'eusse diverti.

IMPERATIVE. Divertis, qu'il divertisse; divertissons, tissez, qu'ils divertissent.

*Conjugate the same Verb* REFLECTIVELY.

INFINITIVE MOOD. Se divertir *to divert oneself, to be merry*; se divertissant *diverting oneself*, diverti *diverted*, s'être diverti *to have diverted oneself*, s'étant diverti *having diverted oneself*.

INDICATIVE. Je me divertis *I divert myself*, je me divertissois *I was diverting myself*, je me suis diverti *I have diverted myself*, je m'étois diverti; je me divertis, je me fus diverti; je me divertirai, je me serai diverti; je me divertirois, je me serois diverti.

SUBJUNCTIVE. Que je me divertisse, que je me divertisse, que je me sois diverti, que je me fusse diverti.

IMPERATIVE. Divertis-toi, qu'il se divertisse; divertissons-nous, divertissez-vous, qu'ils se divertissent.

*Conjugate the above Verbs* negatively, *then* interrogatively: (*See the Tables* at the end of the 1st Conjug. page 147 & 148).

## *Third* CONJUGATION.

*Of more particular Verbs in* ir; *Gerund in* ant.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* Sentir, *to smell.* *Ger.* Sentant, *smelling.* *Part.* Senti, *smelt.*
*Pres.* Avoir senti, *to have smelt.* *C. Ger.* Ayant senti, *having smelt.*

### INDICATIVE.

*Present Tense.*

| | *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| S. | Je sens, *I smell.* | tu sens, *thou smellest.* | il sent, *he smells.* |
| P. | Nous sentons, *we smell.* | vous sentez, *ye* or *you smell.* | ils sentent, *they smell.* |

*Imperfect.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| S. | Je sentois, *I did smell.* | tu sentois, *thou dids't smell.* | il sentoit, *he did smell.* |
| P. | Nous sentions, *we did smell.* | vous sentiez, *ye* or *you did smell.* | ils sentoient, *they did smell.* |

*Preterite.*

| | *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Je sentis, *I smelt.* | tu sentis, *thou smelt'st.* | il sentit, *he smelt.* |
| *P.* | Nous sentimes, *we smelt.* | vous sentites, *ye or you smelt.* | ils sentirent, *they smelt.* |

*Future.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S* | Je sentirai, *I shall or will smell.* | tu sentiras, *thou shalt or wilt smell.* | il sentira, *he shall or will smell.* |
| *P.* | Nous sentirons, *we shall or will, &c.* | vous sentirez, *ye or you shall or, &c.* | ils sentiront, *they shall or will smell.* |

*Conditional*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Je sentirois, *I should, would, could, or might smell.* | tu sentirois, *thou should'st, would'st, could'st, or, &c.* | il sentiroit, *he should, would, could, or might smell.* |
| *P.* | Nous sentirions, *we should, would, &c.* | vous sentiriez, *ye or you should, &c.* | ils sentiroient, *they should, would, &c.* |

*Comp. of Pres.* J'ai
*Comp. of Imp.* J'avois
*Comp. of Pret.* J'eus
*Comp. of Fut.* J'aurai
*Comp. of Cond.* J'aurois
} senti, *&c.* { *I have*, *I had*, *I had*, *I shall have*, *I should, &c. have* } *smelt, &c.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *that* *P.* | Je sente, *I may smell.* | tu sentes, *thou may'st smell.* | il sente, *he may smell.* |
| | nous sentions, *we may smell.* | vous sentiez, *ye or you may smell.* | ils sentent, *they may smell.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *that* *P.* | Je sentisse, *I smelt, or might smell.* | tu sentisses, *thou smelt'st.* | il sentît, *he smelt.* |
| | Nous sentissions, *we smelt.* | vous sentissiez, *ye or you smelt.* | ils sentissent, *they smelt.* |

*Comp. of Pres.* que J'aie } senti, { *I have or may have* } *smelt*
*Comp. of Pret. that* J'eusse } *&c.* { *I had or might have* } *&c.*

IMPERATIVE.

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Sens, *smell thou.* | qu'il sente, *let him*, &c. |
| *P.* Sentons, *let us smell* | sentez, *smell*, &c. | qu'ils sentent, *let them smell.* |

*Conjugate the same Verb* REFLECTIVELY.

INFINITIVE MOOD. Se sentir *to feel oneself*, se sentant *feeling oneself*, senti *felt*; s'être senti *to have felt oneself*, s'étant senti *having felt oneself.*

INDICATIVE. Je me sens *I feel myself*, je me sentois *I was feeling myself*, je me suis senti *I have felt myself*, je m'étois senti; je me sentis, je me fus senti; je me sentirai, je me serai senti; je me sentirois, je me serois senti.

SUBJUNCTIVE. Que je me sente, que je me sentisse, que je me sois senti, que je me fusse senti.

IMPERATIVE. Sens-toi, qu'il se sente, sentons-nous, sentez-vous, qu'ils se sentent.

*Conjugate the same Verbs* negatively, *then* interrogatively *(See the Tables,* pages 147 & 148).

Of this conjugation there are eighteen verbs both Primitive and Derivative, *o wit:*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| nentir, | *to lie.* | servir | *to serve.* | ressentir, | *to resent,* or |
| lémentir, | *to give a lie.* | se servir, | *to make use.* | | *feel again.* |
| partir, | *to set out.* | desservir, | *to clear a* | dormir, | *to sleep.* |
| repartir, | *to set out again,* | | *table,* or *do an ill office.* | redormir, | *to sleep again.* |
| | or *to reply.* | sentir, | *to smell,* or *to feel.* | endormir, | *to lull asleep.* |
| sortir, | *to go,* or *get out.* | consentir, | *to consent.* | s'endormir, | *to fall asleep.* |
| ressortir, | *to get out again.* | pressentir, | *to have a* | se rendormir, | *to fall* |
| se repentir, | *to repent.* | | *foresight.* | | *asleep again.* |

*partir,* and *repartir, sortir,* and *ressortir,* are conjugated with *être.*

## *Fourth* CONJUGATION.

### *Of Verbs in* enir.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* Tenir, *to hold.* *Ger.* Tenant, *holding.* *Part,* Tenu, *held.*
*C. Pres.* Avoir tenu, *to have held.* *C. Ger.* Ayant tenu, *having held.*

INDICATIVE.

*Present Tense.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je tiens, *I hold.* | tu tiens, *thou holdest.* | il tient, | *he holds.* |
| *P.* Nous tenons, *&c.* | vous tenez, *ye* or, *&c.* | ils tiennent, | *they hold.* |

*Imperfect.*

| | *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Je tenois, *I did hold.* | tu tenois, *thou did'st hold.* | il tenoit, *he did hold.* |
| *P.* | Nous tenions, *we did hold.* | vous teniez, *ye* or *you did hold.* | ils tenoient, *they did hold.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Je tins, *I held.* | tu tins, *thou held'st.* | il tint, *he held.* |
| *P.* | Nous tinmes, *we held.* | vous tintes, *ye* or *you held.* | ils tinrent, *they held.* |

*Future.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Je tiendrai, *I shall* or *will hold.* | tu tiendras, *thou shalt* or *wilt hold.* | il tiendra, *he shall* or *will hold.* |
| *P.* | Nous tiendrons, *we shall* or *will hold.* | vous tiendrez, *ye* or *you shall*, or, *&c.* | ils tiendront, *they shall* or *will hold.* |

*Conditional.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Je tiendrois, *I should, would, could,* or *might hold.* | tu tiendrois, *thou should'st, would'st, could'st*, &c. | il tiendroit, *he should, would, could,* or *might hold* |
| *P.* | Nous tiendrions, *we should, &c.* | vous tiendriez, *ye* or *you should, &c.* | ils tiendroient, *they should, woula,* &c. |

*Comp. of Pres.* J'ai
*Comp of Imp.* J'avois
*Comp. of Pret.* J'eus
*Comp. of Fut.* J'aurai
*Comp. of Cond.* J'aurois
} tenu *&c.* { *I have*, *I had*, *I had*, *I shall have*, *I should*, &c. *have* } *held*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *P. that* | Je tienne, *I may hold.* Nous tenions, *we may hold.* | tu tiennes, *thou may'st hold.* vous teniez, *ye* or *you may hold.* | il enne, *hold.* ils tiennent, *may hold.* | *he may* *they* |

*Preterite.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *P. that* | Je tinsse, *I held* or *might hold.* Nous tinssions, *we held.* | tu tinsses, *thou heldest.* vous tinssiez, *ye* or *you held.* | il tînt, ils tinssent, *held.* | *he held* *they* |

*Comp. of Pres.* que J'aie tenu, *I have* or *may have* *held*, &c.
*Comp. of Pret.* *that* J'eusse *&c.* *I had* or *might have* *held*, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Tiens, *hold*, or *&c.* | qu'il tienne, *let him*, &c. |
| *P.* Tenons, *let us hold.* | tenez, *hold* or, *hold ye.* | qu'ils tiennent, *let them hold.* |

*Conjugate the same Verb* REFLECTIVELY.

INFINITIVE MOOD. Se tenir *to hold oneself*, se tenant *holding oneself*, tenu *held*; s'être tenu *to have held oneself*, s'étant tenu *having held oneself.*

INDICATIVE. Je me tiens *I hold myself*, je me tenois *I was holding myself*, je me suis tenu *I have held myself*, je m'étois tenu; je me tins, je me fus tenu; je me tiendrai, je me serai tenu; je me tiendrois, je me serois tenu.

SUBJUNCTIVE. Que je me tienne, que je me tinsse, que je me sois tenu, que je me fusse tenu.

IMPERATIVE. Tiens-toi, qu'il se tienne; tenons-nous, tenez-vous, qu'ils se tiennent.

N. B. *The same verb* tenir, *when speaking of assemblies*, &c. *is also used reflectively, but impersonally, that is, with the pron. of the 3d pers. sing. or actively, with the particle* on *(See Gram.* page 242 & 340.); which plainly shows, 1st, that, speaking of things, an English verb passive is elegantly rendered into French by a verb reflected, or by a verb active used with *on*, when speaking of persons or things; 2dly, that a verb reflected, as we said before, page 144, has the true force of a verb passive.

*Conjugate the same verbs* negatively, *then* interrogatively; *(See the tables,* pages 147 & 148).

INFINITIVE MOOD. Se tenir *to be held*, se tenant *being held*, tenu *held*; s'être tenu *to have been held*, s'étant tenu *having been held.*

INDICATIVE. Il se tient un conseil, *or* On tient un conseil, *a council is held*, or *holden*; and so on for the other tenses.

The verbs of this Conjugation, to the number of twenty-four, are,

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| s'abstenir, *to abstain.* | venir, *to come.* | se souvenir, *to remember.* |
| appartenir, *to belong.* | intervenir, *to intervene.* | se ressouvenir, *to recollect, to call to mind.* |
| contenir, *to contain.* | devenir, *to become.* | †avenir, *to happen.* |
| détenir, *to detain.* | convenir, *to agree* or *to become.* | parvenir, *to attain to.* |
| obtenir, *to obtain.* | disconvenir, *to disagree.* | prévenir, *to prevent.* |
| retenir, *to retain, to keep.* | provenir, *to proceed, to come from* | revenir, *to come again.* |
| soutenir, *to maintain, to hold, to uphold.* | *contrevenir, *to contravene, to infringe.* | subvenir, *to relieve.* |
| entretenir. *to keep up.* | | survenir, *to befal, to happen unexpectedly.* |
| maintenir, *to maintain.* | | |

*venir, revenir, devenir, convenir, disconvenir, provenir, parvenir,* and *survenir,* are conjugated with *être.*

* *contrevenir* is a law-term, and used in few tenses too: its compound tenses, when used, are formed from *avoir*, though its primitive *venir* has them of *être*.

† *avenir* is an obsolete verb impersonal. We now say *il arrive* it happens, *il arrivoit* it happened, instead of *il avient*, *il avint*, &c.

*bénir* to bless, is of the second conjugation, having the same inflections as *agir*.—The part. of *bénir* is *béni* and *bénie* blessed; but we also say *béni* and *bénite*, speaking of such Church ceremonies; as *du pain bénit* hallowed bread, *de l'eau bénite* holy water, *&c.*

## *Fifth* CONJUGATION.

### *Of Verbs in* evoir.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pr.* Recevoir, *to receive.* *Ger.* Recevant, *receiving.* *Part.* Reçu, *&c*
*G. Per.* Avoir reçu, *to have received.* *C. Ger.* Ayant reçu, *having received.*

#### INDICATIVE.

*Present Tense.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je reçois, *I receive.* | tu reçois, *thou receivest.* | il reçoit, *he receives.* |
| *P.* Nous recevons, *we receive.* | vous recevez, *ye* or *you receive.* | ils reçoivent, *they receive.* |

*Imperfect.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je recevois, *I did receive.* | tu recevois, *thou didst receive.* | il recevoit, *he did receive.* |
| *P.* Nous recevions, *we did receive.* | vous receviez, *ye* or *you did*, &c. | ils recevoient, *they did receive.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je reçus, *I received.* | tu reçus, *thou receivedst.* | il reçut, *he received.* |
| *P.* Nous reçumes, *we received.* | vous reçutes, *ye* or *you received.* | ils reçurent, *they received.* |

*Future*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je recevrai, *I shall* or *will receive.* | tu recevras, *thou shalt* or *wilt*, &c. | il recevra, *he shall receive.* |
| *P.* Nous recevrons, *we shall* or *will*, &c. | vous recevrez, *ye* or *you shall* or, &c. | il recevront, *they shall receive.* |

*Conditional.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| S. Je recevrois, *I should, would, &c.* | tu recevrois, *thou should'st* &c. | il recevroit *he should, would,* &c. |
| P. Nous recevrions, *we would,* &c. | vous recevriez, *ye* or *you should,* &c. | ils recevroient, *they should,* &c. |

*Comp. of Pres.* J'ai reçu, *I have received,*
*Comp. of Imp.* J'avois reçu, *I had received,*
*Comp. of Pret.* J'eus reçu, *I had received,*
*Comp. of Fut.* J'aurai reçu, *I shall have received,*
*Comp. of Cond.* J'aurois reçu, *I should,* &c. *have received,* &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

| | *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| S. que *that* | Je reçoive, *I may receive.* | tu reçoives, *thou mayest receive.* | l reçoive, *he may receive.* |
| P. | Nous recevions, *we may receive.* | vous receviez, *ye* or *you,* &c. | ils reçoivent, *they may receive.* |

*Preterite.*

| | *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| S. que *that* | Je reçusse *I received,* or *might receive.* | tu reçusses, *thou received'st.* | il reçût, *he received.* |
| P. | Nous reçussions, *we received.* | vous reçussiez, *ye received.* | ils reçussent, *they received.* |

*Comp. of Pres.* que J'aie reçu, *I have, might have, received,*
*Comp. of Pret. that* J'eusse reçu, *&c.* *I had, might have received,* &c.

IMPERATIVE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S. | Reçois, *receive,* &c. | qu'il reçoive, *let him,* &c. |
| P. Recevons, *let us receive.* | recevez, *receive,* or *receive ye.* | ils reçoivent, *let them receive.* |

*Conjugate the verb* appercevoir *after* recevoir, *then the* reflected *verb* s'appercevoir.

INFINITIVE MOOD. S'appercevoir *to perceive,* s'appercevant *perceiving,* apperçu *perceived:* s'être apperçu *to have perceived,* s'étant apperçu *having perceived.*

INDICATIVE. Je m'apperçois *I perceive,* Je m'appercevois *I was perceiving,* je me suis apperçu *I have perceived,* je m'étois apperçu; je m'apperçus, je me fus apperçu; je m'appercevrai, je me serai apperçu; je m'appercevrois, je me serois apperçu.

SUBJUNCTIVE. Que je m'apperçoive, que je m'apperçusse, que je me sois apperçu, que je me fusse apperçu.

IMPERATIVE. Apperçois-toi, qu'il s'apperçoive; apperce-ons-nous, appercevez-vous, qu'ils s'apperçoivent.

*Conjugate the above verbs* negatively, *then* interrogatively; *(See the tables,* pages 147 & 148.)

The seven regular verbs of the fifth Conjugation are

appercevoir, *to perceive.* devoir, *to owe.* recevoir, *to receive.* s'appercevoir, *to perceive.* redevoir, *to owe again.* percevoir, *(a law term* concevoir, *to conceive.* décevoir, *to deceive.* *for* recevoir.) *décevoir* is quite out of use; we now make use of *tromper.*

See in the Appendix another signification of *devoir,* as also its true use and conjugation.

## *Sixth* CONJUGATION.

### *Of Verbs in* aire.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* Faire, *to do.* *Ger.* Faisant, *doing.* *Part.* Fait, *done.*
*C. Pres.* Avoir fait, *to have done.* *C. Ger.* Ayant fait, *having done.*

#### INDICATIVE.

*Present Tense.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je fais, *I do.* | tu fais, *thou doest* or *do'st.* | il fait, *he does.* |
| *P.* Nous faisons, *we do.* | vous faites, *ye* or *you do.* | ils font, *they do.* |

*Imperfect.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je faisois, *I did.* | tu faisois, *thou did'st.* | il faisoit, *he did.* |
| *P.* Nous faisions, *we did.* | vous faisiez, *ye* or *you did.* | ils faisoient, *they did.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je fis, *I did.* | tu fis, *thou didst.* | il fit, *he did.* |
| *P.* Nous fimes, *we did.* | vous fites, *ye* or, &c. | ils firent, *they did* |

*Future.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| S. Je ferai, *I shall* or *will do.* | tu feras, *thou shalt* or *wilt do.* | il fera, *he shall* or *will do.* |
| P. Nous ferons, *we shall* or *will do.* | vous ferez, *ye* or *you shall* or *will do.* | ils feront, *they shall* or *will do.* |

*Conditional.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S. Je ferois, *I should, would, could,* &c. | tu ferois, *thou should'st,* &c. | il feroit, *he should, would, could,* &c. |
| P. Nous ferions, *we should,* &c. | vous feriez, *ye* or *you should, would,* &c. | ils feroient, *they should, would,* &c. |

*Comp. of Pres.* J'ai
*Comp. of Imp.* J'avois
*Comp. of Pret.* J'eus
*Comp. of Fut.* J'aurai
*Comp. of Cond.* J'aurois
} fait, &c. { *I have* / *I had* / *I had* / *I shall have* / *I should,* &c. *have* } *done,* &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S. que Je fasse, *I may do.* | tu fasses, *thou,* &c. | il fasse, *he may do.* |
| P. *that* Nous fassions, *we may do.* | vous fassiez, *ye* or *you may do.* | ils fassent, *they may do.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| S. Je fisse, *I did,* que or *might do.* | tu fisses, *thou didst.* | il fît, | *he did.* |
| P. Nous fissions, *we,* &c. | vous fissiez, *ye,* &c. | ils fissent, | *they did.* |

*Comp. of Pres.* que J'aie / *Comp. of Pret. that* J'eusse } fait, &c. { *I have* or *may have* / *I had* or *might have* } *done,* &c.

IMPERATIVE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| S. | Fais, *do* or *do thou.* | qu'il fasse, | *let him do.* |
| P. Faisons, *let us do.* | faites, *do* or *do ye.* | qu'ils fassent, | *let them do.* |

*Conjugate the same verb* REFLECTIVELY.

INFINITIVE MOOD. Se faire *to make oneself,* se faisant *making oneself,* fait *made;* s'être fait *to have made oneself,* s'étant fait *having made oneself.*

INDICATIVE. Je me fais *I make myself*, je me faisois *I was making myself*, je me suis fait *I have made myself*, je m'étois fait; je me fis, je me fus fait; je me ferai, je me serai fait; je me ferois, je me serois fait.

SUBJUNCTIVE. Que je me fasse, que je me fisse, que je me sois fait, que je me fusse fait.

IMPERATIVE. Fais-toi, qu'il se fasse; faisons-nous, faites-vous, qu'ils se fassent.

*Conjugate the same verb* negatively, *then* interrogatively; *(See the Tables,* pages 147 & 148.)

The Derivatives of *faire*, which are six, and of a very extensive use, are the only regular verbs of the 6th Conjugation.

contrefaire, *to counterfeit.* refaire, *to do again,* surfaire, *to exact* or *to ask too much.*
défaire, *to undo.* *to make up again.*
redéfaire, *to undo again.* satisfaire, *to satisfy.*

to which add *forfaire* to trespass *or* fail, though used only in the infinitive and comp. of the pres. as in this phrase; *une fille qui a forfait à son honneur*, a maid that has forfeited *or* lost her honour.

## *Seventh* CONJUGATION.

### *Of Verbs in* aindre, eindre, *and* oindre.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pr.* Craindre, *to fear.* *Ger.* Craignant, *fearing.* *Part.* Craint, *feared.*
*C.P.* Avoir craint, *to have feared.* *C. Ger.* Ayant craint, *having feared.*

INDICATIVE.

*Present Tense.*

| | *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Je crains, *I fear.* | tu crains, *thou,* &c. | il craint, *he fears.* |
| *P.* | Nous craignons, *&c.* | vous craignez, *&c.* | ils craignent, *&c.* |

*Imperfect.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Je craignois, *I,* &c. | tu craignois, *&c.* | il craignoit, *he,* &c. |
| *P.* | Nous craignions, *&c.* | vous craigniez, *&c.* | ils craignoient, *&c.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Je craignis, *I feared.* | tu craignis, *thou,* &c. | il craignit, *he feared.* |
| *P.* | Nous craignimes, *&c.* | vous craignites, *&c.* | ils craignirent, *&c.* |

*Future.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| S. Je craindrai, *I shall or will fear.* | tu craindras, *thou shalt or wilt fear.* | il craindra, *he shall or will fear.* |
| P. Nous craindrons, &c. | vous craindrez. | ils craindront, &c. |

*Conditional.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S. Je craindrois, *I should, would,* &c. | tu craindrois, *thou should'st,* or, &c. | il craindroit, *he should fear.* |
| Nous craindrions, &c. | vous craindriez, &c. | ils craindroient, &c. |

*Comp. of Pres.* J'ai
*Comp. of Imp.* J'avois
*Comp. of Pret.* J'eus
*Comp. of Fut.* J'aurai
*Comp. of Cond.* J'aurois
} craint, &c. {
*I have*
*I had*
*I had*
*I shall have*
*I should,* &c. *have*
} *feared,* &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S. Je craigne, *I may* que *fear.* | tu craignes, *thou may'st fear.* | il craigne, *he may fear.* |
| P. Nous craignions, *we may fear,* | vous craigniez, *ye may fear.* | ils craignent, *they may fear.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S. Je craignisse, *I* que *feared* or *might.* | tu craignisses, *thou feared'st.* | il craignît, *he feared.* |
| P. Nous craignissions, *we feared.* | vous craignissiez, *ye feared.* | ils craignissent, *they feared.* |

*Comp. of Pres.* que J'aie } craint, &c. { *I have* or *may have* } *feared,* &c.
*Comp. of Pret. that* J'eusse } craint, &c. { *I had* or *might have* } *feared,* &c.

IMPERATIVE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S. | Crains, *fear,* or *fear thou.* | il craigne, *let him* qu' *fear.* |
| P. Craignons, *let us fear.* | craignez, *fear ye.* | ils craignent, *let,* &c. |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* Joindre, *to join.* *Ger.* Joignant, *joining.* *Part.* Joint, *joined.*
C. *Pr.* Avoir joint, *to have joined.* C. *Ger.* Ayant joint, *having joined.*

## INDICATIVE.

### *Present Tense.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je joins, *I join.* | tu joins, *thou join'st.* | il joint, *he joins.* |
| *P.* Nous joignons, *&c.* | vous joignez, *ye*, &c. | ils joignent, *they join.* |

### *Imperfect.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je joignois, *I did, &c.* | tu joignois, *thou, &c.* | il joignoit, *he did, &c.* |
| *P.* Nous joignions, *&c.* | vous joigniez, *ye, &c.* | ils joignoient, *they, &c.* |

### *Preterite.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je joignis, *I joined.* | tu joignis, *thou, &c.* | il joignit, *he joined.* |
| *P.* Nous joignimes, *&c.* | vous joignites, *ye, &c.* | ils joignirent, *&c.* |

### *Future.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je Joindrai, *I, &c.* | tu joindras, *thou, &c.* | il joindra, *he will &c.* |
| *P.* Nous joindrons, *&c.* | vous joindrez, *ye*, &c. | ils joindront, *&c.* |

### *Conditional.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je joindrois, *I, &c.* | tu joindrois, *thou, &c.* | il joindroit, *he, &c.* |
| *P.* Nous joindrions, *&c.* | vous joindriez, *ye, &c.* | ils joindroient, *&c.* |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Comp. of Pres.* J'ai | joint, *&c.* | *I have* | *joined, &c.* |
| *Comp. of Imp.* J'avois | | *I had* | |
| *Comp. of Pret.* J'eus | | *I had* | |
| *Comp. of Fut.* J'aurai | | *I shall have* | |
| *Comp. of Cond.* J'aurois | | *I should, &c. have* | |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

### *Present.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je joigne, *I, &c.* | tu joignes, *thou*, &c. | il joigne, *he*, &c. |
| que Nous joignions, | vous joigniez, *ye* | qu ils joignent, *they* |
| *P. we may join.* | *may join.* | *may join.* |

### *Preterite.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je joignisse, *I join-* | tu joignisses, *thou* | il joignît, *he joined.* |
| que *ed* or *might join.* | *joined'st.* | |
| *P.* Nous joignissions, | vous joignissiez, *ye* | ils joignissent, *they* |
| *we joined.* | *joined.* | *joined.* |

*Comp.of Pres.* que } J'aie } joint, { *I have* or *may have* } *joined,*
*Comp.of Pret.that* { J'eusse { *&c.* { *I had* or *might have* { *&c.*

IMPERATIVE.

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Joins, *join thou.* | qu'il joigne, *let him join.* |
| *P.* Joignons, *let us join.* | joignez, *join ye.* | qu'ils joignent, *let them join.* |

*Conjugate the same Verb* REFLECTIVELY.

INFINITIVE MOOD. Se joindre *to join,* se joignant *joining,* joint *joined;* s'être joint *to have joined,* s'étant joint *having joined.*

INDICATIVE. Je me joins *I join,* je me joignois *I was joining,* je me suis joint *I have joined,* je m'étois joint; je me joignis, je me fus joint; je me joindrai, je me serai joint; je me joindrois, je me serois joint.

SUBJUNCTIVE. Que je me joigne, que je me joignisse, que je me sois joint, que je me fusse joint.

IMPERATIVE. Joins-toi, qu'il se joigne; joignons-nous, joignez-vous, qu'ils se joignent.

*Conjugate the above Verbs* negatively, *then* interrogatively *(See the Tables,* pages 147 & 148.)

The verbs of the 7th Conjugation, to the number of nineteen, are,

astreindre, *to oblige, to tie up.*
atteindre, *to reach, to hit.*
*aveindre, *to take, reach, or fetch out.*
ceindre, *to gird.*
contraindre, *to constrain, to compel.*
craindre, *to fear.*
enceindre, *to inclose, to incompass.*
†enfreindre, *to infringe.*
enjoindre, *to enjoin.*
éteindre, *to extinguish, to put out.*
feindre, *to feign, to dissemble.*
joindre, *to join.*
‡ oindre, *to anoint.*
peindre, *to paint, to draw.*
plaindre, *to pity.*
se plaindre, *to complain.*
§ poindre, *to peep, to dawn.*
restreindre, *to astringe, to restringe, to limit.*
teindre, *to dye,* or *to colour.*

* *aveindre* is confined to some common forms of speech, but quite banished from all style. Its preterites are never used.

† *enfreindre* is seldom used in common conversation, and is only of the sublime style.

‡ *oindre* is used only in speaking of sacred ceremonies (particularly in the church of Rome) wherein oil is used; otherwise we say *frotter* to rub. The only phrase wherein *oindre* is kept, is in this proverbial saying (which also grows obsolete) *Oignez vilain, il vous poindra,* save a thief from hanging, and he'll cut your throat.

§ *poindre* is another obsolete word, used only in the infinitive, and that too in poetry, after the verb *commencer*: as *Le jour commençoit à poindre,* the day began to peep: in which case it is neuter, and of quite another signification than the just mentioned proverb, wherein it signifies *to hurt.*

## *Eighth* CONJUGATION

### *Of Verbs in* oître.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*P.* Connoître, *to know.* *Ger.* Connoissant, *knowing.* *Part.* Connu, &c
*C. Pres.* Avoir connu, *to have known.* *C. Ger.* Ayant connu, *having*, &c.

INDICATIVE.

*Present Tense.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je connois, *I know.* | tu connois, *thou*, &c. | il connoît, *he knows* |
| *P.* Nous connoissons, *we know.* | vous connoissez, *ye know.* | ils connoissent, *they know.* |

*Imperfect.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je connoissois, *I did know.* | tu connoisois, *thou did'st know.* | il connoissoit, *he did know.* |
| *P.* Nous connoissions, *we did know.* | vous connoissiez, *ye* or *you did know.* | ils connoissoient, *they did know.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je connus, *I knew.* | tu connus, *thou*, &c. | il connut, *he knew.* |
| *P.* Nous connumes, *we knew.* | vous connutes, *ye* or *you knew.* | ils connurent, *they knew.* |

*Future.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je connoîtrai, *I shall* or *will know.* | tu connoîtras, *thou shalt* or *wilt*, &c. | il connoîtra, *he shall* or *will know.* |
| *P.* Nous connoîtrons, *we*, &c. | vous connoîtrez, *ye shall* or *will know.* | ils connoîtront, *they shall* or *will know.* |

*Conditional.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je connoîtrois, *I should*, &c. | tu connoîtrois, *thou should'st*, &c. | il connoîtroit, *he should*, &c. |
| *P.* Nous connoîtrions, *we should*, &c. | vous connoîtriez, *ye should*, &c. | ils connoîtroient, *they should*, &c. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Comp. of Pres.* J'ai | connu, &c. | *I have* | known, &c. |
| *Comp. of Imp.* J'avois | | *I had* | |
| *Comp. of Pret.* J'eus | | *I had* | |
| *Comp. of Fut.* J'aurai | | *I shall have* | |
| *Comp. of Cond.* J'aurois | | *I should*, &c. *have* | |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je connoisse, *I* que *may know.* | tu connoisses, *thou may'st, &c* | il connoisse, *he may know.* |
| *P.* Nous connoissions, *we, &c.* | vous connoissiez, *ye* or *you, &c.* | ils connoissent, *they may know.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je connusse, *I knew,* que or *might know.* | tu connusses, *thou knewest.* | il connût, *he knew.* |
| *P.* Nous connussions, *we knew.* | vous connussiez, *ye knew.* | ils connussent, *they knew.* |

*Comp. of Pres.* que { J'aie } connu, { *I have* or *may have* } *known,*
*Comp. of Pret. that* { J'eusse } &c. { *I had* or *might have* } &c.

IMPERATIVE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Connois, *know thou.* | il connoisse, qu' | *let him know.* |
| *P.* Connoissons, *let us know.* | connoissez, *know,* or *know ye.* | ils connoissent, | *let them know.* |

*Conjugate the same Verb* REFLECTIVELY.

INFINITIVE MOOD. Se connoître *to know oneself,* se connoissant *knowing oneself,* connu *known;* s'être connu *to have known oneself,* s'étant connu *having known oneself.*

INDICATIVE. Je me connois *I know myself;* je me connoissois *I was knowing myself,* je me suis connu *I have known myself,* je m'étois connu; je me connus, je me fus connu; je me connoîtrai, je me serai connu; je me connoîtrois, je me serois connu.

SUBJUNCTIVE Que je me connoisse, que je me connusse, que je me sois connu, que je me fusse connu.

IMPERATIVE. Connois-toi, qu'il se connoisse; connoissons-nous, connoissez-vous, qu'ils se connoissent.

*Conjugate the same Verb* negatively, *then* interrogatively; *(See the Tables,* page 147 *&* 148.)

The eleven verbs of the eighth Conjugation are,

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| connoître, | *to know.* | paroître | *to appear.* | croître, | *to grow.* |
| méconnoître, | *to forget, to know no more.* | disparoître, | *to disappear.* | accroître, | *to accrue.* |
| reconnoître, | *to know again, to acknowledge, to reconnoître.* | *apparoître, | *to appear.* | décroître, | *to decrease, to grow less.* |
| | | *comparoître, | *to appear.* | recroître, | *to grow again.* |

* *Apparoître* and *comparoître,* are only used in law.

## *Ninth* CONJUGATION.

### *Of Verbs in* uire.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* Instruire, *to instruct.* *Ger.* instruisant, *instructing.* *Part.* Instruit, *instructed.*

*C. Pres.* Avoir instruit, *to have instructed.* *C. Ger.* Ayant instruit, *having instructed.*

#### INDICATIVE.

| | *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | J'instruis, *I instruct.* | tu instruis, *thou instructest.* | il instruit, *he instructs.* |
| *P.* | Nous instruisons, *we instruct.* | vous instruisez, *ye instruct.* | ils instruisent, *they instruct.* |
| | | *Imperfect.* | |
| *S.* | J'instruisois, *I did instruct.* | tu instruisois, *thou didst instruct.* | il instruisoit, *he did instruct.* |
| *P.* | Nous instruisions, *we did*, &c, | vous instruisiez, *ye did instruct.* | ils instruisoient, *they did instruct.* |
| | | *Preterite.* | |
| *S.* | J'instruisis, *I instructed.* | tu instruisis, *thou instructedst.* | il instruisit, *he instructed.* |
| *P.* | Nous instruisimes, *we instructed.* | vous instruisites, *ye instructed.* | ils instruisirent, *they instructed.* |
| | | *Future.* | |
| *S.* | J'instruirai, *I shall* or *will instruct.* | tu instruiras, *thou shalt* or *wilt*, &c. | il instruira, *he shall* or *will*, &c. |
| *P.* | Nous instruirons, *we shall* or *will*, &c. | vous instruirez, *ye shall* or *will*, &c. | ils instruiront, *they shall* or *will*, &c. |
| | | *Conditional.* | |
| *S.* | J'instruirois, *I should*, &c. | tu instruirois, *thou should'st*, &c. | il instruiroit, *he would*, &c. |
| *P.* | Nous instruirions, *we should*, &c. | vous instruiriez, *ye would*, &c. | ils instruiroient, *they would instruct.* |

*Comp. of Pres.* J'ai
*Comp of Imp.* J'avois
*Comp. of Pret.* J'eus
*Comp. of Fut.* J'aurai
*Comp. of Cond.* J'aurois
} instruit, &c. { *I have*, *I had*, *I had*, *I shall have*, *I should*, &c. *have* } *instructed*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

| | *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que | J'instruise, *I may instruct.* | tu instruises, *thou may'st, &c.* | il instruise, *he may instruct.* |
| *P.* | Nous instruisions, *we may, &c.* | vous instruisiez, *ye may, &c.* | ils instruisent, *they may instruct.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *that* | J'instruisisse, *I instructed* or *might instruct.* | tu instruisisses, *thou* &c. | il instruisît, *he instructed.* |
| *P.* | Nous instruisissions, *we, &c. ye, &c.* | vous instruisissiez, | ils instruisissent, *they, &c.* |

*Comp. of Pres.* que { J'aie } instruit, { *I may have* } *instructed*
*Comp. of Pret. that* { J'eusse } *&c.* { *I might have* } *&c.*

IMPERATIVE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | | instruis, *instruct thou.* | il instruise, qu' *let him instruct.* |
| *P.* | Instruisons, *let us instruct.* | instruisez, *instruct you* or *ye, &c.* | ils instruisent, *let them instruct.* |

*Conjugate the same Verb* REFLECTIVELY.

INFINITIVE MOOD. S'instruire *to get acquainted, to be instructed* or *informed,* s'instruisant *being instructed,* instruit *instructed;* s'être instruit *to have been instructed,* s'étant instruit *having been instructed*

INDICATIVE. Je m'instruis *I am instructed,* je m'instruisois *I was instructed,* je me suis instruit *I have been instructed,* je m'étois instruit; je m'instruisis, je ne fus instruit; je m'instruirai, je me serai instruit; je m'instruirois, je me serois instruit.

SUBJUNCTIVE. Que je m'instruise, que je m'instruisisse, que je me sois instruit, que je me fusse instruit.

IMPERATIVE. Instruis-toi, qu'il s'instruise; instruisons-nous, instruisez-vous, qu'ils s'instruisent.

*Conjugate the same verb* negatively, *then* interrogatively; *(See the tables,* page 147.)

The nineteen verbs of the ninth Conjugation are,
* bruire, *to rustle.* introduire, *to introduce.* instruire, *to instruct*

* *bruire* is said of thunder, wind, and waves, and used only in the imperfect and part. which is a mere adnoun. As the gerund *bruyant* is irregular, so is the imperfect *bruyoit.*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| conduire, | *to conduct.* | produire, | *to produce.* | détruire, | *to destroy* |
| reconduire, | *to reconduct.* | réduire, | *to reduce, to bring to.* | ‡ luire, | *to shine.* |
| † cuire, | *to boil, to bake.* | | | ‡ reluire, | *to shine.* |
| recuire, | *to boil again.* | séduire, | *to seduce.* | ‡ nuire, | *to hurt* |
| enduire, | *to plaster,* or *to do over.* | traduire, | *to translate.* | déduire, | *to deduct.* |
| induire, | *to induce.* | construire, or *to build.* | *to construct,* | *to abate.* | |

† *cuire* besides *boiling* and *baking*, is also englished by *to do*: *Cela n'est pas assez cuit*, That is not done enough: *Faites recuire cette viande-là*, Get that meat done better.—*cuire*, used in the third persons only, signifies *to smart*.

‡ *luire, reluire*, and *nuire* take no *t* at the end of the participle as the others do and therefore make *lui*, and *nui*.

## *Tenth* CONJUGATION.

### *Of Verbs in* endre, *and* ondre.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* Vendre, *to sell.* *Ger.* Vendant, *selling.* *Part.* Vendu, *sold.*
*C.Pres.* Avoir vendu *to have sold.* *C.Ger.* Ayant vendu, *having sold*

#### INDICATIVE.

*Present Tense.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je vends, *I sell.* | tu vends, *thou, &c.* | il vend, *he sells.* |
| *P.* Nous vendons, *we sell.* | vous vendez, *ye* or *you sell.* | ils vendent, *they sell.* |

*Imperfect.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je vendois, *I did sell.* | tu vendois, *thou did'st sell.* | il vendoit, *he did sell.* |
| *P.* Nous vendions, *we did sell.* | vous vendiez, *ye* or *you did sell.* | ils vendoient, *they did sell.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je vendis, *I sold.* | tu vendis, *thou, &c.* | il vendit, *he sold.* |
| *P.* Nous vendimes, *we sold.* | vous vendites, *ye* or *you sold.* | ils vendirent, *they sold* |

*Future.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je vendrai, *shall* or *will sell.* | tu vendras, *thou shalt* or *wilt sell.* | il vendra, *he shall* or *will sell.* |
| *P.* Nous vendrons, *we shall* or *will sell.* | vous vendrez, *ye shall* or *will sell.* | ils vendront, *they shall* or *will sell.* |

*Conditional.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je vendrois, *I would, could,* &c. | tu vendrois, *thou would'st,* &c. | il vendroit, *he would, could, &c.* |
| *P.* Nous vendrions, *we would, &c.* | vous vendriez, *ye would, &c.* | ils vendroient, *they would, &c. sell.* |

*Comp. of Pres.* J'ai
*Comp. of Imp.* J'avois
*Comp. of Pret.* J'eus
*Comp. of Fut.* J'aurai
*Comp. of Cond.* J'aurois

} vendu, &c. {

*I have*
*I had*
*I had*
*I shall have*
*I should, &c. have*

} *sold, &c.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *I that* | Je vende, *I may sell.* | tu vendes, *thou may'st sell.* | il vende, *he may sell.* |
| *P.* | Nous vendions, *we may sell.* | vous vendiez, *ye may sell.* | ils vendent, *they may sell.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *I that* | Je vendisse, *I sold* or *might sell.* | tu vendisses, *thou,* &c. | il vendît, *he sold.* |
| *P.* | Nous vendissions, *we,* &c. | vous vendissiez, *ye sold.* | ils vendissent, *they sold.* |

*Comp. of Pres.* que J'aie } vendu, { *I may have* }
*Comp. of Pret, that* J'eusse } &c. { *I might have* } *sold*

IMPERATIVE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | | Vends, *thou.* *sell* or *sell* | il vende, qu' *sell.* *let him* |
| *P.* | Vendons, *let us sell.* | vendez, *ye.* *sell* or *sell* | ils vendent, *sell.* *let them* |

*Conjugate the same Verb* REFLECTIVELY.

INFINITIVE MOOD. Se vendre *to sell oneself,* se vendant *selling oneself,* vendu *sold*; s'être vendu *to have sold oneself,* s'étant vendu *having sold oneself.*

INDICATIVE. Je me vends *I sell myself,* je me vendois *I was selling myself,* je me suis vendu *I have sold myself,* je m'étois vendu; je me vendis, je me fus vendu; je me vendrai, je me serai vendu; je me vendrois, je me serois vendu.

SUBJUNCTIVE. Que je me vende, que je me vendisse, que je me sois vendu, que je me fusse vendu.

IMPERATIVE. Vends-toi, qu'il se vende; vendons-nous, vendez-vous, qu'ils se vendent.

*Conjugate the same verb* negatively, *then* interrogatively; *(See the Tables,* pages 147 & 148.)

N. B. Se vendre *is also said of things, but in a passive sense, and means* to be sold, *as* le blé se vend *wheat is sold,* la dentelle s'est vendue *lace has been sold. (See the* N. B. *at the end of* tenir, page 155.)

The regular verbs of this termination are,

attendre *to expect, to wait for.*
condescendre, *to condescend, to comply.*
descendre, *to go, come,* or *get down.*
entendre, *to hear, to understand.*
étendre, *to stretch out.*
fendre, *to cleave, to split.*
pendre, *to hang.*
vendre, *to sell.*
tendre, *to tend, to bend.*
prétendre, *to pretend, to claim.*
rendre, *to give way, to return, to render.*
répandre, *to spill, to pour down.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* Répondre, *to answer,* *Ger.* Répondant, *answering.* *Part.* Répondu, *answered.*

*C. Pres.* Avoir répondu, *to have answered.* *C. Ger.* Ayant répondu, *having answered.*

## INDICATIVE.

*Present Tense.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je réponds, *I answer.* | tu réponds, *thou answer'st.* | il répond, *he answers.* |
| *P.* Nous répondons, *we answer.* | vous répondez, *ye answer.* | ils répondent, *they answer.* |

*Imperfect.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je répondois, *I did answer.* | tu répondois, *thou didst answer.* | il répondoit, *he did answer.* |
| *P.* Nous répondions, *we did answer.* | vous répondiez, *ye did answer.* | ils répondoient, *they did answer.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je repondis, *I answered.* | tu répondis, *thou answered'st.* | il répondit, *he answered.* |
| *P.* Nous répondimes, *we answered.* | vous répondites, *ye answered.* | ils répondirent, *they answered.* |

*Future.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je répondrai, *I shall* or *will*, &c. | tu répondras, *thou shalt* or *wilt*, &c. | il répondra, *he shall* or *will answer.* |
| *P.* Nous répondrons, *we shall*, or *will*, &c. | vous répondrez, *ye shall* or *will*, &c. | ils répondront, *they shall* or *will*, &c. |

*Conditional.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je répondrois, *I would, could*, &c. | tu répondrois, *thou would'st*, &c. | il répondroit, *he would*, &c. |
| *P.* Nous répondrions, *we would*, &c. | vous répondriez, *ye would*, &c. | ils répondroient, *they would*, &c. |

*Comp. of Pres.* J'ai
*Comp. of Imp.* J'avois
*Comp. of Pret.* J'eus
*Comp. of Fut.* J'aurai
*Comp. of Cond.* J'aurois

} répondu, &c. {

*I have*
*I had*
*I had*
*I shall have*
*I would*, &c. *have*

} *answered*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je réponde, *I* que *may answer.* | tu répondes, *thou may'st*, &c. | il réponde, *he may answer.* |
| *that* Nous répon- *P.* dions *we*, &c. | vous répondiez, *ye may*, &c. | ils répondent, *they may answer.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je répondisse, *I* que *answered*, or *that might answer.* | tu répondisses, *thou*, &c. | il répondît, *he answered.* |
| *P.* Nous répondis- sions, *we*, &c. | vous répondissiez, *ye*, &c. | ils répondissent, *they answered.* |

*Comp. of Pres.* que J'aie } répondu, &c. { *I may have* } *answered*,
*Comp. of Pret. that* J'eusse } { *I might have* } &c

IMPERATIVE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Réponds, *answer, or answer thou.* | il réponde, qu' *let him answer.* |
| *P.* Répondons, *let us answer.* | répondez, *answer*, or *answer ye.* | ils répondent, *let them answer.* |

The regular verbs of this termination are,

confondre, *to confound.* refondre, *to cast, new mould.* pondre, *to lay eggs.*
correspondre, *to correspond.* morfondre, *to make catch cold.* répondre, *to answer.*
fondre, *to melt.* tondre, *to shear.*

perdre, *to lose.* *Ger.* perdant, *losing.* *Part.* perdu, *lost.*
mordre, *to bite.* *Ger.* mordant, *biting.* *Part.* mordu, *bit.*

follow also the tenth conjugation; to which one may add *tordre* to twist, of which the participle is *tordu;* its old participle *tors*, is at present an adjective, used in these expressions *du fils tors*, twisted thread; *une colonne torse*, a wreathed column; *bouche torte*, wry mouth.

We shall treat elsewhere (p. 288.) of the use of the tenses, and then observe how the English commonly use the preterite instead of the three first compound tenses of the French: but it must be sufficient now to conjugate all the tenses *grammatically*, for the best learning of the verbs.

The following verbs neuter form their compound from *être:*

*accourir*, to run, to go.
*aller*, to go.
*aborder*, to land.
*arriver*, to arrive.
*choir*, to fall.
*déchoir*, to decay.
*décéder*, to die.
*descendre*, to go, come, *or* get down.
*rester*, to stay.
*retourner*, to return.
*entrer*, to enter, to come. *or* get in.
*monter*, to go up, to come, *or* get up.
*mourir*, to die.
*naître*, to be born.
*partir*, to go, to depart, to set out.
*sortir*, to go out.
*tomber*, to fall down.
*venir*, to come.
*revenir*, to come again.
*devenir*, to become.
*convenir*, to agree.
*disconvenir*, to disagree.
*provenir*, to come from.
*parvenir*, to attain.
*survenir*, to befall.
*intervenir*, to intervene.

Therefore you should say: *Je suis arrivé ce matin*, I arrived this morning; not *J'ai arrivé*, &c. *Elle est venue cette après midi*, she came this afternoon; not *Elle a venu*, &c.

Some of these verbs are also use actively, that is, attended by a noun as their object: then they form their compounds from *avoir*. Therefore, though we say when the verb is neuter, *Elle est montée*, she is got up; *Elle est descendue*, she has come, *or* got down; yet when the verb is attended by a noun, we say, *Elle a* descendu *l'escalier plus aisément qu'elle ne l'* a monté, she went, *or* got down the stairs more easily than she got up

*Croître* to grow, *sortir* to go out, *demeurer* to live, *rester* to stay, are equally well conjugated with *être* or *avoir;* as *il est*, or *il a fort cru*, he is very much grown; *j'ai sorti*, or *je suis sorti ce matin*, I went out this morning. We say equally well *J'ai accouru*, and *Je suis accouru à son secours*, I ran to his assistance. But *avoir* and *être* construed with *sortir* and *demeurer*, imply two different things.

*Il est sorti* signifies that he is not at home, or within the place where one is, and is englished thus, *he is gone out* or *abroad;* and *il a sorti* signifies that he has been out on some business or other, but is come back again since; *il a sorti ce matin*, he went out this morning.

In the same manner *il a demeuré à Paris*, signifies that he has lived at *Paris* for a while, and is no more there: and *il est demeuré à Paris*, that he remained at *Paris*, to continue to live there; or at least that he is there still.

Again *sortir* and *promener* are also used actively: as *sortez ce cheval de l'écurie, & le promenez*, get the horse out of the stable and walk him.

When the verb *passer* is attended by a noun and a preposition, it is conjugated with *avoir*, and with *être* when it is used absolutely without any retinue; as *j'ai passé par l'Allemagne*, I passed through Germany; *vous attendez le courier, il est passé*, you stay for the express, he is passed, or gone.

## VERBS IRREGULAR.

As to the verbs called *Irregular*, because they don't form all their tenses according to the aforesaid rules; observe that their irregularities fall only upon either of these tenses, present (of both moods), preterite, and future: and therefore I should only need to set down their irregularities, were this Grammar designed for scholars only. But as it is calculated for learners of all sorts, and those of the meanest capacity can't have too much help in this matter, I shall take notice of those verbs in such a manner as will make the conjugation of them very easy to any learner, setting down (for abbreviation sake) the termination of each person only.

Observe further, that in verbs irregular, the preterite is ordinarily like the participle, in adding *s* when it has none: as *Je mis* I put, from *mis* put; *Je conclus* I concluded, from *conclu* concluded.

There are but two * verbs irregular in the first conjugation: *aller* to go, and *puer* to stink; which is irregular only in the spelling of the three persons sing. of the pres. of the indicative. *Je pus, tu pus, il put,* instead of *je pue, tu pues, il pue,* all the rest being regular. However, French politeness dislikes the very word *puer,* and instead of it, we, in conversation, make use of *sentir mauvais.*

*Aller* is very irregular throughout; and as it is of a very extensive use with the explicative particle *en* and a double pronoun, it shall be set down here at length; but children must first learn the plain verb *aller,* before they conjugate the reciprocal *s'en aller,*

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* S'en aller, *to go away.* *Ger.* S'en allant, *going away.* *Part.* allé, *gone away.*

*C.Pr.* S'en être allé, *to have gone away.* *C. Ger.* S'en étant allé, *having gone away.*

### INDICATIVE.

*Present Tense.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je m'en vais, *I go away.* | tu t'en vas, *thou goest away.* | il s'en va, *he goes away.* |
| *P.* Nous nous en allons, *we go away.* | vous vous en allez, *ye or you go away.* | ils s'en vont, *they go away.* |

*Imperfect.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je m'en allois, *I did go away* | tu t'en allois, *thou did'st go away.* | il s'en alloit, *he did go away.* |
| *P.* Nous nous en allions *we did* &c. | vous vous en alliez, *ye or you did,* &c. | ils s'en alloient, *they did go away.* |

* *J'enverrai* and *j'enverrois* have prevailed instead of the regular future and conditional of *envoyer (J'envoyerai, J'envoyerois).*

*Preterite.*

| *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je m'en allai, *I went away.* | tu t'en allas, *thou wentest away.* | il s'en alla, *he went away.* |
| *P.* Nous nous en allames, *we went, &c.* | vous vous en allates, *ye* or *you, &c.* | ils s'en allèrent, *they went away.* |

*Future.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je m'en irai, *I shall* or *will go away.* | tu t'en iras, *thou shalt* or *wilt, &c.* | il s'en ira, *he shall* or *will go away.* |
| *P.* Nous nous en irons, *we shall, &c.* | vous vous en irez, *ye* or *you shall, &c.* | ils s'en iront, *they shall, &c. go away.* |

*Conditional.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je m'en irois, *I should, &c. go away.* | tu t'en irois, *thou would'st, &c.* | il s'en iroit, *he would, &c. go away.* |
| *P.* Nous nous en irions, *we, &c.* | vous vous en iriez, *ye* or *you, &c.* | ils s'en iroient, *they would, &c. go away.* |

*Compound of the Present.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je m'en suis allé, * *I have gone away.* | tu t'en es allé, *thou hast gone away.* | il s'en est allé, *he has gone away.* |
| *P.* Nous nous en sommes allés, *we, &c.* | vous vous en êtes allés, *ye have, &c.* | ils s'en sont allés, *they have, &c.* |

*Compound of the Imperfect.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je m'en étois allé, † *I had gone away.* | tu t'en étois allé, *thou had'st, &c.* | il s'en étoit allé, *he had gone away.* |
| *P.* Nous nous en étions allés, *we, &c.* | vous vous en étiez allés, *ye had, &c.* | ils s'en étoient allés, *they had gone, &c.* |

*Compound of the Preterite.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je m en fus allé, ‡ *I had gone away.* | tu t'en fus allé, *thou had'st gone away.* | il s'en fut allé, *he had gone away.* |
| *P.* Nous nous en fumes allés, *we, &c.* | vous vous en futes allés, *ye,* &c. | ils s'en furent allés, *they had gone away.* |

*Compound of the Future.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *S.* Je m'en serai allé, § *I shall have, &c.* | tu t'en seras allé, *thou wilt have gone, &c.* | il s'en sera allé, *he will have gone, &c.* |
| *P.* Nous nous en serons allés, *we, &c.* | vous vous en serez allés, *ye, &c.* | ils s'en seront allés, *they will have, &c.* |

* or *I have been gone away,* or *I am gone away.*
† or *I had been gone away,* or *I was gone away.*
‡ or *I had been gone away,* or *was gone away.*
§ or *I shall have been gone away,* or *shall be gone away.*

*Compound of the Conditional.*

| | *First Persons.* | *Second Persons.* | *Third Persons.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | Je m'en serois allé, *I should*, &c. | tu t'en serois allé, *thou would'st*, &c. | il s'en seroit allé, *he would have*, &c. |
| *P.* | Nous nous en serions allés, *we*, &c. | vous vous en seriez allés, *ye*, &c. | ils s'en seroient allés, *they would*, &c. |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *that* *P.* | Je m'en aille, *I may go away.* | tu t'en ailles, *thou may'st go away.* | il s'en aille, *he may go away.* |
| | Nous nous en allions, *we*, &c. | vous vous en alliez, *ye* or *you*, &c. | ils s'en aillent, *they may go away.* |

*Preterite.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *that* *P.* | Je m'en allasse, *I went* or *might go away.* | tu t'en allasses, *thou went'st away.* | il s'en allât, *he went away.* |
| | Nous nous en allassions, *we*, &c. | vous vous en allassiez, *ye*, or, *&c.* | ils s'en allassent, *they went*, &c. |

*Compound of the Present.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *that* *P.* | Je m'en sois allé, *I have gone*, &c. | tu t'en sois allé, *thou hast*, &c. | il s'en soit allé, *he has*, &c. |
| | Nous nous en soyons allés, *we*, &c. | vous vous en soyez allés, *ye*, &c. | ils s'en soient allés, *they*, &c. |

*Compound of the Preterite.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* que *that* *P.* | Je m'en fusse allé, *I had* or *might have gone away.* | tu t'en fusses allé, *thou had'st*, &c. | ils s'en fût allé, *he had gone away.* |
| | Nous nous en fussions allés, *&c.* | vous vous en fussiez allés, *ye*, &c. | ils s'en fussent allés, *they*, &c. |

IMPERATIVE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* | | Va-t-en, *go thou away.* | qu'il s'en aille, *let, &c.* |
| *P.* | Allons-nous-en, *let us go away* or *be gone away.* | or *get you gone.* allez-vous-en, *go away, get away*, &c. | qu'ils s'en aillent, *let them go away.* |

*Conjugate the same verb* negatively, *then* interrogatively; *(See the tables,* pages 147 & 148.)

IMPERATIVE. Ne t'en va pas, qu'il ne s'en aille pas; ne nous en allons pas, ne vous en allez pas, qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas.

Observe, 1*st*, that all the compound tenses of *aller* are double, they being equally well formed with the verb substantive *être* and the participle *allé*; as *je suis allé, j'étois allé;* and with the auxiliary *avoir*, and the part. *été;* as *j'ai été, j'avois été,* &c.

2*dly*, One must very warily distinguish the proper compound tenses of *aller (j'ai été, j'avois été,)* &c. from the use that the participle of the same verb *(allé)* is put to with the verb *être (je suis allé, j'étois allé)* which imply quite another sense than that signified by the action of the verb. For *il est allé à Paris* (for example), far from expressing the action signified by the compound of the present of *aller*, intimates that either *he is at Paris*, or at least is *still on his journey thither*, which is properly englished thus, *he is gone to Paris.* But *Il a été à Paris*, he has been at Paris (which is the proper compound of the present of *aller)*, signifies that *he has travelled to Paris*, and is returned from thence. I have therefore set down the two ways in English, *(I am gone away*, and *I have been gone away*, for *je m'en suis allé)*, which may be both used conformably to this observation.

3*dly*, The preterite tenses of *aller* and *s'en aller* are also doubled, those of the verb *être* being equally well used. *J'allai* or *Je fus; J'allasse* or *Je fusse*, I went; *Je m'en allai*, or *Je m'en fus*, I went away. But we don't say with the double pronoun and the particle *en*, *Je m'en ai été*, as we say without them *J'ai été* I have been, *or* have gone.

4*thly*, The difference between *aller* and *s'en aller* is this: The first is used to denote only the going from one place to another; whereas *s'en aller* denotes the very departure, the just going away directly; or at least shows the specified time of setting out from one mentioned or supposed place.

5*thly*, *s'en aller* is also said of liquors, to signify their running away from the vessels where they are kept; *le vin s'en va, le tonneau ne vaut rien*, the wine runs away, the vessel is good for nothing.

6*thly*, *venir* to come, *revenir* to come back again, and *retourner* to return, are also conjugated with a double pronoun and the particle *en;* as *Je m'en reviens*, I am coming back again; *Il s'en retourne*, he is returning; and either way must be used according to the aforesaid difference between *aller* and *s'en aller.*

7*thly*, Though the participle of *recouvrer* to recover, or to get again, is at present *recouvré*, as usual to all verbs of the first conjugation, yet custom keeps still the old participle *recouvert* in law-style, as likewise in this proverb, *Pour un perdu deux recouverts*, for one lost two recovered, *or* found again.

## VERBS IRREGULAR *of the 2d and 3d* CONJUGATION, *viz. in* ir.

*Inf.* ACQUERIR, *to acquire, to get, to purchase.*
acquérir, *to acquire.* *Ger.* acquérant, *acquiring.* *Part.* acquis, *acquired.* *C. Pres.* avoir acquis, *to have acquired.* *C. Ger.* ayant acquis, *having acquired.*
*Pres.* J'acqui-ers, iers, iert; Nous acqué-rons, rez, acquièrent.
*Imp.* J'acquér-ois, ois, oit; Nous acquér-ions, iez, oient.

*Pret.* J'acqu -is, is, it; Nous acqui-mes, tes, rent.
*Fut.* J'acquer-rai, ras, ra; Nous acquer-rons, rez, ront.
*Cond.* J'acquer-rois,rois,roit; Nous acquer-rions, riez, roient.
*S.P.* Je acquièr-e, es, e; Nous acquér-ions, iez, acquièrent.
*Pr.* J'acqu-isse, isses, ît; Nous acqui-ssions, ssiez, ssent.

*Imper.* Acquiers, qu'il acquière; acqué-rons, rez, qu'ils acquièrent.

The other veros tnat follow the same conjugation are *conquérir* to conquer, and *requérir* to require, which last is only used in law: *conquérir* is used only in the infinitive, both preterite and compound tenses. As for *querir* to fetch, it has but the infinitive in use, and that too immediately after the verbs *aller* to go, *venir* to come, and *envoyer* to send; and *s'enquérir de* to enquire after, is become obsolete; instead of which we now say *s'informer*.

## BOUILLIR.

*Inf.* bouillir, *to boil.* *Ger.* bouillant, *boiling.* *Part.* bouilli, *boiled.*
*C.Pres.* avoir bouilli, *to have boiled.* *C.Ger.* ayant bouilli, *having boiled.*

*Pres.* Je bous, bous, bout; Nous bouill-ons, ez, ent.
*Imp.* Je bouill-ois, ois, oit; Nous bouill-ions, iez, oient.
*Pret.* Je bouill-is, is, it; Nous bouilli-mes, tez, rent.
*Fut.* Je bouilli-rai, ras, ra; Nous bouilli-rons, rez, ront.
*Cond.* Je bouilli-rois,rois,roit; Nous bouilli-rions, riez, roient.
*S.P.* Je bouill-e, es, e; Nous bouill-ions, iez, ent.
*Pr.* Je bouill-isse, issies, ît; Nous bouilli-ssions, ssies, ssent.

*Imper.* Bous, qu'il bouille; bouill-ons, ez, qu'ils bouillent.

Its compound is *rebouillir*, to boil again.——That verb is seldom used but in the infinitive and 3d persons of its tenses: and it is always neuter. Therefore don't say *bouillir de la viande*, as in English, *to boil meat*, but *faire bouillir de la viande*.

## COURIR.

*Inf.* courir, *to run.* *Ger.* courant, *running.* *Part.* couru, *run.*
*C.Pres.* avoir couru, *to have run.* *C.Ger.* ayant couru, *having run.*

*Pres.* Je cours, cours, court; Nous cour-ons, ez, ent.
*Imp.* Je cour-ois, ois, oit; Nous cour-ions, iez, oient.
*Pret.* Je cour-us, us, ut; Nous couru-mes, tes, rent.
*Fut.* Je cour-rai, ras, ra; Nous cour-rons, rez, ront.
*Cond.* Je cour-rois, rois, roit; Nous cour-rions, riez, roient.
*S.P.* Je cour-e, es, e; Nous cour-ions, iez, ient.
*Pr.* Je cour-usse, usses, ût; Nous couru-ssions, ssiez, ssent.

*Imper.* Cours, qu'il coure; cour-ons, ez, qu'ils courent.

After the same manner are conjugated these seven verbs:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **accourir,** | *to run to.* | discourir, | *to discourse.* | *lieve.* But the compound |
| **concourir,** | *to concur, to conspire.* | parcourir, | *to run over, to survey.* | tenses of *accourir* are conjugated with *être*. See |
| **encourir,** | *to incur, to fall under.* | recourir, | *to have recourse to.* | page 172. |
| | | secourir, | *to succour, to re-* | |

## CUEILLIR, *to gather, to pick up.*

*Inf.* cueillir, *to gather.* *Ger.* cueillant, *gathering.* *Part.* cueilli, *gathered.* *C. Pres.* avoir cueilli, *to have gathered.* *C. Ger.* ayant cueilli, *having gathered.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* | Je cueill-e, es, e; | Nous cueill-ons, ez, ent. |
| *Imp.* | Je cueill-ois, ois, oit; | Nous cueill-ions, iez, oient. |
| *Pret.* | Je cueill-is, is, it; | Nous cueilli-mes, tes, rent. |
| *Fut.* | Je cueille-rai, ras, ra; | Nous cueille-rons, rez, ront. |
| *Cond.* | Je cueille-rois, rois, roit; | Nous cueille-rions, riez, roient. |
| *S.P.* | Je cueill-e, es, e; | Nous cueill-ions, iez, ent. |
| *Pr.* | Je cueill-isse, isses, ît; | Nous cueilli-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| *Imper.* | Cueille, qu'il cueille; | cueill-ons, ez, qu'ils cueillent. |

*accueillir*, to make welcome is very little used: in lieu thereof we say *faire accueil*, and *faire bon accueil*. *Recueillir*, to collect, to gather together, is conjugated after the same manner.

## FUIR *and* s'ENFUIR.

*Fuir* is both active and neuter: when it is neuter, 'tis *to run away;* and *to shun, to avoid,* when active.

*Inf.* fuir, *to shun.* *Ger.* fuyant, *shunning.* *Part.* fui, *shunned.* *C. Pres.* avoir fui, *to have shunned.* *C. Gr.* ayant fui, *having shunned.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* | Je fuis, fuis, fuit; | Nous fuy-ons, ez, fuient. |
| *Imp.* | Je fuy-ois, ois, oit; | Nous fuy-ions, iez, oient. |
| *Pret.* | Je fuis, fuis fuit; | Nous fui-mes, tes, rent. |

*This Preterite is seldom used; instead of* je fuis, *and* je m'enfuis, *we say (when the verb is neuter),* je pris la fuite, *from* prendre la fuite, *to run away: and* j'évitai, *from* éviter *to avoid, to shun (when it is active).*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Fut.* | Je fui-rai, ras, ra; | Nous fui-rons, rez, ront. |
| *Cond.* | Je fui-rois, rois, roit; | Nous fui-rions, riez, roient. |
| *S.P.* | Je fui-e, es, e; | Nous fuy-ions, iez, fuient. |
| *Pr.* | Je fui-sse, sses, fuît; | Nous fui-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |

*The Pres. tense is very little used, and the Pret. tense still less: instead of them we say,* Je prenne la fuite, je prisse la fuite; j'évite, j'évitasse.

*Imper.* Fuis, qu'il fuie; fuy-ons, ez, qu'ils fuient.

## HAIR.

*Inf.* haïr, *to hate.* *Ger.* haïssant, *hating.* *Part.* haï, *hated.* *C. Pres.* avoir haï, *to have hated.* *C. Ger.* ayant haï, *having hated.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* | Je hais, ais, it; | Nous haïs-ons, ez, ent. |
| *Imper.* | Hai, qu'il haïsse; | Haïssons, ez, qu'ils haïssent. |

*e irregularity of this verb falls only upon those tenses. All her tenses are regular.* (See the 2d conjug.) *Its Pret. tenses ever used; its compounds very little.*

## MOURIR, *and* se MOURIR, *to be a dying.*

mourir, *to die. Ger.* mourant, *dying. Part.* mort, *dead.*
*res.* être mort, *to have died. C. Ger.* étant mort, *having died.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Je meurs, meurs, meurt; | Nous mour-ons ez, meurent. |
| Je mour-ois, ois, oit; | Nous mour-ions, iez, oient. |
| Je mour-us, us, ut; | Nous mouru-mes, tes, rent. |
| Je mour-rai, ras, ra; | Nous mour-rons, rez, ront. |
| Je mour-rois, roit, roit; | Nous mour-rions, riez, roient. |
| Je meur-e, es, e; | Nous mour-ions, iez, meurent. |
| Je mou-russe, russes, rût; | Nous mouru-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |

*r.* Meurs, qu'il meure; mour-ons, ez, qu'ils meurent

## OUVRIR.

ouvrir, *to open. Ger.* ouvrant, *opening. Part.* ouvert, *open.*
*es.* avoir ouvert, *to have opened. C. Ger.* ayant ouvert, *having opened.*

| | |
|---|---|
| J ouvr-e es, e; | Nous ouvr-ons, ez, ent. |
| J'ouvr-ois, ois, oit; | Nous ouvr-ions, iez, oient. |
| J'ouvr-is, is, it; | Nous ouvri-mes, tes, rent. |
| J'ouvri-rai, ras, ra; | Nous ouvri-rons, rez, ront. |
| J'ouvri-rois, rois, roit; | Nous ouvri-rions, riez, roient. |
| J'ouvr-e es, e; | Nous ouvr-rions, iez, ent. |
| J'ouvr-isse, isses, ît; | Nous ouvri-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |

*r.* Ouvre, qu'il ouvre; ouvr-ons, ez, qu'ils ouvrent.

*frir* to suffer, *or* to bear, and *offrir* to offer, with its derivative *méseffrir* to bid (very little used), *couvrir* to cover, *découvrir* to discover, and *recouvrir* er again, are conjugated after *ouvrir*.

AILLIR, to gush out, is out of use; as also ASSAILLIR, sault, except perhaps in the participle *assailli*, assaulted. TRESSAILLIR, which is commonly attended by *de*, as *illir de joie* to leap for joy, *tressaillir de peur* to start out of is more used in the infinitive, the gerund, and the pres. and pret. than in the other tenses.

tressaillir, *to start. Ger.* tressaillant, *starting. Part.* tres- *started. C. Pres.* avoir tressailli *to have started. C. Ger.* : tressailli, *having started.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Je tressaill-e, es, e; | Nous tressaill-ons, ez, ent. |
| Je tressaill-ois, ois, oit; | Nous tressaill-ions, iez, oient. |

*Pret.* Je tressaill-is, is, it; Nous tressailli-mes, tes, rent.
*Fut.* Je tressailli-rai, ras, ra; Nous tressailli-rons, rez, ront.
*Cond.* Je tressailli-rois, rois, roit; Nous tressailli-rions, riez, roient
*S.P.* Je tressaill-e, es, e; Nous tressaill-ions, iez, ent.
*Pr.* Je tressaill-isse, isses, ît; Nous tressailli-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
*No Imperative.*

*Saillir* may still be used in these persons, *les eaux saillissent*, the waters gush out; *le sang saillissoit*, the blood gushed out; *mon sang a sailli fort loin*, my blood has gushed out a great way.

## REVETIR,

*to invest with, to bestow*; or *to confer a dignity upon one*; is always used in a figurative sense.

*Inf.* revêtir, *to invest.* *Ger.* revêtant, *investing.* *Part.* revêtu, *invested.* *C. Pres.* avoir revêtu, *to have invested.* *C. Ger.* ayant revêtu, *having invested*

*Pres.* Je rev-êts, êts, êt, Nous revêt-ons, ez, ent.
*Imp.* Je revêt-ois, ois, oit; Nous revêt-ions, iez, oient.
*Pret.* Je revêt-is, is, it; Nous revêti-mes, tes, rent.
*Fut.* Je revêti-rai, ras, ra; Nous revêti-rons, rez, ront.
*Cond.* Je revêti-rois, rois, roit: Nous revêti-rions, riez, roient.
*S.P.* Je revêt-e, es, e; Nous revêt-ions, iez, ent.
*Pr.* Je revêt-isses, isses, ît; Nous revêti-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
*Imper.* Revêts, qu'il revête; revêtons, ez, qu'ils revêtent.

*Vêtir* to clothe, is used only in the infinitive, and part. *vêtu* clothed: as to the other tenses, we make use of *habiller.—se revêtir* to put on one's clothes, is sometimes used, though not throughout. *Travestir* to disguise, and *investir* to invest, are regular verbs of the second conjugation, although they are seldom used but in the infinitive, the participle, future, conditional, and preterites.

*Faillir* to fail, and *défaillir* to faint away, are become quite obsolete. We have substituted to the former *manquer*, and to the latter *s'évanouir*, or *tomber en défaillance.*

*Ouïr* to hear, is used only in the compound tenses, and that too with the verb *dire* after it; *J'ai ouï dire*, I have heard, *J'avois ouï dire*, I had heard, &c. In all other cases we make use of *entendre* or *apprendre.* Its imperative, *Oyez* hear, is still used in the English courts of justice.

*Férir* an old obsolete verb. Its infinitive is kept in this phrase only, *sans coup férir*, without striking one blow.

## IRREGULAR VERBS *of the 5th* CONJUGATION, *or in oir.*

## s'ASSEOIR.

*Inf.* s'asseoir, *to sit down.* *Ger.* s'asseyant, *sitting down.* *Part.* assis, *sit down.* *C. Pres.* s'être assis, *to have sat down.* *C. Ger.* s'étant assis, *having sat down.*

*Pr.* Je m'ass-ieds, ieds, ied; Nous nous assey-ons, ez, ent.
*Imp.* Je m'assey-ois, ois, oit; Nous nous assey-ions, iez, oient.
*Pr.* Je m'ass-is, is, it; Nous nous assi-mes, tes, rent.

*Fu.* Je m'assierai, *or* m'assèrai, *or* m'asseyerai, *&c.* *Authors are*
*Co.* Je m'assierois, *or* m'assèrois, *or* m'asseyerois, *&c.* *divided about the spelling and pronouncing of these two tenses, but it is better to avoid using them.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Sub.* que | Je m'assey-e,es, e; | Nous nous assey-ions, iez, ent. |
| *Pr.* que | Je m'ass-isse,isses, ît; | Nous nous assi-ssions,ssiez,ssent. |
| *Imper.* | Assied-toi, qu'il s'asseye; | asseyons-nous, asseyez-vous, qu'ils s'asseyent. |

*Instead of using the three persons singular and the third plural of the Pres. of both moods, it is better to take another turn, and use the persons of either of these verbs* se mettre sur, se reposer, se placer, prendre place, *according to the sense.* *But,*

*The following regular way of conjugating* s'asseoir *begins to prevail, which is doubtless occasioned by the difficulties attending the irregular way of conjugating it. However, I don't recommend it before it be entirely established by use.* (This way is rather confined to the high style; the other suits the conversation best.

*Inf.* s'asseoir, to *sit down.* *Ger.* s'assoyant, *sitting down.* *Part.* assis, *sat down.*

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* | Je m'ass | -ois, | ois, | oit; | Nous nous assoy-ons | ez, | ent. |
| *Imp.* | Je m'assoy-ois, | | ois, | oit; | Nous nous assoy-ions, | iez, | oient. |
| *Pret.* | Je m'ass | -is, | is, | it; | Nous nous assi | -mes, | tes, rent. |
| *Fut.* | Je m'assoi-rai, | | ras, | ra; | Nous nous assoi-rons, | rez, | ront. |
| *Cond.* | Je m'assoi-rois, | | rois, | roit; | Nous nous assoi-riens, | riez, | roient. |
| *S.P.* que | Je m'assoi-e, | | es, | e; | Nous nous assoy-ions, | iez, | ent. |
| *Pr* que | Je m'ass | -isse, | isses, | ît; | Nous nous assi | -ssions, | ssiez, ssent. |

*asseoir* is used also actively; as *asseyez*, or *asseyez cet enfant*, sit down the child.

*rasseoir*, besides its reduplicative signification of *sitting again*, is also used neutrally in the sense of *settling*; as *laisser rasseoir une liqueur*, or *ses esprits*, to let a liquor, or one's spirits settle, in which sense its use is confined to the infinitive.

*surseoir* to adjourn, is used only in Law, in the infinitive, the participle *sursis*, and perhaps the future *surseoira*. On the contrary,

*seoir* to become, *or* fit well, is never used in the infinitive, but only in the third persons of both numbers of the subjoined tenses: as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *Cette couleur vous sied bien,* | That colour fits you well, |
| *Ces couleurs ne vous siéent pas,* | Those colours don't fit you well; and |

never *sient* or *seyent*. It being not therefore conjugated like *asseoir*, I'll set down here the tenses wherein the verb is used. It has no preterite or compound tenses, and is said both with respect to manner, dress, colours, or any thing like, relating to persons. Its gerund should be *seyant*; as,

*Cette couleur vous* seyant *bien, vous n'en devriez jamais changer.*
Since that colour fits you well, you should never change it.

But it is better to avoid the using of it.

*Séant, sis, sise*, thought by some the right participles of *seoir*, are only verbal adnouns and participles of another obsolete verb used only in some phrases like these:

| | |
|---|---|
| *Le Roi* séant *en son lit de justice,* | The King sitting upon his throne; |
| *Le Parlement* séant *à Windsor,* | The Parliament sitting at Windsor; |
| *Un héritage* sis *en tel endroit,* | An estate lying in such a place. |

But the verbal adnoun *séant* is used in the sense of the verb before our consideration; as,

*Il n'est pas séant de siffler en compagnie,* It is not decent to whistle in company.
*Cette perruque courte n'est pas séante à un homme de son rang,* That short bob is not decent for one of his dignity.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* | Il sied, | *that fits.* | ils siéent, | *they fit.* |
| *Imp.* | Il seyoit, | *that fitted.* | ils seyoient, | *they fitted.* |
| *Fut.* | Il siéra, | *that will fit.* | ils siéront, | *they will fit.* |
| *Cond.* | Il siéroit, | *that would fit.* | ils siéroient, | *they would fit.* |

This verb is also used impersonally: as,
*Il sied mal à un homme sage de,* &c. It ill becomes a wise man to, &c.

## POUVOIR.

*Inf.* pouvoir, *to be able.* *Ger.* pouvant, *being able.* *Part.* pu, *been able*
*C. Pres.* avoir pu, *to have been able.* *C. Ger.* Ayant pu, *having been able.*

*Pres.* Je puis, peux, peut; Nous pouv-ons, ez, peuvent.
*Conversation and poetry allow* Je peux.
*Imp.* Je pouv-ois, ois, oit; Nous pouv-ions, iez, oient.
*Pret.* Je pus, pus, put; Nous pu- mes, tes, rent.
*Fut.* Je pour-rai, ras, ra; Nous pour-rons, rez, ront.
*Cond.* Je pour-rois, rois, roit; Nous pour-rions, riez, roient.
*One* r *only is sounded in these two tenses.*
*S. P.* Je pui-sse, sses, sse; Nous puiss-ions, iez, ent.
*Pr.* Je pusse, pusses, pût; Nous pu-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
*No Imperative.*
*See in the Appendix the right use and conjugation of that verb.*

## SAVOIR, *formerly* Sçavoir.

*Inf.* savoir *to know.* *Ger.* sachant, *knowing.* *Part.* su, *known.*
*C. Pres.* avoir su, *to have known.* *C. Ger.* ayant su, *having known.*
*Pres.* Je sai, *or* je sais, sais, sait; Nous sav -ons, ez, ent.
*Imp.* Je sav- ois, ois, oit; Nous sav -ions, iez, oient.
*Pret.* Je sus, sus, sut; Nous su -mes, tes, rent.
*Fut.* Je sau -rai, ras, ra; Nous sau-rons, rez, ront.
*Cond.* Je sau -rois, rois, roit; Nous sau-rions, riez, roient.
*S. P.* Je sach-e, es, e; Nous sach-ions, iez, ent.
*Pr.* Je susse, susses, sût; Nous su -ssions, ssiez, ssent.
*Imp.* Sache, qu'il sache; Sachons, sachez, qu'ils sachent.

## VOIR.

*Inf.* voir, *to see.* *Ger.* voyant, *seeing.* *Part.* vu, *seen.*
*C. Pres.* avoir vu, *to have seen.* *C. Ger.* ayant vu, *having seen*

*Pres.* Je vois, vois, voit; Nous voy-ons, ez, voient
*Imp.* Je voy-ois, ois, oit; Nous voy-ions, iez, oient.

Je vis, vis, vit; Nous vi -mes, tes, rent.
Je ver-rai, ras, ra; Nous ver-rons, rez, ront.
Je ver-rois, rois, roit; Nous ver-rions, riez, roient.
*In those two tenses pronounce double r like a single one.*
Je voi-e, es, e; Nous voy-ions, iez, voient.
Je visse, visses, vît; Nous vissions, vissiez, vissent.
Vois, qu'il voie; Voy-ons, ez, qu'ils voient.

*voir* are conjugated, *entrevoir*, to have a glimpse of; *pourvoir*, to pro-
*révoir*, to foresee; and *revoir* to see again: but *pourvoir* and *prévoir*
ake their future and conditional in *errai* and *errois* as their primitive
ut in *oirai* and *oirois* (*je pourvoirai, tu prévoiras, il pourvoirait, nous*
*ms*, &c.); *pourvoir* differs also from all others in its preterite tenses,
e not ended in *is* and *isse*, but in *us* and *usse* (*je pourvus, je pour-*

## VOULOIR.

ıloir, *to be willing*. *Ger.* voulant, *being willing*. *Part.* vou-
*n willing*. *C. Pres.* avoir voulu, *to have been willing*.
. ayant voulu, *having been willing*.

Je veux, veux, veut; Nous voulons, ez, veulent.
Je voul-ois, ois, oit; Nous voulions, iez, oient.
Je voulus, us, ut; Nous voulu-mes, tes, rent.
Je voud-rai, ras, ra; Nous voud-rons, rez, ront.
Je voud-rois, rois, roit; Nous voud-rions, riez, roient.
Je veuill-e, es, e; Nous voul-ions, iez, veuillent.
Je voul-usse, usses, ût; Nous voulu-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
*No Imperative.*
*n the Appendix the true use and conjugation of that Verb.*

## VALOIR

loir, *to be worth*. *Ger.* valant, *being worth*. *Part.* valu,
*rth*. *C. Pres.* avoir valu, *to have been worth*. *C. Ger.*
alu, *having been worth*.

Je vaux, vaux, vaut; Nous val-ons, ez, ent.
Je val-ois, ois, oit; Nous val-ions, iez, oient.
e val-us, us, ut; Nous valu-mes, tes, rent.
Je vaud-rai, ras, ra; Nous vaud-rons, rez, ront.
Je vaud-rois, rois, roit; Nous vaud-rions, riez, roient.
Je vaill-e, es, e; Nous val-ions, iez, vaillent.
Je val-usse, usses, ût; Nous valu-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
Vaux, qu'il vaille; Val-ons, ez, qu'ils vaillent.
*oir*, to be even with one; and *prévaloir* to prevail, follow the same
ion, except that *prévaloir* makes in the present subj. *prévale*, and not
:.

## MOUVOIR.

*Inf.* mouvoir, *to move.* *Ger.* mouvant, *moving.* *Part.* mu, *moved.*
*C. Pres.* avoir mu, *to have moved.* *C. Ger.* ayant mu, *having moved.*

| | |
|---|---|
| *Pres.* Je meus, meus, meut; | Nous mouv-ons ez, meuvent. |
| *Imp.* Je mou-vois, vois, voit, *&c.* | *Fut. & Cond. (if used)* mouv-rai, *and* mouvrois, *&c.* |
| *Sub.* Je meuv-e, es, e; | Nous mouv-ions, iez, meuvent. |
| *The preterite tenses,* Je mus, Je musse, *are very seldom used.* | |
| *Imper.* Meus, qu'il meuve; | Mouv-ons, ez, qu'ils meuvent. |

*Mouvoir* is a technical term, which also has few tenses in use. In common conversation we use *remuer.* Its derivatives are *émouvoir, démouvoir,* and *promouvoir.*

*démouvoir* is a law-term, used only in the infinitive in such phrases as these: *se démouvoir,* to desist; *démouvoir quelqu'un de ses prétentions,* to make one desist of his pretensions.

*promouvoir* has only the part. in use, and that too speaking of Church-preferments and holy orders: as *promu à l'Episcopat,* promoted to a Bishoprick.

*émouvoir* is used only in the infinitive, and in the sense of *working* with respect to purges: as *Il est difficile à émouvoir,* he is hard to be purged; *émouvoir* is used also for *exciter,* to excite; as *émouvoir les passions, une sédition.* Its part. as also compound tenses, are used in the last sense, to wit, that of *being concerned (émut* concerned); *s'émouvoir* is sometimes also used in the third pers. of the pres. in the same sense; as *Il s'émeut de rien,* the least thing concerns him; *Il ne s'émeut de rien,* he is concerned at nothing.

*apparoir,* v. n. a law-term, is used only in the infinitive, and third person sing. as *Comme il appert par un tel acte,* as it appears by such an act.

As for *choir* and *déchoir* they are quite out of use, except in the infinitive, and participles *chu* and *déchu; tomber* to fall, has taken their place.—Its derivative *échoir,* is only used in the part. *échu;* in the third person sing. in the pres. and fut. and perhaps the gerund *(échéant),* as in phrases like this:

| | |
|---|---|
| *Si le cas y échoit* (pron. sometimes *échet),* | If the occasion occurs, if there be occasion. |
| *Le terme échoit* (not *échet*) *le six du mois,* | The rent expires the sixth of the month. |
| *Mon terme écherra demain,* | My rent will be out to-morrow. |
| *Le terme est échu,* | The rent *or* quarter is out *or* expired. |
| *Cela lui est échu par le sort,* | That fell to him by lot. |

*avoir,* to have, has also its derivatives; *ravoir,* to have again; and *se ravoir,* to recover one's strength, but they are used in the infinitive only: as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *Il veut le ravoir,* | He desires to have it again. |
| *Il a de la peine à se ravoir,* | He recovers his strength but slowly. |

## IRREGULAR VERBS *of the 6th* CONJUGATION, *or in* aire.

## PLAIRE.

*Inf.* plaire, *to please.* *Ger.* plaisant, *pleasing.* *Part.* plu, *pleased.*
*C. Pres.* avoir plu, *to have pleased.* *C. Ger.* ayant plu, *having pleased.*

| | |
|---|---|
| *Pres.* Je plais, plais, plaît; | Nous plais-ons, ez, ent. |
| *Imp.* Je plais-ois, ois, oit; | Nous plais-ions, iez, oient. |
| *Pret.* Je plus, plus, plut; | Nous plu-mes, tes, rent. |
| *Fut.* Je plai-rai, ras, ra; | Nous plai-rons, rez, ront. |
| *Cond.* Je plai-rois, rois, roit; | Nous plai-rions, riez, roient. |

*S.P.* Je plais-e, es, e; Nous plais-ions, ez, ent.
*Pr.* Je pl-usse, usse, plût; Nous plu-ssions, iez, ssent.
*Imper.* Plais, qu'il plaise; Plai-sons, sez, qu'ils plaisent.

*Conjugate the same verb reflectively.*

INFINITIVE MOOD. Se plaire *to be pleased.* *Ger.* Se plaisant *being pleased.* *Part.* plu, *been pleased.* *C. Pres.* or *Pret.* s'être plu, *to have been pleased.* *C. Ger.* or *Ger. past.* s'étant plu, *having been pleased.*

INDICATIVE. Je me plais *I am pleased.* Je me plaisois *I was pleased.* Je me suis plu *I have been pleased.* Je m'étois plu; Je me fus plu; Je me plairai, Je me serai plu; Je me plairois, Je me serois plu.

SUBJUNCTIVE. Que je me plaise, que je me plusse, que je me sois plu, que je me fusse plu.

IMPERATIVE. Plais-toi, qu'il se plaise, plaisons-nous, plaisez-vous, qu'ils se plaisent.

This verb is also used impersonally:
il me plaît, *I please.* il te plaît, *thou pleasest.* il lui plaît, *he* or *she pleases.*
il nous plaît *we please.* il vous plaît, *you please.* il leur plaît, *they please.*
and so on for the other tenses.

Its derivatives *déplaire*, to displease; and *complaire*, to comply; as also *taire*, to conceal; and *se taire*, to hold one's tongue, follow the same conjugation.

## TRAIRE.

*Inf.* traire, *to milk.* *Ger.* trayant, *milking.* *Part.* trait, *milked.*
*C. Pres.* avoir trait, *to have milked.* *C. Ger.* ayant trait, *having milked.*

*Pres.* Je trais, trais, trait; Nous tray-ons, ez, traient.
*Imp.* Je tray-ois, ois, oit; Nous tray-ions, iez, oient.
*Fut.* Je trai-rai, ras, ra; Nous trai-rons, rez, ront.
*Cond.* Je trai-rois, roit, roit; Nous trai-rions, riez, roient.
*S.P.* Je trai-e, es, e; Nous tray-ions, iez, ent.
*Imp.* Trais, qu'il traie; Tray-ons, ez, qu'ils traient.

*Traire* has no preterite in use.—Its derivatives, *abstraire*, to abstract; *distraire*, to divert from; *extraire*, to extract; and *soustraire*, to subtract, or take from have only the infinitive, pres. and fut. in use (and that too in the singular number), as also the part. *distrait*, *extrait*, *abstrait*, *soustrait*, and the compound tenses. Instead of the tenses and number out of use, we use a paraphrase, saying, *nous faisons abstraction.*——The part. of *traire* is used in these expressions, *de l'or* on *de l'argent trait*, gold or silver-wire.——*Rentraire* to finedraw, is also conjugated like *traire*, without preterite tenses.

*Braire*, to bray like an ass, is used in the infinitive and third persons of the pres. only *(il brait, ils braient).*

## BOIRE.

*Inf.* boire, *to drink.* *Ger.* buvant, *drinking.* *Part.* bu, *drunk.*
*C. Pres.* avoir bu, *to have drunk.* *C. Ger.* ayant bu, *having drunk.*

*Pres.* Je bois, bois, boit Nous buv-ons, ez, boivent
*Imp* Je buv-ois, ois, oit; Nous buv-ions, iez, oient
*Pret.* Je bus, bus, but; Nous bu-mes, tes, rent.
*Fut.* Je boi-rai, ras, ra; Nous boi-rons, rez, ront

*Cond.* Je boi-rois, rois, roit; Nous boi-rions, riez, roient.
*S.P.* ♀ Je boiv-e es, e; Nous buv-ions, iez, boivent.
*Pr.* ♂ Je busse, busses, bût; Nous bu-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
*Imper.* Bois, qu'il boive; Buv-ons, ez, qu'ils boivent.

## CROIRE.

*Inf.* croire, *to believe.* *Ger.* croyant, *believing.* *Part.* cru, *believed.*
*C.Pres.* avoir cru, *to have believed.* *C. Ger.* ayant cru, *having believed.*

*Pres.* Je crois, crois, croit; Nous croy-ons, ez, croient.
*Imp.* Je croy-ois, ois, oit; Nous croy-ions, iez, oient.
*Pret.* Je crus, us, ut; Nous cru-mes, tes, rent.
*Fut.* Je croi-rai, ras, ra; Nous croi-rons, rez, ront.
*Cond.* Je croi-rois, rois, roit; Nous croi-rions, riez, roient.
*S.P.* ♀ Je croie, croies, croie; Nous croy-ions, iez, croient.
*Pr.* ♂ Je crusse, crusses, crût; Nous cru-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
*Imper.* Crois, qu'il croie; Croy-ons, ez, qu'ils croient.

Its derivative *accroire* is used in the infinitive only, and that too with the verb *faire* before it; as *faire accroire*, or *en faire accroire*, to impose upon one: and *s'en faire accroire*, to be self-conceited.

### IRREGULAR VERBS *of the* 8*th* CONJUGATION, *or in* aître.

## NAITRE.

*Inf.* naître, *to be born.* *Ger.* naissant, *being born.* *Part.* né, *born*
*C.Pres.* être né, *to have have been born.* *C. Ger.* étant né, *having been born.*

*Pres.* Je nais, nais, naît; Nous naiss-ons, ez, ent.
*Imp.* Je naiss-ois, ois, oit; Nous naiss-ions, iez, oient.
*Pret.* Je na-quis, quis, quit; Nous naqui-mes, tes, rent.
*Fut.* Je naît-rai, ras, ra; Nous naît-rons, rez, ront.
*Cond.* Je naît-rois, rois, roit; Nous naît-rions, riez, roient.
*S.P.* ♀ Je naiss-e, es, e; Nous naiss-ions, iez, ent.
*Pr.* ♂ Je naqu-isse, isse, ît; Nous naqui-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
*Imp.* Nais, qu'il naisse; Naiss-ons, ez, qu'ils naissent.

The derivative of *naître* is *renaître* to be born again.——*Paître* to graze, follows the same conjugation, but has no participle nor preterite tenses in use; though *se repaître* to feed upon (very little used), has *repu* for its participle, and *repus, repusse,* for its preterite. *L'oiseau a pu,* the bird has fed, is a phrase of Falconry.

### IRREGULAR VERBS *of the* 9*th* CONJUGATION, *or in* ire.

## DIRE.

*Inf.* dire, *to say,* or *tell.* *Ger.* disant, *saying.* *Part.* dit, *said.*
*C. Pres.* avoir dit, *to have said.* *C. Ger.* ayant dit, *having said.*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Je dis, | dis, | dit; | Nous disons, | dites, | disent. |
| Je dis-ois, | ois, | oit; | Nous dis-ions, | iez, | oient. |
| Je dis, | dis, | dit; | Nous di-mes, | tes, | rent. |
| Je di-rai, | ras, | ra; | Nous di-rons, | rez, | ront. |
| Je dirois, | rois, | roit; | Nous di-rions, | riez, | roient. |
| Je dis-e, | es, | e; | Nous dis-ions, | iez, | ent. |
| Je disse, | disses, | dît; | Nous dissions, | dissiez, | dissent. |

. Dis, qu'il dise; Disons, dites, qu'ils disent.

ire, *to contradict.* mandire, *to curse.* prédire, *to foretell.*
e, *to unsay, to retract.* interdire, *to interdict,* redire, *to tell.*
*to slander, to speak ill.* *to forbid.* confire, *to preserve fruit,*
he same conjugation; with this exception, that except *redire,* which is
ited all throughout like its primitive, they form regularly the 2d pers.
the pres. and make *disez* instead of *dites;* and *maudire* doubles its *s*
the whole verb *(maudissant, nous maudissons, maudissois,* &c.)

## LIRE.

ire, *to read.* *Ger.* lisant, *reading.* *Part.* lu, *read.*
s. avoir lu, *to have read.* *C. Ger.* ayant lu, *having read.*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Je lis, | lis, | lit; | Nous lis-ons, | ez, | ent, |
| Je lis-ois, | ois, | oit; | Nous lis-ions, | iez, | oient. |
| Je lus, | lus, | lut; | Nous lu-mes, | tes, | rent. |
| Je li-rai, | ras, | ra; | Nous li-rons, | rez, | ront. |
| Je li-rois, | rois, | roit; | Nous li-rions, | riez, | roient. |
| Je lis-e, | es, | e; | Nous lis-ions, | iez, | ent. |
| Je lusse, | lusse, | lût; | Nous lu-ssions, | ssiez, | ssent. |

. Lis, qu'il lise; Li-sons, sez, qu'ils lisent.

o elect, and *relire* to read again, are conjugated after the same manner:
h you may add *circoncire,* to circumcise; and *suffire,* to suffice; which,
r, differ in this: their participles are *circoncis,* (with a final *s*) and *suffi,*
t a final *s*), and they make in their pret. *Je circoncis, je circoncisse,* I cir-
d; *Je suffis, je suffisse,* I sufficed.

## RIRE.

ire, *to laugh.* *Ger.* riant, *laughing.* *Part.* ri, *laughed.*
s. avoir ri, *to have laughed.* *C. Ger.* Ayant ri, *having laughed.*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Je ris, | ris, | rit; | Nous ri-ons, | ez, | ent. |
| Je ri-ois, | ois, | oit; | Nous ri-ions, | iez, | oient. |
| Je ris, | ris, | rit; | Nous ri-mes, | tes, | rent. |
| Je ri-rai, | ras, | ra; | Nous ri-rons, | rez, | ront. |
| Je ri-rois, | rois, | roit; | Nous ri-rions, | riez, | roient. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.P.* Je ri-e, | es, e; | Nous ri-ions, | iez, ent. |
| *Pr.* Je risse, | risses, rît; | Nous ri-ssions, | ssiez, ssent. |
| *Imper.* Ris, | qu'il rie; | Rions, riez, | qu'ils rient. |

*sourire*, to smile, is conjugated like *rire*.

## ECRIRE.

*Inf.* écrire, *to write*. *Ger.* écrivant, *writing*. *Part.* écrit, *written*. *C. Pres.* avoir écrit, *to have written*. *C. Ger.* Ayant écrit, *having written*.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* J'é-cris, | cris, crit; | Nous écriv-ons, | ez, ent. |
| *Imp.* J'écriv-ois, | ois, oit; | Nous écriv-ions, | iez, oient. |
| *Pret.* J'écri-vis, | vis, vit; | Vous écri-vimes, | tes, rent. |
| *Fut.* J'écri-rai, | ras, ra; | Vous écri-rons, | rez, ront. |
| *Cond.* J'écri-rois, | rois, roit; | Nous écri-rions, | riez, roient. |
| *S.P.* J'écriv-e, | es, e; | Nous écriv-ions, | iez, ent. |
| *Pr.* J'écri-visse, | visses, vît; | Nous écrivi-ssions, | ssiez, ssent. |

*Imper.* écris, qu'il écrive; écri-vons, vez, qu'ils écrivent.

After the same manner are conjugated,

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *décrire*, | to describe. | *proscrire*, | to proscribe, to out-law. | *souscrire*, | to subscribe. |
| *inscrire*, | to inscribe. | | | *transcrire*, | to transcribe. |
| *prescrire*, | to prescribe. | *récrire*, | to write again. | *circonscrire*, | to circumscribe. |

## VIVRE.

*Inf.* vivre, *to live*. *Ger.* vivant, *living*. *Part.* vécu, *lived*. *C. Pres.* avoir vécu, *to have lived*. *C. Ger.* ayant vécu, *having lived*.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* Je vis, | vis, vit; | Nous viv-ons, | ez, ent. |
| *Imp.* Je viv-ois, | ois, oit; | Nous viv-ions, | iez, oient. |
| *Pret.* Je vécus, | cus, cut; | Nous vécu-mes, | tes, rent. |
| *Fut.* Je viv-rai, | ras, ra; | Nous viv-rons, | rez, ront. |
| *Cond.* Je viv-rois, | rois, roit; | Nous viv-rions, | riez, roient. |
| *S.P.* Je viv-e, | es, e; | Nous viv-ions, | iez, ent. |
| *Pr.* Je vé-cusse, | cusses, cût; | Nous vécu-ssions, | ssiez, ssent. |

*Imper.* Vis, qu'il vive; Vi-vons, vez, qu'ils vivent.

its derivatives are *revivre*, to revive; and *survivre*, to out-live.

## SUIVRE.

*Inf.* suivre, *to follow* *Ger.* suivant, *following*. *Part.* suivi, *followed*. *C. Pres.* avoir suivi, *to have followed*. *C. Ger.* ayant suivi, *having followed*.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* Je suis, | suis, suit; | Nous suiv-ons | ez, ent. |
| *Imp.* Je suiv-ois, | ois, oit; | Nous suiv-ions, | iez, oient. |
| *Pret.* Je sui-vis, | vis, vit; | Nous suivi-mes, | tes, rent. |
| *Fut.* Je suiv-rai, | ras, ra; | Nous suiv-rons, | rez, ront. |
| *Cond.* Je suiv-rois, | rois, roit; | Nous suiv-rions, | riez, roient. |

*S.P.* Je suiv-e, es, e; Nous suiv-ions, iez, ent.
*Pr.* Je sui-visse, visses, vît; Nous suivi-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
*Imper.* Suis, qu'il suive; Suivons, ez, qu'ils suivent.

Its derivatives are, *poursuivre*, to pursue; and *s'ensuivre*, which is used only in the third persons of both numbers: it is also used impersonally; as, *Il s'ensuit de là que*, &c. from whence it follows that, *&c.*

*Frire*, to fry, is used only in the infinitive, the participle *frit* with the compound tenses, in the sing. of the pres. *Je fris, tu fris, il frit*; and perhaps in the fut. *Je frirai, ras, ra*, &c. In many other circumstances one must make use of a periphrase; as *faisant frire*, frying, instead of its gerund: *Vous faites trop frire ce poisson*, You fry that fish too much.

*Bruire*, to rustle, is used only in the infinitive, and the third persons of the imperfect, *Il bruyoit*, it rustled; *Les flots bruyoient*, the billows roared, although the gerund be *bruissant; bruyant, ante*, being a verbal adnoun.

## IRREGULAR VERBS *of the* 10*th* CONJUGATION, *or in* endre, ompre, ettre.

### PRENDRE.

*Inf.* prendre, *to take.* *Ger.* prenant, *taking.* *Part.* pris, *taken.*
*C. Pres.* avoir pris, *to have taken.* *C. Ger.* ayant pris, *having taken.*

*Pres.* Je prends, prends, prend; Nous pren-ons, ez, nent.
*Imp.* Je pren-ois, ois, oit; Nous pren-ions, iez, oient.
*Pret.* Je pris, pris, prit; Nous pri-mes, tes, rent.
*Fut.* Je prend-rai, ras, ra; Nous prend-rons, rez, ront.
*Cond.* Je prend-rois, rois, roit; Nous prend-rions, riez, roient.
*S.P.* Je prenn-e, es, e; Nous pren-ions, iez, nent.
*Pr.* Je prisse, prisses, prît; Nous pri-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
*Imper.* Prends, qu'il prenne; Pren-ons, ez, qu'ils prennent.

Its derivatives are *apprendre*, to learn; *désapprendre*, to unlearn; *comprendre*, to understand; *entreprendre*, to undertake; *se méprendre*, to be mistaken; *reprendre*, to rebuke, to chide, also to take again; and *surprendre*, to surprise: all which are conjugated like their primitive.

### ROMPRE.

*Inf.* rompre, *to break.* *Ger.* rompant, *breaking.* *Part.* rompu, *broken.*
*C. Pres.* avoir rompu, *to have broken.* *C. Ger.* ayant rompu, *having broken.*

*Pres.* Je romps, romps, rompt; Nous rom-pons, ez, ent.
*Imp.* Je romp-ois, ois, oit; Nous romp-ions, iez, oient.
*Pret.* Je rom-pis, pis, pit; Nous rompi-mes, tes, rent.
*Fut.* Je romp-rai, ras, ra; Nous romp-rons, rez, ront.
*Cond.* Je romp-rois, rois, roit; Nous romp-rions, riez, roient.
*S.P.* Je romp-e, es, e; Nous romp-ions, iez, ent.
*Pr.* Je rompisses, pisses, pît; Nous rompi-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
*Imper.* Romps, qu'il rompe; Rom-pons, ez, qu'ils rompent.

Its derivatives are *corrompre*, to corrupt; and *interrompre*, to interrupt.

## BATTRE.

*Inf.* battre, *to beat.* *Ger.* battant, *beating.* *Part.* battu, *beaten.*
*C. Pres.* avoir battu, *to have beaten.* *C. Ger.* ayant battu, *having.*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* | Je bats, | bats, | bat; | Nous batt-ons, | ez, ent. |
| *Imp.* | Je bat-tois, | ois, | oit; | Nous batt-ions, | iez, oient. |
| *Pret.* | Je bat-tis, | tis, | tit; | Nous batti-mes, | tes, rent. |
| *Fut.* | Je batt-rai, | ras, | ra; | Nous batt-rons, | rez, ront. |
| *Cond.* | Je batt-rois, | rois, | roit; | Nous batt-rions, | riez, roient. |
| *S.P.* que | Je batt-e, | es, | e; | Nous batt-ions, | iez, ent. |
| *Pr.* que | Je bat-tisse, | tisses, | tît; | Nous batti-ssions, | ssiez, ssent. |

*Imper.* Bats, qu'il batte; Batt-ons, ez, qu'ils battent.

*Abattre*, to pull down; *combattre* to fight; *se débattre*, to struggle; *s'ébattre*, to sport (an expression of the burlesque style); *rabattre*, to bate, abate; and *rebattre*, to beat again, are conjugated like *battre*.

## METTRE.

*Inf.* mettre, *to put.* *Ger.* mettant, *putting.* *Part.* mis, *put.*
*C. Pres.* avoir mis, *to have put.* *C. Ger.* ayant mis, *having put.*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* | Je mets, | mets, | met; | Nous mett-ons, | ez, ent. |
| *Imp.* | Je mett-ois, | ois, | oit; | Nous mett-ions, | iez, oient. |
| *Pret.* | Je mis, | mis, | mit; | Nous mi-mes, | tes, rent. |
| *Fut.* | Je mett-rai, | ras, | ra; | Nous mett-rons, | rez, ront. |
| *Cond.* | Je mett-rois, | rois, | roit; | Nous mett-rions, | riez, roient. |
| *S.P.* que | Je mett-e, | es, | e; | Nous mett-ions, | iez, ent. |
| *Pr.* que | Je misse, | misses, | mît; | Nous missions, | missiez, missent. |

*Imper.* Mets, qu'il mette; Mett-ons, ez, qu'ils mettent.

The following are conjugated after the same manner:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *admettre*, | to admit. | *s'entremettre*, | to intermeddle. | *compromettre*, | to compromise. |
| *commettre*, | to commit. | *permettre*, | to permit. | *soumettre*, | to submit. |
| *démettre*, | to remove, turn out. | *promettre*, | to promise. | *transmettre*, | to transmit, to convey. |
| *se démettre*, | to resign. | *remettre*, | to deliver, to put again. | | |
| *omettre*, | to omit. | | | | |

## CONCLURE.

*Inf.* conclure, *to conclude.* *Ger.* concluant, *concluding.* *Part.* conclu, *concluded.* *C. Pres.* Avoir conclu, *to have concluded.*
*C. Per.* ayant conclu, *having concluded.*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* | Je con-clus, | clus, | clut; | Nous conclu-ons, | ez, ent. |
| *Imp.* | Je conclu-ois, | ois, | oit; | Nous conclu-ions, | iez, oient. |
| *Pret.* | Je conclus, | clus, | clut; | Nous conclu-mes, | tes, rent. |
| *Fut.* | Je conclu-rai, | ras, | ra; | Nous conclu-rons, | rez, ront. |
| *Cond.* | Je conclu-rois, | rois, | roit; | Nous conclu-rions, | riez, roient. |
| *S.P.* que | Je conclu-e, | es, | e; | Nous conclu-ions, | iez, ent. |
| *Pr.* que | Je conclu-sse, | sses, | conclût; | Nous conclu-ssions, | iez, ssent. |

*Imper* Conclus, qu'il conclue; Conclu-ons, ez, qu'ils concluent.

*ure*, to exclude, is conjugated after the same manner, except that the part. *is* with a final *s*, and the feminine is both *exclue* and *excluse*; as, *Il fut de l'assemblée*, he was excluded from the assembly: *Elle en fut aussi exclue, use*, she was also excluded from it.

## CONVAINCRE.

convaincre, *to convince*. *Ger.* convainquant, *convincing*. . convaincu, *convinced*. *C. Pres.* avoir convaincu, *to have nced*. *C. Ger.* ayant convaincu, *having convinced*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| . Je con-vaincs, vaincs, vainc; | | convainqu-ons, ez, ent. |
| Je convainqu-ois, ois, oit; | | convainqu-ions, ez, oient. |
| . Je convain-quis, quis, quit; | | convainqui-mes, tes, rent. |
| Je convainc-rai, ras, ra; | Nous | convainc-rons, rez, ront. |
| !. Je convainc-rois, rois, roit; | | convainc-rions, riez, roient. |
| Je convain-que, ques, que; | | convainqui-ions, iez, ent. |
| Je convain-quisse, quisses, quît; | | convainqui-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| *r.* Convaincs, qu'il convainque; | | Convainqu-ons, ez, qu'ils convainquent. |

*ıcre*, to vanquish, *or* to overcome, is conjugated after the same manner, is not used, in the pres. nor in some other tenses, instead of which we say *ker*, or *être victorieux*. You may also spell *convaincant* and *convaincons c* instead of *qu*.

## COUDRE.

:oudre, *to sew*. *Ger.* cousant, *sewing*. *Part.* cousu, *sewed*. *res.* avoir cousu, *to have sewed*. *C. Ger.* ayant cousu, *having sewed*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| . Je couds, couds, coud; | | Nous cous-ons, ez, ent. |
| Je cous-ois, ois, oit; | | Nous cous-ions, iez, oient. |
| Je cou-sis, sis, it; | | Nous cousi-mes, tes, rent. |
| Je coud-rai, ras, ra; | | Nous coud-rons, rez, ront. |
| . Je coud-rois, rois, roit; | | Nous coud-rions, riez, roient. |
| Je cou-se, · ses, se; | | Nous cous-ions, iez, ent. |
| Je cou-sisse, sisses, sît; | | Nous cousi-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| *r.* Couds, qu'il couse; | | Cou-sons, sez, qu'ils cousent.— |

*the preter tense beware of saying* Je cousus, je coususse, *as people do*.

only compounds this verb has are *découdre*, to unsew; and *recoudre*, to ain.

## MOUDRE.

noudre, *to grind*. *Ger.* moulant, *grinding*. *Part.* moulu, *id*. *C. Pres.* avoir moulu, *to have ground*. *C. Ger.* ayant u, *having gorund*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Je mouds, mouds, moud; | Nous moul-ons, | ez, ent. |
| Je moul-ois, ois, oit; | Nous moul-ions, | iez, oient. |
| Je mou-lus, lus, lut; | Nous moulu-mes, | tes, rent. |
| Je moud-rai, ras, ra; | Nous moud-rons, | rez, ront. |

*Cond.* Je moud-rois,rois,roit ; Nous moud-rions, riez, roient.
*S.P.* Je moule, es, e ; Nous moul-ions, iez, ent.
*Pr.* Je mou-lusse, lusses,lût ; Nous moulu-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
*Imper.* Mouds, qu'il moule ; Moul-ons, ez, qu'ils moulent.

Its derivatives are *émoudre* or *rémoudre*, to whet, to set an edge: and *remoudre*, to grind again.

## RÉSOUDRE.

*Inf.* résoudre, *to resolve.* *Ger.* résolvant, *resolving.* *Part.* résolu, *resolved.* *C. Pres.* avoir résolu, *to have resolved.* *C. Ger.* ayant résolu, *having resolved.*

*Pres.* Je résouds, souds, soud ; Nous résolv-ons, ez, ent.
*Imp.* Je résolv-ois, ois, oit ; Nous résolv-ions, iez, oient.
*Pret.* Je réso-lus, lus, lut ; Nous résolu-mes, tes, rent.
*Fut.* Je résoud-rai, ras, ra ; Nous résoud-rons, rez, ront.
*Cond.* Je résoud-rois,rois,roit ; Nous résoud-rions,riez, roient.
*S.P.* Je résolv-e, es, e ; Nous résolv-ions, iez, ent.
*Pr.* Je réso-lusse, lusses, lût ; Nous résolu-ssions,ssiez,ssent.
*Imper.* Résous, qu'il résolve ; Résolv-ons, ez, qu'ils résolvent.

*Soudre*, to solve, is used in the infinitive only. *Absoudre*, to absolve, and *dissoudre*, to dissolve *or* liquify, follow the same conjugation: but they have no preterite in use, and their part. are *absous* and *dissous;* as likewise that of *résoudre* is *résous*, when that verb signifies *changing a thing into another.* Example *un brouillard* résous *en pluie*, a mist resolved into rain. *Absous* is not used in the feminine, but *dissous* makes *dissoute.* *Mais de quelle manière, & en quel temps a-t-elle été dissoute?* But in what manner, and when was it dissolved?

As for *clorre*, to close, *or* shut close; *déclorre* to unclose; *enclorre*, to enclose: and *éclorre*, to be hatched, *or* to blow open; they are verbs defective, and very seldom used but in the inf. and part. with both *avoir* and *être:* as,

*J'ai enclos mon jardin d'un bon mur,* I have enclosed my garden with a good wall.
*Je n'ai pas clos l'œil de la nuit,* I did not shut my eyes last night.
*Mes vers à soie sont éclos,* My silk-worms are hatched.

*clorre* is used only in the infinitive, participle, the three pers. sing. of the pres. *Je clos, tu clos, il clot ;* the fut. *Je clorrai ;* and the cond. *Je clorrois.*

*éclorre* may also be used in the fut. as (speaking of the same insects), *Ils n'éclorront jamais sans chaleur*, they will never be hatched without heat. In any other tense we make use of a periphrase with the verb *faire*, and the inf. of the verb, as *Mettez-les au soleil pour les faire éclorre*, instead of *pour qu'ils éclosent*, set them in the sun to make them hatch: though we also not improperly say in the present indic. *Mes vers à soie éclosent à merveille*, my silk-worms come out charmingly.

From three other obsolete verbs, there remain some tenses and persons consecrated by custom to certain sciences, and phrases, though their infinitive is now hardly known.

I. The third persons of the pres. and imperf. of *gésir, gissant (gît, gissent, gissoit)*, chiefly used in epitaphs: as *Ci gît*, here lies, *&c.*

II. The participle of *issir (issu)*, used in speaking of Lineage and Genealogy: as, *Il se prétend issu des anciens Comtes de*, he pretends that he is *descended* from the ancient Counts of, *&c. Cousin issu de germain*, second cousin; as likewise the gerund of the same *(issant)*, used in Heraldry only: as, *Il porte de sinople un lion issant de gueules*, he bears sinople a lion *rising out* of gules.

III. The part. of *tistre (tissu)*, generally used in all compound tenses with both *avoir* and *être:* as *Ce drap-là est bien tissu*, that cloth is well woven

*Verbs* IMPERSONAL *are conjugated thus:*

*Indicative Mood.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* | Il y a, | *there is.* / *there are.* | Il faut, | *one,* or *it must,* or *it is necessary.* |
| *Imp.* | Il y avoit, | *there was.* / *there were.* | Il falloit, / Il fallut, | *it was requisite, needful.* |
| *Pret.* | Il y eut, | *there was.* / *there were.* | | |
| *Fut.* | Il y aura, | *there shall* or *will be.* | Il faudra, | *it will be necessary,* &c. |
| *Cond.* | Il y auroit, | *there would,* &c. | Il faudroit, | *it would,* &c. *be,* &c. |

*Subjunctive.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* qu'il ait, | *there be, or may be.* | qu'il faille, | *it may be* | *necessary,* |
| *Pret.* qu'il y eût, | *there were,* or *might be.* | il fallût, | *it were,* or *might be.* | *requisite,* &c. |

*Infinitive.*

*Pres.* y avoir, *there to be.* *Ger.* y ayant, *there being.*

*See in the Syntax what concerns this impersonal.*

Which impersonal verbs have also their compound tenses, formed by adding *eu* to each tense; as *il y a eu* there has *or* have been, *il y avoit eu* there had been, *&c.* The others form them from *avoir,* and their participle: as *il a fallu* it has been requisite, *il avoit fallu* it had been, *&c.* *Il faut* has no infinitive in use; but the others have one, as also gerunds and participles, which shall be set down here.

| *Indicative.* | | *Infinitive.* | *Ger.* | *Part.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Il pleut | *it rains;* | *from* pleu-voir, | vant, | plu.* |
| Il bruïne, | *it drizzles;* | bruï-ner, | nant, | né. |
| Il gèle, | *it freezes* †; | ge-ler, | lant, | lé. |
| Il grêle, | *it hails;* | grê-ler, | lant, | lé. |
| Il neige, | *it snows;* | nei-ger, | geant, | gé. |
| Il tonne, | *it thunders;* | ton-ner, | nant, | né. |
| Il éclaire, | *it lightens;* | éclairer, | rant, | ré. |

Il est, c'est, Il fait; } *it is;* { il fait *is used with adnouns and some nouns denoting the disposition of the weather; as* il fait chaud, beau, crotté, *it is hot, fine, dirty;* il fait du vent, *the wind blows;* il fait soleil, *the sun shines,* &c.

* The future and conditional of *pleuvoir,* are *pleuvra, il pleuvroit,* not *pleuvoira.*

† Il a gelé cette *nuit, it freezed last night.*

| *Indicative.* | *Infinitive.* | *Ger.* | *Part.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| Il arrive, *it happens*; *from* | arriver, | vant, | vé. |
| Il convient, *it becomes;* | conve-nir, | nant, | nu. |
| Il est à propos, convenable, *&c. it is fit, proper, meet,* &c. | | | |
| Il importe, *it matters, it concerns;* | impor-ter, | tant, | té. |
| Il semble, *it seems;* | sem-bler, | blant, | blé. |
| Il paroît, *it appears;* | paroî-tre, | ssant, | paru. |
| Il sied, *it is decent,* or *becoming.* | | | |
| Il s'ensuit que, *it follows that;* | s'ensui-vre, | vant, | vi. |
| Il s'agit de cela, *that is the matter in hand;* | ag-ir, | issant, | i. |
| Il vaut mieux que, *it is better that;* | va-loir, | lant, | lu. |
| Il ne tient pas à lui que, *it is not his fault if;* | te-nir, | nant, | nu. |
| Il m'ennuie de, *&c. it tires me to,* &c. | ennuy-er, | ant, | é. |
| Il plaît à Madame de, *my Lady likes,* or *is pleased to,* &c. | plai-re. | sant, | plu. |
| Il se peut que, / Il se peut faire que, *it may be that,* &c. | pou-voir, | vant, | pu. |
| Il suffit que, *&c. it is enough that,* &c. | suffi-re, | sant, | suffi. |
| Il y va de la vie, *life is at stake;* | al-ler, | lant, | lé. |
| Il se tint hier un conseil, *a council was held yesterday;* | te-nir, | nant, | nu. |

## CHAP. VI.

### *Of* ADVERBS.

THE ADVERB is a part of speech invariable, which neither governs nor is governed by any other, and serves to denote some circumstance of that which is signified by a Noun, an Adnoun, a Verb, or even an Adverb: as,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Véritablement ami,* | truly friend. | *très-souvent,* | very often. |
| *aimer bien,* | to love well. | *étroitement unis,* | strictly united. |
| *infiniment juste,* | infinitely just. | *toujours à contre temps,* | always unseasonably. |

Adverbs are either simple, as *hier* yesterday, *beaucoup* much, *présentement* presently; or compound, as *avant-hier* the day before yesterday, *en quantité* in plenty, *à présent, tout-à-l'heure,* at present, instantly.

Adverbs may be considered with respect to Time, Place, Order, Quantity and Number, Quality and Manner, Affirm-

**, Negation, and Doubt, Comparison, Collection, or Divi-
and Interrogation.**

*Adverbs of Time.*

*. Of the present Time.*

ésent, *at present.*
le présent, *for the present.*
ntement, *presently.*
tenant, *now.*
rd'hui, *to-day, now a-days.*
te heure, *at this hour,* or *time, presently.*
à-l'heure, *this minute, even now.*
e champ, *directly, upon the spot.*
stant, *instantly.*
*quick.*

II. *Of the Time past.*

*yesterday.*
-hier, *the day before yesterday.*
r précédent, *the day before.*
fois, *formerly, once.*
(*s* sounds) *in times of yore.*
nnement, *anciently.*
èrement, *lately.*
is-peu, *of late.*
ravant, *before.*
nment, *recently.*
récemment, ellement, *newly.*
rnière fois, *the last time.*
e jour, *the other day.*
matin, u matin, *yesterday morning.*
au soir, *last night.*
naine passée, *the last week.*
is dernier, *the last month.*
ée passée, ée dernière, *last year.*

jusqu'ici, *hitherto.*
jusqu'à présent, *till now.*
il y a huit jours, *a week ago.*
il y a quinze jours, *a fortnight ago*
il y a long-temps, *a great while ago.*
il n'y a pas long-temps, *not long ago.*
il y a quelque temps, *some time ago.*
il n'y a qu'un moment, *just now.*
il y a trois jours, *three days ago.*
il y a un mois, *a month ago.*
il y a un an, *a year ago.*

III. *Of the Times to come.*

demain, *to-morrow.*
après demain, *the day after to-morrow*
le lendemain, *the next day.*
le sur-lendemain, *two days after.*
le jour suivant, *the following day.*
ce matin, *this morning.*
ce soir, *this,* or *to night, this evening.*
cette après-midi, cette après-dinée, *this afternoon.*
cette après-soupée, *this after supper.*
demain matin, *to-morrow morning.*
demain au soir, *to-morrow night.*
bientôt, *soon, very soon, in a short time.*
dans peu, *shortly.*

dans peu de temps { *within a little while.*
tantôt, { *anon, by and by, now and then.*
l'année qui vient, *the next year.*
le mois prochain, *the next month.*
désormais, *hereafter.*
dorénavant, *henceforth.*
à l'avenir, *for the future.*
dans deux ou trois jours d'ici, { *two or three days hence.*
dans six mois, *six months hence.*
dans un an d'ici, *a year hence.*
avant qu'il soit long temps, { *before it is long.*

## IV. *Of a Time unspecified.*

d'abord, *first, at first.*
souvent, *often, oftentimes.*
quelquefois, *sometimes.*
rarement, *seldom.*
soudain, *on a sudden.*
subitement, *suddenly.*
au plutôt, *the soonest.*
au plutard, *the latest.*
au plutôt, *as soon as possible.*
au plus vîte, en toute diligence, { *with all speed.*
jamais, *never, ever, at any time.*
à jamais, *for ever.*
toujours, *always.*
pour toujours, *for ever and ever.*
à toute heure, *every moment.*
à tout moment, *every minute.*
à tout bout de champ, { *ever and anon, at every turn.*
continuellement, *continually.*
sans cesse, { *without ceasing, for ever.*
cependant, *in the mean while.*
d'ordinaire, *mostly, most times.*
à l'ordinaire, *usually, as usual.*
ordinairement, *ordinarily.*
communément, *commonly.*
fréquemment, *frequently.*
presque tous jours, { *almost always, most commonly.*
presque jamais, *never hardly.*
la plupart du temps, *most times.*
tôt, *soon.*
tard, *late.*
trop tôt, *too soon.*
trop tard, *too late.*
de bonne heure, *early, betimes.*
de bon matin, de grand matin, { *very early, early in the morning.*
pas encore, *not yet.*
bien long-temps, *mighty long.*
alors, *then.*
pour lors, *at that time.*
dès lors, *from that time.*
depuis, *since.*
depuis ce temps-là, *ever since.*
encore, *again.*
de nouveau, *a-new.*
de plus belle, *a-fresh.*
à loisir, *leisurely.*
quand, *when.*
le matin, dans la matinée, { *in the morning.*
dans l'après-dinée, { *in the afternoon.*
le soir, *in the evening.*
sur le soir, { *towards night,* or *the evening.*
en même temps, *at the same time.*
de jour, *by day, in the day-time.*
de nuit, { *by night, in the night-time.*
jour & nuit, *night and day.*
en plein jour, en plein midi, { *at noon day*

eux jours l'un, } *every other*
les deux jours, } *day.*

d'un coup, { *all at once, at one dash, all on a sudden.*

à-coup, { *suddenly, all of a sudden.*

que jamais, *more than ever.*

int nommé, { *in the nick of time.*

pos, *seasonably, a-propos.*
à propos, *very seasonably.*
l'occasion, *upon the occasion*
oins de rien, *in a trice.*
n clin } *in the twinkling of*
il, } *an eye.*
les jours, *every day.*
le jour, *all the day.*
le long du } *all the day*
ır, } *long.*
que le jour } *as long as it is*
re, } *day-light.*
la nuit, *all the night.*
ur en jour, *daily.*
remier jour, *the next day.*
première } *by the first*
casion, } *opportunity.*
nps, *in good time.*
le temps, *in time.*

mps en temps, { *now and then, from time to time.*

out temps, *at all times.*
mps & } *in a proper time*
u, } *and place.*

*Adverbs of Place.*

*where, whither.*
*whence.*
iel endroit, *from what place.*
ù, *which way, thro' where.*
uel endroit, *thro' what place.*

ici, *here, hither, to this place.*
d'ici, *hence, from here.*
par ici, *this way, thro' this place.*
là, *there.*
de là, *thence.*
par là, *that way, thro' that place.*
là haut, *above.*
en haut, *up, up stairs.*
ici dessus, *here above.*
bas, à bas, *down.*
en bas, *down on the ground.*
là bas, *below there, yonder.*
ici dessous, *under here, here below*
d'en haut, *from above.*
d'en bas, *from below.*
par haut, } *upward.*
par en haut, }
par bas, } *downward.*
par en bas, }
de côté & d'autre, *up and down.*
dedans, }
en dedans, } *within*
là dedans, }
dehors, *out, without doors.*
en dehors, *without.*
jusqu'où, *how far.*

jusqu'ici, { *so far, down to here, as far as this place.*

jusques là, { *so far, down to there, as far as that place.*

à l'entour, } *round about.*
tout autour, }
ici autour, *hereabout*
là autour, } *thereabout.*
aux environs, }
tous les lieux } *all places round*
d'alentour, } *about.*
loin, *far*
bien loin, *very far.*
près, *near.*
bien près, *very near.*
proche, *by.*

| | |
|---|---|
| tout proche, tout auprès, tout contre, | *hard by.* |
| près d'ici, ici-près, tout près d'ici, | *just by.* |
| la porte joignante, | *the next door to it.* |
| de près, | *near, by.* |
| de plus près, | *nearer.* |
| vis-à-vis, | *over against.* |
| à côté, | *by.* |
| de côté, | *aside.* |
| à terre, | *down.* |
| par terre, | *down to the ground.* |
| devant, par devant, | *before.* |
| sur le devant, | *on the fore part,* or *forwards.* |
| derrière, par derrière, | *behind.* |
| sur le derrière, | *on the hind-part,* or *backwards.* |
| dessus, | *upon.* |
| dessous, | *under.* |
| quelque part, | *somewhere, any where.* |
| nulle part, | *no where.* |
| en aucun endroit, | *in no place.* |
| ailleurs, | *elsewhere.* |
| autrepart, | *somewhere else.* |
| par-tout, | *all about, every where.* |
| deçà, en deçà, de ce côté-ici, | *on this side.* |
| de-là, en de-là, de ce côté-là, | *on that side.* |
| des deux côtés, de part & d'autre, | *on both sides.* |
| de tous côtés, de toutes parts, | *every side, on all sides.* |
| d'un côté & d'autre, | *about and about.* |
| au même endroit, | *in the same place.* |
| dans ce lieu-là, dans cet endroit-là, | *in that place.* |
| dans ce même endroit-là, | *in that very same place.* |
| par de là, plus loin, | *farther.* |
| çà & là, | *up and down.* |
| dans le voisinage, | *in the neighbourhood.* |
| céans, | *here, within.* |
| à droite, sur la droite, à main droite, | *on the right,* or *on the right hand.* |
| à gauche, sur la gauche, à main gauche, | *on the left,* or *on the left hand.* |
| tout droit, | *straight along.* |
| tout du long, tout le long, | *all along.* |
| depuis le haut jusqu'en bas, | *from the top to the bottom.* |
| au dedans & au dehors, | *at home and abroad.* |
| dans le royaume & hors du royaume, | *at home and abroad.* |
| dans les pays étrangers, | *abroad.* |

*Adverbs of Order.*

| | |
|---|---|
| premièrement, | *first,* or *firstly.* |
| secondement, deuxièmement, | *secondly* |
| troisièmement, | *&c. thirdly,* &c. |
| en premier lieu, | *in the first place.* |
| en second lieu, | *in the second place* |
| en dernier lieu, | *lastly, in the last place.* |
| avant, | *before.* |
| après, | *after* |

toutes choses, } *above all things.*
ite, *one after another.*
le suite, *together.*
te, { *afterwards, next to that,* or *in the next place.*
le suite, { *of a breath, at once, without any stop.*
ıble, *together.*
ile, *one after another.*
ɔnt, } *a-breast.*
ng, }
à tour, *by turns.*
onde, *round about.*
ıativement, *alternately.*
près l'autre, { *one after another.*
ois, *at once.*
{ *at length, in short, in the end.*
in, *in fine, finally, at last.*
conclusion, *to conclude.*
re, } *orderly, in* or *with order.*
rdre, }
ire, }
sément, *confusedly.*
nêle, { *promiscuously, in a jumble.*
ıle, *in a crowd.*
ıd en comble, { *utterly.* *wholly.*
lessus des- } *upside down,*
ıs, } *topsy turvy.*
levant der- } *preposterously.*
re, }
ı rebours, { *the wrong way* or *side.*
lement, *likewise.*
lablement, } *in the like,* or
même ma- } *same manner.*
re, }

*Adverbs of Quantity and Number.*

combien, *how much, how many.*
peu, *little, few.*
un peu, *a little, some.*
tant soit peu, *ever so little.*
beaucoup, *much.*
guères, *but little.*
pas beaucoup, *not much.*
assez, *enough.*
suffisamment, *sufficiently.*
trop, *too much.*
trop peu, *too little.*
peu à peu, *little by little.*
à peu près, { *near about,* *pretty near.*
environ, *about.*
à peu de choses près, } *within a small matter.*
tant, *so much.*
autant, *as much.*
plus, } *more.*
davantage, }
moins, *less.*
de plus, { *moreover, over and above.*
tout au plus, *at most.*
par dessus le marché, } *over,* or *into the bargain.*
au moins, } *at least.*
du moins, }
pour le moins, }
en abondance, *in plenty.*
abondamment, *plentifully.*
en grand nombre, } *in a great number.*
en grande quantité, } *in a great quantity.*
à pleines mains, *plentifully.*
à foison, *largely.*
cher, *dear.*
trop cher, *too dear.*

chèrement, *dearly.*
à bon marché, *cheap.*
à grand marché, *very cheap.*
à vil prix, *at a low price.*
entièrement, *entirely, wholly.*
à plate couture, *totally.*
à demi, *half, by half, by halves.*
infiniment, *infinitely.*
à l'infini, *vastly.*
tout-à-fait, *quite, altogether.*
étrangement, *strangely.*
admirablement, *admirably.*
merveilleusement, *wonderfully.*
presque, quasi, *almost.*
absolument, *absolutely, by all means.*
passablement, *tolerably, indifferent.*
médiocrement, *indifferently.*
combien de fois, *how many times, how often.*
une fois, *once.*
deux fois, *twice.*
trois fois, *thrice,* or *three times.*
dix fois, *ten times.*
vingt fois, *twenty times.*
cinquante fois, *fifty times.*
cent fois, *a hundred times.*
mille fois, *a thousand times.*

*Adverbs of Quality and Manner.*

bien, *well, right.*
mal, *bad, wrong.*
fort bien, *very well,* or *very right.*
fort mal, *very bad, very ill, very wrong.*
à merveilles, *admirably well, wonderfully.*
ni bien, ni mal, *neither well nor bad; neither right nor wrong.*
sagement, *wisely*
justement, *justly*
joliment, *prettily.*
galamment, *cleverly.*
prudemment, *prudently*
civilement, *civilly*
constamment, *constantly*
vivement, *briskly.*
à l'aise, *easily, at ease, comfortably.*
nonchalamment, *carelessly.*
négligemment, *negligently.*
au préalable, *previously.*
préalablement, *first of all.*
de but en blanc, *pointblank, bluntly.*
à fond, *thoroughly.*
à plomb, *perpendicularly.*
à nu, *bare, naked.*
à plein, *fully.*
à plaisir, *for pleasure sake.*
à faux, *falsely.*
à moitié chemin, *half way.*
à peine, *hardly, scarce, scarcely.*
à regret, *grudgingly, with reluctancy.*
à contre-cœur, *against the grain.*
à contre-gré, *against one's will,* or *mind.*
de bon cœur, *heartily.*
de bonne volonté, *very willingly.*
de gaité, de cœur, *on purpose, for the sake of mischief.*
de guet à-pens, *wilfully.*
de gré, *willingly.*
de plein gré, de bon gré, *of one's own accord.*
à mon gré, *to my mind.*
à votre gré, *to your mind.*
à son gré, *to his,* or *her mind.*
à leur gré, *to their mind.*
de force, par force, *forcibly, by force*

à couvert, *secure, under a cover, or shelter.*
à découvert, *openly.*
au naturel, *to the life.*
à reculons, en arrière, *backwards.*
à la renverse, *upon one's back.*
à tâtons, *groping.*
à l'endroit, *on the right side.*
du bons sens, *the right way.*
à l'envers, *the wrong side outwards.*
du mauvais sens, *the wrong way, or the wrong side.*
de tout sens, de tous les sens, *every way.*
à bon droit, *deservedly, justly, rightly.*
à tort, *wrongfully.*
avec raison, *with a cause.*
sans raison, *without a cause.*
à l'envi, *in emulation of one another, with a contention who shall do best.*
à la rigueur, *strictly.*
de sens rassis, *with a sound judgment.*
de sang froid, *in cool blood.*
exprès, *on purpose, for the purpose.*
à dessein, *designedly, purposely.*
par malice, *maliciously, mischievously.*
de propos délibéré, *on set purpose.*
tout de bon, *in good earnest.*
sérieusement, *seriously.*
pour rire, *in a joke.*
pour badiner, *in a jest.*
en riant, en badinant, *for fun.*
de son chef, de sa tête, *of his or her own head, mind, or accord.*
étourdiment, *giddily*
à l'étourdie, *heedlessly*
sottement, *sillily*
témérairement, *rashly.*
à la légère. *lightly.*
à la volée, *headlong, inconsiderately.*
à la hâte, *hastily, in a hurry, in a huddle.*
précipitamment, *with precipitation.*
brusquement, *bluntly.*
par inadvertence, *inadvertently.*
par mégarde, *by oversight.*
par méprise, *through mistake.*
au hasard, *at random.*
par hasard, *by chance, accidentally.*
à l'aventure, *at a venture.*
à tout hasard, au pis aller, *let the worst come to the worst.*
goutte à goutte, *by drops.*
à l'étroit, *narrowly*
d'accord, *agreed.*
à genoux, *on one's knees, with my, his, her, their, bended knees.*
à mort, *mortally.*
à la mort, à l'article de la mort, au point de la mort, *at the point of death.*
tout au long, *at large.*
tout à fait, *quite.*
à la bonne foi, de bonne foi, *sincerely.*
de bon jeu, de bonne guerre, *fairly.*
de nécessité, *necessarily.*
à toute force, *by all means.*
de toutes les manières, *all ways.*
à tous égards, *to all intents and purposes*
à l'improviste, *unawares*

au dépourvu, *unthought on.*
sans y penser, sans s'y attendre, *unexpectedly.*
inopinément, *napping.*
à l'amiable, *amicably.*
en ami, *friendly.*
à fleur d'eau, *between wind and water.*
à l'étuvée, *stewed.*
en paix, *in peace.*
paisiblement, *peaceably.*
en repos, *quietly.*
à vide, *empty.*
à sec, *dried up.*
sans façon, *without ceremony.*
de travers, *cross, across.*
de biais, *bias, across, slopingly.*
de guingois, *awry.*
de niveau, *even with.*
avec soin, *carefully.*
exactement, *exactly accurately.*
grossièrement, *ruaely.*
d'une manière grossière, *unmannerly.*
fort et ferme, *stoutly.*
en diligence, *in haste.*
à pied, *on foot.*
à cheval, *on horseback.*
à califourchon, *astraddle.*
en carrosse, *in a coach.*
en bateau, *in a boat.*
à la mode, *after the fashion.*
à la Françoise, *after the French way* or *fashion.*
à l'Angloise, *after the English fashion.*

*Adverbs of Affirmation.*

oui, *yes.*
oui dà, *ay, ay, marry.*
oui vraiment, oui en vérité, *yes, indeed.*
certes, *assurément*, *sure, to be sure, assuredly.*
certainement, *certainly*
en vérité, *in truth*
à la vérité, *indeed*
vraiment, *verily.*
véritablement, *truly.*
sans doute, *without doubt.*
volontiers, *readily, willingly.*
sans faute, *without fail.*
immanquablement, infailliblement, *infallibly.*
indubitablement, *undoubtedly.*

*Of Negation.*

non, ne, ni, point, pas, non pas, *no, not.*
point du tout, *not at all.*
nullement, *by no means.*
en nulle manière, *in no wise, not in the least.*

*Of Doubt.*

Peut-être, *perhaps.*
probablement, *probably.*
vraisemblablement, *very likely.*

*Adverbs of Comparison, &c.*

ainsi, *thus.*
de même, *so.*
comme cela, *like this, or that.*
de cette manière, *after this manner,* or *in that manner.*
en partie, *partly.*
tout autant, *as much, exactly so.*
tout à la fois, *altogether.*
séparément, *separately.*
à part, *apart, by oneself*
à l'écart, *out of the way.*
à quartier, *aside.*
plus, *more,* moins, *less.*
pis, *worse,* mieux, *better.*
de pis en pis, *worse and worse.*
de mieux en mieux, *better and better.*

lus ni } *neither more nor*
ioins, } *less.*
part & d'autre, *on both sides.*
us forte } *much more* or
aison, } *much less.*
ersellement, *universally.*
éralement, *generally.*
cement, *softly, gently.*
ement, *otherwise.*
ticulièrement, *particularly.*
particulier, { *especially,* / *in private.*
icipalement, *chiefly.*

sur-tout, *above all.*
après-tout, { *after all, upon* / *the whole.*
au contraire, *on the contrary.*

*Of Interrogation.*

quand, *when.* pourquoi, *why.*
combien, *how much, how many.*
combien de } *how often, how*
fois, } *many times.*
comment, *how.*
où, *where.*

## CHAP. VII.

### *Of* PREPOSITIONS.

PREPOSITION is a part of speech invariable, which denotes several relations of Nouns, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, and a Prepositions, and without which it has no complete sense:

*Avec la permission du Roi,* with the King's leave; *pour moi,* me; *après avoir diné,* after having dined; *jusqu'à présent,* now; *jusqu' après minuit,* till past midnight.

Prepositions are either simple; as, *devant* before, *sur* upon by, *&c.* or compound; as, *au devant de, vis à-vis,* over inst, *par dessus* above, *&c.*

The following Prepositions are immediately followed by their men, or the noun which they govern:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Londres, | At *London.* |
| | France, | From *France.* |
| | ce temps là, | From *that time.* |
| *ant* | vous, | Before *you.* |
| *vant* | lui, | Before *him.* |
| *rière* | elle, | Behind *her.* |
| *c* | moi, | With *me.* |
| *ndu* | sa promesse, | Considering *his promise.* |
| | son âge, | Seeing *his age.* |
| *z* | nous, | At, *or* to *our house.* |
| *ès* | les Fêtes, | After *the holidays.* |
| *uis* | Noël, | Since *Christmas.* |
| *s* | la ville, | In *the city* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *En* | été, | In *summer.* |
| *Durant* | l'hiver, | During *the winter.* |
| *Pendant* | la cérémonie, | During *the ceremony.* |
| *Entre* | vous & moi, | between *you and me.* |
| *Parmi* | eux, | Among *them.* |
| *Environ* | dix hommes, | About *ten men.* |
| *Vers* | la nuit | Towards *night.* |
| *Envers* | ses amis, | To, *or* towards *his friends.* |
| *Selon,* | son avis, | According to *his advice.* |
| *Suivant* | ce qu'il fera, | According to *what he will do* |
| *Comme* | sa mère, | Like *his,* or *her mother* |
| *Contre* | la porte, | By *the door.* |
| *Touchant,* | l'ouvrage, | Concerning *the work.* |
| *Concernant* | l'affaire, | About *the matter.* |
| *Sans* | raison, | Without *any reason.* |
| *Pour* | les frais, | For *the charges.* |
| *Moyennant* | cela, | By *that means.* |
| *Nonobstant* | cela, | Notwithstanding *that.* |
| *Excepté,* / *Hormis* / *Hors* | la science, | Except, *or* / But } *learning.* |
| *Malgré* | tout le monde, | In spite of *all the world.* |
| *Outre* | ce sujet, | Besides *that subject.* |
| *Par* | la fenêtre, | By, *or* at *the window.* |
| *Sur* | la table, | Upon *the table.* |
| *Sous* | la chaise, | Under *the chair.* |
| *de Dessus* | son visage, | From *her face.* |
| *de Dessous* | le lit, | From *under the bed.* |
| *par Dessus* | la tête, | Above *the head.* |
| *par Dessous* | le carrosse, | Under *the coach.* |
| *par Deçà* | les monts, | On this side *the Alps.* |
| *par Delà* | la rivière, | On that side *the river.* |
| *à Travers* | le corps, | Through *the body.* |
| *sauf* | son recours, | But with *a remedy.* |

*The following require the other Preposition* de *before the next Noun*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Auprès* | *de* moi, | By *me.* |
| *Près* | *du* feu, | Near *the fire.* |
| *Proche* | *du* Palais, | Near *the Palace.* |
| *Faute* | *de* payement, | For want of *Payment.* |
| *Hors* | *de* la ville, | Out of *the city.* |
| *Loin* | *du* bois, | At a distance from *the wood* |
| *Le long* | *de* la prairie, | Along *the meadow.* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Ensuite* | *de* cela, | After *that.* |
| *A cause* | *d'*elle, | On *her* account. |
| *A l'égard* | *de* la fille, | As to *the girl.* |
| *A l'insçu* | *de* son père, | Without the knowledge of *his father.* |
| *A l'exception* | *de* son mari, | *Her husband* excepted. |
| *A moins* | *d'*un écu, | Under *a crown.* |
| *A la réserve* | *d'*une pension, | Excepting *a pension.* |
| *A couvert* | *de* l'orage, | Sheltered from *the storm.* |
| *A l'abri,* | *des* coups, | Secure from *the blows.* |
| *Au deçà* / *En deçà* | *de* la haie, | On this side of *the hedge.* |
| *Au delà* | *du* Rhin, | On the other side *the Rhine.* |
| *Au dessus* | *d'*elle, | Above *her.* |
| *Au dessous* | *de* lui, | Below *him.* |
| *Au devant* | *de*quelqu'un(aller), | *To go and meet one.* |
| *Au derrière* | *de* la porte, | Behind *the door.* |
| *Autour* / *A l'entour,* | *du* pot, | About the *bush.* (Prov.) |
| *Aux environs* | *de* sa maison, | Round about *his house.* |
| *A l'exclusion* | *de* sa femme, | Excepting *his wife.* |
| *A force* | *de* bras, | By strength of *arms.* |
| *A rebours* | *de* poil, | Against *the hair.* |
| *Au prix* | *de* son honneur, | At the expense of *his honour.* |
| *A raison* | *de* cinq* pour cent, | At the rate of *five per cent.* |
| *Vis-à-vis* | *de* la Bourse, | Over against *the Exchange.* |
| *A l'opposite* | *de* sa maison, | Opposite to *his house.* |
| *Au travers* | *de* la cuisse, | Through *his thigh.* |
| *Au lieu* | *de* cela, | Instead of *that.* |
| *Au moyen* | *de* quoi, | In virtue *whereof.* |
| *Au péril* / *Au risque* | *de* sa vie, | At the peril of *his life.* |
| *Au milieu* | *de* la rue, | In the middle of *the street.* |
| *A fleur* | *d'*eau, | Betwixt *wind and water.* |
| *Au niveau* | *de* la cour, | Even with *the yard.* |
| *Arez de* terre, ou | *de* chaussée, | Even *or* level with *the ground.* |
| *A côté* | *de* sa femme, | By *his wife.* |
| *A la faveur* | *de* la nuit, | By means of *the night.* |
| *Au dépens* | *de* la compagnie, | At the expense of *the society.* |
| *En dépit* | *de* son mari, | In spite of *her husband.* |
| *A la mode* | *de* France, | After the manner of *the French.* |
| *Pour l'amour* | *d'*elle, | For the sake of *her.* |
| *Au grand regret* | *de* tout le monde, | To the great regret of *every body.* |

* *q* is sounded.

*These four require the other Preposition* à *before their Noun:*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Jusqu'* | *aux* Indes, | As far as *the Indies* |
| *Par rapport* | *à* lui, | With respect to *him.* |
| *Quant* | *à* moi, | As for *my part.* |
| *Sauf* | *à* la part à se pourvoir, | But *the plaintiff is at liberty to sue* (a law-phrase). |

## CHAP. VIII.

### *Of* CONJUNCTIONS.

A CONJUNCTION is a part of Speech invariable, which serves to join the members and parts of speech together, showing the dependency of relation, and coherency between the words and sentences.

Most of them are Adverbs or Prepositions attended by *que* or *de:* and therefore it is to be observed here, that many and the same words are Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions, according to the divers respects with which they are used grammatically; that is, according to the divers relations they have to the other parts of speech to which they are joined.

Conjunctions are either simple or compound. They are divided into Comparative and Copulative, or of Collection; Disjunctive, Adversative, or of Opposition; Conditional and Exceptive; Dubitative, Declarative, and Concessive; Causal, Concluding, or of Conclusion, and Transitive.

Conjunctions *Copulative* are those that join, and, as it were, couple two terms together; as two Adnouns with one and the same Noun or Verb; or two Prepositions with the same affirmation or negation; and the *Comparative* are those that denote besides a respect of Comparison between things. Such are

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| et, &, | *and.* | de même que, | *as, just as.* |
| comme, | *as, whereas.* | ainsi que, | *as, as also, as likewise.* |
| comme si, | *as if, as tho'* | | |
| de sorte que, | *so that, in such a manner that, insomuch that.* | tant que, | *as much as, as many as.* |
| en sorte que, | | non plus, | *neither.* |
| de manière que, | | non plus que, | *no more than.* |
| tellement que, | | en tant que, | *as, as much as.* |
| si bien que, | | non-seulement, | *not only.* |
| aussi *(followed by* que), | *as.* | | |
| *aussi* bien que, | *as well as.* | | |

encore, même, aussi, } *but also*, or *but even*.
us, { *moreover, besides, further.*
: cela, : que, que, } *besides, besides that, add to that.*
savoir, *to wit.*
d'autant que, } *whereas, for as much as.*
ni plus ni moins que, } *just as, even as.*
and *si* so, in the sense of *aussi*: as, *si savant que*, so learned that, *or* as, *&c.*

he *Disjunctive* show a respect of separation or division; as,

*neither, nor.*
*whether.*
que, *or.*
au lieu de, *instead of.*
au lieu que, *whereas.*
ou, *or* ou bien, *or else.*

The *Adversative* denote restriction or contrariety:

, *but.*
moins, *nevertheless.*
tant, *yet, however*
fois, *yet, for all that.*
ndant, { *yet, however, in the mean while.*
nonobstant que } *notwithstanding that.*
bien loin de, tant s'en faut que, } *far from, so far from.*
quoique, bien que, encore que, } *although*, or *though*, or *tho'*.

he *Conditional*, which suppose a condition, serve to restrain limit what has been just said: as,

*if, whether.*
n, *if not, or else.*
me si, *as if, as tho'.*
vu que, *provided that, so.*
dition que, entendu que, osez que, z le cas que, as que, as que, as de, { *upon condition* or *with a proviso, that suppose, put the case*, or *in case that.*
en tout cas, } *however*, or *whatever happens.*
à moins que, à moins de, } *unless.*
sans, sans que, *without.*
si ce n'est que, excepté que, } *except that.*
quand, quand même, quand bien même, } *tho' altho' (followed in French by the* conditional *tense).*

he *Dubitative* show some doubt or suspension of the mind; i, *whether*; savoir si, *whether or no, the question is whether.*

he *Declarative*, which serve to illustrate and explain a thing: as,

lors, *then.* savoir, *to wit.* sur-tout, *especially.* c'est-à-*that is to say.* comme par exemple, *as for instance* or *example.*

The *Concessive*, which show the assent we give to a thing, are,

à la vérité, *indeed, to speak the truth.*
en effet, *in effect, really.*
non que, non pas que, ce n'est pas que, *not but.*
d'accord, *done, agreed.*
soit, *well and good.*
tôpe, *done, I consent to it.*

The *Causal* show the reason of something: as,

car, parce que, à cause que, *for, because.*
à cause de, *on account of.*
vu que, *considering that.*
attendu que, *seeing*, or *seeing that.*
d'autant que, d'autant plus que, *the more because, so much the more as, that, because.*
afin que, *that, to the end that.*
afin de, *in order to.*
puisque, *since.*
comme, *as*, &c.

The *Concluding* denote a consequence drawn from what is before: as,

c'est pourquoi, *therefore.*
par conséquent, *consequently.*
pour cet effet, *to that end*, or *but.*
donc, *therefore, then.*
si bien que, de sorte que, *so that.*
ainsi, aussi, *so, and so, therefore.*
enfin, *in fine, in short, at last.*
or est-il que, *now, but.*
d'autant que, *for as much as.*
c'est à dire que, *that is to say that.*
il s'en suit de là que, *from thence it follows that.*
pour conclusion, *to conclude.*
c'est pour cela que, *'tis therefore*, or *for that reason that.*
cela étant, cela étant ainsi, *it being so, these things being so.*

The *Transitive*, which serve to pass from one sentence to another, and called also *Continuative*, because they denote continuation of the speech, are,

en effet, *in effect, indeed.*
d'ailleurs, *besides.*
de plus, *moreover.*
d'un autre côté, *on the other side, on the other hand.*
outre cela, *besides that.*
après tout, *after all, upon the whole, in the main.*
ensuite, *then, afterwards.*
puis, *then*, & puis, *and besides.*
même, *even.*
de même, *likewise.*
sans doute, *without doubt.*
sans mentir, à dire vrai, *truly, to speak the truth.*
là-dessus, *thereupon.*
en un mot, *in one word*
au reste, *as for the rest*

il est vrai que, *it is true that.*
J'en conviens, *I allow it, I grant it, I grant that.*
sur ces entrefaites, *in the mean while, while these things were doing.*
quoi qu'il en soit, *however, however it be,* or *let it be as it will.*
à propos, *now I think on't,* or *now we are speaking of that.*

To these Conjunctions add some others of *Interrogation* and *Time:* as,

pourquoi? *why? wherefore?*
par quelle raison? *what for? for what reason?*
à quel propos? *to what purpose?*
d'où vient que? *how comes it to pass? how comes that about?*
dès que, sitôt que, aussitôt que, *as soon as.*
toutes les fois que, *as often as.*
en attendant que, *till, until.*
jusqu'à ce que, *till.*
en attendant, *in the mean time.*
depuis, *since.*
depuis que, *since* or *since that.*
avant que, avant de, *before*
loin que, loin de, *far from.*
après que, *after.*
quand, lorsque, *when.*
pendant que, *whilst.*
cependant, *yet, nevertheless, in the mean while.*
à peine (*followed by* que *in the second part of the sentence*) *hardly, scarce, scarcely*

## CHAP. IX.

### *Of* PARTICLES.

THE PARTICLE is a part of speech which serves less to represent a thought, than the state or situation of the mind in the exhibition of its thoughts. Particles are divided into *Discursive* and *Interjective,* making a particular species of words, which cannot be ranged in any of the other parts of speech, and have a specifical signification peculiar to them.

*Discursive Particles.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ci, | cet homme-ci, | *this man.* |
| là, | cette femme-là, | *that woman.* |
| ça, | or ça, voyons, | *now, let's see.* |

oui dà, *ay, ay.*
eh bien, *well.*
adieu, *farewell.*
voici, *here is, behold.*
voilà, *there is,* or *there are*

*Besides the articles* le, la, les; *and these, invented to imitate the sounds of dumb creatures, and the noise which is occasioned by the clashing of bodies against one another,* Bêê, Cric, Crac, Tick, Tac, Pouf, Patatras.

## *Interjective Particles.*

ah! *ha, ha! (for almost all the motions of the mind, as* joy, fear, grief, *&c. but differently uttered, according to the emotion which it expresses).*
hélas! *alas! (for grief).*
ouf, aï, *or* aye, *pho! (for pain).*
bon, *well, right, (for both assenting and dissenting to something, liking or disliking).*
ouais! *edod, pshaw (for discontent).*
fi, *fye upon (for dislike and aversion).*
oh! oh! oh! *(for derision.)*
que! quoi! *how! what! (for exclamation).*
Èh!
bon Dieu!
Miséricorde!
O dame!
} *lack a day! bless me, Dear Sirs!* } *(for surprise).*
allons,
courage,
alerte,
} *come on, cheer up, courage.* } *(for encouraging those we speak to).*
bis (*s* sounds), *encore, again, (for repeating).*
holà, *hold,*
tout beau, *softly,*
} *(for repressing, checking, and stopping some emotion).*
paix, chut, *'st, hist, hush, (for silencing).*
Garre, *have a care, clear the way, (for making people go out of the way).*
holà, ho, hem, *o, ho, soho, (for calling).*
Vive le Roi,
Vive la joie,
Vivat,
} *Huzza, (for shouting).*
Zest, *fiddlestick, pshaw, (for derision and dislike).*

# PART III.

## *Of* SYNTAX *or* CONSTRUCTION.

SYNTAX is the regular joining of the Parts of Speech together, conformably to the genius of a language.

In the construction of the French speech, two things are most accurately to be considered: Concord and Government.

CONCORD is the absolute agreement of,

I. The Article and Adnoun with the Noun.

II. The Verb with its Subject.

III. The Relative with the Antecedent.

GOVERNMENT is the influence which some parts of speech have over others: as,

I. A Verb, Adnoun, or Preposition, over a Noun or Pronoun, in requiring it to be in such or such a state rather than in another.

II. A Conjunction, or Preposition over a Verb, which they govern in such or such a Mood.

III. A Noun over an Adnoun, by which sometimes it will be followed, and another time will give the Adnoun the precedency; as likewise Verbs over Adverbs, or Adverbs over themselves; some having the special privilege of coming before others, when they meet together in a sentence.

Herein consists the whole mystery of the French Tongue. Therefore, after having seen hitherto the form and nature of the words of which it is composed, we shall, in the same order, consider their Use and Construction.

## CHAP. I.

### *Of* NOUNS.

I. WHEN two or more Nouns come together, without a comma between them, they all govern each the next in the second state (or genitive case), and so on (that is, the first is always followed by the preposition *de*, either alone, or contracted with the article before the next noun); but that second state can never come in French before the noun that governs it, as in English, but after: as,

*Les Gardes du Roi*, the King's guards.
*La porte de la maison*, the house's gate.
*La Philosophie de Newton*, Newton's Philosophy.
*Pour le service de la flotte du Roi*, for the service of the King's fleet.

A *Voici la maison de l'associé du frère de ma femme,* here's my wife's brother's partner's house.

*Elle avoit médiocrement d'esprit,* she had a moderate understanding.

Sometimes *of* is left out in English, and the latter noun, instead of the preposition, is put former, and ends in *s;* as in the example, *my wife's brother's partner's house,* instead of *the house of the partner of the brother* of *my wife.*——Sometimes also the two nouns come together without *of* before the latter, or *'s* after the former, and like a compound word: as *the*
B *chamber-door:* but the first of them is governed of the second, which must always come first in French with one of these particles, *de, du, des,* before the governed, as in the said instances.

II. The Article and Adnoun agree with the Noun in gender and number: as,

*Un beau Prince,* a handsome Prince.

*Une belle Princesse,* a handsome Princess.

*Le méchant homme,* the wicked man.

*La méchante femme,* the wicked woman.

*De méchantes gens,* wicked people.

Nevertheless we say still *Lettres royaux* (a law term), instead of *Lettres*
C *patentes,* or *Patentes du Roi,* Letters patent, used on all other occasions.

III. When two or more nouns of different numbers and genders, or genders only, have an adnoun common to both, it agrees in number and gender with the last; as,

*Il avoit les yeux & la bouche* ouverte, } His eyes and mouth
or *il avoit la bouche & les yeux* ouverts, } were opened.

*Il trouva les étangs & les rivières* glacées, He found the ponds and rivers frozen.

But when there is one, or many words, between the last noun and the adnoun, that adnoun (common to all) agrees with the noun masculine, though the last noun be feminine: and if
D the nouns are singular, then the adnoun common shall be put in the plural number, and the masculine gender:

*L'étang & la rivière étoient* glacés,

The pond and river were frozen.

*Les étangs & les rivières qu'il trouva* glacés.

The ponds and rivers which he found frozen.

*Le travail, la conduite, & la fortune* joints *ensemble,* and not *jointes* (on account of the word *ensemble,* which presents a whole)

Pains, conduct, and fortune, joined together.

And when the adnoun (common to three or more nouns whether of the same or of different genders) is preceded and

governed by the verb *être*, it must have another noun plural, as *choses, avantages, biens, maux*, &c. to agree with: as, A

*L'or, l'argent, la renommée, les honneurs, & les dignités, sont des* choses *incertaines & périssables*, or *sont des* biens *incertains & périssables;* Gold, silver, fame, honours, and dignities, are uncertain and perishable.

¶ The above rule may hold good for metaphysical adnouns, as *certain, uncertain; utile, inutile*, &c. But verbal or rather participial adnouns, do not fall under it; as *Sous un gouvernement corrompu, les emplois, les pensions, les honneurs, & les dignités sont souvent* accordés *& même* prodigués *à ceux qui les méritent le moins;* Under a corrupt administration, places, pensions, honours, and dignities are often bestowed and even lavished upon those who deserve them the least. Here the intermediate noun *choses*, &c. could not be used, unless the sentence should be made active; as, *sont des* choses *que* l'on accorde, &c. For the same reason, in the preceding paragraph, we say: *L'étang & la rivière étoient glacés*, not *des choses glacées*. B

*Chose*, a thing (noun feminine), joined to *quelque (quelque chose* something), is masculine, and therefore requires the next adnoun or pronoun relative to agree with that gender: as,

*Je suis assis sur* quelque chose, *qui me paroît* dur, I sit upon something that feels hard; *Quand j'ai perdu* quelque chose, *je* le *cherche*, when I have lost something, I look for it.

*Partie*, a part (a noun fem.), governing a noun masc. and attended by an adnoun, won't have the adnoun agree with it, but with that noun masc. which it governs in the second state: as,

*Il a une partie du bras cassé*, and not *cassée*, a part of his arm is broken.

*Il trouva une partie de ses hommes morts*, and not *morte*, he found a part of his men dead.

It is the same with these words, *la plupart*, the most part; *foule*, crowd; *troupe, multitude*, multitude; *nombre*, number; *moitié*, half; *espèce*, kind; *sorte*, sort; governing a noun masc. and attended by an adnoun: as, C

*Quand il vit la plupart*, or *la moitié de ses soldats étendus par terre* or *tués*, and not *étendue* and *tuée*, when he saw the most part, *or* half of his soldiers lying down *or* killed; *une troupe de gens étourdis*, and not *étourdie*, a multitude of giddy people; *une espèce de bois qui est fort dur*, and not *dure*, a kind of wood which is very hard; *une sorte de vin qui est assez bon*, not *bonne*, a pretty good sort of wine.

But the other collective nouns are not liable to that construction, and we say:

*Le tiers des vignes est gelé*, not *gelées*, the third part of the vines are frozen; *les trois quarts du château furent brûlés*, and not *fut brûlé*, three parts out of four of the castle were burnt.

And if the noun governed in the second state be feminine, the adnoun agrees likewise with its gender; as,

*Quand il vit une partie de son armée défaite*, when he saw a part of his army defeated; *une espèce de pierre qui est fort dure*, a kind of stone very hard; *une sorte de liqueur assez bonne*, a tolerable good sort of liquor. D

(See also page 284, and foll.)

## CHAP. II.

### *Of the* ARTICLE.

NOUNS express things, 1°, in a *general* and *universal* sense, including the whole species of the thing signified by the word: as *Man* was born, or *Men* were born for society, *L'homme est né*, or *les hommes sont nés pour la société*. *Man* and *Men* is said of human kind, and signifies every *man* and woman.

A 2°. In a *particular* and *individual* sense, denoting a particular object, one individual only of a species: as *The earth* turns, and not the *sun*, Le terre *tourne, & non* le soleil; *The man* of whom I speak is not sociable, L'homme *dont je parle n'est pas sociable. The earth, the sun*, denote particular objects; and *the man* is taken in an individual sense, for I speak of one man only, and I show who that man is who is not sociable, *to wit*, he I speak of.

3°. In a *limited* or *partitive* sense, denoting neither the totality or universality, nor any particular individual of the species, but only part of it: as *bread* is enough for me, *Du pain me suffit*; Give me some *meat* and *beer*, *Donnez-moi de la viande & de la*
B *bière*. We daily see *men* that have less reason than *brutes*, *On voit tous les jours* des hommes *qui ont moins de raison que* des bêtes: *Bread, meat, beer, men*, and *brutes*, are not taken in the general sense, that includes the totality of the substance and species; for I do not speak of all the *bread, meat, beer*, in the world, nor of all *men* and *brutes*, but only of part of those substances, and some of those species.—Neither do I speak of any particular part of those substances, nor of any individual man or brute. Therefore these words are taken in a limited sense.

4°. Nouns express things in an *indefinite* and *unspecified* sense, not so much serving to name any particular thing, as to
C qualify that which has been named before; as Kings are *men* as well as others, *Les Rois sont* hommes *comme les autres*; She is a *woman*, *Elle est* femme: *Man* and *woman* are not used, in these and other like sentences, in order to name the things which are the subject of the speech, but only to qualify this noun *Kings*, and pronoun *she*, which are spoken of, in showing what both are.

It appears from these observations, wherein the ways of using nouns are carefully analysed, that they require the article in all the senses but one, in which they may be taken; that the article is the same in all relations and circumstances of the
D noun, being *le* for the masc. *la* for the fem. and *les* for the plur. masc. and fem. and that the limited sense, which excludes both the universality and individuality, is expressed by the particle *de* before the articles, with which it is contracted, according to the genius of the language, when the noun is masculine, and begins with a consonant.

Nothing therefore is more plain, and easy to explain, than the construction of the article, and yet nothing has been more perplexed by our Grammarians, who are at a loss how to treat it, making it several fold, and all dividing it into *definite* and *indefinite*, and subverting it besides, without being

able to define what they mean, or to account for the construc- A
tion of the article. The following are clear, exact, and easy rules concerning the whole matter.

¶ Proper Names of Persons and Places, as Towns, Villages, &c. take no Article. See p. 214. 12°.

The Article is used, 1°, before the names of the things which are spoken of. Therefore nouns of Substances, Arts, Sciences, Metals, Virtues and Vices, nouns of Countries, Kingdoms, and Provinces, Mountains, Rivers, and Winds, and others like, having no article before them in English, require the article in French; as,

L'*or* & l'*argent ne sauroient faire* le *bonheur de* l'*homme*, B
*Gold* and *Silver* cannot make the happiness of *man*.

La *vertu seule peut le rendre heureux, & il n'y a que* le *vice qui puisse le rendre malheureux*,
*Virtue* alone can make him happy, and nothing but *vice* can make him unhappy *or* miserable.

La *France est le plus beau pays de* l'Europe,
*France* is the finest country in *Europe*.

Le *sort de* l'*Espagne dépend de* la *Havanne*,
The fate of *Spain* depends upon the *Havanna*.

*C'est à* l'*Angleterre qu'on doit* la *découverte de* la *circulation* du *sang*,
It is to *England* the world is beholden for the discovery of C
the circulation of the blood.

From the nouns of Countries, Kingdoms, and Provinces, except these, which take their names from their capital city, besides some Republics.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Alger*, | Algier. | *Florence*, | Florence. | *Monaco*, | Monaco. |
| *Avignon*, | Avignon. | *Grenade*, | Grenada. | *Naples*, | Naples. |
| *Babylone*, | Babylon. | *Gênes*, | Genoa. | *Orange*, | Orange. |
| *Candie*, | Candia. | *Genève*, | Geneva. | *Rome*, | Rome. |
| *Cordoue*, | Cordova. | *Lucques*, | Lucca. | *Séville*, | Seville. |
| *Corse*, | Corsica. | *Léon*, | Leon. | *Tolède*, | Toledo. |
| *Comminges*, | Comminges. | *Malte*, | Maltha. | *Tunis*, | Tunis. |
| *Cornouailles*, | Cornwall. | *Maroc*, | Morocco. | *Tripoli*, | Tripoli. |
| *Chypre*, | Cyprus. | *Murcie*, | Murcia. | *Valence*, | Valentia. |
| *Carthage*, | Carthage. | *Madagascar*, | Madagascar. | *Venice*, | Venice. |

Except some few, taken notice of in my Exercises; those proper names D
of countries are commonly used with one of these before them, *république, principauté, état, pays, île*; as *l'île de Candie* ou *de Malte*, the island of Candia *or* Malta; *le pays* d'*Avignon*, the country of Avignon; *la principauté d'Orange*, the principality of Orange; *la république de Genève*, the republic of Geneva, *&c.*

2°. When the words attending the names of Countries and Kingdoms (in Europe), respect them immediately as to *coming from*, or *going out*, the names of those countries are used without the article.

Therefore we say with the preposition *de* only, *Venir de France*, to come from France: *Sortir d'Angleterre*, to go out of England.

A With words denoting the country one *lives in*, and whither one is *going* or *coming to*, we use the preposition *en* before the names of those countries, because this preposition does not admit of the article: as,

*Demeurer en France*, to live in France; *Aller en Italie*, to go to Italy; *Venir* or *Passer en Angleterre*, to come over *or* pass over to England.

¶ This rule respects only the names of Countries; for with the names of Towns, Places, *&c.* the preposition *à* is used instead of *en*, and we say: *Aller à Rome*, to go to Rome; *Venir à Londres*, to come to London; *Demeurer à Paris*, to live at Paris.

B When the name of a Kingdom or Province expresses the country of the noun coming immediately before, it is used also without the article, and with the preposition *de* only, because it is used adjectively.

*Roi* or *Royaume* d'*Angleterre*, King *or* Kingdom of England.
*Gouverneur* ou *Gouvernement* d'*Irlande*.
Viceroy *or* Lord Lieutenant of Ireland, *or* his place.
*Vin* de *Bourgogne*, *ou* de *Champagne*, Burgundy or Champaign wine.
*L'Electeur* de *Bavière*, The Elector of Bavaria.
*Une mode* de *France*, A French fashion, *&c.*

**These following names of Countries always keep the article:**

C
*l'Inde*, India.
*l'Indostan*, Indostan.
*le Malabar*, Malabar.
*les Indes*, the Indies.
*la Chine*, China.
*la Nigritie*, Nigritia.
*la Guinée*, Guinea.
*la Malaguette*, Malaguette.
*le Congo*, Congo.
*la Cochinchine*, Cochinchina.
*le Pégû*, Pegu.
*le Tonquin*, Tonquin.
*le Tibet*, Thibet.
*le Japon*, Japan.
*l'Abyssinie*, Abyssinia.

D
*le Mogol*, the Mogul's C.
*le Monomotapa*, Monomot.
*le Monoémugi*, Monomugi.
*la Cafrerie*, Coast of the Cafres.
*le Zanguébar*, Zanguebar.
*le Mexique*, Mexico.
*le Paraguai*, Paraguay.
*le Chili*, Chili.
*le Pérou*, Peru.
*le Brésil*, Brasil.
*le Canada*, Canada.
*la Louisiane*, Louisiana.
*le Mississipi*, Mississipi.
*l'Acadie*, Acadia.
*la Caroline*, Carolina.
*la Barbade*, Barbadoes.
*la Jamaïque*, Jamaica.
*le Maryland*, Maryland.
*la Pensilvanie*, Pensylvania.
*la Virginie*, Virginia.
*la Martinique*, Martinico.
*la Guadeloupe*, Guadaloupe.
*la Havanne*, the Havanna.
*le Pont-Euxin*, the Black Sea.
*le Péloponnèse*, Peloponnesus.
*les Philippines*, the Philippine Islands.
*l'île Bourbon*, the Isle of Bourbon.
*les îles Moluques*, the Molucca Islands, &c.
*les Antilles*, the Antilles.
*le Caire*, Cairo.
*le Levant*, the Levant.
*la Mecque*, Mecca.
*l'Abbruzze*, Abbruzze.
*la Pouille*, Apulia.
*le Mantouan*, Mantuan Duchy.
*le Milanès*, the Milanese.
*le Parmezan*, the Parmezan
*le Spitzberg*, Spitzberg.
*le Groënland*, Greenland

* *l'Anjou*, *le Catelet*, *la Flèche*, *le Puy* (a word signifying *Mount*).
* *l'Artois*. *le Cateau-Cambrésis*. *la Guerche*. *le Quénoi*.
* *le Maine*. *la Fère*. *la Hogue*. *la Rochelle*.
* *la Marche*. *la Ferté*. *le Mans*. *la Haye*, the Hague.
* *le Perche*. *la Charité*. *le Plessis*.
* *la Capelle*. *le Havre de Grâce*.

* *These six are names of countries, and the others of cities of France, except* la Haye.

Therefore, instead of the prepositions *en* and *de*, used alone in the cases mentioned in the second paragraph, with respect to all other countries, when we speak of these last, we use both the preposition *a*, or *de*, and the article: as, A

*Voyager* aux *Indes*, to travel to the Indies. *Aller* au *Japon*, to go to Japan. *Demeurer* à *la Chine*, to live in China. *Partir* du *Mexique*, to set out from Mexico. *Revenir* du *Maine*, de *l'Artois*, de *l'Anjou*, to return from *le Main*, &c.

Nevertheless we say, *aller dans* l'*Anjou*, *dans* l'*Artois*, *dans le Perche*, to go into Anjou, &c. *le Duc d'Anjou*, the Duke of Anjou, and *le Duc du Maine*, the Duke of Maine. We say too *Empereur* or *Empire* de la *Chine*, and not *de Chine*, Emperor *or* Empire of China; *Porcelaines* de la *Chine*, China-ware; *Marchandises* du *Japon*, Japan-goods.

3°. When a River's name is preceded by the word *rivière*, it takes no article, and is contented with the preposition *de* only, if it is of the feminine gender: otherwise they all take the article: as, B

*La rivière* de *Seine*, the river Seine: or, *la Seine*, *la Tamise*, &c.

But it is to be noted, *1st*, that some rivers cannot be construed with the word *rivière* before them, but they all take the article, as, *le Rhin*, *le Rhône*, &c. we don't say *la rivière du Rhin*, *la rivière de la Tamise*, as in English, *the river Thames*. *2dly*, That the word *fleuve* (synonymous with *rivière*) can never be put before the proper name of a river; so that we don't say *le fleuve de Seine*, or *de la Seine*, *le fleuve du Rhône*, or *de Rhône*. *3dly*, The French call *fleuve* a river that carries its waters to the sea; and *rivière* any river that discharges itself into another: though they use the word *rivière* before the names of such rivers as they call *fleuves*. One might perhaps say, without impropriety, *le fleuve Scamandre*, *le fleuve Simoïs* (two rivers in Troas;) but it is still better, as being more sure, to say only *le Scamandre*, *le Simoïs*, *le Danube*, *la Moselle*, *l'Escaut*, and so of all other rivers, without putting the word *rivière* before, which, as we have observed, cannot be put before a great many rivers.

4°. When a Mount's, Mountain's, or Hill's name is preceded by the word *mont*, it has neither article nor preposition: as *le mont Vésuve*, Vesuvius; *le mont Apennin*, the Appenine; *les monts Pyrénées*, the Pyrenean mountains. After the word *montagne*, it takes the preposition *de* (which is contracted with the article, when the name of the hill has it), as *la montagne du Potosi*, mount Potosi; *la montagne de Sion*, mount Sion; *la montagne du Calvaire*, the mount of Calvary. Otherwise they all take the article: as, *le Vésuve*, *l'Apennin*, *les Pyrénées*; *le Calvaire*, *le Pic*, &c. C

Some nouns of hills and mountains will always be preceded by either of these two words, *mont*, *montagne*, as *la montagne du Potosi*, *la montagne de Sion*, or *le mont Sion*; we also say, *le Potosi*, but never *le Sion*, *la Sion*: some others can never be construed with those words, as *les Alpes*, *les Cordillières*, the Cordilleras. We neither say *les montagnes des Alpes*, nor *les monts Alpes*, as we say *les monts Pyrénées*; although we denote *les Alpes* by *les monts* in this phrase, *un bel esprit de delà les monts*, or *un bel esprit ultramontain*, ultramontane wit, or genius. D

5°. The noun of the Measure, Weight, and Number of the things that have been bought, requires the article *le* in French, whereas the indefinite article *a* is used in English: as,

*Le blé se vend un écu* le *boisseau*, wheat is sold for a crown a bushel.

A *Le beurre vaut six sous* la *livre*, butter costs six-pence *a* pound.
*Les œufs valent quatre sous* la *douzaine*, eggs cost a groat *a* dozen.

¶ In the following phrases, and the like, the French article *le* is likewise used, instead of the English indefinite article *a*:

*Dans la prospérité on peut difficilement reconnoître l'ami*, it is difficult to know *a* friend in prosperity; *l'air spirituel dans les hommes*, a sprightly mien in men; *le chien est l'ami de l'homme*, the dog is *a* friend to man.

6°. These following prepositions (twenty-one in number) generally will have the article before the next noun.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *avant*, | before. | *envers*, | towards. | *pendant*, | for |
| *après*, | after. | *excepté*, | except. | *selon*, | according. |
| B *chez*, | at, to. | *hors*, | out. | *sous*, | under. |
| *dans*, | in. | *hormis*, | except. | *suivant*, | according. |
| *depuis*, | since. | *nonobstant*, | notwith-*sur*, | | upon. |
| *devant*, | before. | | standing. *touchant*, | | concerning. |
| *derrière*, | behind. | *parmi*, | among. | *vers*, | towards. |
| *durant*, | during. | | | | |

As *chez le Prince*, at the Prince's; *dans la chambre*, in the room; *sous la table*, under the table, *&c.*

*En* will have no article before the next noun; as *en ville* in town, *en campagne* in the country, *&c.* and

The following prepositions sometimes require the article before the next noun (when it is used as *a Demonstration* or *Appellation*); and sometimes not (when it is used only as a C *Modification* or *Qalification*):

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *à* | at, to. | *contre*, | against. | *pour*, | for. |
| *de*, | of, from. | *entre*, | between. | *outre*, | besides. |
| *avec*, | with. | *par*, | by. | *sans*, | without. |

Examples will make this rule more plain to those who are not used to abstract observations.

*Sans les passions où seroient la vertu & le vice?*
Without passions, where would virtue and vice be?
*Vivre sans passions c'est vivre sans plaisirs*,
Living without passions is living without pleasures.

D *Passions*, *vertu*, and *vice*, in the first sentence, are used as denominations, or names of the thing which are the subject of our speech. *Passions* and *plaisirs*, are not used in the second, as denominations: for they are not the things of which something is said; *vivre* (living) is the thing spoken of: but they are used as modifications or qualifications, showing what sort of living is spoken of.

7°. The article is used before all nouns of Dignities, Qualities, Offices, and Professions, even before Names or abusing

words, so they come after such names as *Monsieur, Mon-* A
*seigneur, Madame, Mademoiselle:* as,

*Monsieur* le *Dauphin*, the Dauphin; *Madame* la *Duchesse*, my Lady Duchess; *Mr.* le *Docteur*, Doctor; *Monseigneur* l'*Archevêque*, my Lord Archbishop; *Monsieur* le *Paresseux*, Mr. Lazy-bones *or* Idle-back; *Madame* la *Coureuse*, Mrs. Gad-about; *Mademoiselle* la *Libertine*, Miss Romp, *&c.*

Except with nouns of Trades and mechanical Professions, which never take *Monsieur* or *Madame* before them. Thus we do not say of *or* to Merchants, Taylors, Shoemakers, *&c.* *Mr. le Marchand, Mr. le Tailleur Mr. le Cordonnier.*

The article is used in speaking and calling to the people; which relation B
of the noun answers to the Vocative of the Latin:

*Ecoutez*, la *belle fille*, hark ye, pretty girl.

*Parlez* l'*homme; parlez*, la *femme*, Speak to me, man or woman.

We also say without the article, but with an adnoun before the noun, or without any noun at all: *Ecoutez, bon homme*, ou *bonne femme*, hark ye, good man *or* woman; *Etudiez, paresseux*, study, you idle fellow.—Calling to a coachman we say without the article, *Cocher, êtes-vous loué?* Coachman, are you hired? though we call to a man that sells rabbits about the streets, or to an herb-woman, with the article, *l'homme aux lapins, la femme aux herbes.* This oddness of expression will be the best learnt by practice. It is enough to have taken notice of it.

As for the particle interjective *ô* before nouns, it is used only with exclamation: as, *O infortuné que je suis!* O unhappy me! *O femme, que ta vertu est grande!* How great is thy virtue, O woman!

8°. The article is used with nouns having an adnoun before C
them in sentences of admiration and exclamation; in which case the noun is always repeated with *que* between, without any verb. These ways of speaking are rendered in English as follows:

*L'illustre maison* que *la maison de Bourbon!*
What an illustrious house the house of Bourbon is!
Le *sage Roi* que *le Roi de Prusse!*
What a wise and prudent king the king of Prussia is!
*L'indigne traitement* que *celui qu'elle m'a fait souffrir!*
How unworthy is the treatment I have received from her!

9°. When the noun is not taken in a general and universal D
sense, including the whole species; nor in the particular and individual sense, denoting a particular object, one particular individual of the species; but denotes only part of the substance or thing signified by the noun; that limited sense is expressed by the particle *de* before the article, or contracted with it, if the noun is masculine. (*See* p. 111. & 113.) Nouns taken in that sense imply the word *some*, which in *English* is sometimes expressed, sometimes not, and in French is never understood: as,

A *Donnez-moi* du *pain*, de la *viande*, de l'*argent*, des *habits*;
Give me *some* bread, some meat, money, clothes.
*Cette liqueur ressemble à* du *vin*, that liquor is like wine.
*J'ai affaire à* des *gens fort honnêtes*,
I have to do with very honest people.
*Apportez-moi un morceau de pain, une bouchée* de *viande, une bouteille* de *vin*, & un *carafon d'eau*; bring me a bit of bread, a mouthful of meat, a bottle of wine, and a decanter of water.
*Il y a* de l'*esprit dans cet ouvrage*. *C'est un ouvrage* d'*esprit*:
There is some wit in this work. It is a work of wit *or genius*.
But when the noun is preceded by an adnoun, it loses its article, and is contented with the particle *de*: as,
*Donnez-moi* de *bon pain*, de *bonne viande*, de *bons habits*;
Give me good bread, good meat, good clothes.
*J'ai affaire à* de *fort honnêtes gens*, I have to do with very, &c.

B Again, *On l'a dépouillé* de *belles charges qu'il possédoit*, he has been divested of fine places which he enjoyed; *On l'a dépouillé* des *belles charges qu'il possédoit*, he has been stript of the fine places which he was possessed of. The word *charge* is restrained in the first sentence, by the limiting particle *de*, and signifies only *some of his places*; whereas, in the other sentence, the article contracted with the preposition (*des* for *de les*) shows that the word is taken in the universal sense, and signifies *all his places*. From whence you may observe, that some expressions that seem to be alike in French, are very far from being so.

10°. In many cases either of these two particles, *du* or *un*, may be used, but with this difference:
When the noun is used without an adnoun, it requires *du*; and *un*, when with an adnoun: as,

C *Il y a* du *danger à aller sur mer*, there is danger in going to sea.
*Ceux qui vont sur mer, courent* un *grand danger*, or *de grands dangers*, those who go to sea run a great danger, *or* great dangers.
*J'entends* du *bruit* (and not *un bruit*), I hear a noise.
*J'entends* un *grand bruit* (and not *du*), I hear a great noise.
The particle *un* (which is no more an article than *quelque*, *tout*, &c.) is used in speaking of things that can be told one by one; or are denoted by opposition to two or more; as, *J'ai un pain*, I have a loaf; *Je ne veux qu'une pomme*, I will have but one apple.

11°. The pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *soi*; *ce*, *celui*; *qui*, *quel* (taken in the sense of *what*); *mon*, *ton*, *son*, &c. used either with or without
D the prepositions, *de*, *à*, &c. take no article: But *mien*, *tien*, *sien*, &c. *même*, and *quel* in the sense of *which*, always require it: *as*,

| | |
|---|---|
| *De qui parlez vous?* | *De quel homme parlez-vous?* |
| Who are you speaking of? | Of what man are you speaking? |
| *Duquel? De laquelle?* | *De lui*, *D'elle*, *D'eux*. |
| Of which? | Of him, Of her, Of them. |

12°. No article is used with proper names of Persons, Places, and Planets (except *la terre* the earth, *le soleil* the sun, *la lune* the moon), and before these nouns of honour which use has *prefixed* to proper names.

*Monsieur*, Sir, Master, *Maître*, Master, A
*Madame*, Madam, *Messire*, } a particular title of
*Mademoiselle*, Miss, *Saint*, } some persons of dis-
*Monseigneur*, my Lord, *Sainte*, } tinction, and Saints.

When these nouns are used without the pronoun of which they are composed, they take the article: as, *le Sieur, la Dame, la Demoiselle*, &c. We also say, le Monsieur qui est venu, *the gentleman who came*; les Messieurs qui *sont ici*, the gentlemen who are here; and never *les Mesdames*, nor *les Messeigneurs*: but *les Dames, les Seigneurs*.

From proper names, except some of renowned Poets and Painters of B
Italy, which keep the article:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Le Tasse,* | *l'Arioste,* | *le Titien,* | *le Poussin,* | *l'Arétin.* |
| *du Tasse,* | *de l'Arioste,* | *du Titien,* | *du Poussin,* | *de l'Arétin.* |
| *au Tasse,* | *à l'Arioste,* | *au Titien,* | *au Poussin,* | *à l'Arétin.* |

Add to them *le Bourdon, le Brugle, le Caroche, le Corrège, le Güide, le Guerchin, le Mutien, le Tintoret, l'Albane, le Bernardin, le Dominicain, l'Espagnolet, le Pinturicchio.* But we don't say *le Michel-Ange, le Raphaël, &c.*

When any of these particles, *le, la, de, du, des*, make part of the proper name, it is never contracted with the prepositions:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Du Pré,* | *Le Maître,* | *De Tourville,* | *La Place,* |
| *de Du Pré,* | *de Le Maître,* | *de De Tourville,* | *de La Place.* |
| *à Du Pré,* | *à Le Maître,* | *à De Tourville,* &c. | *à La Place.* |

And when we speak in a contemptuous manner of a woman (it is always C
the case when we speak of a woman of the town), we use the article, besides the particle of the proper name: as, *Je ne veux plus voir la Du Pré*, I will see Du Pre's wife no more.

That contemptuous manner of expressing was formerly used also in speaking of an actress, but now it ceases to prevail, since talents are more regarded than the private life of the person; and we say, in speaking of a celebrated actress, *Madame, Mademoiselle*.

The preposition *de* is sometimes left out before the word *saint*, for abbreviation sake; as *l'Eglise St. Paul*, St. Paul's Church; *le Cimetière St. Jean* (a famous place in *Paris*), *la foire St. Laurent*. St. Laurence's fair: *la porte St. Denis*, St. Denis's gate; *le Faubourg St. Germain* (one of the suburbs of Paris). We also say *le Quai Pelletier* (a key at Paris). *le Cours la Reine*, and *le Bourg la Reine* (proper names of places).

13°. When proper names are used in a determinate sense, that is, when they are applied to particular objects, or qualified by an adnoun, they take the article: as,

*Le Dieu des Chrétiens*, the God of Christians; *le bon Dieu ne* D
*sauroit être cruel*, God Almighty cannot be cruel; *l'Archimède d'Angleterre*, the Archimedes of England; *l'Amphitrion de Molière*, the Amphitrion of Moliere; *les Cicérons & les Démosthènes* (and sometimes *les Cicéron, les Démosthène*), the Cicero's and the Demosthenes's; *Monsieur le Brun*, Master Brown.

We say without the article: *Jean épousera Marie*, John will marry Mary; and with the article *le vieux Janot aime la jeune Babet*, old Jack loves young Betty.

A I cannot help anticipating here the construction of the preposition *de*, and considering some of the relations which it denotes.

14°. The preposition *de* only, without the article, is used,

1*st*. Before nouns following one of these, *sorte, espèce, genre*, and any other noun of which they express the *Kind, Character, Cause, Matter, Quality, Nature*, and *Country*: which tribe of nouns are usually englished by an adnoun, or even by the noun itself, placed adjectively, and making together, as it were, but a word compound: as,

*Un mal de tête*, the head-ache; *une sorte de fruit*, a sort of fruit; *une étoffe de soie*, a silk-stuff; *une montre d'or*, a gold-
B watch; *de la laine d'Espagne*, Spanish wool: *une conduite de fou*, a foolish conduct, *&c.*

Sometimes the English adnoun may be rendered likewise by an adnoun in French; as in the last example, *une conduite folle*, a foolish conduct; but sometimes too the French have no adnoun of the same nature as the English adnoun, and therefore express the English adnoun by a noun of the same signification with *de* before the other noun: as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *Ma* diablesse de *femme*, | My *devilish* wife. |
| *Mon* vaurien de *fils* & *sa* coquine de *mère*, | My *good-for-nothing* son, and his worthless mother. |

Sometimes the English express themselves after the same manner as the French, except that the French have no other particle before the second noun but *de*: as,

*C'est un* Diable d'*homme*,
He is a *Devil of* a man.

C 2*dly*, Before the word of the measure of Magnitude or Increase: as *il croît tous les jours* d'*un pouce*, it grows an inch every day.

3*dly*, After pronouns indeterminate, *Personne, Quelqu'un*, &c. *Quoi, ce qui, ce que, tout ce qui, Je ne sais quoi*, and the impersonal *il y a*: as,

*Il n'y a personne* de *blessé*, there is nobody wounded.

*Y en avoit-il quelqu'un* d'*ivre?* Was any of them drunk?

*Il y a dans son style je ne sais quoi* de *dur*, his style has I don't know what harshness in it.

*Ce que je remarque* de *drôle*, What I observe comical, *&c.*

4*thly*, Before a participle when a noun of number precedes:
D as, *Il y a trente vaisseaux* d'*achevés*, there are thirty ships finished: *il y eut cent hommes* de *tués*, there were an hundred men killed.

It may be sometimes left out, when the noun is expressed before the participle, as in the aforesaid sentences, *cent hommes tués, trente vaisseaux achevés*; but those sentences are more usually and elegantly construed with the particle *de*; whereas it cannot be omitted after the noun of number, when the relative pronoun *en* stands in the sentence for the noun: as,

*Il y* en *a trente* d'*achevés*, thirty of them are finished.

*l y* en *eut cinquante* de *tués & cent* de *blessés*, there were A
men killed and an hundred wounded.

*thly*, The preposition *de*, without the article, is used after
ie words of quantity:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *ndance*, | abondance *de* vivres, | *plenty of victuals.* |
| *z*, | assez *de* provisions, | *provisions enough.* |
| *ucoup*, | beaucoup *d'*esprit, | *much wit.* |
| *bien*, | combien *de* vaisseaux, | *how many ships.* |
| *tte*, | disette *de* savans, | *scarcity of learned men.* |
| *res*, | guères *d'*argent, | *very little money.* |
| | peu *de* gens croient, | *few people think.* |
| & *moins*, | plus *d'*effets & moins *de* paroles, | *more deeds and fewer words.* B |
| *antage*, | Je n'*en* ai pas davantage, | *I have no more of it.* |
| *ntité*, | quantité *de* fruit, | *a great deal of fruit.* |
| *nd nombre*, | grand nombre *de* Grammaires, | *a vast number of Grammars.* |
| | tant *d'*écrivains le disent, | *so many writers say so.* |
| *nt*, | autant *de* femmes que *d'*hommes, | *as many women as men.* |
| | trop *de* peine, | *too much trouble.* |

*As likewise after,* C

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *t & pas*, | point *de* sens commun, | *no common sense.* |
| | pas *de* monnoie, | *no change.* |
| *ais*, | il n'a jamais *d'*argent, | *he never has any money.* |
| | que *de* peines & *de* soins! | *what care and trouble!* |
| | quoi *de* plus juste! | *what can be fairer!* |
| | rien *de* remarquable, | *nothing remarkable.* |
| *que chose*, | quelque chose *de* bon, | *something good.* |

*ien* is also used for *beaucoup*, with this difference, that *bien* requires after
e article; as,

*bien* de la *peine*, *bien* du *temps*, *bien* de l'*argent*, } or { *beaucoup* de *peine*, much pain. *beaucoup* de *temps*, much time. *beaucoup* d'*argent*, much money.

*bserve, that* assez *is never put in French after the noun which it governs,* D
*English, but always before: as,* assez de temps, *time enough.*

*it* if the noun that comes after those words is determined by what fol-
, it requires the article besides: as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *nez-moi un peu* de *vin*, me a little wine. | *Un peu* du *vin qui est dans cette bouteille*, A little of the wine which is in that bottle. |
| *encore beaucoup d'argent*, e a good deal of money still. | *Beaucoup* de l'*argent que j'ai apporté de France.* A good deal of the money which I brought from France. |

5°. Nouns are used without either article or preposition in
e following cases. 1*st*, At the title of a performance; in

A the middle of sentences, where they characterise in a particular manner the person or thing spoken of; and when they are used by apposition; in which cases the English use especially the participle *a*: as,

*Discours sur les obligations de la Religion naturelle,*
A Discourse concerning the obligations of natural religion.
*Première partie——Préface,——Table des Matières,*
*The* first part——*The* Preface,——*The* Contents.
*Le Comte de Clermont, Prince du sang, mourut le,* &c.
The Count of Clermont, *a* Prince of the blood, died the, *&c.*
*Le St. George, vaisseau de guerre de quatre-vingt-dix pièces de canon,*
The St. George, *a* ninety-gun ship.

B *Les plus belles fleurs sont de bien peu de durée. La moindre pluie les ternit, le vent les fane, le soleil les brûle, & achève de les sécher; sans parler d'une infinité d'insectes qui les gâtent & les incommodent: naturelle & véritable image de la beauté des Dames!*

The handsomest flowers last but a very short time. The least rain tarnishes them, the wind withers them, the sun scorches them, and completes the drying of them; without mentioning an infinite number of insects that spoil and hurt them: *a* natural and true image of Ladies' beauty!

C 2*dly*, When they come after a pronoun interrogative, or exclamative; as also in sentences of exclamation; as,

*Quel esprit elle a! Quelle beauté! Quelle Dame avez-vous vue?*
What *a* wit she has! What *a* beauty! What Lady have you seen?

3*dly*, When they meet with a noun of number, whether it comes before or after them; which noun of number, when it is used as a surname to Kings and Sovereigns, always comes the last, and is the Cardinal Number, and not the Ordinal (except in two cases), as in English: as,

*Mille cavaliers contre cent fantassins, la partie n'est pas égale,*
D *A* thousand horse against *an* hundred foot, is not fair.
*Louis quinze,* Lewis *the* fifteenth. *Henry quatre,* Henry *the* 4th.

But if, besides the number, the noun had a relation to something else, it would take the article: as,

Les *cent fantassins qui se sont défendus contre* les *mille cavaliers qu'on avoit envoyés contre eux,* &c. The hundred foot who fought with the thousand horse that were sent against them, *&c.*

4*thly*, After the verb *être*, having not *ce* for its subject (*c'est*); as likewise after *devenir* to become, *être estimé, être pris pour, passer pour,* to be reckoned, to be accounted, to pass for: be-

cause the noun serves then only to qualify something spoken of, A
and not to name: as, *mes paroles sont esprit & vie*, my words are spirit and life; *les Rois sont hommes*, Kings are men; *elle est femme*, or *c'est une femme*, she is a woman; *il passe pour matelot*, he passes for a sailor; *il deviendra Docteur avec le temps*, he will prove *a* Doctor in time. (See p. 329, and 335.)

But if the noun coming after *être*, or any of the said verbs, is attended by an adnoun, or any other appurtenance, it takes the particle *un*: as, *Dieu est esprit*, God is *a* spirit; *Dieu est* un *esprit infini*, God is an infinite spirit; *Dieu est* un *Etre qui a toutes les perfections possibles*, God is a Being who has all possible perfections, *&c.* B

*5thly*, When nouns are used in an undeterminate and unspecified sense, as likewise in a pathetical way of speaking, or proverbially: as,

*Le sage n'a ni amour ni haîne*, the wise man has neither love nor hatred. *Il est plein de vin*, it is full of wine. *Intérêt, honneur, conscience, sont sacrifiés*, interest, honour, conscience, are sacrificed. *Plus fait douceur que violence*, gentle means are more successful than violent ones.

16°. No article is put before an adnoun separated from its C
noun; as, *Les hommes sont méchans*, men are wicked; unless, 1*st*, the adnoun is used substantively, or the noun is understood: as, speaking of wine and colours,

*J'aime mieux* le *rouge que* le *blanc*, I like red better than white.
Le *verd blesse moins la vue que* le *rouge*, green hurts the eyes less than red.
*Il faut préferer l'utile à l'agréable*; we must prefer useful things to those that are agreeable.

2*dly*, Unless it is to qualify a proper name, and distinguish between several persons who could go by the same name: as, *Louis* le *bien-aimé*, Louis the well-beloved; *Chilpéric* le *fainéant*, Chilperic the sluggish. D

¶ Verbs, adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions may also be used substantively; in which case they take the article masculine: as,

*Le boire, le manger, le dormir*; Drinking, eating, sleeping. Sometimes the article is likewise left out in French).

*Le pourquoi & le comment de toutes choses*; The why and the how of every thing.

*Le pour & le contre*; The pro and con.

*Il ne loue guères sans quelque mais*; He seldom praises without some restriction.

*Il n'y faut pas mettre tant de si & de mais*: You must not use so many ifs and ands.

17°. When a noun has two adnouns joined together by a conjunction, the article is sometimes repeated before each adnoun, and *sometimes not. If* the adnouns are synonymous, or near-a-

A kin in their signification, the article is put only before the first as,

La *belle & savante harangue qu'il a faite,*
The fine and learned speech which he made.

But if the adnouns are of a contrary signification, or have a quite different sense, the article must be repeated: as,

Le *savant &* le *pieux personnage*, the pious aud learned man: because *pious* and *learned* signify two different things.

*Monsieur l'Abbé Girard*, one of our best Grammarians, words this rule thus: " Whenever many adjectives qualify a noun in such a manner that they, be- " tween them, divide its totality, each of them denoting but part of the sense " of the substantive, then the article is repeated before each adjective: as,

B " Les *vieux &* les *nouveaux régimens ont fait des merveilles*,
" Both the old and new regiments have done wonders.
" Les *belles &* les *laides femmes, ont également envie de plaire*,
" Both the handsome and homely women want to please.

" But when the adjectives denote no division of the sense of the substantive, " but barely make an addition of qualities, the article is not repeated: as, " Les *grands et vastes projets, joints à* la *prompte & sage exécution, font le* " *grand ministre*, Great and vast projects, together with a speedy and wise " execution, make the great minister."

18°. Articles are repeated in French before as many nouns (requiring the article) as there are in the sentence: as,

L'*or*, l'*argent*, la *santé*, les *honneurs, &* les *plaisirs ne sauroient rendre* l'*homme heureux, sans* la *science &* la *vertu*.

C Gold, silver, health, honours, and pleasures, cannot make a man happy, without wisdom and virtue.

¶ Prepositions are also repeated before every noun.

There are a great number of nouns that take no article after some verbs, with which they form particular ideas and idiomatical expressions. I will give a list of them in a more proper place. (See p. 416.)

Moreover, observe, that we may sometimes indifferently use the noun with or without the article, when with respect to what one intimates, it is indifferent to modify or restrain the signification of the noun, so that it exhibits any sense in which it may be taken. Thus, on some occasions, we may say:

*Les gens d'esprit,* / or Des *gens d'esprit,* / or even *Gens d'esprit,* } *font toujours plaisir,* Ingenious people are agreeable at all times:

D because the subject implies only the idea of the ingenious people.

The practice of these 18 or 20 observations on the article being pretty difficult to Foreigners, and even such as are daily unregarded, on most occasions, by the generality of the French, I have enlarged much upon them in my exercise to these rules, wherein the learners will be made sensible by practice of what they may possibly find hard to understand in this treatise.

## CHAP. III.

### *Of* ADNOUNS.

§ I. OF Adnouns, some are put before the noun, and some after, and others may be put indifferently either before or after it.

1°. Pronominal adnouns (*or rather* possessive articles), *mon, ton, leur*, &c. Pronouns indefinite, *quel, autre, chaque, plusieurs, quelque*, &c. except *quelconque*; and Numbers, both cardinal, ordinal, and proportional, come before the noun, as in English: as, A

*Mon père* my father, *leur maison* their house, *quelle femme* what woman, *chaque homme* every man, *deux personnes* two people, *le premier homme* the first man, *la dernière place* the last place, *un double profit* a double profit, *&c.*

But when the Number stands for a Surname, or meets with a Proper or Christian name, it comes after the noun without article; as *George second*, George the second; *Louis quinze*, B Lewis the fifteenth.

When a book, or some part of a book, as chapter, article, page, *&c.* is quoted, the number may come either before or after the noun; but with this difference, that if it comes after, the two words are construed without the article; as, *livre premier, chapitre second, article troisième*, book i. chapter ii. article iii. if before, it takes the article. It may also come after the noun with the article before; as, *le troisième chapitre*, or *le chapitre troisième*, the third chapter

2°. These following adnouns come after the noun:

1*st*, Verbal adnouns: as, *un homme divertissant* a comical or merry man, *la mode régnante* the fashion in vogue, *un pays habité* an inhabited country, *une femme estimée* a woman esteemed.

2*dly*, Adnouns of names of nations: as, *un Mathématicien* C *Anglois* an English Mathematician, *un Tailleur François* a French Tailor, *la Musique Italienne* Italian Music, *&c.*

3*dly*, Adnouns of colour: as, *un habit noir* a black coat, *un manteau rouge* a red cloak, *&c.*

Except these three, when joined to these nouns, with which they make but a compound noun:: *un blanc-manger*, blan-mange (a sort of dainty dish); *un rouge-bord*, a brimmer; *une rouge-trogne*, a red face; *un rouge-gorge*, a Robin-red-breast; *un rouge-queue*, a red tail; *un verd-galant*, a brisk spark; and *les Blancs-Manteaux* (the name of a Friary).

4*thly*, Adnouns of figure: as, *une table ronde* a round table, *une chambre carrée* a square room, *&c.*

5*thly*, Adnouns expressing some physical, or natural quality; D such as *chaud*, hot; *froid*, cold; *pur*, pure; *humide*, wet; *amer*, bitter; *bossu*, hunch-back; and others respecting *taste, hearing, feeling*, &c. as, *un temps froid* ou *chaud*, cold *or* warm weather; *du vin pur*, pure wine; *un arbre fruitier*, a fruit-tree; *du fruit amer*, bitter fruit; *des jambes crochues*, crooked legs; *de la chair vive*, quick flesh; *la religion naturelle*, natural religion, *&c.* Except *du vif-argent*, quicksilver (pronounce *vivarjan*).

6*thly*, Adnouns ending in *esque, il, ile*, and *ule*: as, *une figure grotesque*, an odd sort of figure; *un discours puéril*, a childish discourse; *un enfant docile*, a tractable child; *une femme crédule*, a credulous woman, *&c.*

A 7*thly*, Adnouns ending in *ic*, *ique*, and *if* (tho' some may also come before the noun); as *le bien public*, the public good; *un esprit pacifique*, a pacific mind; *un enfant vif*, a quick child; *&c.* Except, again, *du vif-argent.*

8*thly*, Adnouns ending in *able* (mostly derived from verbs): for tho' some may also come before the noun, yet one can never speak improperly in placing them after; as, *une terre labourable*, arable land; *un pays inhabitable*, an uninhabitable country; *une personne aimable*, or *une aimable personne*, a lovely person; *&c.*

B 3°. Of common adnouns these sixteen generally come before the noun:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *beau*, | fine. | *gros*, | big. | *moindre*, | less. |
| *bon*, | good. | *jeune*, | young. | *petit*, | little. |
| *brave*, | brave. | *mauvais*, | bad, ill. | *saint*, | holy. |
| *cher*, | dear. | *méchant*, | naughty. | *vieux*, | old. |
| *chétif*, | sorry. | *meilleur*, | better. | *vrai*, | true. |
| *grand*, | great. | | | | |

As *un beau garçon*, a fine boy; *un gros ventre*, a big belly; *de bon pain*, good bread; *un petit visage*, a little face; *un brave officier*, a brave officer; *un chétif cheval*, a sorry horse;
C *six beaux chevaux bais*, six fine bay horses.

Most other adnouns are almost indifferently placed before or after the noun; at least it is only by reading good books one can learn which are better put before, and which after. Thus use will have you say: *le haut style*, and *le style sublime*, the lofty style; *les campagnes voisines*, the neighbouring fields; *les bords lointains*, the remote shores; *un habit vieux*, an old coat; *du vin vieux*, old wine; and never *du vieux vin*, *le style haut*, *le sublime style*, *&c.*

*Nu* (naked) is one of the adnouns that comes after the noun; yet it comes before, and is indeclinable, in one particular case, when jointly with its noun it makes a compound word. Thus we say *la tête nue*, *les pieds nus* (with one's head *or* feet bare), we nevertheless say also *être nu-tête* (to be uncovered), *marcher nu-pieds* (to walk without shoes or stockings).

¶ In general, the ear must be consulted for the construction of adnouns; they come first, if they are less harmonious than their substantives; they come last, if they are more harmonious.

They must also come first, when they are used figuratively; See next page.

D 4°. When the noun is attended by two adnouns, it is sometimes indifferent to put them before or after it: as *un homme méchant & ingénieux*, or *un ingénieux & méchant homme*, an ingenious and wicked man; but it is more sure to put them after, for we don't say *un méchant & ingénieux homme.*

If the noun has three or more adnouns belonging to it, they must absolutely be put after it with the Enclitic *&* before the last: which must likewise be observed, even when there are but *two* adnouns; for we do not say *un ingénieux méchant homme*, as

the English do, an ingenious wicked man, nor *un désagréable ennuyeux ouvrage*, a disagreeable tedious work. A

Some adnouns being construed with certain nouns will come first, when construed with others will come last. Thus we say,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *homme juste*, | a just man. | *juste prix*, | reasonable rate. |
| *action juste*, | a just action. | *juste défense*, | a just defence. |
| *action basse*, | a mean action. | *à bas prix*, | cheap, *or* at a low rate. |

We likewise say: *le bas Languedoc*, *la basse Normandie*, lower Languedoc *or* Normandy; *la haute ou basse Saxe*, upper *or* lower Saxony; *la basse Autriche*, lower Austria; *le bas Rhin*, the lower Rhine, *&c.* and *les Pays-bas*, not *les bas pays*, the low countries; nor *le Rhin bas*, *le Rhin haut*, &c.

Some other adnouns, which will be put after the noun when they are taken in the proper sense, must be put before it when they are taken in the figurative; as, B

| Proper Sense. | | Figurative Sense. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *un fruit mûr*, | ripe fruit. | *une mûre délibération*, | a mature deliberation, |
| *un homme maigre*, | a thin man. | *une maigre chère*, | poor fare. |
| *une femme vive*, | a quick woman. | *une vive douleur*, | a smart or sharp pain. |
| *un homme bon*, | a good-natured man. | *un bon homme*, | one who means no harm. |
| *un homme pauvre*, | a poor man. | *un pauvre homme*, | a sorry fellow. |

Many adnouns may be used substantively in French, which the genius of the English Tongue does not allow; I shall take notice of them in a more proper place. (p. 450.)

§ II. Of adnouns, some always require after them either a noun or a verb, which they govern: as, *digne de louange*, praise worthy; *digne d'être aimé*, worthy to be loved; *capable d'enseigner*, capable to teach; *propre à tout*, fit for any thing; *il n'est pas propre à commander en chef*, he is not fit to command in chief; *&c.*

Some will be used absolutely without being ever attended by any noun or verb: as *sage*, wise; *vertueux*, virtuous; *incurable*, incurable; *intrépide*, undaunted; *&c.* C

Others may be construed both with and without a noun: as, *C'est une femme insensible*, She is a woman without any sensibility. *Elle est insensible à l'amour*, She is insensible, and a stranger to the passion of love. *Il vit content*, He lives content; *Il est content de sa condition*, He is contented with his condition.

1°. The following adnouns require the preposition *de* before the next noun. Observe that some of them require in English D the preposition *at* or *with* before it.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *digne*, | worthy. | *mécontent*, | discontented | *enragé*, | enraged. |
| *indigne*, | unworthy. | | | *avide*, | greedy. |
| *capable*, | capable. | *comblé*, | loaded, heapt up. | *las*, | tired. |
| *incapable*, | incapable. | | | *fatigué*, | fatigued. |
| *aise*, | glad. | *taxé*, | taxed. | *ennuyé*, | weary. |
| *ravi*, | overjoyed. | *chargé*, | loaded. | *libre*, | free. |
| *joyeux*, | joyful. | *accusé*, | accused. | *qualifié*, | one that has the character of, *&c.* |
| *content*, | contented. | *contrit*, | sorrowful. | | |

A as likewise adnouns signifying *Fulness, Emptiness, Plenty,* or *Want:* as *Il est digne de louange,* he is worthy of praise. *Indigne de l'estime que j'ai pour lui,* unworthy of the esteem which I have for him. *Capable* ou *incapable de servir sa patrie,* capable *or* incapable to serve one's country. *Comblé d'honneurs,* loaded with honours. *Taxé d'avarice,* charged with avarice. *Chargé de dettes,* deep in debt. *Accusé de mensonge* ou *d'avoir menti,* accused of lying. *Je suis aise* ou *ravi de son succès,* I am glad *or* overjoyed at his success. *Fatigué de courir,* fatigued with running. *Ennuyé de la vie* or *de vivre,* weary of life. *Il est qualifié d'ivrogne,* he has the character of a drunkard. *Avide de gloire,* needy of glory, *&c.*

B 2°. The following adnouns require the preposition *à* before the next noun.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *adroit,* | dexterous. | *ingénieux,* | ingenious. | *propre,* | fit. |
| *bon,* | good. | *contraire,* | contrary. | *ardent,* / *âpre,* | eager. |
| *beau,* | fine. | *opposé,* | opposite. | | |
| *laid,* | ugly. | *conforme,* | conformable | *occupé,* | busy. |
| *agréable,* | agreeable. | | | *lent,* | slow. |
| *désagréable,* | disagreeable. | *semblable,* | like. | *nuisible,* | hurtful. |
| | | *pareil,* | alike. | *prompt,* | quick. |
| *comparable,* | comparable. | *enclin,* | inclined. | *prêt,* | ready. |
| C | | *adonné,* | given, addicted. | *sensible,* | sensible. |
| *agile* | nimble. | | | *insensible,* | insensible. |
| *alerte,* | brisk, pert. | *porté,* | apt, prone. | *souple,* | pliant. |
| *habile,* | skilful. | *sujet,* | subject, liable. | *aisé, facile,* | easy. |

And all adnouns signifying *Inclination, Aptness, Fitness,* and *Unfitness, Advantage* and *Disadvantage, Profit* or *Disprofit, Due Submission, Resistance, Difficulty,* &c. as,

*Je suis sensible au froid,* I am sensible of cold. *Il est insensible aux affronts,* he is insensible of affronts. *Etre porté* ou *enclin à quelque chose,* to be apt *or* inclined to something. *Lent au travail,* slow to work. *Prompt au jeu* ou *à jouer,* quick to
D play *Propre à tout,* fit for any thing. *Nuisible à la santé,* hurtful to health. *Souple au marteau,* malleable, *&c.*

3°. These adnouns, signifying Dimension, *haut,* high, tall; *profond,* deep; *épais,* thick; *gros,* big; *large,* wide, broad; and *long,* long, which come after the words of the measure of magnitude in English, come before in French, and are attended by the preposition *de:* as,

*Une colonne* haute *de soixante pieds.* A column sixty-feet *high.*
*Le fossé est* profond *de vingt-pieds, &* large *de dix,*
The ditch is twenty feet *deep,* and ten *broad.*

Or (which is much better, and more generally used) the ad- A
noun of the dimension is turned into its noun in French, with the word of the measure before, as in English, but so that both the word of the measure, and that of the dimension, are preceded by the preposition *de:* as,

*Un homme* de *six pieds* de *hauteur*, A man six feet *high*.
*Un fossé* de *vingt pieds* de *profondeur*, A ditch twenty feet *deep*.

And the verb substantive *to be* is also turned into the verb *to have*, governing the noun of the measure, with the preposition *de* before the noun of dimension: as,

*Le fossé* a *vingt pieds* de *profondeur*, & dix de *largeur*, B
The ditch *is* twenty feet *deep*, and ten *broad*.

The words of measure are,

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *une aune*, | an ell. | *un arpent*, | an acre. | *une brasse*, | a fathom. |
| *une verge*, | a yard. | *une perche*, | a rod. | *une toise*, | another measure containing six feet in length. |
| *un pied*, | a foot. | *un pas*, | a pace. | | |
| *un pouce*, | an inch. | *une lieue*, | a league. | | |
| *une ligne*, | a line. | *un mille*, | a mile. | | |
| *une coudée*, | a cubit. | *un stade*, | a stade or furlong. | | |
| *un empan*, | a span. | | | | |

¶ Adnouns are sometimes used substantively; in which case they take the article. (See page 219.)

§ III. 1°. We have seen that the highest or lowest degree C
of comparison is expressed in French by the particles, *le, la, les*, put before the adverbs *plus, moins, mieux*, followed by the adnoun. But as (according to the first observations of the 2*d* section of this chapter) some adnouns come before the noun, and others after, so whenever it is the case of the adnoun in the highest or lowest degree to come after the noun, it requires the article before *plus* or *moins*, tho' the noun that comes before has it already, either with or without a preposition: as,

*C'est la coutume* des *peuples* les *plus barbares*, D
It is the custom of the most barbarous nations.
*Il a obéi* au *commandement* le *plus injuste qu'on puisse faire*,
He has obeyed the most unjust command that can be made.
*Je compte sur* l'*ami* le *plus obligeant*,
I rely upon the most obliging friend.

*C'est une* des *femmes* les *plus belles de Paris*. She is one of the most beautiful women in Paris; which is equal to *c'est une des plus belles femmes de Paris*.

A 2°. The noun that follows the adnoun in the highest or lowest degree, is always preceded by the preposition *de* (or the particles *du, des*) generally rendered into English by *in*; as,

*Le plus savant homme* du *monde,*
The most learned man *in* the world.
*La plus impertinente* des *femmes.*
The most impertinent of women.

3°. When the superlative is followed by a verb, if that verb is in English the present, or preterite tense, or their compounds, it must be put in French in the subjunctive, preceded
B by the relative pronoun *qui, dont,* &c. as,

*L'homme le plus savant* qui soit,
The most learned man that *is.*
*La plus belle personne* que j'aie *jamais vue,*
The handsomest person *I have* ever seen.

And if the superlative is of an adverb, and not of an adnoun, the verb must be preceded by the conjunction *que:* as,

*Le plus soigneusement* qu'il *se puisse,* or *qu'on puisse,*
The most carefully that can be.

4°. The particle *than* that follows the comparative in English, is rendered in French by *que* before the next noun or pro-
C noun: as,

*Il est plus habile* que *son frère,*
He is more ingenious *than* his brother.
*Il agit moins sincèrement* que *vous,*
He acts, *or* deals less sincerely *than* you.

5°. If *than* is followed by a verb in the infinitive, it must be made in French by the infinitive with the particle *de* after *que:* or by the imperfect of the indicative, or its compound, with the conjunction *si* after *que:* as,

*Il aime mieux demeurer à rien faire* que de *travailler,*
He rather chooses to be idle *than* work.
D *Il est plus heureux* que *s'il régnoit,*
He is happier than if he reigned.

And if the verb that follows *than* in English is not in, nor can be rendered by the infinitive, it must take in French the negative *ne* before it: as,

*Il est plus habile* que *je* ne *croyois,*
He is more ingenious than I thought.

¶ That is to say, *Je ne le croyois pas si habile.*

But if there comes before the verb a conjunction governing A it, the negative may be left out: as,

*Je le trouve à présent moins beau que* quand *je l'achetai,*
I now find it less handsome than when I bought it.

¶ That is; *Qu'il ne l'étoit quand, &c. than* it was *when, &c.*

6°. The simple comparative *plus* and *moins* meeting with a number, are attended by the preposition *de:* as,

*Il a plus* de *vingt ans,* and never *plus que,*
He is above twenty.

Therefore the preposition *above* before a noun of number must always be rendered into French by *plus de,* or *au dessus de.* B

7°. The preposition *by* and the conjunction *than,* used to join a certain definite quantity to the adnoun or adverb of the comparison, are expressed in French by *de:* as,

*Il est plus grand* de *toute la tête,*
He is taller *by* a whole head, *or* he is a *head* taller.
*Nous en sommes plus* d'*à moitié persuadés,*
We are more *than* half convinced of it.

*Beaucoup* and *peu,* denoting comparison, have likewise the particle *de* before them: as, C

*Il est* de *beaucoup plus grand,* He is much taller.
*Si vous êtes plus gros que lui, c'est* de *peu,*
If you are bigger than he is, it is but a little.

¶ However, we sometimes say, *il est beaucoup plus grand,* without *de.*

8°. The particles comparative *si* and *aussi,* which are always followed by *que* after the adnoun, are englished, *si* and *aussi* by *so* before the adnoun, and *que* by *that* or *as* after it, or, by *as,* both before and after; but *aussi* gives more force to the comparison than *si:* as,

*Je ne le croyois pas* si *brave* or aussi *brave* qu'*il l'est,*
I did not think him *so* courageous *as* he is.
*Est-il* si *méchant* qu'*on le dit?* Is he *so* wicked *as* they say? D
*Elle est* aussi *belle* que *sa sœur,* She is *as* handsome *as* her sister.

*Tant* and *autant,* followed likewise by *que* (as much, so much as,) are construed with verbs and nouns, as *si* and *aussi* with adnouns: as,

*Elle n'a pas* tant *d'esprit* que *sa sœur, mais elle a* autant *de vivacité, & elle est* aussi *aimable.* She has not so much wit *as* her sister, but she has *as much* liveliness, and is *as* amiable *as* she.

A *Je l'estime* autant que *votre frère,*
I esteem him *as much* as I do your brother.
*L'un est* aussi *savant* que *l'autre,*
The one is *as* learned *as* the other.

*Si* is used in negative sentences; and in affirmative, only when there is no comparison of equality made between two things: but in affirmative sentences implying comparison, *aussi* must be used: as, *Il n'est rien de* si *doux* que *la liberté:* Nothing is so sweet as liberty.

*Elle aime* si *violemment* qu'*elle en perd la raison:* She loves *so* excessively *that* it disturbs her reason, *or* she grows dis-
B tracted.

*Le plaisir de l'étude est un plaisir* aussi *tranquille,* que *celui des passions est agité:* The pleasure of studying is *as* calm, *as* that of the passions is tumultuous.

9°. The particles comparative *si* and *aussi, plus* and *le plus,* must be repeated before each adnoun or adverb governed, as likewise *tant* before each noun, and *autant* before each verb, when there are many in the sentence: as,

*Il est* si *sage,* si *prudent,* si *éclairé & si discret, qu'on peut en sûreté lui confier un secret:* He is *so* wise, *so* prudent, en-
C lightened, and discreet, that one may safely entrust him with a secret.

*Un jeune homme* aussi *sage,* aussi *capable, & qui prend* tant *de peine, mérite qu'on le protège:* So sober a young man, *so* capable, and who takes *so much pains,* deserves to be protected.

*Son amant est* plus *beau,* plus *jeune, &* plus *riche qu'elle,*
Her lover is handsomer, younger, and richer than she is.

Observe all along that the verb substantive *to be,* which ordinarily follows *than,* and the comparative or superlative in English, is always left out in French, and that we are then contented with *que* and the pronoun, without a verb after it (*plus riche qu'elle,* and not *qu'elle est,* as in English, richer than she is).

10°. *As,* repeated with an adverb between, is rendered into
D French either by *aussi* and *que,* or *le plus* and *que,* with the adverb between: as, Come *as* often *as* you can.

*Venez* aussi *souvent* que *vous pourrez,* or, le plus *souvent* que *vous pourrez.*

Lastly, these comparative ways of speaking:

[a] *The more an hydropick drinks, the more thirsty he is.*
[b] *The more I see her, the more I hate her.*
[c] *The richer men are, the happier they are;* or,
[d] *Men are so much the more happy, as they are more rich.*
[e] *The poorer people are, the less care they have,* &c.

are rendered into French by *plus* or *moins,* beginning each part of the sentence, and followed by the noun, or pronoun which is

the subject of the verb; then the verb; then the adnoun of the comparison, if there be any, or even the noun, if there be one governed by the verb: thus, A

[a] *Plus un hydropique boit, plus il a soif,*
[b] *Plus je la vois, plus je la hais,*
[c] *Plus on est riche, plus on est heureux;* or,
[d] *On est d'autant plus heureux qu'on est plus riche,*
[e] *Plus on est pauvre, moins on a d'embarras,* &c.

## CHAP. IV.

### *Of* PRONOUNS, *and first of the Pronouns Personal.* B

§ I. OF Pronouns Personal, some (viz. *je, tu, il,* &c.) are *Conjunctive,* that is, always coming before the verb, whether they govern or are governed; the others (viz. *moi, toi, lui,* &c.) *Disjunctive,* that is, governed of prepositions, and following the construction usual to nouns. But the chief thing to be observed is the order in which the conjunctives are placed, when several of them meet together before the verb, especially with the negatives *ne* and *pas.* C

1°. The personal Conjunctives, *je, nous; tu, vous; il, elle; ils, elles;* come before the verb as its subject, either immediately, as *Je dis* I say, or with one or more pronouns, or the negative *ne* between; as *Je vous dis* I tell you, *Je ne dis pas* I do not say; but they will not admit of any adverb, or other word, between themselves and the verb, as they do in English. Therefore we say *Je vois toujours* I always see, *Je lui dis dans ce temps-là,* or *Je lui dis alors* I at that time, *or* I then told him; and never *Je toujours vois, Je dans ce temps-là lui dis,* or *J'alors lui dis.*

Only in certain forms, the word *soussigné,* and the title and quality of the person that speaks, is put between the Conjunctive and the verb, thus: *Je soussigné déclare* I underwritten declare. D

*Je, Jean Smith, Docteur en Médecine, certifie,* &c.
I, John Smith, Doctor of Physick, do certify.

The same personal conjunctives come after their verbs in the following cases:

1*st*, After the six verbs, *dire* to say, *répondre* to answer, *répliquer* to reply, *continuer* to continue, *poursuivre* to pursue, and *s'écrier* to cry out, by Parenthesis (as is practised in English with *to say*, tho' not so generally as in French); as,

*Vous étudiez, dites-vous,* or *dit-il,* You study, say you, *or* you say, *or* says he.
*Vous voyez, disent-ils,* or *répondit-il,* or *s'écria-t-il, l'état où nous sommes réduits,* You see, they say, *or* answered he, *or* cried he out, the condition we are reduced to.

A 2*dly*, With the Preterite subjunctive of *devoir*, and *pouvoir*: which way of speaking (with *devoir*) may be resolved by the conjunction *quand* with the Conditional: as,

*Dussiez-vous me condamner*, or *Quand vous devriez me condamner*, Tho' you should condemn me.

*Pussiez-vous*, and *puissiez-vous être heureux*, May you live happy.

*Ne valût-il qu'un sou?* Were it worth but one penny?

3*dly*, After these Conjunctions *ainsi*, *aussi*, *peut-être*, *du moins*, *au moins*, *en vain*, and *à peine*: as,

*Ainsi*, or *aussi mérite-t-il d'être avancé*, Therefore he deserves to be preferred.

*Du moins deviez-vous m'en avertir*, At least you should have told me of it.

*En vain cherche-t-il des excuses*, In vain he seeks for an excuse.

*Peut-être s'imagine-t-il*, Perhaps he thinks.

*A peine eut-il parlé, que* . . . He had hardly spoken, when . . .

B But observe, that in this last case it is an elegance only, and not a law of Grammar, to put the conjunctives after their verbs, and that we say too: *aussi il mérite d'être avancé; du moins vous deviez m'en avertir*, &c. And *dussiez-vous me condamner* is said by ellipsis for *quoique vous dussiez me condamner*; and *puissiez-vous être content*, for *je souhaite que vous soyez content*, that tense of *pouvoir* being then used as and for what Grammarians call the Optative Mood of *souhaiter* to wish.

2o. ¶ The English personal pronouns, *I, thou, he*, &c. when unaccompanied by a verb, or answering to the verb *to be*, are always rendered into French by the pronouns disjunctive, *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, &c.

It is I, *c'est moi*; It is he, *c'est lui*; It is we, *c'est nous*; It is they, *ce sont eux*, *ce sont elles*.

*Who is there?* qui est là? *I*, c'est moi.

*Who has done that?* qui a fait cela? *I, Sir*, moi, Monsieur.

If in the same sentence one or more pronouns of the other persons meet with one of the first, politeness requires, in French as in English, that the first person, being the person who speaks, should be named the last.

C *Vous & moi*, you and I; *lui & moi*, he and I; *elle et moi*, she and I; *eux et moi*, they and I; *vous & nous*, ye and we; *lui & nous*, he and we; *eux & nous*, they and we.

It is the same, when the first person joins with nouns or names of persons.

*Pierre & moi*, Peter and I; *vos frères & moi*, your brothers and I; *son cousin & nous*, his cousin and we.

The same politeness requires that the person spoken to should be named before the person spoken of; hence the pronouns disjunctive of the second persons always come before those of the third, and before nouns.

*Toi & ton frère*, thou and thy brother; *Vous & mon père*, you and my father; *Vous & votre ami*, you and your friend; *Vous & Pierre*, you and Peter; *Vous & lui*, you and he; *Vous & eux*, you and they; *avec vous & avec eux*, with you and them.

However, in spite of politeness, as the first person, to speak the language of Grammarians, is the noblest of the three, and the second is more noble than the third, if there be a verb expressed in the sentence, the first person, D in preference to the two others, must be its leader, or the second in the absence of the first. Therefore,

¶ When one or more nouns, and one or more pronouns meet together with a verb as its virtual subject, those pronouns must be disjunctive, either singular or plural; but in any case the verb must be in the plural number, and besides have for its grammatical subject, or nominative, a conjunctive pronoun plural, of the noblest persons among the disjunctive pronouns, which then, together with the nouns connected

with them, may come indifferently, either before or after the A verb: as,

*Lui & moi, nous apprenons le François;* } Both he and I
Or, *Nous apprenons le François, lui & moi;* } learn French.

*Vous & lui, vous apprendrez l'Italien;* } Both you and he
Or, *Vous apprendrez l'Italien, vous & lui;* } will learn Italian.

*Mon frère, ma sœur, ma cousine & moi nous allames hier à la comédie;* } My brother, my sister, my cousin and I went to the play last night.
Or, *Nous allames hier à la comédie, mon frère, ma sœur, ma cousine & moi;*

*Vous, votre cousin, sa femme & moi, nous irons ce soir à la comédie;* } You, your cousin, his wife and I, B will go to the play to-night.
Or, *Nous irons*, &c.—*Vous, votre cousin*, &c.

*Vous, M. Adam, sa cousine, & moi, nous irons dans la même voiture;* } You, Mr. Adam, his cousin, and I, will go in the same carriage.
Or, *Nous irons*, &c.—*Vous, M. Adam*, &c.

*Nous sommes contens, lui & moi;* } He and I are satisfied.
Or, *Lui & moi nous sommes contens;* }

*Je suis content, & lui aussi;* I am satisfied, and so is he.

*Vous & votre frère, vous êtes heureux;* you and your brother are happy. C

*Vous & lui, vous êtes toujours à vous quereller;* you and he are always quarelling.]

To this rule there is an exception; for though the disjunctives of the first and second persons *moi* and *toi*, can never be construed as subjects of a verb, without another conjunctive, yet when the disjunctives are put before the verb, and the last of them is a pronoun of the third person (*lui* or *eux*), the conjunctive (*il* or *ils*) is sometimes left out, and sometimes expressed before the following verb (and therefore the disjunctive *lui* and *eux* are then only subject of, and coming before the verb), and sometimes also it is indifferent to express it or not. It is not possible to determine positively when after those disjunctives the conjunctive must be left out, and when not, nor when it is indifferent to express it or not. But these cases occurring very seldom, and being almost always confined to common conversation, it must suffice to take notice here of the following instances:

D

We say: *Mon frère & lui sont arrivés*, My brother and he are arrived; not *ils sont arrivés*. ¶ The conjunctive *ils* is suppressed, because the noun *frère*, and the disjunctive pronoun *lui* are both of the same person, *viz.* the third.]

On the contrary, we say: *Je demeure, & lui* il *part*: I stay, and he goes. *Je partirai, & toi tu resteras*; I shall set out, but you will stay. ¶ The conjunctive *il, tu*, can by no means be suppressed, because the subjects are of different persons. As for the suppression of the disjunctive, see the last paragraph *next page*. C.]

However, it is indifferent to say; *Je demeurai, & lui* il *s'en alla*, or *Je demeurai, & lui s'en alla*; I staid, and he went away; *Vous en êtes fâché, & eux s'en réjouissent*, or *& eux ils s'en réjouissent*; you are sorry for it, but they rejoice at it. ¶ The conjunctive *il, ils*, may be left out, notwithstanding the

A difference of persons, because the second verb is reflected, and the pronoun *se*, which accompanies it, is sufficient to indicate the third person.]

But observe, 1st, That it is only in common conversation you may express the conjunctive or not.

2dly, That, as in the first instance, the noun and pronoun may equally well come after the verb, and you may say: *Ils sont arrivés mon frère & lui* (which is the best way to avoid the difficulty); so it is always safe, and never improper, to begin the sentence, with the conjunctive, even in common conversation, and say: *Nous apprenons le François, lui & moi*: He and I learn French.

3dly, That the disjunctives *lui* and *eux*, as has been seen in some of the preceding phrases, may in a regular speech be the subject of and come before the verb, without any conjunctive: But,

1°. Either the disjunctives must be attended by the adnoun *seul*: as, *Plus je vis avec le Cacique & sa sœur, plus j'ai de peine à me persuader qu'ils soient de cette nation*; eux seuls *connoissent & respectent la vertu*. The more I live with
B the Cacick and his sister, the less I can believe that they are of that nation: *they alone* know and respect virtue.

2°. Or it must be separated from its verb, by another middle sentence joining to it, by the means of a relative or gerund: as, Lui *qui ne savoit pas qu'ils étoient réconciliés*, fut *sort surpris de les voir ensemble*: *He*, who did not know that they were reconciled, was much surprised to see them together.

Eux, *voyant que la pluralité des suffrages l'emporteroit, commencèrent par protester*: They, seeing that the majority of votes would carry it, began with a protest.

3°. Or the sentences wherein they are used, relate the particulars of some fact, declared in general in the former member (but distributed, in the latter, among the agents of it): as,

*Les deux frères & le cousin ont commis le meurtre*; eux *ont lié l'homme, & lui l'a assommé*, The two brothers and the cousin have committed the murder; *they* have tied the man, and *he* has knock'd him on the head.

C ¶ In this phrase: *Elle est contente, & lui l'est aussi*; She is satisfied, and so is he: the verb is repeated because the two subjects *elle* and *lui* are not of the same gender. In conversation, however, we may make the ellipsis of *l'est*, and say: *Elle est contente, & lui aussi*.

And in this, with much more reason: *Elle est contente, mais lui ne l'est pas*, She is satisfied, but he is not so; because, besides the difference of gender, the second member of the phrase is negative.

But when there is no distribution of action to make: no contrast, opposition, or comparison to express, the disjunctive is by no means necessary, and the verb is contented with a conjunctive: as,

*Je te quitte, & tu n'en témoignes point de regret*; I leave you, and you show no regret for it. *Je lui ai parlé, & il a promis de venir*; I spoke to him, and he has promised to come.

3°. If the pronouns are governed by the verb, either as its object, or end, the first must be a conjunctive, coming before the verb, and the other, or others, disjunctive, and put after it: as,

D *On me parle aussi bien qu'* à vous *&* à eux: I am spoken to as well as he and they, *or* They speak to me, as well as to you and to them.

4°. Observe that the conjunctives of the third person of both genders, *il, ils; elle, elles,* are used with respect to irrational and inanimate creatures; which pronouns are englished by *it*, and *they* for the plural: as,

| Speaking of | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| a tree, | il *porte beaucoup de fruit*, | *It* bears much fruit. |
| an apple, | Elle *n'est pas mûre*, | *It* is not ripe. |
| a horse, | Il *boite*, | *He* is lame. |
| a hen, | Elle *ne* pond plus, | It or she lays no more eggs |

Moreover *il* is used before verbs impersonal, or rather verbs are very often used impersonally with this pronoun, which is commonly rendered into English by *it* or *there*; as *il arriva*, it *or* there happened: as likewise before verbs neuter, followed by another subject besides, which second subject is the only one in English; as, A

*Il est arrivé un accident;*
An accident has happened. *or*
There an accident happened.
*Il viendra tantôt quelqu'un;*
Somebody will come by and by.

It is the same when questions are asked; as,

*Est-il arrivé quelque accident?*
Did some accident happen?
*Viendra-t-il du monde*, ou *viendra-t-il quelqu'un tantôt?*
Will somebody come by and by?

But in this last case *il* most times comes the last, and the noun the first, as we shall see when we treat of Questions. But observe further, that in these impersonal ways of speaking, the noun that follows the verb requires before it the particle *de* or *un*, or some pronoun or adnoun indeterminate, such as *quelqu'un*, *divers*, *certain*, and never takes the article (except with the limiting particle), as in these instances: B

*Il est arrivé un accident*, for
*Un accident est arrivé.*
*Il viendra quelqu'un, du monde, des gens, certaines* ou *diverses personnes*, instead of
*Quelqu'un, du monde viendra; des gens, certaines personnes viendront*,
Somebody, some people will come.

The disjunctives *moi*, *lui*, *eux*, as likewise *nous*, and *vous*, which are both conjunctives, and disjunctives, may come both before and after a verb, but with another conjunctive, unless the verb be in the infinitive, or imperative; as,

*Vous dites cela, & moi je l'ai vu,*
You say that, and I have seen it.
Lui *il soutient cela*, or *Il soutient cela*, lui?
He maintains that, doth he?
Moi, *faire cela!*
Should, *or* could I do that! C
*Me soupçonner de cela*, moi!
Should, *or* could I be suspected of that!
*Faites*-moi, *Faites*-nous *cela comme il faut*,
Do that as it should be.

Which pronouns, thus used as a redundancy, serve to give more weight to what one says, especially with the infinitive: for thus we intimate a sort of reproach to those we speak to, for their believing us guilty of what is mentioned; but observe, that in the last instance, *moi* and *nous* are the disjunctives of the third relation, that is implying the preposition *à*, and standing for *à moi*, *à nous*; that they are used only with the imperative; and that it is only in familiar conversation they may be thus used as a redundancy.

5°. The second state of the pronouns personal (viz. *de moi*, *de lui*, *de vous*, &c.) cannot be, strictly speaking, used after a noun in the second relation to which they are joined by the Enclitic *&*: but one must make use of a possessive pronoun, or a pronoun relative. Therefore, instead of saying D

*C'est le sentiment de mon frère &* de moi, or *&* de lui, it is better to say *C'est le sentiment de mon frère &* le mien, *or* le sien, *or* take this turn, *C'est mon sentiment &* celui *de mon frère*. That is the opinion of my brother, and mine too.

A Except in the following expressions, wherein the possessive pronoun cannot be used as in English, but in the second relation of the person, governed by a noun that comes first.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Pour l'amour* de *moi*, | *Pour l'amour* de lui, d'elle, d'eux, |
| For my sake. | For his, her, their sake. |
| *A cause* de moi, | *En dépit* de moi, |
| On my account. | In spite of me. |

Or when the pronoun personal is compound, *viz.* of *moi, lui,* &c. and *même:* as, *Je ne veux pas être homicide de* moi-même, I won't be my own self's murderer. And tho' we say *pour l'amour de moi,* yet we don't say, *l'amour de soi* self-love, but *l'amour de soi-même,* or *l'amour propre:* but we say as the English do, *pour mon plaisir* for my pleasure, *pour son plaisir* for her or his pleasure.

B ¶ Likewise, *un portrait de moi,* means a portrait drawn by me; whereas *mon portrait,* my portrait, means a portrait representing my person.

§ II. 1°. When the verb governs the pronoun personal, it must come between the subject and the verb: as,

*Je* le *vois,* I see him: *Vous* lui *parlez,* You speak to him, *or* to her.

*Il* leur *est avantageux,* it is advantageous to them; and not *Je vois lui,* or *le, Je parle à lui,* or *à elle, Il est avantageux à eux.*

Except, 1*st,* When the verb is in the imperative, without a negation; for then the pronoun comes last: and if it is of the first or second person, and in the third state, the second dis-

C junctives *moi, toi,* are used instead of the conjunctives *me,* and *te:* as,

*Portez-le,* carry him; *voyez-la,* see her; *parlez-lui,* speak to him; *dites-moi,* tell me: and not *dites me* nor *me dites,* nor *dites à moi:* though we say with the two pronouns, *donnez-m'en,* give me some; *vous me parlez,* you speak to me; *parlez moi,* speak to me; and with a negation, *ne me parlez pas,* do not speak to me. *Voyons-les,* let us see them; *ne les voyons pas,* don't let us see them.

But if two imperatives come together with a conjunction copulative, the latter will have the pronoun come before it: as,

*Voyez la & la consolez,* and not *voyez-la & consolez la,* see her

D and comfort her. At least the first construction is much better.

2*dly,* With the verbs *être* (signifying *belonging*), *avoir, penser, songer, viser,* (respecting a person and not a thing), *aller, venir, courir, accourir, boire;* as likewise with reciprocal verbs, the pronoun governed in the third state must be a disjuncture, and come after them: as,

*Ce livre est moi,* and not *m'est,*
That book is mine, *or* belongs to me.

*Vous en avez un à lui*, and not *vous lui en avez un*, A
You have one of his.

In these instances, we don't use the pron. possess. *mien*, as in English, instead of the personal *moi*, because, in the first instance, *être* signifies *appartenir*, which governs the third state; and, in the other, *un livre à lui* is said by ellipsis for *un livre qui est à lui*; tho' with *appartenir* we say, *qui lui appartient* not *qui appartient à lui*, that belongs to him.

*Je songe*, or *Je pense à vous*, and not *Je vous songe*, &c.
I am thinking of you.

*Il vise à eux*, he aims at them.

*Elle boit à vous*, she drinks to you.

*Je vais à vous*, I go to you. *Ils viennent à moi*, they come to me. B
*Nous nous fions à vous*, we trust you, and not *nous nous vous fions*.
*Cela s'adresse à moi*, that is directed to me, and not *cela se m'adresse*.

3*dly*, When the verb governs two pronouns in the third state, so that they are used as by opposition; as likewise, when it rather denotes the order in which a thing must be done, the pronouns must be disjunctive, and come after the verb: as,

*Je parle à lui & non à vous*, (or) *C'est à lui que je parle & non pas à vous*: I speak to him and not to you.

*Buvez à elle, puis à la compagnie*: drink to her, then to the company.

*Donnez à lui d'abord, ensuite à elle, puis aux autres*: C
Give to him first, then to her, then to the others.

2°. In all other cases, disjunctives must be used, as in answer to questions, and after prepositions: as,

*Qui est-ce qui dit cela? lui & eux*, or *c'est lui, ce sont eux*:
Who says that? He and they, *or* it is he, it is they.

*Qui cherchez-vous? elle & sa fille?*
Whom do you seek for? her and her daughter?

*C'est lui*, it is he. *C'est elle*, it is she. *Ce n'est pas moi*, It is not I.

*Pour moi*, for me. *Après lui*, after him. *Devant elle*, before D
her. (See p. 230. B. 2°.)

3°. *Ne* and *pas* or *point* are particles answering the English negative *not*. The French put *ne* before the verb, and *pas* or *point* after it, if the tense is simple, and between the auxiliary and the participle, if it is compound.——*Ne* must always come immediately after the word that expresses the subject, whether a noun or pronoun conjunctive: as,

*Je ne parle pas*, I do not speak. *Vous ne dites point*, you don't say.
*L'homme n'est* pas *venu*, the man is not come.

A Except, 1*st*, When the verb is in the second person of the imperative; in which case *ne*, that always comes before the verb, comes besides before the pronoun, if the verb is reciprocal; but *pas* always follows the verb: as, N*e vous fâchez pas*, don't be angry.

2*dly*, In sentences of Interrogation: as,

Ne *fais-je* pas *ce que vous me dites?* Don't I do what you bid me?

3*dly*, On such occasions when the Pronouns conjunctive governing the verb come after it: as,

*Aussi* ne *prétend-il pas cela?* Neither does he pretend to that.

*See those cases page* 230. A.

B ¶ 4*thly*, When there is a conjunctive governed by the verb: as, *Je ne l'ai pas dit*, I have not said it; *ne le faites pas*, do not do it.]

4°. When the verb is attended by two pronouns personal, *viz.* one in the fourth state, and the other in the third, the pronoun in the third state must come before that in the fourth: as,

*Je* vous *le dis*, I tell it you. *On* me *le donne*, it is given me.

Except only when the pronoun in the third state is of the third person (*lui* or *leur*), or when the verb is in the imperative; for then the conjunctive of the fourth relation comes before that of the third: as,

*Vous* le *lui dites*, you tell it him *or* her. *Il* la *leur refuse*, he C refuses it to them. *Donnez-le-moi*, give it me. Whereas we say in the indic. *Il* me le *donne*, he gives it to me.

5°. *y* and *en* come after other pronouns, and immediately before the verb: as,

*Je vous les* y *enverrai*, I will send them to you there.

*Je ne vous* en *parle pas*, I don't speak to you of it, *or* of them.

And when *y* and *en* meet together, *y* comes before *en*; as,

*Je vous* y en *enverrai*, I will send you some there.

*Je ne vous y en ferai pas tenir*,

I will remit you none there, (money, *for instance.)*

6°. The pronouns governed of the verb come after it in this D following case (but in the same order as when they come before it):

When the verb is in the second persons, and first plur. of the imperative, without negative. Thus, tho' we say in the third persons, *Qu'il le fasse*, let him do it: *Qu'ils lui en parlent*, let them mention it to him; or in the other persons, with a negative,

*Ne nous y fions pas*, let us not trust to that;

*Ne lui en donnez pas*, do not give him any: yet we say in the first person plur. and the second persons, without negative, *Fions-nous-y*, let us trust to that. Donnez-*lui-en*, give him some.

With the negative we say, A

*Ne* les y *menez pas*, Don't carry them there.
*Ne* l y *menez pas*, Don't carry him there.
*Ne* nous y *menez pas*, Don't carry us there.
*Ne* m' y *menez pas*, Don't carry me there.
Ne m' y *envoyez pas*, Don't send me there.
*Ne* m' y *portez pas*, Don't carry me there.

Without the negative we say,

*Menez*-les- y, Carry them there.
*Menez*-l'- y, Carry him there.
*Menez* nous-y, Carry us there. B

But, with a pronoun of the first person singular, we say,

*Menez*-y-moi, Take me there.
*Envoyez*-y-moi, Send me there.
*Portez* -y-moi, Carry me there.

and never *Menez-moi-y*, nor *menez-m'y*, &c.

¶ However, for the sake of harmony, we say, *Conduisez-moi-là*, conduct me there; not *conduisez-y*, to avoid the repetition of *z* in two contiguous syllables.]

In sentences of Interrogation the conjunctive pronouns come also after the verb.

§ III. 1°. The several ways of asking questions in French are, C

1*st*, With the pronoun Interrogative *qui*, and *lequel*, as *Qui croit cela?* Who believes that? *Lequel des deux vous a plu?* Which of the two has pleased you?

2*dly*, With the adnoun or incomplete pronoun *quel*, and the noun of the subject of the question before the verb, as in the declarative form: as, *Quel homme seroit assez hardi pour*, &c. What man should be so bold as to, *&c.*

3*dly*, If the subject of the question is a pronoun personal, or the primitive demonstrative *ce*, it comes after the verb, if the tense is simple; or between the auxiliary and participle, if it is compound: as, *Est-ce votre livre?* Is it your book? D

*Avez-vous fait?* Have you done?

*Connoissez-vous Monsieur?* Do you know the Gentleman?

4*thly*, If the subject of the question is a noun or a pronoun, intermediate, the sentence begins with that noun or pronoun, then the verb, if the tense is simple, or the auxiliary, if it is compound, and moreover the conjunctive *il* or *elle*, *ils* or *elles*, or *on*, agreeing in gender and number with the subject: as,

*L'homme vient* il? Does the man come?

*La femme est*-elle *venue?* Is the woman come?

A *Les enfans peuvent*-ils *s'appliquer?* Can children apply themselves?

*Quelqu'un fait*-il *ce que vous faites*, or *Fait-on ce que vous faites?* Does any body do what you do?

*Personne ne fait-il cela?* Does nobody do that?

*5thly*, If the verb of the question is recipocral, the sentence begins with one of the two pronouns, if the subject is expressed by a pronoun; or with a noun and a pronoun, if it is expressed by a noun; and the other pronoun comes after the verb, or between the auxiliary and participle, according to the tense being either simple or compound: as,

B Vous *souvenez-vous de cela?* Do you remember that?

*Ma femme* se *repent*-elle *de sa faute?*

Does my wife repent her fault?

*Les matelots se sont-ils enrichis dans cette expéaition?*

Did the sailors grow rich in that expedition?

And if the verb of the question ends with a vowel, *t* must be added to it between two hyphens (*-t-*) in order to avoid the *hiatus*. Therefore write and pronounce *Aime-t-il*, does he love? *Va-t-elle*, does she go? and never *aime il, va elle.*

2°. The pronouns attending the verb keep the same order in the interrogative form, as in the declarative, as *Le ferai-je?* C shall I do it? *Le lui direz-vous?* will you tell it him? *Me le commandez-vous?* do you command it me? *Y en porterons-nous?* shall we carry some thither? *Ne vous l'a-t-il pas dit?* did he not tell it you?

It is to be noted, that it is usual in French, among polite well-bred people, and when we speak to one of a higher station, or to whom we show respect, to speak to them with the pronoun of the third person, as if we were speaking of somebody else. Thus, to ask you *how do you do*, well-bred people say

*Comment se porte Monsieur*, or *Madame?*
How does your honour do?
*Monsieur apprend-il le François?*
Do you learn French?
*Monsieur a-t-il voyagé en Italie?*
instead of *avez-vous voyagé*, &c.
D Have you travell'd to Italy?
*Sa Majesté l'ordonne-t-elle?*
Does your Majesty order it?
(or) *Si sa Majesté l'ordonne*,
If your Majesty orders it.

We have said, that when the question is asked with a pronoun personal of the first person, that pronoun comes after the verb thus, *suis-je?* am I? *entends-je?* Do I hear? But observe, 1st, that in verbs of the first conjugation, wherein the first person ends in *e* not sounded, that *e* is changed into *é* acute, before the pronoun, which ends also in *e* not sounded; as,

*Aimé-je?* do I love? *N'étudié-je-pas?* don't I study?

*2dly*, That no question can be asked in this manner with some verbs, especially these five, *mentir* to lie, *perdre* to lose, *rompre* to break, *sentir* to feel, *dormir* to sleep: so that we neither say:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Mentè-je,* | | *mens-je,* | do I lie? |
| *Perdè-je,* | | *perds-je,* | do I lose? |
| *Rompè-je,* | nor | *romps-je,* | do I break? |
| *Sentè-je,* | | *sens-je,* | do I feel? |
| *Dormè-je,* | | *dors-je,* | do I sleep? |

A

the former, because *é* acute cannot be used in this manner but with verbs of the first conjugation: and the latter *(mens-je)*, because it sounds too harsh, and can besides occasion some ambiguity in speech. Therefore, in the case of these verbs, the question must be asked after another manner: as, *Est-ce que je mens?* or *Croyez-vous que je mente?* Do you think that I lie? *Trouvez-vous que je rompe cela comme il faut?* Do you think that I break that as it should be? or speak without interrogation?

3*dly*, This way of asking a question *(Est-ce-que)* is of great use in French: but it is less used in order to be informed merely of any thing, which is the chief purpose of interrogations, B than to assure others that we need not be informed of it, or that the case is not as they think. As likewise when we don't expect a thing, or we fear lest it should happen, we show our surprise or fear by *Est-ce-que*. For instance, when I ask this question, *Pleut-it?* Does it rain? I only want to know whether it rains or no. But when I say *Est-ce qu'il pleut?* I besides show my surprise at it, which is thus englished: *It don't rain, does it?* Again, when I say, *A-t-il du jugement?* Has he any judgment? I want to be informed whether the person spoken of has any judgment or no. But by this other question, *Est-ce qu'il a du jugement?* I intimate that I know very well that he has no judgment.

By this question, *Viendra-t-il?* Will he come? I want to C know whether he will come or no: and by this other, *Est-ce qu'il viendra?* I show my surprise at, or fear of his coming.

Again, by this question, *Est-ce aujourd'hui fête?* Is this day a holy-day? I desire to be informed whether or no this is a holy-day; but by this other, *Est-ce que c'est aujourd'hui fête?* I show my wonder and surprise at this being a holy-day.

Sometimes, also, this way of speaking is used to deter people from believing what is said; as, *Est-ce que je joue?* which is as much as *Je ne joue point*, and cannot be (I think) properly englished thus, *Do I game?* or *Am I a gamester?* but D (if I am not very much mistaken) thus, *Who games? not I.*

¶ This way of asking a question (*Est-ce-que*) is hardly used but with the first person singular of the present and preterite tenses in the indicative mood of some verbs wherein the simple way is too harsh, and never with the other persons; unless we want to show surprise or fear. Therefore never say in France, as a great many people do in England, speaking to a hosier for instance, *est-ce que vous vendez des bas de soie?* do you sell silk-stockings? but only *vendez-vous des bas de soie?* for the hosier, instead of answering; yes, Sir; would laugh, and answer you: Why not, Sir?

We never say in French *parlè-je* do I speak? with an *è* grave, as some people do: but *parlé-je? with an é acute.*]

A 4*thly*, The same way of asking a question with a negative (*n'est-ce pas que*) signifies always, that we take that for certain, which is the subject of the question, and want only to be confirmed in it, or to have it approved by others; and *n'est-ce pas* may equally well come at the beginning of the sentence with *que*, or at the end with a comma before; as,

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *N'est-ce pas qu'il pleut?* | or | *Il pleut, n'est-ce pas?* It rains, don't it? |
| *N'est-ce pas qu'il a du jugement?* | | *Il a du jugement, n'est-ce pas?* He has judgment, ha'n't he? |
| *N'est-ce pas qu'il viendra?* | | *Il viendra, n'est-ce pas?* He will come, won't he? |
| B *N'est-ce pas qu'il joue?* | | *Il joue, n'est-ce pas?* He games, don't he? |
| *N'est-ce pas qu'il fait froid?* | | *Il fait froid, n'est-ce pas?* It is cold, i'n't it? |

Whereas, by these questions.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Ne pleut-il pas?* | Don't it rain? | we only want to be informed of what we ask. |
| *N'a-t-il pas de jugement?* | Has he no judgment? | |
| *Ne viendra-t-il pas?* | Won't he come? | |
| *Ne joue-t-il pas?* | I'n't he a gamester? | |
| C *Ne fait il pas froid?* | I'n't it cold? | |

*It will not be amiss, when the scholar has learnt so far, to make him conjugate every day a regular verb with an* Interrogation, *then with a* Negative, *then both with an* Interrogation *and* Negative *together, and with the particles* en *and* y; *which will both make him more ready in the conjugations, and render the dependence of those particles upon the verb more familiar to him.*

Examples.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Je parle,* I speak. | *J'en envoie,* I send some. |
| *Parlé-je?* do I speak. | *Je n'en envoie pas,* I send none. |
| *Je ne parle pas,* I don't speak. | *J'y en porte,* I carry some thither. |
| *Ne parlé-je pas?* don't I speak. | *Je n'y en porte pas,* I carry none thither. |
| *J'en parle,* I speak of it. | *Y en porté-je,* do I carry any there. |
| *En parlé-je?* do I speak of it. | *N'y en porté-je pas,* don't I carry some there. |
| *Je n'en parle pas,* I don't speak of it. | *Vous y en porterai-je?* shall I carry, &c. |
| D *N'en parlé-je pas?* don't I speak of it. | *Ne vous y en porterai je pas?* shall I not carry, &c. |

§ IV. The Pronouns Conjunctives, whether governing, or governed of the verb, that is, whether its subject or object, are sometimes repeated, and sometimes not.

1*st*, These Conjunctives, *je, tu, nous, vous,* are repeated before each verb, when the verbs are in different tenses; as,

*Je dis &* je dirai *toujours*, I say, and will always say.

*Nous avons parlé &* nous *parlerons encore pour lui*, We have spoken for him, and will speak again.

When the tenses are the same, they need not be repeated: as, A
*Je pense & dis qu'il a bien fait,* or *Je pense & je dis qu'il,* &c.
I think and say that he has done very well.
*Nous l'avons vu & touché,* we have seen and touched it.

The pronouns of the third person, *il, elle*; *ils, elles,* need not be repeated in common conversation, tho' the tenses vary: as,
*Il n'a jamais rien valu, & ne vaudra jamais rien,*
He never was good for any thing, and will always be good for nothing.
*Elle est toujours fille, & la sera toute sa vie,* or *elle la sera,* &c.
She is a maid still, and will be so as long as she lives. (*See* page 249, C.) B

2*dly,* All conjunctives governing are repeated, when in the same sentence one passes from the affirmative to the negative, and so reciprocally: as likewise when the second verb is preceded by one of these conjunctions, *mais* but, *même* even, *cependant* yet, *néanmoins* nevertheless, *ainsi* so, *aussi* therefore, *ou* or, and *que* (standing for a conjunction): as,
*Il l'aime &* il *ne veut pas en convenir,*
He loves her, and won't own it.
*Il le dit,* mais il *ne le pense pas,*
He says so, but he don't think so. C
*Elle n'en croit rien, &* cependant elle *ne veut pas l'épouser,*
She believes nothing on't, and yet she won't marry him.
*Il le fait, &* même il *s'en vante,* (or) aussi il *en convient,*
He does it, and even boasts of it, *or* and therefore owns it.
*Nous le trouverons,* ou nous *ne le trouverons pas,*
We shall find him, or not.
*Lorsque vous ferez votre devoir, &* que vous *vous comporterez bien,*
When you will do your duty, and behave well.

3*dly,* All conjunctives governed are repeated before their D verbs: as,
*Il me prie* & me *conjure,* He desires and entreats me.
*Je vous dis &* vous *déclare,* I say and declare to you.
Except when the second verb is of the same signification, and composed of the first, or denotes only repetition of its action: as,
*Il ne fait que nous dire & redire la même chose,*
He does nothing but tell us the same thing over again.
*Elle le fait & défait,* or *refait quand bon lui semble,*
She does it and undoes, *or* does it again when she thinks fit.

A *The Use and Construction of the Pronoun Indeterminate* on.

§ V. This pronoun (formed, by corruption, of the word *homme*) is called Indeterminate, because it is used to speak in general, without specifying any person particular; it is of a very extensive use.

1°. *on* is rendered into English several ways. Sometimes by *one*, as, *on croiroit*, one would think; sometimes by the pronoun of the third pers. plur. *they*, or that of the first, *we*; as *on* B *dit*, they say; *on apprend*, we hear; sometimes also by these indeterminate words, *people*, *men*, *a body*, &c. as *on s'imagine*, people *or* men think: but *on* is more generally and better englished by converting the verb from the active voice into the passive; as, *on croit*, it is thought.

2°. Now the Passive voice, both in French and English, is expressed by the verb substantive (*être* to be), through all its tenses, joined to the participle of a verb active. For instance, the participle of *to hold*, being *held*, if you put *to be* before it, you have the verb passive *to be held*, and all the tenses of the same, in this manner:

| | *Active voice.* | | *Passive voice.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| C | *Inf.* To hold, | *tenir.* | To be held, | *être tenu.* |
| | *Pref.* I hold, | *Je tiens.* | I am held, | *Je suis tenu.* |
| | *Imp.* I did hold, | *Je tenois.* | I was held, | *J'etois tenu.* |
| | *Pret.* I held, | *Je tins.* | I was held, | *Je fus tenu.* |
| | *Fut.* I shall *or* will hold, | *Je tiendrai.* | I sh. *&c.* be held, | *Je serai tenu.* |
| | *Cond.* I should, *&c.* hold, | *Je tiendrois.* | I should, *&c.* | *Je serois tenu.* |
| | *Comp.* I have held, | *J'ai tenu*, &c. | I have, *&c.* | *J'ai été tenu*, &c. |

3°. In order, therefore, to put into English a sentence with the particle *on*, if the French verb governs no noun, or is followed by *que*, you need only English *on* by it, and convert the active state of the verb into the passive, thus: *on croit* it is D thought, *on avoit dit que*, &c. it had been reported that, *&c.* Sometimes the English pronoun is left out: as, *comme on a déjà dit*, as has been said already; in which sentence *it* is necessarily understood.

4°. If the French verb governed of *on* is a verb active, attended by a noun or pronoun as its object, that noun or pronoun must be made the subject of the verb in English, and the verb active converted into the passive state, and put in the same tense as in French: as,

*On tint hier un conseil à Whitehall,*
Yesterday a council was held at Whitehall.

*un conseil* (a council) being the noun that expresses the object A
of the French verb, must be that of the subject in English: *tint* (held) being the preterite of the verb active, must be changed into the same tense of the passive state, *fut tenu* (was held) Again;

*On le tiendra au palais de St. James,* it will be held at St. James's.
*Le conseil qu'on tint hier,* the council that was held yesterday.

5° If the verb governed of *on* is not immediately followed by a noun or pronoun, but by another verb in the infinitive, then it is the noun or pronoun, the object of the second verb, that must be made the subject in English, and the second verb active converted into a passive state: as,

*On doit tenir aujourd'hui un conseil à Whitehall,* B
This day a council is to be held at Whitehall.
*On doit le tenir à St. James,* it is to be held at St. James's.
*Le conseil qu'on doit tenir demain,*
The council that is to be held to-morrow.

In those instances *on* is the *subject* coming before the verbs *tint, tiendrai,* and *doit:* and the pronouns *le* and *que,* governed of the same verbs as *object.* are made the subject in English.

¶ The manner of translating *on* into English by *they,* is very improper; unless *on* be the consequent of an *antecedent,* in the plural number, expressed before; as,

*Hier les Communes s'assemblèrent,* or *le Parlement s'assembla; on délibéra d'abord,* &c. The House of Commons, *or,* The Parliament met yesterday: *they* C
deliberated at first, &c.

Every where else, the safest is to turn *on* into the passive voice.]

6°. On the other hand, as the passive voice is very seldom used in French (for the expressing of which we make use of the particle *on* with the active voice), in order to put into French such sentences as are expressed by the verb substantive *to be,* and the participle of another verb, one need only consider the noun that expresses the subject of the verb in English; if that subject is the particle *it,* (not relating to any thing before), *it* must be rendered by *on,* and the verb converted from its passive state into the active, as *it is thought,* on croit. D

7°. If the verb has a noun or pronoun relative for its subject, after changing the passive state into the active, one must give it *on* for its subject, and the English subject for its object: as,

*Yesterday a council was held at Whitehall,*
On tint hier un conseil à Whitehall.
*It is to be held at St. James's,* on doit le tenir à St. James.
*The council that was held yesterday,* le conseil qu'on tint hier.

A In which instances the verb passive *was held*, and *to be held*, is changed into TINT and TENIR governed of the subject ON, and the words *a council*, *it*, and *that*, expressing the subject in English, are made the object of the French verb.

¶ Which evidently shows that the only difference between a phrase passive and a phrase active, is, that, in the latter, the object of the action is governed of the verb, whereas it is its leader in the former.

*L'on* is the same pronoun as *on*, which takes sometimes the article *le*, but for better sound's sake only; as will appear from the following observations:

1*st*, In the beginning of a speech or sentence, *on* must be used, and *l'on* never.

2*dly*, In the middle of a sentence after a word ending with a consonant, or
B *e* not sounded: as, *Celui dont* on *parle*, he that is spoken of; *Quand il parle* on *écoute avec attention*, when he speaks every body listens attentively.

On the other hand *l'on* is used, 1*st*, after all words ending with a vowel, except *e* not sounded; as *En cette extrémité* l'on *ne sauroit faire autre chose*, in this necessity nothing else can be done. ¶ However, *l'* might be left out, because there is naturally a little pause after *extrémité*, which would even require a comma.]

Nevertheless we say *si on le veut*, and not *si l'on le veut*, if they will have it so: *si on le* offending less the ear than *si l'on le*.

2*dly*, After *&*, *et*, and the particle *ou*, as likewise other words ending in *ou*: as, *Voilà ce que je crois*, & l'on *ne me persuadera jamais le contraire*, that's what I think, and nobody shall ever persuade me to the contrary; *C'est un lieu où* l'on *vit à bon marché*, it is a place very cheap to live in.

3*dly*, When the pronoun *on* comes after *que*, one must consider the other words that make up the sentence; for whenever the word coming before *que* ends also in *que*, or there are already, or upon the whole will be too many *que*'s in the sentence (this particle being also of great use in French), one must
C then make use of *qu'on*, and not *que l'on*: as,

*Il remarque* qu'on *ne l'a jamais fait auparavant*, he observes that it has never been done before; *Il n'est que trop vrai que depuis le temps* qu'on *a commencé*, &c. and not *que l'on* because of the great number of *que*'s, it is but too true that since they begun, *&c.*

4*thly*, For the same reason we make use of *que l'on*, and not *qu'on*, before verbs beginning with *com* or *con*: as, *Que l'on* commence, let them begin; *Que l'on* conduise *Monsieur à*, &c. let them take the gentleman to, *&c.* But we say, *Qu'on le conduise* let them take him, *&c.* and not *que l'on le conduise*, because of the pronoun between *qu'on* and the verb, *l'on* must never be used before a word beginning with *l*.

8°. *On* must always be repeated in the sentence before every verb of which it is the subject, and must continue the same without any variation, and notwithstanding the aforesaid obser-
D vations concerning *on* and *l'on*: as,

*On le loue, on le blâme, on le menace: on emploie avec lui la douceur & la rigueur: & malgré tout cela on n'en sauroit venir à bout.*

They commend, they blame, and threaten him; gentle and severe means are used, and for all that he cannot be reclaimed.

In this instance the first four *on*'s are conformable to the rules, but after *tout cela* we should say *l'on*, if it were not for *the first on*, which determines the others throughout the sentence.

Observe, that it is usual with French Authors, when they mention themselves, to make use of *on* and *nous* instead of *je*, out of modesty, and not to name their ownselves with the pronoun of the first pers. sing. or not to repeat it too often. A

¶ *On* is sometimes used for *je* and *nous*. Speaking to a friend whom we have not seen for a long while, we say in a familiar style: *Il y a long-temps qu'on ne vous a vu*, we have not seen you for this great while.]

¶ *On*, though of itself a masculine singular, and always governing its verb in the singular number, yet admits of an adjective feminine, when it refers to a woman; as,

*Quand* on *aime bien son mari*, on *souffre de se voir séparée de lui*; on *est* impatiente *de recevoir de ses nouvelles*; One who loves her husband really, suffers in being separated from him, and is impatient to hear of him.

When *on* refers to a plurality, it may be reputed a collective word, which requires the adjective or pronoun to be in the plural, though the verb remain in the singular number; as, B

On *se battit en* désespérés, *they* fought like desperate men.

On *se méfioit* les uns des autres, *they* mistrusted each other.

In the same manner as *vous*, a pronoun plural, being used for *tu*, requires the adjective and participle in the singular, though the verb be in the plural; as, *Vous êtes fort* obligeant, *you* are very obliging. *Vous êtes* venu, *you* are come.]

¶ For the same reason, there is no fault of concord in the following sentence:

*Il est impossible de n'être pas émue, quand* on *voit son mari traité d'une manière si outrageante*; it is impossible not to be affected, when one sees her husband so contumeliously used.

But this is not the case with the supplying pronoun *le*, signifying *so*, as will be seen hereafter, page 247.]

9°. *On* has for its relations *soi, de soi, à soi, se.*

*Soi* is used in sentences, the subject whereof is a noun, taken C in an universal indefinite sense, or a pronoun indeterminate: as,

*L'homme n'aime que soi*; Man loves himself only.

*Chacun agit pour soi*; Every body acts for himself.

*Qui n'est bon que pour* soi, *n'est pas digne de vivre*;

He who minds nobody but himself, does not deserve to live.

Especially with inanimate objects; for the pronoun *lui* is used with animate objects only, except in few cases: as,

*Le vice est odieux de soi*; Vice is hateful of itself.

*La terre est de soi fertile*; The earth is fruitful of itself.

Tho' we can as well use *elle* instead of *soi* with nouns femi- D nine: as,

*La terre renferme en soi*, or *en elle, toutes les semences*;

The earth contains in itself all seeds.

But if the noun is taken in a particular definite sense, *lui* is used instead of *soi*: as,

*C'est un homme qui n'est bon que pour* lui, *& qui parle de* lui *sans cesse*;

'Tis a man who minds himself only, and is constantly speaking of himself.

Except in some sentences like this, wherein *soi* refers to something out of us;

A *Il ne porte jamais d'argent sur* soi; He never has money about him.

*Se* oneself (the 4th state of *on*) is chiefly used with verbs *reflected*, as we have seen in the second part: but it is besides used with verbs *impersonal*, which will be considered, when we treat of those verbs.

*Soi* is sometimes subject, but then it is only the repetition of another indefinite subject, put in opposition, and it must come immediately after the verb, and be attended by the word *même:* as, *Chacun peut soi-même faire son bonheur;* every body can make his own happiness.

*Soi-même* can never be used in the plural, though *soi* can with a preposition: as *Ces choses sont bonnes de soi;* These things are good of themselves. But we do not say *Ces choses sont bonnes de soi-même.*

B If the pronoun relates to animate things, we say *eux-mêmes* or *elles-mêmes;* as, *Vos filles devroient prendre plus de soin d'elles-mêmes;* your daughters should take more care of themselves.

10°. *Même* is a sort of pronoun, though not of itself, but when it is joined to pronouns personal disjunctives, pronominal adnouns relative, and other nouns indeterminate; in which last case *même* denotes, in a more special manner, the person or thing spoken of: as,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *moi-même,* | myself, | *nous-mêmes,* | ourselves. |
| *toi-même,* | thyself, | *vous-mêmes,* | yourselves. |
| *lui-même,* | himself, | *eux-mêmes,* } | themselves. |
| *elle-même,* | herself, | *elles-mêmes,* } | |
| C *soi-même,* | oneself, | *la vertu même,* | virtue itself. |
| *l'homme même,* | man himself. | | |

¶ *Soi-même* widely differs from *lui-même;* for instance: *Il se loue soi-même,* he praises his own person; *il se loue, lui-même,* he is his own trumpeter.]

11°. *Même* is besides an adnoun signifying *the same,* with the article, thus: *le même, la même, les mêmes,* relating to some noun expressed or understood: as, *le même homme,* the same man.

*Même* is also an adverb, answering to either of these, *even, also, nay:* as, *Je crois même qu'on lui a fait son procès;* I even think, *or* nay I think that he has been tried.

When *même* is an adverb, it is sometimes spelt with an *s* at the end, but only in poetry; authors having then regard to the style to make it more fluent and less harsh.

D The adverb *de même* (so, likewise, after the same manner) is always spelt without *s;* likewise the adverb *à même;* as, *Buvez à même le pot;* drink out of the mug.

*The Use and Construction of the Pronoun Relative* le.

§ V*. 1°. This pronoun stands not only for nouns, as it is common to all pronouns personal, but also for whole sentences.

*Le, en, y,* are chiefly used instead of the pronouns, *lui, elle, eux,* which (as we shall see in the next section) cannot always be

said of irrational creatures, and relate to the person, thing, or A
place spoken of. *Le* is rendered into English by *it* or *so*, or a whole sentence expressed or understood: *en* by *some, any*; *of him, of her, of it, of them; for him, for her, for it, for them; with him, with her, with it, with them; about him, about her, it, them; thence, from thence;* or a whole sentence: and *y*, by the same pronouns personal with other prepositions, as will appear in these following examples:

¶ *En* implies the preposition *de*; *y*, the preposition *à*; and *le*, no preposition.]

*Vous êtes le maître, & moi je ne* le *suis pas;* } *le* stands for
You are the master, and I am not, (*or*) I am not *so.* } *le maître*
*Ils sont heureux, & nous ne* le *sommes pas;* } and *heu-* B
They are happy, and we are not, (*or*) are not *so.* } *reux.*

*Newton vous plaît, vous* en *parlez toujours;* } *en* stands for
You like Newton, you always speak *of him.* } *de* Newton,
*Ce sont des orgueilleuses, ne m'*en *parlez point;* } & *de ces or-*
They are proud creatures, don't tell me *of them.* } *gueilleuses.*

*Comme elle ne vouloit pas se taire, il prit un bâton, & lui* en *donna un coup;*
As she would not hold her tongue, he took a stick, and gave her a blow *with it.*

*Quand un homme est mort, on n'*y *pense plus;* } *y* stands for C
When a man is dead, *he* is no more thought *of.* } *à cet homme,*
*Ce sont des folies, ne vous* y *fiez pas;* } and *à ces*
These are foolish things, don't trust *to them.* } *folies.*

In which instances *le, en, y* stand for nouns of both genders and numbers. *en* in the fifth instance stands besides for a preposition and a noun *(with a stick)*.

*On ne me trompe point, je ne puis* le *croire,* or *je n'*en *puis rien croire.*
They don't deceive me, I cannot believe *it,* or, I can believe nothing *of it.*

*Nous fumes maltraitées, & nous* le *sommes encore.*
We were ill used, and are *so* still (women speak).

*On a tout tenté pour faire passer le Bill, mais on n'*y *a pu réussir.*
Every thing has been tried to make the Bill pass, but they could never succeed.

*On* le *dit, mais je n'*y *ajoute pas foi.*
They say *so,* but I give no credit *to it.*

In which instances *le, en, y,* stand for
*Je ne puis croire qu'*on veuille me tromper;
*Nous sommes encore* maltraitées;

A *On n'a pu réussir* à faire passer le Bill;
*Je n'ajoute pas foi* à ce qu'on dit.

These pronouns express always the object or end of the verb. They are used both for things and persons: *en* and *y* are indeclinable; *le* is generally so too, except in these two cases.

*Le* is declinable, 1*st*, whenever it relates to a noun: as *Est-ce-là votre pensée? Pouvez-vous douter que ce ne* la *soit?* Is that your thought? Can you doubt that it is, *or* but it is? wherein *la* relates to, and stands for *votre pensée.*

*Etes-vous Madame une telle! Oui, je* la *suis,*
Are you mistress such a one? Yes, I am.
*Etes-vous les filles de Mr. A? Oui, nous* les *sommes,*
Are you the daughters of Mr. A? *Yes, we are.*
*Sont-ce là vos chevaux, vos outils? Oui, ce* les *sont,*
Are these your horses, *or* tools? Yes, it is, *or* they are.

B If the question is about rational creatures, we answer with the pronoun personal: as, *Sont-ce là vos gens? Oui, ce sont* eux? Are these your people? Yes, it is they: *Sont-ce là les filles de M. A? Oui, ce sont elles.* Are these Mr. A's daughters? Yes, it is they. But with irrational and inanimate objects, we always use the pronoun *les.*

2*dly*, *le* is declinable, but in the singular only, in these and such like instances spoken by women: *Je suis malade & je* la *serai long-temps*, I am sick, and shall be *so* long: *Je fus effrayée & je* la *suis encore*, I was affrighted, and am *so* still.

But those sentences must be spoken by women themselves, and therefore expressed with the pronoun of the first person; for with any other pronoun tho' women are spoken of, the pronoun relative is indeclinable. Therefore we don't say *Elle est malade & elle* la *sera long-temps*, but *elle le sera*, &c. she is sick, and will be so long.

In all other cases, that is, when the pronoun supplying relates to an adnoun, or many adnouns together, it is indeclinable: as,

C *Elle étoit jalouse de son autorité, & elle* le *devoit être,*
She was jealous of her authority, and ought to have been *so.*
*Nous avons été malades, & nous* le *sommes encore,*
We have been sick, and are *so* still, (women speak.)

The French Academy and the best Grammarians do not admit of that overnice distinction for a woman who speaks of herself, and say that, in any case, *le* is indeclinable when it relates to an adjective, and declinable only when to a noun.]

¶ A very judicious grammarian, and particular friend of mine, Mr. *Satis.* in his notes upon *Holder's Chambaud's* Grammar, has quoted the above remark, but at the same time expressed his disapprobation. His great argument is the law of concord, and *Madame de Sévigné* his chief supporter.

But 1°. Why should not the law of concord respect the number, as well as the gender? In this phrase: *Ils sont heureux, & nous ne le sommes pas:* Mr. *S.* does not object to *le* being indeclinable; it would be the same, if the first
D member of the sentence were to run thus: *Elles sont heureuses.* The truth is that *le* is indeclinable because it supplies an adjective; as will be seen hereafter.

2°. As to *Madame de Sévigné*, her authority has certainly great weight in point of elegance and diction; but the very reason he alledged to justify her false concord, rather invalidates her testimony. "*Je croirois, dit-elle, que j'ai de la barbe au menton, si je disois, je* le *suis.*" I would readily think, said she, that my chin is furnished with a beard, if I were to say, *je le suis.*" This answer is a mere sophism, which borders too much upon self-conceit, and of course renders her authority exceptionable. The French Academy, though perfectly aware of Madame de Sévigné's justly deserved fame, yet, in spite of her animadversion, gave their verdict against the declinability of *le* when it *relates to* an adjective; and certainly most of the members of that corps, as *a d'Olivet*, a *Duclos*, a *Marmontel*, so highly commendable for their learning *had not* forfeited their share of common sense and natural logic.

Therefore the safest is to abide by their decision, and say: A

*Je suis malade, & je* le *serai long-temps.*
*Je suis mal-heureuse, & je* le *serai toujours.*
*Je fus effrayée, & je* le *suis encore.*
*Vous êtes enrhumé, & je* le *suis aussi.* (a woman speaks.)
*Elles sont heureuses, & nous ne* le *sommes pas.* (women speak.

The reasons upon which the decision of the French Academy is grounded, are, in my humble opinion, as follows:

1o. *Le*, being of itself an article, and becoming a pronoun merely by accident, that is, through the ellipsis of the substantive which it pointed out when an article, cannot assume its declinable form but when it relates to a substantive, because substantives are the only words which of themselves have a gender; in all other cases *le* must be clad in the livery of the masculine singular; a gender devolved to words which have none of their own, nearly in the same manner as *il* impersonal resembles *il* personal, that is, assumes the dress of the masculine singular: as, *il arrive*, it happens; *il arrive*, he arrives. B

2o. The phrases considered before, and the like, are never construed but with a verb substantive: as, *être, paroître, devenir*, &c.

3o. In such phrases, the supplying pronoun *le* supplies their predicate only, and has nothing to do with their subject, either virtual or actual.

4o. The predicate of such phrases is always either a mere adjective, or an adjective phrase, that is, a whole sentence, or a substantive used adjectively.

Now, when *le* supplies a mere adjective, it must remain indeclinable; because an adjective has no gender nor number of its own, but only jointly with a substantive, to which it is subservient, and in the livery of which it is clad.

When *le* supplies a whole sentence, it must, by all means, be indeclinable, because a sentence has no gender nor number of its own.

But when *le* supplies a substantive, it must be observed whether that substantive be used as a denomination or a qualification. C

If it be used as a qualification, it has the true force of an adjective, and is preceded by no article; consequently *le*, its representative, is indeclinable; as in this phrase:

*Elle est encore* fille *à son âge, & il y apparence qu'elle* le *sera toute sa vie*; at her age she is *a maid* still, and very likely she will remain *so* for all her life.

If the substantive be used as a denomination, it preserves its true force, and then is preceded by an article, which of course is clad in its livery; consequently *le*, its representative, must appear in the same dress: as in this phrase:

*Etes-vous* la fille *de Mr. A? Oui, je* la *suis.* Are you Mr. A.'s *daughter*? Yes, I am.

So true is this assertion, that when the predicate is a substantive masculine, *le*, its representative, wears its livery, though the subject of the sentence be feminine: as in these phrases:

*Mademoiselle A. est* le bijon *de la famille: oui, elle* le *seroit, si elle étoit aussi aimable qu'elle est jolie.* Miss A. is the *jewel* of the family: yes, she would be D *so*, if she were as amiable as she is pretty.

*Mademoiselle B. est* le *plus riche* parti *de la province: oui, elle* le *sera, si son oncle vient à mourir sans enfans;* Miss B. is *the* richest *match* in the province: yes, she will be *so*, if her uncle should happen to die without issue. And likewise in the plural:

*Mesdemoiselles B. sont* les *deux plus riches* partis *de la province: oui, elles* les *seroient si leur oncle venoit*, &c.

And in this likewise, the subject of which is masculine, and the predicate feminine:

*Il étoit* la consolation *de ses parens, & il la seroit encore, si*, &c. He was *the comfort* of his parents, and he would be so still, if, &c.

I confess that such phrases, though grammatically right, present, at the first aspect, a kind of harshness, which a good writer knows how to avoid, by taking another turn.

A I must beg the reader's pardon, for having expatiated so long upon this matter; but having been in some measure challenged, I thought it my duty to give all the elucidation in my power. The error of *Chambaud*, Madame *de Sévigné*, and Mr. *Satis*, proceeds from their having attended more to the subject than to the predicate or attribute of the sentence.]

2°. ¶ *En* is usually the second state of the pronoun relative *le*, that is to say, always implies the preposition *de;* therefore it generally stands for a noun construed with that preposition; even for a noun taken in a limited sense, and governed of the verb as its object; for instance:

Whenever something is spoken, that has been named in the
B first part of the sentence, or in the question which is answered to, instead of repeating the name of that thing, the particle *en* is used, if that name has already been construed with *de:* as,

*Si vous voulez voir* de *beaux tableaux, il* en *a;* if you wish to see fine pictures, he has some.

*En* stands for *de beaux tableaux* (limited or partitive sense).

It is the same if the words of the second phrase require *de* or imply it: as,
*J'ai été voir le Panorama: Nous* en *parlions dans le moment* (2d state);
I went to see the Panorama: We were just speaking of it.
*Vous avez vu le Panorama;* en *êtes-vous content?*
You have seen the Panorama; have you been pleased with it?
C *En* is used because we say, *parler de, être content de.*
As also in this phrase wherein *de* is implied: *La patience est une grande vertu; Oui, c'*en *est une grande;* Patience is a great virtue; yes, it is a great one. *En* stands for *des vertus*, and the answering phrase is elliptical, viz. *c'est une grande vertu* des vertus.]

*En* refers also to the *place:* as *En venez-vous? Oui j'en viens;* Do you come from thence? (a place mentioned before.) Yes, I come from that place.

Moreover *en* is used through exaggeration, as in this phrase, *Je n'*en *puis plus*, I am quite gone; and others like, which are inserted in my Dialogues and Dictionary.

3°. The particle *y* relates to Places, Persons, and Things,
D considered as a Condition, State, Disposition, Obligation or Necessity, under which one is; the Subject or Matter which one applies oneself to; and the End one aims at; in all which acceptations it is rendered into English, by *there, thither,* or *within* (when it has a reference to place), or by the pronouns *it* or *them,* with one of these prepositions, *at, by, for, in, of, to, with:* as,

*C'est une belle charge, il* y *aspiroit depuis long-temps;*
It is a fine place, he aimed *at it* a great while ago.
*Il l'a fait, mais il n'*y *gagnera rien;*
He has done it, but he will get nothing by it.

*Il n'aime pas sa profession, il n'y est pas propre:* A
He does not like his calling *or* business, he is not fit *for it.*
*L'affaire dont vous parlez mérite bien qu'on* y *songe;*
The affair you are speaking of is well worth thinking *of.*
*Il aime son devoir, il s'*y *applique entièrement;*
He loves his duty, he is entirely applied *to it.*
*Il s'est engagé dans une étrange affaire, il n'*y *réussira pas;*
He is engaged in an odd sort of affair, he will not succeed *in it.*

I have said that when *y* and *en* meet together, *y* goes first: but *en* is then a pronoun; for when it is a preposition (in which case it is never used with verbs, but before their gerunds) it B goes before *y;* as, *En y allant,* by the way, *or* when I go by.

¶ *En* may refer to persons: but *y* very seldom does, and never hardly, except in giving an answer; for instance, having spoken of a man, we may say very properly, *Je n'en fais point de cas;* I have no esteem for him.

But in this phrase, He is an honest man, court him; we should say *c'est un honnête homme, attachez-vous à lui;* and by no means, *attachez-vous-y;* (which phrase would be very proper in speaking of any thing, as a science, an art, &c.) In this likewise; I know that man, I will not trust him; *je connois cet homme-là, je ne veux point me fier à lui.* (*Je ne m'y fie pas,* savours too much of a proverb.)

Whereas to this phrase, Mr. A. is your friend, you should think of him; *M. A. est votre ami, vous devriez penser à lui;* the answer may be given thus, *oui, j'*y *penserai;* yes, I will; or to this: *Pensez-vous à votre ami?* Are you thinking of your friend? *Oui, j'*y *pense;* Yes, I am.

However, in this phrase: When a man is dead, he is no longer thought of: C *quand un homme est mort, on n'*y *pense plus;* y may be used, because the phrase presents an indefinite sense; but it would be improper, if the sense were determinate; and you should say in this phrase: Mrs. B. is dead; *Madame B. est morte:* you no longer think of her; *vous ne pensez plus à elle;* or in this, My friend is dead, I think of him every day; *mon ami est mort, je pense* à lui *tous les jours;* the expression *j'y pense* would imply another meaning, *viz.* his *or* her death.

Moreover *y* is used in some particular phrases, which it is difficult to reduce to rules, with respect to the Genius of the English tongue; but which are inserted in my Dialogues and Dictionary.

## *Particular Observations upon the Construction of the Pronouns Personal of the third Person,* il, lui, elle.

§ VI. 1°. The pronouns *il, ils; elle, elles; le, la, les:* either governing, or being governed of a verb, are indifferently used D for all sorts of objects, rational and irrational, animate or inanimate. Therefore we say,

speaking of
- a Rock, *Il est escarpé;* it is stiff
- a Mountain, *Elle est haute;* it is high.
- Trees and Meadows.
  - *Ils sont fleuris;* they are in blossom.
  - *Je le ferai couper;* I will get it cut down.
  - *Il faut les couper;* they must be cut down.

A But when the same pronouns attend the verb *être* to be, the pronoun relative indeclinable *le* must be used, in speaking of irrational and inanimate things. Thus, in answer to this question,

*Est-ce-là la montagne dont vous parliez?*
Is that the mountain that you were speaking of?
We say *ce l'est* it is it, (or) that's it; not *c'est elle.*
*Est-ce-là votre livre? Oui ce l'est,* and never *c'est lui.*
Is that your book? Yes, it is.

2°. *Il, ils; elle, elles;* are used through all their states, when objects are personified, and one attributes to them what is attributed to persons; which the French frequently do in B speaking of virtues and vices: as,

*L'amour-propre est captieux: c'est* lui *qui nous séduit; de* lui *viennent la plupart de nos maux; & ce n'est qu'à* lui *qu'il faut s'en prendre.*

Self-love is deceitful: *It* seduces us; from *it* most of our evils proceed: and upon *it* only we must lay the blame of them.

*La vertu est précieuse; d'*elle *seule nous devons attendre de véritables biens: c'est à* elle *que nous devons notre vraie* C *gloire; & c'est pour* elle *qu'il faut sacrifier nos soins.*

Virtue is precious: from *it* alone true blessings ought to be expected: to *it* we owe our true glory; and for it our cares must be sacrificed.

But,

3°. Usage, the only Master of the Rules in point of Languages, and the only rule of speaking properly, has, as it were, consecrated the other states of that pronoun *(lui, leur, de lui, à elle,* &c.) to such odd ways of construction, as are impossible to be reduced to rules, and can be learnt only by use. Thus speaking of inanimate things, we must sometimes use *lui* and *leur,* and sometimes we must not, tho' speaking of the same things. Thus we say of a sword, *Je* lui *dois la vie;* I owe my life *to it* (because *épée* sword, is personified); but it is not so D in the following phrase, and we must say:

J'y *ai fait mettre une nouvelle garde*; I have got a new hilt put to it; not *Je lui ai fait mettre.*
Again we say of mineral waters,
*Je* leur *suis redevable de ma santé;*
I am indebted to them for my health (they are personified); but we say,
*On* y *a fait de beaux réservoirs;*
Fine reservoirs have been built *for them;* not *on leur a fait.*

The conjunctives *lui* and *leur* are generally said of animate A
things, as horses, birds, and other living creatures: as,

speaking of { a bird, *Coupez*-lui *les ailes*, cut his wings.
{ chickens, *Donnez*-leur *à manger*, give them to eat.

*However, the practice of these Constructions is so much the easier to learn, as they don't extend to a great many cases, which I have taken care to insert in my Exercises.*

4°. The disjunctive pronouns *lui* and *elle*, *eux* and *elles*, governed by a preposition, can never be said at all of irrational and inanimate creatures. Thus we don't say *D'abord on plaça le poteau*, (or *la poutre*) *& après* lui (*or* elle) *une barre de fer*; but B

*D'abord on plaça le poteau*, or *la poutre*, *&* ensuite *une barre de fer*;

They first placed the post, *or* beam, and then (after it) an iron-bar.

Therefore in those cases, to remove the difficulty, one must make use of an adverb, whose signification comprehends, and answers to that of both the preposition and pronoun. Thus we say:

*Prenez ce cheval, & montez* dessus; not *sur lui*.

Take that horse, and mount *or* ride him.

*Ouvrez ce cabinet, & mettez-vous* dedans; not *dans lui*.

Open that closet and get in.

*Ils étoient* à l'entour; not *autour de lui*. C

They were round it (speaking of a tree, for instance).

5°. These following, being both prepositions and adverbs according as they are or are not followed by a noun or pronoun, when any of them meet with such a pronoun which can't be said of inanimate things, one need only suppress the pronoun, and the word which was a preposition becomes thereby an adverb.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *à côté,* | aside, by. | *dessous,* | underneath. |
| *à couvert,* | sheltered. | *au dessous,* | below. |
| *à l'abri,* | under shelter. | *par-dessous,* | under. |
| *en deçà,* | on this side. | *loin,* | far. D |
| *au de-là,* | on that side, *or* beyond. | *proche,* for *près de,* | near. |
| *auprès,* | near, by. | *au travers,* for *à travers de,* | cross. |
| *avec,* | with. | *tout contre,* | hard by. |
| *dessus,* | upon. | *tout auprès,* | just by. |
| *au-dessus,* | above, over. | *vis à-vis,* | over-against. |
| *par-dessus,* | over and above. | *aux environs,* | round about. |

Therefore, when speaking of a brute or a tree, we say:

*Mettez-vous vis-à-vis,* put yourself over-against it; not *vis-à-vis de lui,* or *d'elle.*

A *The Use and Construction of the Pronominal Adnouns.*

§ VII. We have seen that they are of two sorts, the Absolute and Relative.

1°. Pronominal adnouns absolute (or rather *possessive articles*, see p. 389.) *mon, ton, son*, &c. do not agree in French in gender with the noun of the possessor, as in English, but with that of the thing possessed: as, *La mère aime* son *fils, & le père* sa *fille*, The mother loves *her* son, and the father *his* daughter.

2°. When a noun feminine (which should naturally take before it the feminine of these adnouns, *ma, ta, sa*) begins with a vowel, or *h* mute, it takes the masculine, *mon, ton, son*, in
B order to avoid the meeting of two vowels: as,

*mon âme*, my soul. *son élevation*, his *or* her *rise*.
*son histoire*, his *or* her story. *sa haute élevation*, his great preferment.
*son habileté*, his *or* her skill. *sa honte*, his *or* her shame.

3°. We always use these pronominal adnouns before nouns of relations and friends, when we address ourselves to them; whereas such particles are in general left out in English: as, *Venez-çà, ma fille, mon enfant*; Come hither, daughter, child.
*Tout à l'heure, ma mère; mon père; oui, ma tante*, &c.
C Presently, mother, father; yes, aunt, &c.

4°. Pronominal adnouns absolute, coming after a verb with a noun, are resolved in French by their primitive pronoun personal in the third state: as, He has cut off *his* head, *Il* lui *a coupé la tête*, and not *il a coupé* sa *tête*. You cut *my* finger, *Vous* me *coupez le doigt*; and never *vous coupez* mon *doigt*. Twist *his* neck, *Tordez*-lui *le cou*, and never *tordez* son *cou*, &c

5°. When nouns are preceded by a personal pronoun, which sufficiently denotes whose is the thing you speak of, the prono-
D minal adnouns are wholly left out, and supplied by the article: as,

*Je lui dois* la *vie*; I owe *my* life to him; *or* to it (never *ma vie*).

*Il grince* les *dents*; he gnashes his teeth (never *ses dents*): the pronouns *je* and *il*, specifying enough whose life and teeth are meant, and therefore making the possessive unnecessary.

For the same reason we say: *J'ai mal à* la *tête*; I have a pain in my head, I have the head-ach, &c.; *Elle a mal aux dents*; she has the tooth-ach: *Il a* le *pied foulé*; *his* foot is sprained, &c. not *j'ai mal à* ma *tête*: son *pied est foulé*.

But we say: *Je vois que* ma *jambe s'enfle*; I see that my leg swells; because, in saying only *Je vois que la jambe s'enfle*

pronoun *se* cannot denote that I mean my own leg, since I can A
likewise see that another's leg swells.

Nevertheless, if the pain is become, as it were, habitual, we may say (in speaking to somebody who knows it) *Ma tête,* or *Ma jambe me fait mal,* my head, *or* leg pains me; *Ma migraine m'a fort tourmenté aujourd'hui,* my megrim has tormented me much to-day; *Sa fièvre le consume,* his fever consumes him: because the pronominal adnoun denotes the particular habit which one has contracted with the aching part of the body, or the disease itself.

It is for the same reason we say, *Il ne se tient pas ferme sur ses pied,* he don't stand firm upon his feet; *Tenez-vous ferme* B *sur vos jambes,* stand firm upon your legs; because this ought to be habitual and natural.

We say in a proverbial way of speaking, *se trouver sur* ses *pieds,* to signify that one cannot be the worse for undertaking some particular things: and *retomber sur* ses *pieds,* to signify, that one always gets off clear and safe, whatever he attempts.

Pronominal adnouns are also very properly used with the names of the members of the body in some few sentences like these; *Il lui donna sa main à baiser,* he gave him his hand to kiss; *Elle a donné hardiment* son *bras au Chirurgien,* she boldly gave her arm to the Surgeon; *Il perd tout* son *sang,* he loses all his blood, *&c.* But they must be learnt by practice, as well as when it is indifferent to use or not the pronominal adnoun; as, *Elever* la *voix,* or *Elever* sa *voix,* to raise one's voice, *&c.*

But observe here; that *son, sa, ses,* are not always englished by *his, her, its,* nor the English pronoun *oneself* rendered into French by *soi,* or *soi-même;* but C
that one must consider the term of its relation; for if it relates to the pronoun indeterminate *on,* or some of its oblique relations, as in the instance *se trouver sur ses pieds;* or in other words, if considered with its substantive, it relates to nothing specified, as in the other instance, *retomber sur ses pieds,* then *son, sa, ses,* cannot be rendered in English by *his, her,* &c. which has a reference to something specified, but by the pronoun indeterminate *oneself,* or only *one's* followed by a noun; as, on the other hand, *oneself* must be rendered into French by *se,* as *se blesser,* to hurt oneself, and *one's* followed by a noun, by a pronominal adnoun absolute agreeing with it, as in the same instances *se trouver sur ses pieds* (word for word), to be put upon one's feet still; *retomber sur ses pieds,* to light upon one's feet again.

*2dly,* As the pronouns personal of the third person, *il, elle, lui, leur,* &c. cannot be used in some particular cases, when we speak of irrational and inanimate things; so in like case we do not use the pronominal adnouns, *son, sa, ses; leur, leurs, le sien,* &c. instead whereof we use the relative *(en),* and we say, *Cette maladie est fort cachée, cependant* j'en *connois l'origine & les effets* (not *son origine);* This illness is much hid, yet I know its origin and effects, *or* I know both the origin and effects of it. Though we say, *Je connois cette maladie, son origine, ses symptômes, & ses effets;* I know this illness, its origin, symptoms, and effects. D

¶ The reason of this difference is, that in the first sentence there are two verbs, one governed by the premised substantive *maladie,* the other governing the subsequent substantives *origine, effets.* Whereas in the second sentence there is but one verb, governing both the premised and subsequent substantives.]

We say, likewise, *Voilà de bonne eau,* j'en *connois toutes les qualités* (not *ses qualités);* This water is good, I know all its qualities. *Voyez-vous cette maison? la situation* en *est belle, les pavillons* en *sont grands* (not *sa situation, ses pavillons);* Do you see that house? It is pleasantly situated: its pavilions are large. Though we say, *Cette maison a* ses *commodités & ses inconvéniens,* That house has its conveniences and inconveniences. Likewise, we say of a tree: *Les fruits en sont bons, &c. ils sont meilleurs que ceux d'un autre, &c.* The *fruit is good; it is better than* another's.

¶ The above exception and distinction hold good when the substantive pointed out by the possessive is either the subject or object of the sentence, but when it is used as a compound regimen, that is, with a preposition, the possessive must not be supplied by the relative *en*, because *en* represents a compound regimen, and two compound regimens of the same kind cannot take place in the same sentence. A short example will elucidate the matter. *On admire Paris, ses bâtimens, ses promenades*, &c. (in this sentence there is but one verb, *ses* is used). *Paris est beau, on* en *admire les bâtimens, les promenades*, &c. (in this there are two verbs, *en* is used, not *ses*). *Paris est beau, on admire la grandeur de ses bâtimens, de ses promenades*, &c. (in this *bâtimens, promenades*, form a compound regimen, *ses* is used, and by no means *en*.]

The pronominal adnouns are safely used when the term of their relation is expressed before, in the same sentence, by a noun or pronoun; as,

*Remettez-ce livre à* sa *place*; Put this book in its place again.
*Mettez-le en* sa place; Put it in its place.

B 6°. The Pronominal adnouns absolute must always be repeated in French before every noun, when there are many in the sentence, with which they are grammatically construed; as,

*Son père & sa mère*, his father and mother (not *son père & mère*). *Nos amis &* nos *ennemis*, our friends and foes (not *nos amis & ennemis*).

*Elle lui fit voir ses plus beaux &* ses *plus vilains habits*;
She showed him her best and worst clothes.

¶ Except when the two adnouns have almost the same signification: as, *Elle lui fit voir ses plus beaux & plus magnifiques habits*; She showed him her finest and most magnificent clothes.]

7°. The Pronominal adnouns relative, *le mien, le vôtre*, &c.
C are of the same use, and have the same construction as in English, being never put before a noun, but always relating to a foregoing one; as,

*Est-ce là votre livre?* *Oui, c'est* le mien, or *ce l'est*,
Is that your book? Yes, it is mine. *or* Yes, it is.

But when this adnoun (referring to its antecedent expressed in the same sentence) comes after *to be*, in the sense of *to belong*, it must be resolved in French by a pronoun personal disjunctive, in the third relation: as,

That book is *mine*; That house is *his* or *yours*;
*Ce livre est* à moi. *Cette maison est* à lui, *or* à vous.

D 8°. The noun in the 2*d* state that comes after *to be*, used in the same signification, must likewise be put in the third state; as,

This hat is *the Gentleman's*; This fan is *the Lady's*;
*Ce chapeau est* à Monsieur. *Cet éventail est* à Madame.

Moreover, we use the Pronominal adnouns in the following case, when the English use the adnoun relative.

*A* friend of *mine*; *Un* de mes amis (not *un ami des miens*).
*A* book of *his*; *Un* de ses livres (not un livre des siens, &c.)

*Of the Construction of the Pronouns Relative* qui, lequel, *&c.* A
*so called as always referring to some Noun or Pronoun which precedes, and then is styled* Antecedent.

§ VIII. 1°. The Relative *qui* always comes next to the Antecedent: as, *Ces* gens qui *demeuroient chez moi sont partis,* Those *people* are gone *who* lodged at my house.

Except when the antecedent is a pronoun personal, coming before its verb: as, *Il* la *trouva* qui *pleuroit à chaudes larmes;* He found her weeping most bitterly.

¶ The antecedent, when a pronoun demonstrative, is sometimes left out; as, *Qui répond, paye;* He who bails (*or* the security) must pay. *Celui,* nominative to *paye,* is understood, and *qui* is said to be used absolutely. (See *quiconque,* p. 270. C.)
Sometimes the two verbs are elegantly inverted; as, *Travailloit* qui *pouvoit;* They worked that could. *Joua* qui *voulut;* They that chose played at cards.] B

2°. The relative *qui* is used only in the first and fourth states for both genders and numbers, with respect to all sorts of objects; but in the other states, that is, after a preposition, it is said of personal objects only, or considered as such. When we speak of irrational and inanimate objects, we use the other pronouns *lequel* and *quoi.* Thus we say:

*L'homme,* (or) *la femme* qui *vous a parlé,* (or) que *vous voyez:*
The man (*or*) woman *who* spoke to you, (*or*) *whom* you see.

*Le Prince,* (or) *la Princesse* de qui *il a reçu tant de faveurs;* C
The Prince, (*or*) Princess *of whom* he has received so many favours.

*Le maître,* (or) *la maîtresse à* qui *il appartient;*
The master, (*or*) mistress *whom* he belongs *to.*

*Les choses* qui *lui plaisent le plus;* The things *that* please him most.

*Le cheval* que *vous montez;* The horse *that* you ride *upon.*

*Les malheurs* que *vous appréhendez;* The misfortunes *which* you fear.

But speaking of irrational and inanimate creatures, we say:

*Le cheval* duquel (or) dont *je me sers;* The horse *that* I use (or) use to ride (not *de qui*).

*L'opinion* à laquelle (or) à quoi *je m'attache;* The opinion D
*which* I adhere *to* (not *à qui*).

*La chose* sur laquelle (or) sur quoi *je fais fond;* The thing which I rely upon (not *sur qui*).

We say: *La Fortune,* de qui *j'attends tout;* Fortune, *from which* I expect all.

*Le Ciel,* de qui *j'espère;* Heaven, *from which* I hope, *&c.*— because *la Fortune* and *le Ciel* are there personified.

3°. *Dont* is used for both genders and numbers, instead of the second state of the three pronouns relative, qui, lequel, quoi. It

A always comes before the conjunctives, *je, nous; tu, vous, il, ils elle, elles;* and is said both of persons and things: as,

*C'est l'homme* dont *je parle;* He is the man *whom* I am speaking *of.*

*C'est une charge* dont *il ne se soucie pas;* It is a place *which* he does not care *for.*

*Vous voyez les femmes* dont *il parloit;* You see the women [he spoke *of*

Except when questions are asked, for they cannot begin with *dont:* as, *De qui* (or) *de quoi parlez-vous?* Whom *(or)* what are you speaking of?

B *De qui* is used as well as *dont,* but with this difference, that it expresses the *Ablative* of the Latins, and is denoted by *from* in English: as,

*L'homme* de qui *j'ai reçu une lettre;* The man from whom I have received a letter.

Whereas *of whom, of which, whose,* must always be rendered by *dont,* which expresses the *Genitive* of the Latins: as,

*La personne* dont *la réputation vous étonne;* The person whose reputation you wonder at.

But *dont* must have immediately before it the term which it refers to, and be followed by a subject, either noun or pronoun, and a verb, or by a verb impersonal followed by another

C verb: as,

*Le Ciel, dont le secours est nécessaire;* Heaven, whose aid is necessary.

*Le Ciel, dont le secours ne manque jamais;* Heaven, whose assistance never fails.

*Le Ciel, dont il faut implorer le secours;* Heaven, whose aid must be implored.

However, this phrase, and the like: Heaven, without whose assistance we cannot prosper, must be expressed with the pronoun *de qui* or *duquel,* thus: *Le Ciel, sans le secours* duquel *nous ne pouvons réussir;* not *dont sans* or *sans dont le secours,* because though *dont* would have immediately before it the

D noun which it relates to, yet it would not be followed immediately by the subject of the verb.

4°. *Où* is likewise used for the third state of the three pronouns relative, *to whom, to which, to what;* as also when they are governed by any of these prepositions, *at, in, into, with.* It serves for both genders and numbers, and relates to things denoting Time, Place, Condition, Disposition, Design, End, and Aim; but never to persons: as,

*Voilà le but* où *il tend;* That is the end *which* he aims *at.*

*Le siècle* où *nous vivons;* The age wherein we live.

*Une affaire où je ne veux pas entrer;* A
A thing *in which* I won't be concerned.
*Les malheurs où il est plongé;* the misfortunes *into which* he is plunged.

*Où* in the first instance stands for *auquel;* in the 2d, for *dans lequel;* in the 3d, for *dans laquelle;* and in the 4th, for *dans lesquels.*

From *où* are formed the adverbs of place *d'où* from whence, and *par où* through where, through which place.

5°. *Que* is sometimes used instead of *de qui* and *à qui:* so that *que,* besides its being the fourth state of *qui,* is also used for the second and third, for both genders and numbers; whenever there comes immediately before it the second or third B state of a noun or pronoun personal for which it is a substitute; but the sentence must begin with *ce* and the verb *être:* as,

*C'est de vous* qu'*on parle* (instead of *de qui* or *dont*);
It is you they are speaking of.
*C'est à vous* qu'*on s'adresse* (instead of *à qui*);
It is you they make application to.
*C'est à vous* qu'*il appartient, de . . .* (not *à qui*);
It is to you that it belongs, to . . .

¶ In such phrases *que* is rather *conductive,* and answers to *ce*: the following verb is to determine what preposition must be employed after the verb *être;* hence the complement of that preposition is the virtual regimen of the following verb.]

6°. *Que* among a great many other constructions which shall C be mentioned in the *Appendix,* has a particular one, which may be called *Conductive,* being a Conjunction then used to bring the sense of the sentence to its perfection: *que,* so used, is englished by *that,* when expressed, for it is very often left out in English, even when it is relative; but it must be always expressed in French, where it always governs, or is governed: as, *Je crois* que *vous parlez;* I think you speak, or *that* you speak. *L'homme* que *vous voyez;* The man you see, or *that,* or *whom* you see.

In the first instance, the verb *Je crois,* coming before *que,* D requires another verb to make the whole sentence, the continuity of the sense whereof is performed by *que.* In the other, *que* is governed of *vous voyez,* and relates to *l'homme.*

That *que* Conductive, (See p. 332, A.) is used in a very emphatical manner, before a noun terminating a sentence, or a verb, thus:

*C'est une passion dangereuse* que *le jeu;* Gaming is a dangerous passion.
*C'est une sorte de honte* que *d'être malheureux;* It is a sort of shame to be miserable.

But observe, 1*st,* that those sentences wherein *que* is thus used, always begin with the demonstrative *c'est* it is, or at least the pronoun primitive *ce,* and end with the noun which begins the sentence in English, and before which *que* is put.

2*dly,* That *que* always requires *de* after it, when it comes before the infinitive.

A Moreover, 1*st*, *Qui*, besides its being relative, is also interrogative and declarative, signifying *quelle personne ?* what person? and then it takes *qui* and not *que* for its fourth state; as *Qui a fait cela ?* or *Qui est-ce qui a fait cela ?* Who has done that? *Je sais* qui *vous voulez dire;* I know whom you mean. *Qui verrez-vous tantôt ?* Whom are you to see this evening.

2*dly*, Sometimes *qui*, in asking a question, signifies *quelle chose* (what thing): as *Qui fait l'oiseau ?* or *Qui est-ce qui fait l'oiseau ?* What makes the bird?

3*dly*, Sometimes also *qui* between two verbs, and even in the beginning of a sentence, signifies *celui qui*, he who, he that, and *quiconque* whosoever, any body who: when it meets between two verbs, it is governed of the first, at the same time that it governs the second; as in these phrases: *C'est l'excuse ordinaire de* qui *n'en a point de bonne;* It is the usual excuse of those who have not a good one. *Il le dit à* qui *veut l'entendre;* He says it to any body who is willing to hear it.

B ¶ Where it seems that at the same time *qui* is both governed and governing; but the truth is (see p. 257, B.), that its antecedent is understood.]

¶ This elliptical construction is an elegance, because it favours the brevity of diction; but it is allowed only when there is no clashing of regimen: the ellipsis may take place in the above phrases, or in this:

*Voulez-vous que je m'attache* à qui *je n'ai jamais su plaire?* Do you wish me to pay my addresses to the person whom I never was able to please?

*S'attacher* and *plaire* have the same regimen, that is, both are construed with the preposition *à*.

But in this phrase, *Voulez-vous que je m'éloigne* de la personne *à qui j'ai toujours su plaire?* Do you want me to break off correspondence with the person whom I have always been able to please? the ellipsis cannot take place, because *s'éloigner* requires the preposition *de*, and *plaire* the preposition *à*.

C This phrase, *à qui mieux mieux* (the meaning of which is, in emulation of one another), may likewise be accounted for, by rectifying the ellipsis of *celui*.]

4*thly*, The relative *qui* and *lequel* can never agree with a noun that has no article before it. Therefore these English sentences:

*He did that through avarice, which is capable of any thing;*

*I know that by experience, which is a great master;*

must be rendered into French without the relative, and make two distinct sentences, one of which ends with the noun, and the other begins with *et* or *mais* with the noun repeated, instead of the relative, thus:

*Il a fait cela par avarice; mais l'avarice est capable de tout.*

*Je sais cela par expérience; Et l'expérience est un grand maître;* or

*Et vous savez,* or *Et l'on sait bien que l'expérience est un grand maître.*

¶ Because, in French, the relative cannot refer to a substantive taken adverbially, and in an unlimited sense.]

D Except from this rule; 1*st*, Proper names, which are sufficiently determined and specified by themselves, without taking the article: as, *Je lis Cicéron, qui est aussi bon Philosophe qu'Orateur;* I read Cicero, who is as good a Philosopher as Orator.

*J'ai vu Paris, qui est une des plus belles villes du monde;*

I have seen Paris, which is one of the finest cities in the world.

2*dly*, Such nouns as have *de* before them, on account of some previous word that requires it, and thereby sufficiently determines the next noun; as the adnouns *capable, coupable*, the nouns *sorte, espèce*, &c. the adverbs *assez, point*, &c. as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *Il est coupable de crimes qui méritent la mort;* | He is guilty of crimes which deserve death. |
| *Il n'y a point d'homme qui n'ait son foible;* | There is no man but has his weak side. |
| *Une sorte de liqueur* qui est bonne à boire: | A sort of liquor that is good to drink. |

3*dly*, Such Nouns of the things which are called to, and answer the vocative of the Latins, before which the particle exclamative *ô* may come: as, A

*Hommes, qui vivez en bêtes!* Men who live like brutes!
*Avarice, qui causes tant de maux!* Oh, Covetousness, that causest so many mischiefs.

4*thly*, Such other nouns that have before them any number, as *un, deux, trois, vingt*, &c. any of these pronouns, *ce, quelque, plusieurs, tout, nul, aucun* (which perform there the office of the article), or the particle *en* signifying *as* or *like*; as, *Il en vint un*, or *plusieurs qui n'étoient pas invités*; There came one, *or* many, who were not invited.

*Il parle en Philosophe qui sait la raison des choses*;
He speaks like a Philosopher who knows the reason of things.

*The reason both of this rule and exception is, that the Genius of the French language does not allow the relative* qui *to be used after a noun, unless it is specified by the article, or by some other specifying word, or by its own signification.*

¶ For the same reason, *which*, referring to a whole sentence, cannot be translated into French by the mere relative *qui* or *que*, but by *ce qui* or *ce que*; B the intervention of the pronoun *ce* being necessary to individuate, as it were, the whole phrase related to.]

7°. The pronoun *lequel, laquelle*, is used for the sake of avoiding the too frequent repetitions of *qui*, and of removing the ambiguities that may arise from that pronoun, which is of both genders and numbers, and said, in the first state, both of persons and things; as in these sentences:

*Alexandre fils de Philippe*, qui *régna le premier en Asie*,
Alexander, Philip's son, who reigned the first in Asia.

One cannot tell whether it was Alexander or Philip who C reigned: whereas *lequel*, used instead of *qui*, will denote that it was Alexander; because, when two nouns of the same gender come together, the relative *lequel* refers to the former, and therefore removes the ambiguity that may be occasioned by *qui*.

*C'est la cause de cet effet* dont *je vais traiter*, (or) que *je vais examiner*; It is the cause of that effect which I am going to treat of, (or) to examine.

One cannot see whether *dont* or *que*, which are used for both genders, relate to *effet* or *cause*; therefore *lequel*, or *laquelle*, must be used, according to the gender of its antecedent.

However, it is much better to repeat *qui*, though ever so D often, when it causes no ambiguity, than to use *lequel*, which is quite appropriated to the style of proclamations, edicts, treaties, contracts, and other acts of that nature, wherein less regard is to be had to the purity, than to the perspicuity of the language.

8°. *Qui* must be repeated before every verb of which it is the subject; as,

*C'est un homme* qui *est savant*, qui *danse bien*, qui *joue de plusieurs instrumens, &* qui *se fait aimer de* tout le monde. He has

A learned man, who dances well, plays upon several instruments, and makes himself beloved by every body.

¶ *Qui* and *lequel* are sometimes used to imply indecision, choice comparison between several persons or things; in which case the names of such persons or things are each pointed out by the preposition *de;* whereas, in English, they admit of no preposition; as,

1. *Je ne sais à* qui *m'adresser*, de *Pierre*, de *Paul ou* de *Jean*, I do not know *whom* I should apply to, Peter, Paul, or John.

2. *Choisissez* laquelle *vous voudrez*, de *la montre ou de la bague;* choose *which* you like best, the watch or the ring.

Such phrases are elliptical. The 1st stands for *Je ne sais à qui* des trois *m'adresser*, &c. which itself stands for, *Je ne sais* quel est celui des trois *à qui* je dois *m'adresser*, &c. As *celui* (see p. 264, A.) requires the preposition *de* B before the next noun, and it is the genius of the French (see p. 375, B.) to repeat most prepositions before each noun governed, it may account for the prefixing of *de* to each subsequent noun.

The same may be said of the second phrase, which stands for, *choisissez laquelle* des deux *vous voudrez*, or *choisissez* celle des deux que *vous voudrez*, &c.

Sometimes the same preposition prefixed to the relative, may also be prefixed to the following nouns; but then the phrase will imply quite a different sense.

For instance, the 1st phrase construed with the preposition *de* means that I should apply to one of the three persons, and *auquel* might be used instead of *à qui*. Whereas this phrase:

*Je ne sais* à *qui m'adresser;* à *Pierre*, à *Paul*, *ou* à *Jean*: *non, je m'adresserai* à *Philippe;* means no intention, no obligation of applying to any of them, since I determined to apply to Philip; and *auquel* cannot be substituted to *à qui*. Again,

*Avec* qui *sortirez-vous*, de *Pierre ou* de *Paul?* With whom will you go out, C Peter or Paul? *des deux*, of the two, is understood; therefore the phrase is very different from this:

Avec *qui sortirez vous*, avec *Pierre ou* avec *Paul?* in which the ellipsis of *celui* may be rectified, but not that of *des deux;* and to which the answer may be: *Avec ni l'un ni l'autre*, with neither.]

9°. The pronoun *quoi* is also used for both genders and numbers. It is said of things only, and never of persons, and is sometimes used instead of *lequel:* as, *Le plus grand vice* à quoi *il soit sujet*, instead of *auquel il soit sujet*, The greatest vice which he is addicted to. *Ce sont des choses* à quoi *il faut penser*, instead of *auxquelles il faut*, &c. These are things which one must think of.

¶ *Quoi* has of itself an indeterminate signification; therefore, though it D may sometimes be used for *lequel, laquelle*, &c. yet there are cases wherein *lequel*, &c. cannot be employed instead of *quoi*. In such phrases for instance:

*C'est* à quoi *je vous exhorte;* This is what I exhort you to.

*Il n'y a rien* à quoi *je ne sois disposé;* There is not any thing I am not disposed for.

On account of the ellipsis of its antecedent, *quoi* sometimes appears to be used absolutely, or rather substantively; as,

*Je n'ai pas de* quoi *vivre;* I have nothing wherewith to live upon.

*En* quoi *il est doublement coupable;* In that he is in a double manner culpable.]

¶ As *qui* sometimes signifies *quelle personne* (what person); so *quoi* sometimes signifies *quelle chose* (what thing); as, *De* quoi *parlez-vous?* What are you speaking of? *A* quoi *pensez-vous?* What are you thinking on? *Il y a je ne sais* quoi; There is I don't know what.]

*Quoi* makes *que* in its first and fourth state, and sometimes A in its second state; it is then chiefly used interrogatively: as, —*Qu'est-ce que c'est?* What is it? and never *Quoi-est-ce*, &c. *Que dites-vous?* What do you say?—*Que sert*, or *de quoi sert d'avoir du bien, si l'on n'en sait pas jouir?* What avail riches, if one knows not how to enjoy them?

If somebody said, *Il m'est arrivé une étrange affaire*, An odd sort of affair has befallen me, one should ask *quoi?* what? or *quelle affaire?* what affair? But *quoi* is never used before a verb; and it is for that reason we say, *Que vous est-il arrivé?* What has happened to you? *Que dites-vous? Quoi* is never used in such phrases.

1°. The same pronouns relatives are used to ask questions, B to which add *quel*: as, *Qui est cet homme-là*, or *Quel est cet homme-là?* Who is that man, *or* what is that man? *De qui ne médit-on pas?* Who is not traduced? *A qui se fier?* Who can one trust to? (an ellipsis for *A qui peut-on se fier?*) *Quelle est cette femme-là?* Who is that woman? *Duquel, de laquelle, desquels parlez-vous?* Which do you speak of?

But *qui* is said of persons, and *quel* of things. Therefore to this preposition *Voilà des gens*, (or) *des femmes qui vous demandent*, There are people *or* women who ask for you, we answer,

*Qui sont-ils?* or *Qui sont elles?* Who are they? But to these others,

*Il court d'étranges bruits*, Strange reports are spread, we ask C *Quels sont-ils?* What are they? and not *Qui sont-ils?*

*J'ai appris de grandes nouvelles*, I have heard great news. *Quelles sont-elles?* What are they? *Quelles sont ces nouvelles?*

The pronoun interrogative *quel* (without the article) answers to the *what* of the English; and *lequel* to their *which*: *lequel* being followed by the second state, when it comes before a noun? as, *Quel homme voulez-vous dire?* What man do you mean? *Lequel choisissez-vous?* Which do you choose? *Laquelle des deux souhaitez-vous?* Which of the two will you have? (See p. 262, B.)

Moreover we observe a very remarkable Pleonasm most commonly, and sometimes necessarily, used in asking questions with the pronoun, *qui* and D *quoi*.—The most natural (and the best) French for these questions and the the other like, is—Who is there? *Qui est-là?*—Who has done that? *Qui a fait cela?*—What do you say? *Que dites-vous?*—What do you ask? *Que demandez-vous?*

Yet the common idiom of the language is to express them thus: *Qui* est-ce qui *est-là?*—*Qui* est-ce qui *a fait cela? Qu'* est-ce que *vous dites? Qu'* est-ce que *vous demandez?* Nay, we often say,—*Qu'* est-ce que c'est que *vous dites?* —*Qu'*est-ce que c'est que *vous demandez?*

And to this Preposition, *J'ai quelque chose à vous dire*, I have something to say to you, the most natural and common answer is, *Qu'est-ce que c'est?* What is it? And not *Qu'est-ce*, nor *Quoi est-ce*, nor *Quoi* what? which last would rather intimate that we did not hear what was said to us.

A *Of the Use and Construction of the Pron. Demonstrative,* ce, celui, ceci, cela, *&c.*

§ IX. 1°. The particles demonstrative, *ce, cet, cette, ces,* are mere adnouns: *celui-ci, celle-ci*; *celui-là*; *celle-là, ceux-ci, celles-ci, ceux-là, celles-là,* are used absolutely without any noun, and *celui, celle, ceux, celles,* always require after them a noun in the second state, or the relative *qui* (in any of its states): as,

*Ce tableau* this or that picture, *cet ouvrage* that work, *cet homme* that man, *cette femme* that woman, *ces gens* those peo-
B ple, *ces filles* those girls.

*Celui-ci est meilleur que celui-là,* This is better than that.

*Celles-là ne sont pas si belles que celles-ci,*
Those are not so good as these.

*Votre cheval est aussi beau que celui du Maquignon,*
Your horse is as fine as *that of* the Jockey (*or* as the Jockey's).

*Celui qui aime la vertu,* He that loves virtue.

*Ci* and *là* are sometimes added to the noun that comes after the demonstrative *ce, cet, cette, ces,* in order to specify and particularise it still more; as *cet homme-ci* this man, *cette femme-là* that woman; *ci,* denoting a near or present object, and *là* a distant and absent one; and *ce,* thus followed by a noun attended by *ci* or *là,* answers to *this* or *that* before a noun.

C ¶ The same must be said of the pronouns *ceci* (this), and *cela* (that), which relate to things only, and are formed of the pronoun *ce* prefixed to the particles *ci* and *là*; as,

Ceci *est pour moi,* and cela *est pour vous*; This is for me, and that is for you.

*This* and *that* are sometimes well rendered into *French* by *ce* or *cet* only; but one cannot in some cases leave out *ci* or *là,* and those cases must be determined by judgment only. Thus, if being at London I write a letter, and after mentioning Paris or Vienna, I add something that has happened there, I must necessarily say *en cette ville-là, là* added to *ville* specifying the distant city which I have been mentioning. For should I say only *en cette ville,* these words would intimate that it was at London where the thing I am speaking of happened.

D 2°. The pronouns *celui, celle, ceux,* which relate both to persons and things, being followed by the relative *qui* are englished by *he who,* or *he that, she who* or *that, they who* or *that,* and *celui* is the subject of one verb, and *qui* that of another: as, *Celui qui aime la vertu est heureux*; *He who* loves virtue is happy.

Celle qui *refuse un mari n'est pas toujours sûre d'en retrouver un autre*;

*She who* refuses a husband is not always sure to get another again.

Ceux qui *méprisent la science n'en connoissent pas le prix*
They who despise learning know not the value of it.

Observe, therefore, 1*st*, that *he who, he that, she who, she that,* &c. are never rendered into French by *il qui, elle qui, ils* or *eux qui,* but by *celui qui, celle qui, ceux qui, celles qui.* A

2*dly*, That though these two words may be separated in English, and come before their respective verb, yet they must always come together in French before the first verb, unless *là* is added to the first: as,

*They* know not the value of learning *who* despise it;

Ceux-là *ne connoissent pas le prix de la science* qui *la méprisent,* (or better) Ceux qui *méprisent la science n'en connoissent pas le prix.*

3*dly*, *He who,* or *he that, they who,* or *they that* (separated in English) are also elegantly rendered into French by the impersonal *c'est,* with an infinitive followed by *que de* before a second infinitive: as, B

*They* know not the value of learning *who* despise it;

C'est *ne pas connoître le prix de la science* que de *la mépriser.*

C'est *se tromper* que de *croire;* He is mistaken who thinks, *or* they, *or* those are mistaken who think, &c.

4*thly*, The pronominal adnouns absolute, *his, her, their,* construed in English with a noun followed by the pronoun relative *who* or *they* before a verb, is made into French by the second state of *celui, celle, ceux,* followed by *qui,* and the possessive is left out: as, C

All men blame *his* manners *who* often says that which himself does not think;

*Tout le monde blâme les mœurs* de celui qui *dit souvent ce qu'il ne pense pas.*

Providence does not prosper *their* labours *that* slight their best friends;

*La Providence ne bénit point les travaux* de ceux qui *méprisent leurs meilleurs amis.*

5*thly*, The pronoun indeterminate *such,* followed by *as* or *that* (but not governed of the verb substantive *to be),* is also rendered into French by *ceux qui,* or *celui qui:* as, D

*Such* as don't love virtue don't know it,

Ceux qui *n'aiment pas la vertu, ne la connoissent pas.*

6*thly*, These two words, *the former, the latter,* referring to nouns mentioned in the foregoing speech, are made by *l'un* and *l'autre,* or *celui-ci* and *celui-là,* agreeing in gender with the noun; and *celui-ci* relates to the noun last mentioned, and *celui-là* to the first mentioned; but *l'un* and *l'autre* may relate to either you please, according to its gender: as,

A *Virtue* is nothing else but an entire conformity to the eternal rule of things; *Vice* is the infringement of that rule: *This* causes the misery of men: *That* makes them happy: Therefore let us love the *former*, and detest the *latter*.

La vertu *n'est autre chose qu'une entière conformité à la règle éternelle des choses*; Le vice *est l'infraction de cette règle*: Celui-ci *fait le malheur des hommes*; Celle-là *les rend heureux*; *Aimons donc* l'une, *& ayons* l'autre *en horreur*.

3°. The Primitive *ce* coming before *qui* or *que* is englished by *that which*, or *what*; these two words making a sort of pronoun that points and relates to something either spoken of before, or to be mentioned after: as,

B *Il dit* ce qu'*il sait*, He says *what* he knows.

*C'est* ce qui *ne sera jamais*, It is *what* will never be.

4°. When *ce qui* or *ce que*, in the beginning of a sentence of two parts, is, jointly with the verb, the subject coming before the verb *est* in the second part of the sentence, *ce* must be repeated before *est*, and *est* followed by *de*, if it comes before an infinitive, or by *que* if it is another mood: as,

*Ce que je crains, c'est d'être surpris*, and not *est d'être surpris*, What I fear, is to be surprised.

C ¶ It is the same with the other tenses of *être*; as, *Ce que je craignois, c'étoit d'être surpris.*]

*Ce qui l'afflige, c'est* qu'*on le croit coupable*,

What concerns him, is that he is thought guilty.

But *ce* must not be repeated before *est*, when there comes next an adnoun: as, *Ce que vous dites* est *vrai*, what you say is true; and when it is a noun, it is indifferent to repeat it or to leave it out: as, *Ce que je dis est la vérité*, or *c'est la vérité*, what I say is the truth.

Except when the verb substantive is in the plural; for then *ce* must be repeated: as, *Ce que je ne puis souffrir*, ce *sont les insolences & les trahisons*, what I cannot bear are insolences and treacheries.

D ¶ *Ce*, both in asking and answering a question, signifies sometimes *cette personne*, sometimes *cette chose*.

*Qui est*-ce *qui est venu?* Who is come? *ce* stands for *qui est* cette personne *qui*, &c. *Qu'est* ce *que je vois là?* What do I see there? *ce* stands for *quelle est* cette chose que, &c.

*Qui est là?* Who is there? *c'est Pierre*; *ce* stands for *cette personne*; viz. *Pierre est* cette personne *qui est là? Que vois-je là*, or *qu'est*-ce *que je vois là?* What do I see there? *C'est mon canif*, It is my penknife: that is, *mon canif est* cette chose *que je vois là*.

From which it appears that in such phrases the virtual nominative to the verb *être* is not *ce*, but the following substantive.]

The pron. primit. *ce* is besides of a very extensive use with *être*, as we shall see p. 327.

## *Of Pronouns Indeterminate.* A

Quelqu'un, chacun, quiconque, personne, nul, pas un, aucun, l'un l'autre, l'un & l'autre, plusieurs, tout, *&c.*

§ X. 1°. ¶ *Quelqu'un* and *chacun* are formed of *quelque un, chaque un;* both take the mark of gender, and we say *quelqu'un quelqu'une, chacun chacune;* but *chacun* has no plural, whereas the plural of *quelqu'un quelqu'une,* is *quelques-uns quelques-unes.*

Both *quelqu'un* and *chacun* may be used either absolutely or relatively; *absolutely,* when there is no noun or pronoun to which they refer; *relatively,* when they refer to a noun or pronoun expressed before or after. B

When used relatively, they require the preposition *de* after them, before the noun or pronoun to which they refer. Sometimes *quelqu'un* is contented with being preceded by the particle *en* (which implies *de*); but *chacun* never admits of it for its antecedent, even it is often used by apposition, and sometimes without the preposition *de.*

*Quelqu'un* and *chacun,* used absolutely, are said of persons only; and relatively, they are both said of persons and things.

*Quelqu'un* always presents an indefinite sense: used absolutely, it signifies *somebody, any body,* has no plural, and is generally of the masculine gender: used relatively, it signifies C *some* or *any,* and takes the mark of gender and number.

*Chacun,* used absolutely, denotes sometimes a collective, sometimes a distributive sense: when collective, it signifies *every body,* and is of the masculine gender; when distributive, it signifies *every one, each,* and takes the mark of gender.

*Chacun,* used relatively, is always distributive, refers to a noun or pronoun plural which it is to distribute, takes the mark of gender, and is englished by *every one* and mostly by *each.*]

¶ Examples of *quelqu'un* and *chacun* used absolutely. D

Quelqu'un *m'a dit que; Somebody* told me that . . . . .
*Si je vois* quelqu'un; If I see *any body.*
*J'ai ouï dire à* quelqu'un; I heard *somebody* say.
*Je parle de* quelqu'un *que vous connoissez:* I speak of *somebody* you know.
*Est-il venu* quelqu'un? Did *any body* come?
Quelqu'un *est-il venu me demander?* Has *any body* called on me?

Chacun *veut être heureux; Every body* wishes to be happy.
Chacun *sent son mal;* Every one feels for himself.
Chacun *en parle; Every body* speaks of it.
Chacun *s'en plaint;* Every one complains of it.
*Il faut rendre à* chacun *ce qui lui appartient;* We must give to every one his due.
Chacun *se gouverne à sa mode;* Every one lives after his own manner.

A Chacun *pour soi ;* Every one for himself.
Chacun *à son tour ;* *Each* in his turn.]

¶ Examples of *quelqu'un* and *chacun* used relatively.

**Quelques-uns de *ses amis vinrent à sa rencontre ;* *Some of* his friends came to meet him.**

*C'est* quelqu'une d'*elles qui vous l'aura dit ;* None but *some* of them must have told you of it.

*J'apperçois* quelques-uns de *vos nouveaux livres ;* I perceive *some* of your new books.

*Avez-vous de bons amis ? oui, j'en ai* quelques-uns ; Have you good friends? yes, I have *some.*

*Adressez-vous à* quelqu'un d'*eux,* or *à* quelques-uns d'*entre eux* ; Apply to *some of* them.

*Vous avez de beaux livres, prêtez-m'en* quelques-uns ; You have fine books, lend me *some* of them.

B *Voilà de belles oranges ; achetons-en* quelques-unes ; There are fine oranges ; let us buy *some.*

Chacun de *vous fait ce qu'il lui plaît ; Every one of* you does what he pleases.

Chacun d'*eux se dispute ; Each of* them is quarelling.

Chacune d'*elles jouera son rôle ; Each of* them will play her part.

Chacun de *ces tableaux-là est d'un grand prix ; Each of* these pictures is very valuable.

Chacune de *ces statues est parfaite ; Each of* these statues is accomplished.]

¶ As the pronouns disjunctive *eux* and *elles* cannot be said of things, they are, together with the preposition *de,* entirely left out after *chacun,* when they do not relate to persons ; and we say, speaking of cards, for instance, *Voilà trois cartes, je mets tant sur* chacune ; There are three cards, I stake so much upon *each of them.* Speaking of horses ; *Vous avez acheté quatre chevaux, combien avez-vous donné de* chacun ? You bought four horses, how much have you paid for *each ?*

C Whereas we say of persons : *J'ai parlé à* chacun d'*eux, à* chacune d'*elles,* I have spoken to *each* of them.

¶ As *chacun,* when referring to things, is not used absolutely, it cannot then be the subject of a sentence, and we say, speaking of knives, for instance ; *Ils coûtent un écu* chacun ; They cost half-a-crown *each :* not *chacun coûte.* A personal pronoun plural is there used instead of *chacun,* which is placed, as it were, by apposition, and has the same import as *chacun de ces couteaux coûte un écu.*]

¶ *Chacun,* though used relatively, is sometimes employed as above by apposition, and unaccompanied with *de,* but placed in the middle of the sentence which it is to distribute : as,

*Qu'on s'en retourne* chacun *chez soi ;* Let *every one* return to his own home.

*Retournons-nous-en* chacun *chez nous ;* Let *every one of us* return to his own home.

*Vous vous en retournerez* chacun *chez vous ;* Every one of you will return to his own home.

D *Ils s'en retournèrent* chacun *chez eux ; elles s'en retournèrent* chacune *chez elles ; Each of them* returned to their own home.

The above sentences might be construed without *chacun ;* but then they would imply quite a different sense. For instance : *Retournons-en chez nous ;* Let us return home, means that we all live in the same house ; whereas, by inserting *chacun,* it means that each of us lives in a separate house.

The same may be said of the following phrases :

*Nous danserons* chacun *à* notre *tour ;* We shall dance every one in turn.

*Vous aurez* chacune *le* vôtre ; Each of you will have her own.

*Ils auront* chacun leur *part ;* Each of them will have his share.

*Nous avons* chacun nos *droits ;* Each of us has his rights.

*Ce deux auteurs ont* chacun leur mérite ; Each of these two authors have *their* worth.

*Les matelots allèrent* chacun à leurs *fonctions*; Each of the sailors went to A
their functions
*Ils ont apporté* chacun leur *offrande, & ont rempli* chacun leur *devoir de religion*; Each of them brought his offering, and fulfilled his religious duty.
*Appliquons-nous à mériter l'estime du public*, chacun *dans* notre *état*; Let every one of us try to deserve the public esteem, each in his station of life.
*Qu'ils s'appliquent à mériter l'estime du public*, chacun *dans* leur *état*; Let them try to deserve the public esteem, each in his station of life.]

¶ From the foregoing examples it appears that *chacun*, either in the middle, or at the end of a sentence which it is to distribute, sometimes meets with a nonn pointed out by a possessive. Now, when *chacun* relates to the subject of the sentence, the possessive must be of the same person as the subject; and such is the case in the above phrases.

It is the same when *chacun* relates to the term of the sentence, that is, a pronoun construed with, or implying the preposition *à*: as,

*Dieu rendra à* chacun *selon* ses *œuvres*;
God will reward every one according to his works.
*Dieu* nous *rendra à* chacun *selon* nos *œuvres*;
God will reward each of us according to our works.
*Dieu* vous *rendra à* chacun *selon* vos *œuvres*; B
God will reward each of you according to your works.
*Dieu* leur *rendra à* chacun *selon* leurs *œuvres*;
God will reward each of them according to their works.
*Donnez à* chacun sa *part*; Give *every one his* share.
*Donnez*-nous *à* chacun notre *part*; Give *every one of us our* share.
*Donnez* leur *à* chacun leur *part*; Give *every one of them their* share.]

¶ But if *chacun* relate to the object of the sentence, and that object be of the third person, the possessive must, by all means, be of the third person singular; as,

*Ôtez ces* livres, *&* les *mettez* chacun *à* sa *place*; Take these *books* away, and put *each* of them in *its* place.

*Serrez ces* médailles, chacune *dans* sa *case*; Lay up these *medals*, and C
place *each* of them in *its* case.

*Ils ont tous apporté des* offrandes, chacun *selon* ses *moyens & sa dévotion*; They have all brought *offerings*, *each* of *them* according to *their* abilities and devotion.

In the above phrases *chacun* relates to *livres*, *médailles*, *offrandes*, the objects of their respective sentences; it is the nominative to a verb understood, the subject of another sentence distributive of the former. (N.B. As the offerings, *viz.* their quantity and quality, are according to the abilities of the bringers, it cannot be said that *chacun* relates to another word.)

*Girard*, *Wailly*, and other grammarians say, that, in such distributive phrases, *son*, *sa*, *ses*, must be used, when *chacun* comes after the regimen of the verb; and *leur*, when *chacun* comes before; or, in other words, when the sense of the sentence distributed by *chacun*, is either complete or incomplete.

But this rule is more ingenious than accurate; for many instances may occur, in which *son*, *sa*, *ses*, would be improper; and others, in which either *leur*, or *son*, *sa*, *ses*, may be used; for instance:

*Les* arbres *portent leurs fruits*, chacun *dans* leur *saison*; *Trees* bear their D
fruits, *each* in *their* season: *Sa* would be improper, because *chacun* relates to *arbres*, not to *fruits*. *Vous tailleriez ces* arbres, chacun *dans sa saison*; you will cut these *trees*, *each* in *its* season: the phrase is grammatical: however *leur* would not be improper, because there are not as many seasons as trees.

A coachman may say, *Je* les *prendrai dans ma voiture, &* les *descendrai* chacun *à* sa *porte*; I will take *them* in my coach, and let down *each* of them at *his* door; but you could not say of him, *il* les *prendra dans* sa *voïture, &* les *descendra* chacun *à* sa *porte*; The two *sa*'s would clash; *Chacun à leur porte* will prevent the ambiguity: or take another turn; viz. *Chacun chez éux.*]

A ¶ When the object, to which *chacun* relates, is a pronoun of the first or second persons, the possessive, which comes after *chacun*, is generally of the same persons: The coachman may say, for instance, *Je* vous *prendrai tous dans ma voiture, & je* vous *descendrai* chacun *à* votre *porte*, or je *descendrai* chacun *de* vous *à* sa *porte*; because he speaks to the very persons he is to take.

Likewise many persons may bring offerings, and their spokesman will say; *Nous vous apportons des offrandes*, chacun *selon* nos *moyens*, or chacun *de nous selon* ses *moyens*; because he speaks collectively.

N. B. *Chacun* relating to a collective noun of the feminine gender, remains of the masculine, when the collective refers to men; as, *Les communes se séparèrent tout irritées, & se retirèrent* chacun *chez* soi (*les membres* is understood); the Commons, quite enraged, parted and retired, each to his respective home.

But we say; *Les Provinces y envoyèrent* chacune *leur député*; The provinces sent thither each its deputy; because the provinces are many, whereas the commons is said of one single body, composed of men.

B ☞ This explanation of *quelqu'un* and *chacun* will perhaps appear pretty long; but it has been thought that in a professed Grammar matters could not be presented too clearly.

2°. *Quiconque* signifies and is said of *any body whatever*, and is only of the singular number: as,

*Quiconque méprise les belles-lettres se rend lui-même méprisable*; Whoever despises polite learning makes himself despicable.

In which phrase *quiconque* is the subject of, or nominative to the two verbs.

*Quiconque de vous sera assez hardi* (or *hardie*) *pour médire de*
C *moi, je l'en ferai repentir*,

If any of you is so bold as to slander me, I'll make him (or her) repent it.

*Quiconque*, as well as its substitute *qui* (see p. 257), having the force of *toute personne qui*, contains in itself the relative with its antecedent; therefore it is sometimes the object of one verb, at the same time that it is the subject of another: as,

*Il a ordre d'arrêter* quiconque *passera par là*;
He has orders to arrest any body that shall go by.
*En dépit* de quiconque *y trouvera à redire*;
In spite *of any body* that will find it amiss.

D *Ce reproche s'adresse* à quiconque *se croit coupable*;
This reproach is addressed *to any body who* thinks he deserves it.

For the same reason we do not say *en dépit de quiconque*, to signify *in spite of any body whatever*; but *en dépit de tout le monde*, or *de qui que ce soit*.

3°. *Personne* (nobody) is directly opposite to *quiconque*, and is never used but with verbs attended by a negative, or in exclusive prepositions: as,

*Ne faire tort à personne,* To wrong nobody. A
*Vivre* sans *faire tort à personne,* To live without wronging any body.

*Personne* is used without a negative in sentences of interrogation, or rather of admiration, wonder, and doubt; and where the adverb *trop* is used; wherein it does not signify *nobody*, but *any body*: as,

*Y a-t-il personne au monde qui vous estime plus que moi?*
Is there any body in the world that esteems you more than I do?
*Je doute que personne ait jamais mieux connu les hommes que La* B
*Bruyère;*
I doubt if ever any body knew men better than *La Bruyere.*
*Il est trop hardi pour craindre personne;*
He is too bold to fear any body.
*Personne a-t-il jamais pu trouver la pierre Philosophale?*
Could ever any body find the Philosopher's stone?

In which instances one does not only inquire after the thing in question, but also shows one's doubt and wonder at it:

Whereas in this following, one only inquires after the thing in question:

*Personne* n'*a-t-il jamais pu trouver la pierre Philosophale?*
Could *never* any body find out the Philosopher's stone? C

Though *personne* is said of both genders, yet it requires the adnoun or pronoun which refers to it, in the masculine, even in speaking of a woman: as,

*Personne n'est venu,* and not *venue;* Nobody is come.
*Il n'y a personne d'assez hardi pour oser;* There is nobody so bold as to dare.
*Personne n'est si malheur*eux *qu'elle;* Nobody is so unhappy as she is. D

Nevertheless, if the pronoun *personne* is applied to a woman, or to women, in such a manner that it ceases to be indefinite, and becomes specified, then it requires the adnoun in the feminine, as speaking to women:

*Il n'y a personne de vous asses* hardie pour, *&c.*
There is none among you so bold as to, &c.

4°. *Nul, pas un, aucun,* are also pronouns negative requiring another negative before the verb, except in sentences of interrogation, or doubt: as,

*Nul* n'*ose en approcher;* No one dares come near him, *or* her.
*Pas un* ne *le croit;* No one believes it?
*Y a-t-il aucun de vous qui le souffrît?*
Is there any of you that would bear it?

A *Aucun* is hardly used but in sentences of interrogation, and is followed by the second state, as in the last instance.

N. B. ¶ *Aucun*, in the nominative case, is said of persons only: as, *Aucun ne l'a vu;* No one has seen it.

But in the oblique cases, it is said both of persons and things: as, *Il a beaucoup de livres, & il n'en lit aucun:* He has many books, and reads none of them.]

*Any body* signifies *tout le monde*, and never *aucune personne:* which (if it were a French expression) would require a negative; and imply quite the contrary, to wit, *nobody*. Therefore this phrase,

Ask upon Change where he lives, *any body* will tell it you;

B must be translated thus: *Demandez à la Bourse où il demeure, tout le monde vous le dira*, or, *Il n'y a personne qui ne vous le dise*, (not by *aucune personne*).

5°. *Ni l'un ni l'autre* will have the verb in the singular, if it comes after it; and in the plural, if it comes before: but *l'un & l'autre* will always have it in the plural:

*Ni l'un ni l'autre n'est venu,* } Neither of them is
or, *Ils ne sont venus ni l'un ni l'autre,* } come.

*L'un & l'autre ont raison,* } Both are in the right, *or*
or, *Ils ont raison l'un & l'autre.* } They are both in the right.

C ¶ When there is a preposition used before *l'un*, the same must be repeated before *l'autre*; as, *Il est ami de l'un & de l'autre;* He is a friend to both.]

6°. The verb construed with *l'un l'autre* must be a reciprocal one, except it is the verb *être:* as *Il se font des grimaces l'un à l'autre*, They make faces to one another.

*Ils sont ennemis l'un de l'autre;* They are enemies to each other.

¶ The prepositions are placed between *l'un* and *l'autre.*

*L'un l'autre* are sometimes separated: as, *L'un est riche, l'autre est pauvre;* One is rich, the other poor. Sometimes *l'un* signifies the former, and *l'autre* the latter.

After reflected verbs, to which the particle *entre* is prefixed to make them

D reciprocal, *l'un l'autre* must be omitted, as redundant, *ils s'entre-tuent;* They kill one another; *Ils s'entre-frappent;* They strike each other; has the same meaning as *ils se tuent l'un l'autre*, &c.]

*Some*, repeated in a sentence, is expressed in French by *les uns* in the first part of the sentence, and *les autres* in the other: as,

*Les uns aiment une chose & les autres une autre*, or *& les autres en aiment une autre; some* like one thing, and *some* another.

7°. *Plusieurs* is of both genders, and of the plural number only: as *plusieurs hommes* many men, *plusieurs femmes* many women;—*many a man*, is rendered into French by *plusieurs hommes*, or *plus d'un homme.*

8°. *Tout* is construed several ways; 1*st*, It is an adnoun signifying *all* and *whole*, and always coming before the article of its noun, besides the preposition *de* and *à*, which it requires before itself; as *tout le monde*, all the world, *or* the whole world; *de tout le monde*, of the whole world; *à tout le monde*, to the whole world; *toute une ville*, a whole city; *tous mes livres*, all my books. A

It is to be observed, that when this adnoun is construed with the name of a city or town of the feminine, it does not agree with it in gender, and besides causes the other adnoun (if there be any) to be masculine: as, *Tout Rome le sait*, not *toute la Rome*, as you should say *toute la ville le sait*, all Rome, all the city knows it; *tout la Haye en est alarmé*, not *toute . . . alarmée*, All the Hague is frighted at it.

2*dly*, It signifies *any* or *every*, and its noun has no article: as,

*Toute verité n'est pas toujours bonne à dire*, B

All truth (*i. e.* any truth) is not to be told at all times.

*Tout homme est mortel*, Every man is mortal.

3*dly*, *Tout* construed with some verbs, especially with *être*, is taken substantively, and signifies most times *every thing*: as, *tout est vanité en ce monde*, every thing is vanity in this world. Sometimes it signifies *the whole*: as, *le tout est plus grand que sa partie*, the whole is bigger than its part. It signifies also *every* in these words, *tous les jours* every day, *toutes les semaines* every week, *tous les mois* every month, *tous les ans* every year, *à toute heure* every hour, *à tout moment* every moment; but C we do not say *à tout instant*, or *à toute minute*, but *à chaque instant*, *à chaque minute*.

*Tout*, being adnoun, must be repeated before each noun of which it can be said, especially when they are of different genders: as,

*Je suis, avec* toute *l'ardeur &* tout *le respect possible*, &c.

I am, with all possible zeal and respect, *&c.*

*Tout*, besides its construction of noun, adnoun, and pronoun, has three others: 1*st*, It is used before an adnoun followed by *que*, and is rendered by *although*, or *however*, or by *as*, repeated with an adnoun between, or only coming after an adnoun. In this signification it is indeclinable, except (which is worth observing) when the adnoun feminine, before which it comes, begins with a consonant; for then it is used in the feminine gender and plural number; but when the adnoun, though feminine and plural, begins with a vowel, D *tout* remains indeclinable; as,

Tout *Philosophe* qu'il *est, il juge souvent de travers;*
*Though* he is a Philosopher, he often judges very wrong.
Tout *ignorant* qu'*il est, il a beaucoup de jugement;*
*As* ignorant *as* he is, he has much judgment.
Toutes *laides* qu'*elles sont, elles sont bien fières;*
*As* ugly *as* they are, (*or*) for all they are ugly, they are very proud creatures.
Toute *petite* qu'*est son armée, il leur donnera bataille;*
Small *as* his army is, he will give them battle.
Tout *étonnantes* que *sont ces aventures, on les a vues arriver;*
*However surprising these* adventures are, they have been seen to happen.

A 2dly, *Tout* is also used before an adnoun, without being followed by *que:* but it is liable to the same rules and restrictions just mentioned, and is englished by the adverbs *quite, entirely,* &c. as,

*Il est* tout *autre,* He is *quite* another man.
*Elle est* tout *abattue de sa disgrace,* She is *entirely* cast down by her disgrace.
*Ils sont* tout *transportés de joie,* } They are *quite* overjoyed, *or* trans-
*Elles sont* toutes *transportées de joie,* } ported with joy.
*Elles sont* tout *éperdues,* They are *quite* affrighted.
*Ce sont des nouvelles* toutes *fraîches,* These news are *quite* fresh.

But when the adnoun is preceded by *aussi, tout* is indeclinable; as,

*Elles sont* tout aussi *fraîches que si on ne faisoit que de les cueillir,*
They are *quite as* fresh *as* if they had been pick'd just now.

3dly, *Tout* is besides used before these adverbs, *bas* and *doucement;* as, *Parler* tout *bas,* speak *quite* low; *Marcher* tout *doucement,* walk softly.

B *Tout* is expletive, and only energetic in, *Tout comme vous voudrez;* Just as you please.

9°. To these pronouns is added *autrui,* which has neither gender nor number. It is used in the second and third state in these and such like expressions: *Désirer,* or *Convoiter le bien d'autrui,* To covet another man's property.
*s'Affliger du mal d'autrui,* To be sorry for another's trouble *or* misfortune.
*Dépendre d'autrui,* To depend upon others.
*Nuire à autrui,* To wrong, hurt, *or* prejudice others.
*Faire à autrui comme nous voudrions qu'on nous fît;*
To do by others as we would be done by.

As to *quelconque, quelque,* and *chaque,* they are mere adnouns, inseparable from a noun—*Quelconque* signifies *any whatever,* and always follows its noun, being used only in some law-phrases like this, *Nonobstant opposition,* or *appellation quelconque,* notwithstanding *any* opposition or appeal *whatever;* and such sentences like this,

*Il n'y a raison* quelconque *qui puisse le convaincre,*
C There is no reason *whatever* can convince him.
N. B. *Aucun* is preferred to *quelconque;* as, *Il n'y a aucune raison* ...

10°. *Quelque,* in the singular, denotes an Object; in the plural, a Number indeterminate; it also indicates a Quality, or Quantity indeterminate. In the first signification, it answers to the word *some;* as, *Quelque fripon,* some knave; *quelques hommes,* some men; *quelques femmes,* some women.

In the other signification it answers to these expressions, *whatever, whatsoever, though* with *ever so,* or *ever so much:* as, *Quelque mérite qu'on ait, on ne reussit guères dans le monde sans protecteur:*
D Whatever merit a man has, *or* though a man has ever so much merit, *or* though a man is ever so deserving, he very seldom meets with success in the world without a patron.

*Quelque,* signifying *some,* is always an adnoun; but when it signifies *whatever,* &c. it is sometimes an adverb, and therefore indeclinable; and sometimes a pronoun incomplete adjective, which agrees in gender and number with the following noun or adnoun.

*Quelque* is only an adverb, when it comes before an adnoun A
and a noun governed of *être*, or only when it comes before an adnoun; which can never happen but with *être*, and it then signifies *however*; as,

Quelque *riches qu'il soient*;
*However* rich they be; *though* they are *ever so* rich.
Quelque *belles que soient ses actions*;
*However* fine his actions may be.
Quelque *grandes que soient les actions qu'il a faites*;
*How* great *soever* may be the actions that he has done.

But when *quelque* comes before a noun attended by an ad- B
noun, or before a noun only, but with any other verb than *être*, it is an adnoun following the same rule as others; as,

*Quelques richesses qu'il possède*;
Whatever riches he is possessed of.
Quelques *grandes actions qu'il ait faites*:
*Whatever* great actions he has done.

Note, 1*st*, That *quelque* signifying *whatever*, followed immediately by a noun or adnoun, always requires, if indeclinable, the particle *que*, and if declinable, the relative *qui*, before the next verb, which it governs in the subjunctive, and of which it is governed, as to its state. In the aforesaid sentences, and most of the same kind, the relative is the fourth state *(que)* which has made our Grammarians lay it down as a rule, that *quelque* is always followed by *que*; but these following instances prove that it is by the relative *qui* that *quelque* is always followed, when it is declinable; as, C

*Quelque chose* qui *arrive*, Whatever happens.
*Quelques évènemens* qui *puissent arriver*, Whatever events may happen.

2*dly*, That in those sorts of sentences, *quelque* with its noun and adnoun, or with either, makes a sort of *nominative absolute*, *i. e.* a subject which goes for nothing in the grammatical order of the sentence, and that the verb must besides have another noun coming before it for its subject, and another for its object, unless it be neuter. Which again evinces that it is not *que* (as it should be, were the rule of our Grammarians true), but *qui* that follows *quelque*, and is the subject coming before the verbs neuter in the last instances.

3*dly*, That as *whatsoever* is a pronoun compound, which is sometimes separated in two parts by a word between; as *in* what *condition* soever *I be (en quelque état que je me trouve)*, so is likewise *quelque* separated in two words, viz. *quel* and *que*, but without any word between as in English; and *quel que* must be immediately followed by a verb, or a pronoun personal in the first state: then *quel* must agree in gender and number with the following noun or D
pronoun, that comes before the verb. (*N. B.* If the word that expresses the subject is a noun, it comes after the verb; and the verb requires no other state of the relative *qui* before it, though it is still governed in the subjunctive by *que*): as,

Quels que *puissent être vos desseins*, } which amounts to the same of { *Quelques desseins que vous puissiez avoir*,
Whatever your designs may be, *or* whatever designs you may have.
*Quel que je sois*, Whatever I am.
*Quels que nous soyons*, Whatever we are.
*Quelles qu'elles puissent être*, Whatever they may be (speaking of women).

Vide *Tel . . . que*, page 277, A.

A 4*thly*, *Whatever* and *whatsoever* cannot always be rendered by *quelque*. We have seen before that they express sometimes *quelconque*. They are moreover rendered by *quoi que*, *tout ce qui*, *tout ce que* : as,

| | |
|---|---|
| Whatever it may be, | *Quoi que ce soit.* |
| Whatever happens, | *Quoi qu'il arrive.* |
| Whatever pleases, | *Tout ce qui plaît.* |
| Whatever you will, | *Tout ce que vous voudrez.* |

*Note*, *That* quoi que *in the two first instances, is very different from the conjunction* quoique, *although ; the former being a pronoun composed of* quoi *and* que, *signifying* whatever.

From *qui* and *quoi* are formed these two other pronouns indeterminate;

| | |
|---|---|
| *qui que ce soit*, | *qui que ce fût ;* |
| *quoi que ce soit*, | *quoi que ce fût ;* |

B the two first are said of persons, the two others of things; *qui que ce soit* answers to *any body, whosoever :* and when its verb is attended by a negative, it signifies *no man in the world, no man living, nobody at all :* as,

*Qui que ce soit qui vous parle, pensez à ce qu'on vous dit ;*
Whosoever speaks to you, mind what is said to you.

*Qui que ce soit ne m'en a parlé ;* No body at all spoke to me of it.
*Je n'ai vu qui que ce soit ;* I have seen no body in the world.

*Qui que ce fût*, is the same pronoun used with the other tense of the subjunctive, according as the construction requires it ; as,

*Qui que ce fût qui lui parlât, il ne répondoit rien ;*
Whosoever spoke to him, he answered nothing.

*Il ne se défioit de qui que ce fût ;* He mistrusted no body at all.

These two pronouns, used without a negative, make a sort of *nominative absolute*, which must be followed by the pron. personal *il* ; and when the sentence has two parts, *qui que ce soit*, *qui que ce fût*, must be immediately C followed by the relative *qui*, before the verb of the first part, and *il* must come besides before that of the second ; as,

*Qui que ce soit* qui *me trompe*, il *sera découvert ;*
Whosoever cheats me shall be found out.
*Qui que ce soit*, il *s'en repentira ;*
Whoever he be, *or* let him be who he will, he shall repent it.

} *qui que ce soit* is put in apposition, as also *quoi que ce soit*, hereafter.

*Quoi que ce soit*, *quoi que ce fût*, without a negative, signifies *any thing whatsoever :* and with a negative, *nothing in the world ;* as,

*Quoi que ce soit qui arrive, faites-le-moi savoir,*
Whatever happens, let me know it.

*Quoi que ce soit n'est arrivé ;* Nothing in the world has happened.

Those pronouns are used in their three states, viz. with *de* and *à*.

D ¶ 11°. *Chaque*, each, every, implies separation and distribution, is said both of persons and things, is of both genders, and has no plural.

*Chaque citoyen doit contribuer au bien de l'état ;* Every citizen ought to contribute to the welfare of the state.

*Chaque science a ses principes ;* Every science has its principles.]

¶ 12°. *Rien* nothing, *tel* such, and *certain* certain, may also pass for pronouns indeterminate, in sentences like these;

*Il ne dit* rien ; He says *nothing*.

*Je ne saurois vous* rien *donner ;* I cannot give you *any* thing.

*Il n'a* rien de *grand que la naissance ;* There is *nothing* great in him but his birth.

*Il ne fait* rien qui soit *digne de sa réputation ;*
He does *not* do *any* thing worthy of his character.

Tel *sème*, qui *ne recueille pas*; *Such* sow *as* do not reap. A
Otherwise *tel* is an adnoun, generally followed by *que*, and signifying *such as*; *such that*; *like*, &c. as,
*Il est* tel qu'on *le dit*; He is *such as* they say.
*Il est* tel que *son père*, He is *like* his father.
Tel *maître*, tel *valet* (a prov.); *Like* master, *like* man.
N. B. There are many other ways of using *tel*, both with and without *que*, which may be seen in Chambaud's Dictionary.]

¶ *Tel . . . que* always implies comparison; therefore it must not be mistaken for *quelque . . . que* or *quel que*; for instance:
*A* quelque *degré* d'*honneur* qu'*on l'élève*, *il ne sera jamais content*; To whatever degree of honour he may be raised, he will never be content (not *à* tel *degré*).
*Un titre*, quel qu'*il soit*, *n'est rien*, *si ceux qui le portent ne sont pas* B
*grands par eux-mêmes*; A title, whatever it may be, is nothing, unless they who bear it be great of themselves, (not *tel qu'il* soit.]

¶ *Certain*, certain, considered as a pronoun, is said both of persons and things, and has generally the force of *quelque*;
*Certain philosophe*, a certain philosopher.
*Certaines qualités*, certain qualities.
*Certaine nouvelle*, a certain piece of news.
Whereas in *une nouvelle certaine*, certain news, *certaine* is an adjective.

In *ne quittez jamais le certain pour l'incertain*, never quit a certainty for an uncertainty, *certain* is used substantively.]

## CHAP. V. D

### *Observations upon Nouns of Number.*

1°. CARDINAL numbers are indeclinable, except *cent* and *million*, which take an *s* in the plural, as also *vingt*, but only when it comes after *quatre* and *six*, before a noun: as *deux quatre*, *trois cinq*, *deux-cens guinées*, *trois-millions*, *quatre-vingts*, *livres*, *six-vingts hommes*: but we say, *quatre-vingt-dix hommes*, *quatre-vingt-un*.

¶ *Cent* is indeclinable before another number; as, *Deux-cent-cinquante* D
*guinées*, two hundred and fifty guineas.]

These numbers always come immediately before the things numbered, and cannot be preceded by any noun or adnoun, except the adnouns possessive *mon*, *ma*, *mes*, &c. as *ses deux amis* his two friends, *mes trois frères* my three brothers, *leurs six chevaux* their six horses.

The first number is the only one liable to gender, making *une* in the feminine.

A 2°. The conjunction *& (and)* is put before the *unity* only, as *vingt & un, trente & un, quarante & un,* and *le vingt & unième, le cinquante & unième,* &c. but it is not put before the other combined numbers, except those that follow *soixante;* we say *vingt-deux, vingt-trois, trente-quatre, quarante-cinq, cinquante-six,* &c. but it is put after all the numbers that follow *soixante;* as *soixante & un, soixante et deux, soixante & dix, soixante & quinze,* till you come to *quatre-vingts.* But after *quatre-vingts* there is no *&* put even before the unity *quatre-vingt-un, quatre-vingt-deux, quatre-vingt-dix, cent-un, cent-deux, cent-unième, cent-deuxième,* &c. However, some good writers and speakers
B never use the conjunction copulative in the aforesaid cases, except before the unity, and they say *vingt & un, trente & un, soixante & un, soixante-deux, soixante-dix,* &c. We don't say *six-vingt-un,* but *cent-vingt & un.* We don't say *sept-vingt, huit-vingt,* &c. as the English do *seven-score, eight-score,* &c. but *cent-quarante, cent-soixante.* We say *mille,* and never *dix-cens,* nor *vingt-cens;* but we say *onze-cens* eleven hundred, *douze-cens* twelve hundred, and so on to *deux-mille, deux-mille cent, deux mille deux cens,* &c. *un million,* and never *dix-cent-mille.*

3°. We don't say *septante* for *soixante & dix,* seventy; *huitante* for *quatre-vingt,* eighty or four score; and *nonante*
C for *quatre-vingt-dix,* ninety; as the Swiss, the Gascons, and others of the south of France say. Except in Geometry, where *nonante* is preserved.—We mean by *les Septante,* the Septuagint, or the seventy-two translators of the Bible.

4°. When we speak of Time, we say *huit jours,* a week, and not *une semaine; quinze jours,* a fortnight, and not *quatorze-nuit; trois semaines,* three weeks; *quatre, cinq semaines, un mois,* a month; *six semaines,* six weeks; *deux mois, deux mois & demi,* and not *neuf* or *dix semaines; trois mois, six mois,* and never *un quartier, un demi-an; sept, huit, neuf mois,* and not
D *trois quarts,* nor *trois quartiers d'an; un an, un an & demi, deux ans;* &c. We don't say *un an & un mois, un an & deux mois,* &c. but *treize mois, quatorze mois,* &c.

5°. When we speak of an indeterminate number, of which we are not sure, we say *un ou deux, deux ou trois,* down to *sept ou huit,* seven or eight; then we say *huit ou dix, dix ou douze, douze ou quinze, quinze ou vingt, vingt ou trente, trente ou quarante,* as far as *sixty;* then *soixante ou quatre-vingts*

*quatre-vingts ou cent*; but we say *environ cent-vingt, environ* A
*cent-trente*, &c. and not *cent ou cent vingt, cent-trente ou cent-quarante*. When we know the number very near, we say *dix ou onze, onze ou douze, douze ou treize*, &c.

6°. We say *trente et un jours*, thirty-one days; *vingt & un ans*, one-and-twenty years; *vingt & un écus*, twenty-one crowns; *vingt & un chevaux*, one-and-twenty horses, *&c.* but never *vingt & un cheval, vingt & un an*, &c.; and when the noun is attended by an adnoun, that adnoun is plural likewise: *Il a vingt & un ans accomplis*, He is full one-and-twenty years old; *Il y a quarante & un jours passés*, It is about one-and-forty B
days; *Trente & un écus bien comptés*, One-and-thirty crowns well told; *Vingt et une guinées bien comptées*, One-and-twenty guineas well told.

7°. The Cardinal numbers take not the article, except when they are used substantively, as *le dix du mois*, the tenth of the month (in which case *le dix* stands for *le dixième jour)*; See paragraph 10°. hereafter, the other numbers always do. The collective are commonly preceded by *un* or *une*, and must, besides, be followed by the preposition *de* before the next noun: as, *J'ai douze noix, ou une douzaine de noix, & vous en avez trente*, I have twelve walnuts, or a dozen of walnuts, and you C
have got thirty: *Donnez-m'en la moitié*, ou *le tiers*, Give me half, *or* the third part of them: *Prenez-en une douzaine*, Take a dozen.

8°. From the Cardinal numbers the Ordinal are formed, in adding *ième* to the last consonant of the Cardinal, and cutting off therefore the final *e* in those that have it: as from *deux, deuxième; dix, dixième; quatre, quatrième* (except *premier & second*), that are formed by the Cardinal numbers. In *neuf*, the *f* is changed into *v* in *neuvième*, the ninth. Though we say *le premier & le second*; yet we don't say *le vingt & premier, le vingt second*), but *le vingt & unième, le vingt-deuxième*. To the Ordinal numbers belong these three, *le dernier* the last, D
*le pénultième*, or *l' avant-dernier* before the last, the last but one, and *l'antépénultième* the last but two.

¶ We use the Ordinal number without the article in these cases:
*Livre premier*, Book the first; *Chapitre troisième*, Chapter the third, *&c.*
As also in such phrases:
*J'y allai moi cinquième*, I went thither with four others.
*Il s'enfuit lui troisième*, He fled with two others.
But a personal pronoun disjunctive must precede the number.]

A 9°. Ordinal numbers form also each an adverb, with the addition of *ment* to their feminine; as *premièrement* firstly, *secondement*, or *deuxièment*, secondly, *troisièmement* thirdly, and so on to *twenty*. We also say, *en premier lieu, en second lieu, en troisième lieu*, in the first place, *&c.*

10°. We use the Cardinal number, not the Ordinal, in dating and speaking of the years of the world, and we do not write *mille* nor *cens*, but *mil* and *cent*, as *l'an mil sept cent quatre-vingt dix-sept de l'Ere Chrétienne*, the year one thousand seven hundred and ninety-seven of the Christian Æra *l'an mil huit cent douze*: but we say *la seconde, la quatrième année de la cen-*
B *tième*, ou *de la dixième Olympiade*, the 2d or 4th year of the 100, *or* 10th Olympiad. We also use the Cardinal number, when we name the days of the month, *&c.*: as *le deux* the second, *le trois* the third, *le six* the sixth, *le onze* the eleventh, *le quinze* the fifteenth, *le vingt* the twentieth, *le vingt & un* the twenty-first, *&c.* and not *le deuxième, le vingtième du mois*, &c. but we do not say, *l'un du mois*, but *le premier*, the first day of the month. Observe, besides, that we put no particle before *cent* and *mille*, as in English, except it be to denote unity in opposition to many; as *un cent de plumes*, a hundred pens;
C *J'en ai cent, J'en ai mille*, I have got a hundred, a thousand. We say *le onze, du onze, au onze;* and likewise *vers les onze heures* about eleven o'clock, *sur les une heure* about one o'clock, without sounding *s* at all, as if the first syllable of *onze & une* were aspirated, *&c.* We also say, *le onzième, la onzième*, the eleventh, not *l'onzième.*

11°. When two Ordinal numbers come together, we make the first Cardinal, and say *le dix ou douzième*, the tenth or twelfth, *le sept ou huitième*, the seventh or eighth, instead of *dixième ou douzième*, &c.

12°. Speaking of Kings and Sovereigns, we use the Cardinal number without the article, instead of the Ordinal, with the
D article, as in English; as *Henri trois, Henri quatre*, Henry the third, the fourth; *Alexandre sept*, Alexander the seventh; *Charles neuf*, Charles the ninth; *Benoît treize*, Benedict the thirteenth, *Louis quinze*, Lewis the fifteenth. But we say *Henri premier, Henri second, François premier, George second*, George the second, and not *François un, Henri deux, George deux*. We say *Charles-quint*, Charles the fifth (Emperor of Germany), to distinguish him from the Kings of the same name. We also say *Sixte-quint*, Pope Sixtus the fifth.

13°. *Huitaine* and *neuvaine* are said of the interval of eight or nine days. *Octave* is said both of the interval of eight days during

which a Church festival is kept, and of eight musical notes together. *Tercet, quatrain, sizain, huitain,* and *dizain,* are terms of Poetry, said of staves of three, four, six, eight, and ten verses. *Quintain* and *trentain* are Tennis-terms, signifying fifteen or thirty all; as *quinte, tierce,* and *quarte,* are Card-terms, to denote a sequence of three, four, or five cards. *Tierce* and *quarte* are also said of a periodical fit of an ague, returning every third or fourth day, *la fièvre tierce ou quarte,* the tertian or quartan ague. *Tricon,* another Card-term, signifies a *prial* or *pair royal. Tierce, quinte sixième, septième,* are likewise musical terms. A

14°. Besides the distributive numbers *la moitié, le tiers, le quart,* we also say *la troisième & la quatrième partie,* the third and fourth part; then we say *un cinquième,* a fifth, *un ou deux sixièmes,* a sixth or two, *un dixième,* a tenth, &c. *La dixme,* the tithe, is said only of the tenth part of the fruits of the earth; and *décime,* of the tenth part of the ecclesiastical revenues. B

15°. *Demi* half, is a sort of adnoun indeclinable, when it comes before its nouns, making together a compound word, as *une demi-heure* half an hour, *Demi-Dieux* Semi-Gods; but when the noun comes first, it agrees with it in gender, to which it is joined with the conjunction *&*, as *un muid & demi,* a hogshead and a half, *une livre & demie,* a pound and a half. *Demi* is said of things sold by the hundred, as *un demi-cent de plumes,* half an hundred of quills. C

16°. *Mi,* another distributive word, used only with the following nouns, of which it makes compound words, signifies also *moitié* half, or rather *milieu* middle: but (what is worth observing) it requires the article feminine, though the noun before which it comes be masculine; as *la mi-Août,* (pron. *mi-ou,*) *la mi-Mai,* the middle of August *or* May, *la mi-Carême,* the middle of Lent: and is never construed without the article feminine, except in some adverbial expressions used without the article: as *à mi-jambe* to the middle of the leg; *à mi-chemin,* in the middle of the way.

17°. *Quartier,* the fourth part of a thing, is said of those that are cut into parts, and *quarteron* of those that are sold by the hundred or the pound; *un quartier d'orange,* the fourth part of an orange, *un quarteron de thé,* a quarter of a pound of tea, *trois quarterons d'huîtres* three quarters of a hundred of oysters.—*Quintal* is an hundred weight, *un quintal deux quintaux de poudre,* one or two hundred weight of powder; and *millier* is said of things sold by the hundred, as un millier D

A *d'épingles* ten hundred of pins. We also say *un quartier, deux ou trois quartiers de loyer,* instead of *trois mois, six ou neuf mois de loyer,* a quarter, two or three quarters-rent. We also say *quartier* and *semestre* of three or six months waiting at a prince's: as, *être en quartier,* to be in waiting, *sortir de semestre,* to go *or* be out of waiting.

¶ N. B. We say, figuratively, *Je m'en vais dans le quartier;* I am going in the neighbourhood: *quartier* signifying part of a city.]

18°. We say *couple* and *paire* for two, but not promiscuously: *couple* is said of two natural things of the same kind that can be parted, as *une couple d'œufs,* a couple of eggs;
B *une couple de poulets,* a couple of chickens; *une couple de guinées,* a couple of guineas. We do not say *une couple de gens, une couple de personnes,* a couple of people: but speaking of two persons connected by marriage, for instance, we say, *un beau couple,* a fine couple; *un heureux couple,* a happy match; *voilà un beau couple d'amans,* there is a fine couple of lovers: in which case *couple* is of the masculine gender.

*Paire* is said of two artificial things that always go together, being fellows, and are in that respect inseparable, as *une paire de gants, de bas, de souliers,* a pair of gloves, stockings, shoes, *une paire de ciseaux, une paire de manches,* a pair of scissars,
C sleeves, *&c.* We do not say *une paire de culottes,* as the English do of a pair of breeches, but only *une culotte.*

¶ N. B. *Une paire de bœufs* is said of two bullocks yoked, for instance, to the same plough; whereas a butcher, who wants two oxen, will express himself by *une couple de bœufs.*]

19°. *Les Vingt-quatre* is said of the four-and-twenty violins belonging to the chapel of the King of France; *les Quarante,* of the forty members of the French Academy; *les Septante,* the seventy-two translators of the Bible; and *les Quinze-vingt,* the three hundred blind people belonging to an hospital of
D that name founded by St. Louis at Paris.

20°. Moreover, we say *centenaire, millénaire,* and *millésime*; as also *sexagénaire, septuagénaire, octogénaire,* and *nonagénaire.*

*Centénaire* is mostly an adnoun, as *le nombre centénaire,* the centenary number, *prescription centénaire* ou *de cent ans,* a hundred years prescription.—*Millénaire* is sometimes an adnoun, as *le nombre millénaire,* the millenary number, and sometimes a noun, as *le premier, le second millénaire* (the ten first centuries, or the ten next). *Millésime,* said only of the date set on

medals is always a noun; as *le millésime de la médaille est effacé*, the date *or* year of the medal is erased. *Sexagénaire, septuagénaire*, and the two others, are used both as nouns and adnouns; as *un bon vieillard septuagénaire*, a good old man of seventy; *On voit peu d'octogénaires: les nonagénaires sont encore plus rares*, We see few people eighty years old: those of ninety are still more uncommon. A

## CHAP. VI.

### *Of* VERBS.

§ I. 1°. THE verb always has a noun or pronoun before it, for its subject, with which it agrees in person and number; as, B

*Je vois*, I see; *Il croit*, he thinks; *Vous faites*, you do;
*Ils disent*, they say.
*Le maître enseigne, & l'écolier apprend;*
The master teaches, and the scholar learns.

And when the subject is a relative, it is of the same person with the pronoun personal, or noun, which it refers to: as, C

*C'est* moi *qui* ai *fait cela;* *C'est* lui *qui a vu cela:*
It is I who have done that. It is he who has seen that.
*C'est* nous *qui ne le* croyons *pas; Je vois un* homme *qui* boit;
It is we who do not believe it. I see a man who is drinking.

2°. Many nouns singular will have the verb in the plural; as,

*Son esprit, sa douceur, & sa patience l'abandonnèrent;*
His understanding, good nature, and patience, forsook him.
*Ni la douceur ni la force ne l'y feront consentir;*
Neither gentle nor forcible means will make him consent to it.

Except when the two nouns singular are joined by the conjunction disjunctive *ou;* for then the last noun is supposed to govern the verb: as, D

*Ou la douceur ou la force le* fera, and not *le feront;*
Either gentle or forcible means will do it.

¶ When of two substantives connected by *ni* repeated, one only is to do or receive the action, the verb must be in the singular: as, *Ce ne sera* ni *M. le Duc*, ni *M. le Comte qui sera nommé Ambassadeur;* Neither the Duke nor the Count is to be nominated Ambassador (because only one Ambassador is supposed to be appointed).

Whereas if two Ambassadors were to be appointed, the phrase should be worded thus: *Ni M. le Duc, ni M. le Comte ne seront nommés Ambassadeurs*; Neither, &c. without *ce ne sera*

A Likewise with regard to the conjunction *ou*, when the nominative consists of different persons, though in the singular number, the verb must be in the plural: as, *Ou lui ou* moi *nous irons;* Either he or I shall go. *Ou toi ou lui vous le ferez;* Either you or he will do it.

If one of the nouns is in the plural, the verb must agree with it: as,

*Le Prince autant que les peuples souhaitent la paix:*
The Prince as much as the people wish for peace.

But if the last noun is preceded by *mais*, the verb must agree with it, though it be singular, and there be many plural before: as, *Non-seulement ses honneurs & ses richesses,* mais *sa vertu*
B *même s'évanouit;* Not only his honours and riches, but also his very virtue vanished away (because *mais* indicates the ellipsis of *s'évanouirènt* after *richesses*).

Some pretend that when the last noun is preceded by *tout*, the verb must agree with it too:

*Ses biens, ses avantages, & tout son repos fut sacrifié;*
His riches, advantages, and all his quiet were sacrificed.

But it is more correct to put the verb in the plural, and to say:

*Ses honneurs, ses richesses, & toute sa vertu s'évanouirent,*
His honours, riches, and all his virtue vanished away;

besides the phrase is more harmonious.

¶ *Tout* or *rien*, completing, and, as it were, summing up a phrase enumerative, even composed of many substantives plural, is the leader of the verb, and governs it in the singular: as,

C *Dignités, richesses, amis,* tout *enfin l'abandonna;* Dignities, riches, friends, all in fine forsook him.

*Ni les livres, ni les promenades, ni ma belle maison,* rien *de tout cela ne m'occupe;* Neither books, nor walking, nor my handsome house, none of all these engage my attention.]

3°. When the verb has many pronouns of different persons for its subject, it must agree with the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third: as,

*Vous et moi* nous *sommes d'accord;* You and I agree.
*Vous vous ferez des affaires,* vous *& lui;*
You and he will bring yourselves into trouble.

D Note, that in French, the person who speaks, always names himself last: as, *Vous & moi nous sommes d'accord,* and never *moi & vous nous sommes d'accord.* (See p. 230, and 231.)

¶ *Of the Concord of Verbs with Collective Nouns.*

A collective noun is a substantive which expresses a multitude, though itself be singular.

Collective nouns are either general or partitive: general, when they express a multitude considered as a whole, a body; as, *le peuple,* the people; *l'armée,* the army; *le Parlement,* the Parliament; &c.: partitive, when they express a multitude, but considered as making part of a whole; as, *un grand nombre*

's, a great number of soldiers; *la plupart des membres*, most of the A
s, &c. whereby a number of soldiers is expressed, who all make but a
the army; a collection of members, who all make but a part of the
ient.

The noun which follows a collective partitive is always attended by
position *de*, of.

nglish, collective nouns, both general and partitive, govern their verbs
lural number; as, *the people* are, *the army* were, *the Parliament* have
*reat number of soldiers* were, *most of the members* wish, &c.

rench, a collective noun general, though followed by a noun plural,
its verb in the singular, because it presents, of itself, a single idea
dent on the following noun; and we say:

*ée des infidelles* fut *entièrement* défaite; the army of the infidels *were*
defeated.

*uple* souhaite *la paix*; the people *wish* for a peace. B

*rlement* s'est assemblé; the Parliament *have* met.

*emi se* présenta *aux portes de la ville*; the enemy presented *themselves*
he gates of the town.

What is said of verbs must be understood of adnouns, &c.; a reason
*aite, assemblé*, agree likewise with the subject of their respective sen-

. collective noun partitive, followed by a noun plural, governs its verb
lural, because it depends on the following noun, from which it bor-
its import, and with which it forms, as it were, a compound word:

nfinité *de* gens *pensent*; an *infinite number* of *people* think.

*and* nombre *de* savans, or *un* nombre *infini de* savans soutiennent *cette*
; a great *number* of learned *men maintain* that opinion.

*tit* nombre *d'* amis *lui* restèrent attachés; a small *number* of *friends*
*l attached* to him.

same may be said of adverbs of quantity used substantively. (See C

*d'*années *d'habitude* étoient *des chaînes de fer, qui me lioient à ces deux*
; *so many years* of acquaintance *were* iron-chains, which tied me to these
n.

coup *de* personnes sont capables *de faire une action sage*; *on* en *voit un*
*and* nombre qui sont capables *de faire une action d'esprit & d'adresse*;
n peu sont capables *de faire une action généreuse*; *Many persons are* ca-
doing a prudent action, a great *many more are* to be met with, capa-
ing an ingenious and clever action; but very *few are* capable of doing
ous one.

*le* jours *se* sont écoulés *depuis votre départ*; *a few days have* elapsed
ur departure.

*l'*enfans *lui* seroient *à charge*; *more children* would be a charge to him
r.

erb is still in the plural, though it precede its nominative: as,

furent accomplies tant *de* prédictions; thus *were so many predictions* D
lished.

the verb is impersonal, it must of course be singular; as,

rut *alors un grand nombre de soldats*; then a vast number of soldiers
d.

very other word depending on the collective must agree with it; as,

peu *de* personnes qui soient *de votre sentiment*; there are but few per-
your sentiment.

good writers use likewise the verb in the plural number after other
ve partitives: as, *foule, troupe, multitude*, &c. which are always fol-
y a noun plural: as,

ule *de* lettres *en* font *mention*; a *vast number* of *letters make* mention

troupe *d'*enfans *le* poursuivirent *à coups de pierre*; a *band* of *children*
im.

ultitude *d'*habitans allèrent *à sa rencontre*; a *multitude* of *inhabitants*
meet him.

A But such collective nouns, to govern their verbs in the plural, must be preceded by the indefinite particle *un, une;* for, if they were pointed out by the definite particle *le, la,* the case would be different; and we say, for instance,

La foule *de* soldats *qui* survint, l'obligea *de se retirer; the crowd of soldiers* which *came* on, *obliged* him to retreat.

And with much more reason, when the noun plural is, itself, preceded by the definite particle *les;* as,

La foule des soldats *qui survinrent*, l'obligea, &c. *the crowd of the soldiers* who came on, *obliged* him, &c.

However, there are some peculiarities to observe, which render the collective *infinité* widely different from the other collectives *foule, troupe, multitude,* &c.

B 1°. *Infinité,* in this sense, cannot take the definite particle *la,* it is always preceded by the indefinite particle *une.*

2°. After *infinité,* the ellipsis of the next preposition and noun may take place, which is not allowed after *foule, troupe,* &c. and we may say,

*Une infinité s'imaginent* (*de gens* is understood); a vast number of people fancy.

3°. The collective *foule, multitude,* &c. may be accompanied with an adjective; as, *une foule immense, une multitude innombrable,* &c. whereas *infinité* can never admit of any adjective.

To the above collective nouns partitive must be added, *la plus grande partie,* and its vice-gerent *la plupart:* but with this difference, that, as it is always preceded by the article *la,* the next noun must also be preceded by an article; as,

*La* plus grande partie *des* femmes ont *envie de plaire;* the *generality* of *women* wish to please.

*La* plupart *de ses* amis l'abandonnèrent; *most* of his *friends* forsook him.

*La plupart* may be used absolutely; that is, like *une infinité,* it allows the ellipsis of the next preposition and noun, but still requiring its verb to be in the plural, because the noun understood is supposed to be in that number:

C as,

La plupart coururent *aux armes;* most part ran to arms.

*Dans cette assemblée,* la plupart vouloient . . . . .; in this assembly the most part wished . . . . . .

*Un grand nombre* is seldom used absolutely.

When the aforesaid collective partitives *la plupart, une infinité,* as also adverbs of quantity are prefixed to a noun singular, the verb is, of course, in the singular number; as,

Une infinité *de* monde *y* accouroit *de toutes parts; a vast number of people resorted* thither from all parts.

La plupart *du* monde fait *cela:* most people do that.

Tant *de* beauté sera *sa perte:* so much beauty will be her ruin.

*Plus d'*esprit *ne lui* mesiéroit *pas;* more wit would not be amiss in him.

Le *plus grand nombre,* not being used indefinitively, requires the article before the next noun, and the verb in the singular; as,

D Le *plus grand nombre* des *membres,* or simply, *le plus grand nombre* étoit *de cet avis; the* greatest number of *the* members, *or simply,* the greatest number was of that opinion.

The collective partitives, just considered, are of a tribe which may be called *indeterminate,* but there are other collective partitives, as *la moitié,* the half; *le tiers,* the third part; *les trois quarts,* three parts out of four, &c. which, expressing a positive quantity, may be called determinate; and consequently follow the general rule, that is, require the verb to agree with them in number; as,

La moitié *des ennemis* déserta; Half of the enemies deserted.

Le tiers *des vignes* est gelé; The third part of the vines are frozen.

Les trois quarts du château furent brûlés; Three parts out of four of the castle were burnt.

However, there are some instances which seem to deviate from the above rule: as, A

Plus de la moitié *de ses dépens*, sont payés *(said of an old man)*: The best part of his bread is already eat.

La moitié *de ces bouteilles* sont vides: Half of these bottles are empty; (very different from *ces bouteilles sont à moitié vides*; these bottles are half empty.

The reason is that in such phrases, a determinate number is employed for an indeterminate one.

This may likewise account for the apparent irregularity of concord in the phrases mentioned, p. 207, B. C. *une partie du bras cassé*; *une partie de ses hommes morts*, &c.

N. B. *Buffier* and other Grammarians would rather say, *une partie* des soldats *s'enfuit*, than *s'enfuirent*; part of the soldiers ran away; and in that respect advise to consult the ear and taste.]

4°. The noun expressing the subject comes after the verb (or between the auxiliary and the participle, if the subject is a pronoun, and the verb in a compound tense), in a short sentence, used by a parenthesis, and as an accessary member to the chief sentence. (See p. 229, D.); as also after some conjunctions (See p. 230, A.), and some verbs in the optative mood, or resolved by a conjunction: as, *Tous les hommes sont fous, dit Boileau:* All men are mad, says Boileau. *Vous avez fini, m'a-t-il dit;* You have done, said *he* to me. *Ainsi fut terminé le différend;* Thus the difference ended. *Enfin, disoit ce bon Roi, je ne me croirai heureux, qu'autant que je ferai le bonheur de mes peuples;* In short, said that good King, I will not think myself happy, only as much as I shall make the happiness of my people. *Puissent nos jours sereins ignorer la tristesse!* May our days be serene and strangers to sorrow! *La Vanité, fût-elle dans l'esprit des Dieux, est toujours méprisable;* Vanity, were it in the minds of the gods, is always despicable. B C

The subject (especially when accompanied by many words depending on it) is likewise better put after the verb in the narrative discourse, when the verb has no object; or when the object is expressed by one of these conjunctive pronouns, *se, que, dont, le, où,* or when the adjective *tel* comes before the verb: as, *Là coulent mille ruisseaux qui distribuent par-tout une eau claire*; There flow a thousand rivulets that distribute a clear water every where. *Sur cela parut le Prince;* Thereupon the Prince appeared. *L'argent* que *m'envoya mon père:* The money which my father sent me. *A notre arrivée,* se *présenta un Ecuyer pour nous conduire;* When we arrived, a gentleman-usher came to us to be our guide. *Les égards dont nous préviennent nos parens;* The regards by which our relations are before-hand with us. *La prison où furent mis les malfaiteurs;* The prison in which the malefactors were put. *Tel parut à ses yeux l'éclat de sa beauté;* Such the brightness of her beauty appeared in his eyes. D

A *The Use and Construction of the Tenses.*

§ II. 1°. The *Present* tense of the indicative is used to denote the thing that is, or is a-doing, in the present period of time wherein we speak: as, *Je vois*, I see; *Je pense*, I think; that is, I, at this present time of speaking, do see, *or* think, *or* am seeing, *or* am thinking.

2°. The *Imperfect*, so called, because it partakes something both of the present and preterite, is used 1*st*, to denote that the thing which we are speaking of was present in a time past specified; as, *J'écrivois quand il arriva*, I was writing when
B he arrived; that is, at the time when he arrived, which is a time past specified, my action of writing, which is also past, was then present.

2*dly*, To denote a thing that was, without any respect to the time; and therefore it is used to express in a narration, the inclinations and qualifications a person had: as, *Titus* étoit *les délices du genre humain*; Titus was the delight of mankind. *Mon père* étoit *bel homme*, my father was a handsome man.

But if we speak of people that are still living (for the last instances are said of persons supposed to be dead), we use the
C compound of the present: as, *Mon père* a été *bel homme*; or if we use the imperfect, we must mention a particular time: as,

*Ma sœur* étoit *belle*; My sister was handsome (supposing she is dead).

*Ma sœur a* été *belle*; My sister has been handsome (supposing she lives still).

*Ma sœur* étoit *belle dans sa jeunesse*, or *avant d'avoir eu la petite vérole*;

My sister was handsome in her youth, (or) before she had the small pox (whether she is dead or no).

3*dly*, The imperfect is used to denote a thing uncertain, and doubtful, and even one that has something of a contingent fu-
D turity, that is, implying uncertainty; in which respect that tense is always attended, either before or after, by a conditional, and that thing, or action, is sometimes expressed in English by *should*: as, *S'il l'aimoit, il l'épouseroit*; If he loved her, *or* should he love her, he would marry her. *S'il venoit, vous lui* diriez *que j'ai été obligé de sortir pour affaire*; If he should happen to come, you would tell him that I have been obliged to go out on account of business.

3°. The *Preterite* is used to denote a thing past in such a manner, that nothing remains of the time wherein it was a doing,

and therefore is chiefly used in historical relations: as, *J'allai* A
*l'année passée en France;* I went to France last year. *J' appris la semaine dernière que,* &c. I heard last week that, *&c. Je fus hier à la Comedie*; I went to the play last night. *Quand César vit;* When Cæsar saw.

4°. The *Future* denotes a thing which is to be in a time not yet come; as, *Nous aurons la paix;* We shall have peace. We have not peace yet, but it is to come.

5°. The *Conditional,* or uncertain, tense is used to denote a B
thing that would, should, *or* could be in an unspecified and uncertain time, because it depends upon another uncertain and conditional thing. It denotes the time to come, but conditionally: as, *S'il demandoit cette place, on la lui donneroit;* If he asked for that place, they would give it him. The action of giving would be in an uncertain time, because it depends on one's asking, which is also uncertain, at least conditional.

The Conditional is also used in a sense that denotes the present, especially in sentences of Wish: as, *Je voudrois* (or) *Je souhaiterois qu'il fît beau Dimanche;* I wish it would be fair weather on Sunday. *Voudriez-vous me faire un plaisir?* Would you do me a kindness? *Pourriez-vous me prêter vingt guinées?* C
Could you, *or* Can you lend me twenty guineas? (Which manner of asking carries with it an appearance of modesty and respect).

6°. The *Compound of the Present* denotes, indeed, as the preterite, a thing that is past, but so that there is still actually remaining some part to slide away of the time wherein we declare the thing has been done: whereas the *Preterite* denotes the thing or action past in such a manner that nothing remains of that time wherein it was done: as, *J'ai lu cette semaine la déclaration de guerre:* I have read this week the declaration of war. *J'ai appris ce matin de grandes nouvelles;* I have heard great news this morning. *I have read* and *heard* denote a thing D
past; but it is *this week* and *to-day,* and still there remains a part of this week, and day, wherein I speak.

The English have, as the French, three tenses to denote an action that is over, *I did write, I wrote, I have written:* but they often use them promiscuously to signify the same idea, without having any regard to the principal time when: whereas those three tenses, and even all compound tenses, which are really so

A many preterite tenses, and as well compound in the sense implied, as in the words expressed, denote in French so many circumstances of an action that is over, and must not be confounded.

In order, therefore, to give a perfect notion of the use and construction, especially of these three preterites, which so much puzzle Foreigners, and to omit as little as possible on that point of the language, I will try further to illustrate what I have said thereon, in giving it another turn.

1°. The *Imperfect*, which, when used in the first of the three respects wherein it is construed, denotes an action past, but
B that was present in a specified time past (as, *J'écrivois quand il arriva*, I was writing when he arrived), is properly englished by the imperfect of the verb substantive *to be*, and the gerund of the verb in question, as I have translated it. At least, whenever the tense to be denoted may be thus englished, it is infallibly by the imperfect it must be expressed in French: for then one denotes an action that was present, in a specified time past.

The second respect, considered in the construction of the imperfect, admits of no difficulty. And as to the third, when the tense denotes uncertainty, doubt, or even futurity, one need only consider the tense that comes after it in English: for if it
C has *should*, *would*, or *could*, for its sign, the first verb must be expressed in French by the imperfect: as,

If he *loved* her, he *would* marry her: *S'il l'*aimoit, *il l'*épouseroit.

2°. When the thing spoken of happened in the *day*, *week*, *month*, *year*, and *age* wherein we live, we use the *compound of the present* to denote it: as,

*J'ai appris aujourd'hui de grandes nouvelles;*
I have heard great news to-day.
*J'ai vu le Roi cette semaine;* I have seen the King this week.
*J'ai été à la Comédie ce mois-ci;* I have been to the play this month.
D *Les François ont battu les Alliés cette année;*
The French have beat the Allies this year.
*Notre siècle a produit de grands hommes;*
Our age has produced great men. And never

*J'appris aujourd'hui de grandes nouvelles; Je vis le Roi cette semaine; J'allai à la Comedie ce mois-ci; Les François battirent les Alliés cette année; Notre siècle produisit de grands hommes*; because all those actions denote the day, week, month, year, age, in short, the time we live in, and there remains still

some part of that time, *viz.* of this year, month, day, *&c.* to slide A
away. Whereas we say,

3°. *J'appris hier de grandes nouvelles;* I heard great news yesterday.

*Je vis le Roi la semaine passée;* I saw the King last week.

*Je fus* or *J'allai à la Comédie le mois dernier;*
I went to the play last month.

*Les François battirent les Allies en* 1746;
The French did beat the Allies in 1746.

*Les Espagnols conquirent l'Amérique dans le* 16 *siècle;*
The Spaniards conquered America in the 16th century.

And we do not express those actions with the compound of the present, because we are no longer in the day, week, month, year, age, which is spoken of, and the time of the action is quite over. B

Again, The *Imperfect* may be said of yesterday, so it denote an action or passion being then present on that day that is past: as, *Quand avez-vous perdu votre bourse? Je l'ai perdue ce matin: Je l'avois hier au soir, Je l'admirois encore en m'allant coucher.* When did you lose your purse? I have lost it this morning: I had it last night, I admired it still in going to bed.

The *Compound of the Present* is likewise used to denote a thing that has been done, and is entirely over, without mentioning any particular time: as, *Avez-vous vu l'Opéra de Cadmus? Oui, je l'ai vu: Je le vis l'année passée;* Have you seen the Opera of Cadmus? Yes, I have; I did last year. As also when there is in the sentence some word or other showing distinctly something present; as *J'ai fait cela il n'y a qu'un moment;* I did that but just now. *Il y a plus de quinze jours que je ne suis sorti;* It is above a fortnight since I have been out.

We may on some occasions indifferently use either of these three tenses, when we only want to denote in general an action that is over: as *Alexandre étoit,* (or) *fut,* (or) *a été un grand Capitaine;* Alexander was a great Captain. C
In which instance it is indifferent to denote in what particular time *Alexander* was a great Captain, so his courage and abilities only are denoted. But if there be in the sentence some word or other that should specify a particular circumstance of the time when he showed his courage, then regard must be had to the aforesaid Rules.

7°. The *Compound of the Imperfect* (called in Latin *Plusquamperfectum,* because it denotes the preterite in a double manner) is used to denote, that in a certain specified time past the thing spoken of was also past: as, *J'avois écrit ma lettre quand il entra;* I had written my letter when he came in. My action of writing is here denoted, not only as past in itself, but D
also with respect to another thing (his coming in), which is also past.

8°. The *Compound of the Preterite* is used in the same sense as the preterite; that is, it denotes a thing past, in a time of which no part remains to slide away: but it intimates something later, and besides most commonly expresses a thing past before another, and is almost always construed with these conjunctions, *quand, lorsque, dès que, aussitôt que,* après que, &c.

A as *Quand j'eus fini ma lettre,* or *Après que j'eus fini ma lettre, elle me pria de lui en écrire une*; When, *or* after I had finished my letter, she desired me to write one for her.

But if the action past before another was done in a time wherein we are still, and which is not quite over, then the super-compound tenses must be used: as, *Elle est venue me voir aujourd'hui. J'étois à écrire quand elle est entrée; Quand j'ai eu fini ma lettre, elle m'a prié de lui en écrire une*; She is come to see me to-day; I was writing when she came in; When I had finished my letter, she has desired me to write one for her.

B 9°. The *Compound of the Future* is used to denote a thing that is yet to be, with respect to itself, but that shall be over with respect to another future thing, which is to follow it: as, *J'aurai soupé quand il viendra*; I shall have supped when he will come, or *Quand j'aurai soupé il entrera*; When I have supped he will come in. My supping, which is not yet come, but is to be, will be over, at the time of his coming, which is to be after my supping. The English very seldom express the sign of this future after *when*.

10°. The *Compound of the Conditional* is used to denote a
C thing that could, *or* would, *or* should have happened in an uncertain time, had it not been for some other conditional thing: as, *Le Ministre lui auroit donné cette place, s'il l'avoit demandée*; The Minister would have given him that place, had he asked for it. (Observe this conditional way of speaking, which the French express by the conjunction conditional *si*, and the compound of the imperfect or preterite.)

Moreover the Indicative has three other tenses compound in a double manner: as,
*Il* a eu *bientôt* fait; He has had soon done; *or* He soon had done.
J'ai eu dîné *en un instant*; I had have dined in a minute: *or* I have dined, &c.
*Quand j'*eus eu fini *ce que je faisois*; When I had finished what I was doing.
*Elle n'*auroit *pas eu sitôt* fait *sans lui*; She would not have done so soon with-
D out him.
J'aurois eu dîné *plutôt, si j'eusse su qu'il devoit venir à cette heure-là*;
I would have dined sooner, if I had known that he was to come at that time.

The double compound *or* super-compound tenses are liable to the same rule of construction as the other compounds; that is, *Il a eu fait, J'ai eu dîné*, &c. are said, as well as *J'ai eu, J'ai fait, J'ai dîné*, only of that period of time wherein we are still; and *J'eus eu fini*, as well as *J'eus eu, J'eus fait, J'eus dîné*, &c. of a time entirely past, so that there remains no part of it. They besides express the action past in a more emphatical manner.

As the *Subjunctive* represents the action or event in an indirect manner, and always subsequent to another event, the tenses of this mood are determined by that anterior event. Its practice will be established by some rules in the following section, (p. 300.)

The Gerund and Participle are comprehended in the infinitive mood, for method sake only: as these words represent the event under three different states or situations, and therefore constitute each its own mood. A

The *Infinitive* represents it in its simple production, without any circumstance, that is, without being adapted to any subject or time: as, *Il sait boire;* He can drink.

The *Gerund* represents the event as a circumstance connected with another event: as, *Il se fâche en parlant:* He is angry when he speaks.

The *Participle* represents it as complete and quite over; as, *Cela dit, il s'en alla;* Having said this, he went away. It is on that account it serves to form the compound tenses of the verb.

The auxiliary and participle are not always immediately joined together in compound tenses, but are sometimes separated by one or more words: as *Nous avons, par la Grâce de Dieu, vaincu nos ennemis;* We have, by the Grace of God, overcome our enemies.

---

*Correspondence of the Subjunctive to the Indicative Mood.* B

N. B. This is intended as an elucidation of the 10th paragraph, *page* 300.

¶ A verb in the subjunctive *or* conjunctive mood, is chiefly subjoined to, and depending on another verb in the indicative, to which it is connected by the conjunction *que*, or the relative *qui*.

Now what tense of the subjunctive must be used depends on the tense of the former verb in the indicative.

1°. When the former verb is in the present *or* future of the indicative, the latter must be in the present of the subjunctive, if you mean to express a thing present or future; as,

*Il* faut *que celui qui parle*, se mette *à la portée de ceux qui l'écoutent;* He who speaks must confine himself within the reach of the understanding of those who listen to him.

(N. B. *Se mettre à portée* would signify to place oneself within the hearing, &c.) C

*Je ne* crois *pas qu'il* vienne *demain;* I do not think he will come to-morrow.

*Il* faudra *qu'ils se* rendent *à la force de la vérité;* They will be obliged to yield to the force of truth.

But to express a thing past, the compound of the present must be used: as,

*Il* suffit *qu'un habile homme n'*ait *rien négligé pour faire réussir une entreprise; le mauvais succès ne doit pas diminuer son mérite:* It is enough that a skilful man *has* not neglected any thing to make an undertaking succeed; the bad success ought not to diminish his merit.

Speaking, for instance, of a skilful General who has betrayed his country, you will say: *Il* est *fâcheux que de si grands talens* aient été *ternis par le plus odieux de tous les vices—la perfidie;* It is sorrowful that so great talents *have been* tarnished by the most odious of all vices—perfidy.

However, when a conditional member is subjoined to the sentence, the tense of the subjunctive is determined by that of the conditional verb: as, D

*Je ne* doute *pas qu'il ne* vienne, si *on l'en* prie, (the present *vienne* is used on account of the present *prie*); I do not doubt he will come, if he be asked.

*Il n'est point d'homme, quelque mérite qu'il ait, qui ne* fût *très-mortifié, s'il* savoit *tout ce qu'on pense de lui* (the preterite *fût* is used on account of the imperfect *savoit*); There is not a man, whatever merit he may possess, who would not be concerned very much, if he knew all that is thought of him.

*Je* doute *qu'il* eût *réussi, sans votre secours*, that is, *si vous ne l'*aviez *pas* secouru (the compound of the preterite, *eût reussi* is used on account of the compound of the imperfect *aviez secouru*); I doubt whether he had succeeded without your assistance, *that* is, if you had not assisted him.

2°. When the former verb is in the compound of the present of the indicative, the latter must be in the preterite of the subjunctive, if you mean to express a thing present *or future* (with respect to the former verb); as,

A *On s'est servi d'écorces d'arbres ou de peaux pour écrire, avant que le papier* fût *en usage ;*

The bark of trees or pells *were* in use to write upon before paper *were* invented.

But to express a thing past (with respect to the former verb), the compound of the present must be used : as,

*Il* a fallu, *pour gagner ce procès-là, qu'il* ait sollicité *ses juges de la manière la plus pressante, ou plutôt qu'il les* ait corrompus : To have carried such a cause, he must have solicited his judges in the most earnest manner, or rather corrupted them.

However, to express an action which is still done, and may be done at all times, the simple present of the subjunctive may be used : as,

*Dieu* a entouré *les yeux de tuniques fort minces, transparentes au-devant, afin que l'on* puisse *voir à travers ;* God *has surrounded* the eyes with pellicles, very thin and transparent in front, that *we may* be able to see through them.

B 3o. When the former verb is in the imperfect, the preterite, the compound of the imperfect, or either of the conditional tenses, the latter must be in the preterite of the subjunctive, if you mean to express a thing present or future (with respect to the former verb) ; as,

*M. de Turenne ne* voulut *jamais rien prendre à crédit chez les marchands, de peur,* disoit-*il, qu'ils n'en* perdissent *une bonne partie, s'il venoit à être tué :* Turenne *would* never take any thing upon trust from tradesmen, lest, he said, they *should lose* a great part of it, if he happened to be killed.

*Tous les ouvriers qui travailloient pour sa maison,* avoient *ordre d'apporter leurs mémoires, avant qu'on* partît *pour la campagne, & ils étoient payés régulièrement ;* All the tradesmen who worked for his house, *had* order to bring their bills before he *set* out for the campaign, and they were regularly paid off.

*Il* vaudroit *mieux pour un homme de qualité, qu'il* perdît *la vie, que de perdre l'honneur par quelque action honteuse & criminelle ;* It *would be* better for a man of quality to lose his life, than to lose his honour, for some shameful and cri-

C minal action.

*Lycurgue, par une de ses lois,* avoit défendu *qu'on éclairât ceux qui sortoient le soir d'un festin, afin que la crainte de ne pouvoir se rendre chez eux, les empêchât de s'enivrer ;* Lycurgus, by one of his laws, *forbade* to light those who went out in the evening from a festival, that the fear of not finding their way home *might prevent* them from getting drunk.

But to mark a past event, the compound of the preterite must be used ; as,

*Tout gouvernement* étoit *vicieux, avant que la suite des siècles, & en particulier le Christianisme,* eussent adouci *& perfectionné l'esprit humain ;* Every government *was* vicious, before that series of ages, and particularly Christianity *had softened* and *improved* the human mind.

## *Of* Moods.

D § III. The tenses of the Subjunctive Mood, whether simple or compound, have always before them the conjunctive *que,* or the relative *qui,* except in some few sentences of *Wishing,* wherein the present is used without *que* ; as, *Puissiez-vous vivre heureux avec elle* ; May you be happy with her. *Fasse le Ciel que cela arrive* ; Grant God that the thing may fall out. *Dieu m'en préserve, nous en préserve,* or *l'en préserve* ; Which God avert from me, from us, from him, *or* her. *Ecrive qui voudra* ; Let him write who will please. *Heureux l'homme qui peut, ne* fût-*ce que dans sa vieillesse, parvenir à être sage, & à penser sainement :* Happy is the man, who, *be* it only in his old age, may arrive at wisdom and a rational way of thinking.

The tenses of the subjunctive are used, 1°. after the conjunctions *afin que, avant que,* and others, that shall be taken notice of in the chapter of the Conjunctions; as likewise in some few sentences of *Reluctancy, Astonishment,* and *Imprecation,* expressed in English by *should, shall,* or *let:* as, A

*Que j'*aille *le voir après cet affront!*
Should *or* shall I go and see him after that affront!

*Que je* meure, *si cela n'est pas vrai;* Let me die, if that be not true.

2°. Verbs *Willing, Wishing, Commanding, Permitting, Prohibiting,* and *Hindering; Asking, Desiring, Beseecking,* and *Entreating; Fearing, Doubting, Suspecting; Admiring, Wondering, Being glad* and *Rejoicing, Sorry* and *Grudging;* Verbs *Denying,* and denoting *Ignorance, Doubt, Fear, Wish, Intention;* and, generally speaking, all verbs expressing some *Desire, Affection, Passion, Sentiment,* or *Motion* of the *Mind,* govern the subjunctive with the particle *que:* as, B

*Je souhaite* qu'*il* réussisse; I wish he may succeed *or* prosper.
*Je veux* que *vous* étudiez; I will have you study.
*Je doute* qu'*il le* fasse; I question whether he will do it.
*Je suis surpris* que *vous* osiez *le faire*; I wonder that you dare do it.
*J'ignore* qu'*il* soit arrivé; I do not know that he is arrived.
*Plût à Dieu* que *cela fût*; Would to God that it were so. C
*Il nie* qu'*il l'*ait *pris*; He denies that he has taken it.
*Agissez de manière,* or *faites en sorte* que *vous* réussissiez; Do in such a manner as you succeed.

In this last instance *agissez,* do, denotes the inclination and desire which I have that you may succeed, which is a passion of my soul: but when no such desire, passion, *or* inclination is expressed by the verb, we use the indicative: as *Vous agissez de manière* que *vous* réussissez; You do in such a manner that you succeed.

¶ Such is always the case when the phrase implies no doubt, condition, or uncertainty.]

But when those verbs are attended by a noun, or pronoun, expressing either their object or end, then they require the next word in the infinitive with the preposition *de,* as does likewise *se repentir,* to repent; as,

*Je vous ordonne* de faire *cela,* and not *que vous fassiez*;
I order you to do that. D
*Il lui demande seulement* d'*y* aller, and not *qu'il y aille*;
He only asks him leave to go there.
*Le Ministre se repentit* d'*avoir proposé ce Bill,* and not *qu'il eût proposé:*
The Minister repented having moved for that Bill.

We also say *Je veux apprendre le François*; I am willing or desirous to learn French; for the verb *vouloir* cannot be construed with the subjunctive, when it is one *and the same subject,* expressed by the pronoun, which governs both verbs

A 3°. Verbs denoting *Belief* or *Certainty* of something, as *Assurer*, to assure; *Être sûr*, to be sure; *Affirmer*, to affirm; *Croire, Penser*, to think; *Gager, Parier*, to lay a wager; *Mettre en fait*, to take for granted; *Soutenir*, to maintain; *Prétendre*, in the sense of *to maintain* (for in the sense of *being willing*, it governs the subjunctive); *Jurer*, to swear; *Montrer, faire voir*, to show; *Prouver*, to prove; *Démontrer*, to demonstrate: or Verbs signifying only *Telling, Foretelling, Saying, Seeing, Foreseeing, Conjecturing, Presaging, Declaring, Certifying, Notifying, Signifying, Intimating, Setting forth, Supposing* (but not *Proposing* and *Voting,*) *Presuming,*
B *Being sensible, Perceiving, Hearing, Apprehending* (in the sense of *Conceiving*, for in that of *Fearing* it governs the subjunctive), *Knowing, Understanding, Hoping*, (though it signifies affection of the soul,) *Reckoning, Agreeing, Confessing, Owning, Reputing, Publishing, Remembering, Forgetting, Promising, Concluding, Fancying, Imagining, Judging*; all which (as well as any other like, if there be any forgotten) expressing the faculties of the *Understanding*, and not those of the mind or soul, govern the indicative with *que*: as,

*Je sais* qu'*il* est *venu*; I know that he is come.

*J'ai appris qu'il* est *guéri*; I have heard that he is cured.

*Je vous assure* que *cela* est, (or) *n'*est *pas ainsi*;
C I assure you that it is, *or* is not so.

But when the same verbs are used *interrogatively*, or with a *negative*, or with the particle *si*, there is a distinction to be made. If they signify merely *Knowing, Saying, Hearing*, in short, express only their natural import (especially the verbs *Saying, Telling, Declaring*, and *Affirming*), the next verb is put in the indicative: but they most commonly imply *Doubt* or *Ignorance* in those constructions, and therefore it is better to construe them with the subjunctive, if however the next verb be the present, preterite, future, or their compounds; for in any other tense it must be left in the indicative (save the excep-
D tions comprehended in the next observation): as,

*Croyez-vous que le Roi* fasse *la Campagne?*

Do you think that the King will make the Campaign?

*Je n'apprends pas qu'il* soit *guéri*; I do not hear that he is cured.

*Si j'entends dire qu'il* soit *arrivé*; If I hear that he is arrived.

But we say, [*qu'il aille?*

*Avez-vous entendu dire*, (or) *Savez-vous qu'il* va *voyager*, not Have you heard, (or) Do you know that he goes a travelling?

*Croyez-vous qu'il* iroit voyager, si—and not *qu'il allât?*

Do you think that he would go a travelling, if?

Some of the aforesaid verbs may sometimes be not improperly construed with the indicative; as *Je n'apprends pas qu'il* est *guéri: Croyez-vous que le Roi* fera *la Campagne?* but sometimes also they cannot be construed but with the subjunctive; as *Croyez-vous qu'il vienne,* and not *qu'il viendra?* Therefore in this uncertainty it is better, and more safe, to construe them with the subjunctive. A

Moreover it is to be observed, 1*st*, that after those verbs used interrogatively, the next verb is put in the indicative, when the person that asks the question makes no doubt of the thing which is the object of the question. As if knowing that peace is made, I want to know if the people, whom I converse with, know of it too, I will express myself thus, *Savez-vous que la paix* est *faite?* Do you know that peace is made? But if I have it only by report, and doubt of it, and want to be informed of it, I must ask the question thus, *Savez-vous que la paix* soit *faite?* and by no means *Savez-vous que la paix* est *faite?*—Likewise when the second verb is in the future in English, it must be put in the present of the subjunctive in French: as, B

*Croyez-vous que la paix se* fasse *cet hiver?*

Do you think that peace will be made this winter? *or with a negative.*

*Je ne crois pas que nous* ayons *la paix si tôt:*

I do not think that we shall have a peace so soon.

2*dly*, *Dire*, *écrire*, *prétendre*, *entendre*, and perhaps some other verbs, whose most natural and common signification is that of *saying*, *writing*, *declaring*, are also used sometimes in the sense of *Advising*, *Commanding*, and *Willing*, and therefore govern the subjunctive: as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *Dites qu'on* vienne *de bonne heure;* | Bid them come in time. |
| *J'écris qu'on m'*envoie *de l'argent;* | I write to them to send me money. |
| *Je prétends qu'on m'*obéisse; | I pretend to be obeyed. |

3*dly*, These verbs *Ignorer* not to know, *Nier* to deny, *Disconvenir* to disown, implying of themselves a negative sense, govern the subjunctive, C though they do not meet with a particular negative: as, *J'ignore qu'il* ait *fait cela, Je nie qu'il* ait *fait cela, Je disconviens qu'il* ait *fait cela;* I do not know, *or* I deny, *or* I do not agree that he has done that.

4*thly*, After *Douter* the particle *si* may be used in some cases, although very few, with the future; as *Je doute s'il viendra;* I question whether he will come: But it is better to use the subjunctive with *que*, as *Je doute qu'il vienne;* I question whether he will come; and when *douter* is attended by a negative, it must, by all means, be construed with *que*, and the subjunctive preceded also by another negative: as, *Je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne;* I do not doubt but he will come. (See the chap. of the Negatives, *p.* 341.)

4°. These following verbs Impersonal govern the Subjunctive with *que*:

*Il faut*, it must,
*il convient*, it becomes,
*il importe*, it concerns,
*il est important, il est de conséquence*, it is of moment, *or* consequence,
*il n'y a pas moyen*, there is no possibility,
*il y a de l'honneur*, or *du déshonneur*, there is honour, credit, *or* discredit *and disgrace*,
*il y a de la gloire*, or *il y a de la honte*, there is glory *or shame*, &c.
*il est à propos*, it is fit,
*il est expédient*, it is proper, meet,
*il est nécessaire*, it is needful,
*d'une nécessité absolue*, of an absolute necessity,
*il est bienséant*, it is fitting,
*il est de la bienséance*, it is seemly, D
*il est décent*, it is decent,
*il est de la décence*, it is comely,
*il est indécent*, it is unseemly,
*il est convenable*, it is expedient, suitable,

il est, with these other adnouns.

A *agréable*, agreeable, pleasant,
*aisé*, easy,
*affligeant*, afflicting,
*beau*, fine,
*chagrinant*, vexatious,
*cruel*, cruel,
*dangereux*, dangerous,
*difficile*, difficult,
*divertissant*, diverting,
*doux*, sweet, pleasant,
B *douloureux*, grievous,
*dur*, hard,
*disgracieux*, unpleasant,
*ennuyeux*, tedious,
*étonnant*, astonishing,
*facile*, easy,
*fâcheux*, sorrowful,
*glorieux*, glorious,
*gracieux*, graceful, agreeable,
*heureux*, happy, lucky,
*honteux*, shameful,
*impossible*, impossible,
*indifférent*, indifferent,
*malheureux*, unlucky,
*mal-aisé*, difficult,
*mortifiant*, mortifying,
*possible*, possible,
*plaisant*, odd, droll,
*sensible*, sensible,
*surprenant*, surprising,
*triste*, sad, ugly,
*vilain*, just, fair,
*juste*, unjust, unfair,
*injuste*,

Examples. *Il faut qu'il vienne;* He must come.
*Il importe qu'elle y* soit; It is of moment that she should be there.
*Il est juste qu'il le* sache; It is just, *or* right for him to know it.
*Il est à propos, expédient, bienséant, nécessaire,* &c. *qu'il la* voie;
It is fit, proper, meet, decent, necessary, *&c.* for him to see her, *&c.*

Observe, 1*st*, that *il est*, with these adnouns, may be turned into *c'est une chose:* as,
C *C'est une chose fâcheuse, triste, mortifiante,* &c. *qu'il soit arrivé si tard;*
It is sad, grievous, *&c.* that he should have come so late.

2*dly*, That the same verbs impersonal, except *il y a*, govern the infinitive with *de*, when they do not govern the subjunctive with *que:* which usually happens when they are attended by a pronoun: as,

*Il est indifférent qu'il soit en Angleterre ou en Irlande;*
It is indifferent whether he is in England or Ireland.
*Il* lui *est indifférent de vivre en Angleterre ou en Irlande.*
It is indifferent for him to live in England or Ireland.

5°. The following verbs impersonal govern the indicative with *que.*

D *Il semble*, it seems,
*il paroît*, it appears,
*il y a apparence*, it is likely,
*on dit*, it is said,
*on croit*, it is thought,
*on croiroit*, one would think,
(and all impersonals formed with *on*,)
*il est*, it is; with these adnouns,
*avéré*, averred, or evinced,
*clair*, clear,
*certain*, certain,
*évident*, evident,
*constant*, constant,
indubitable, unquestionable,
*manifeste*, manifest,
*notoire*, notorious,
*palpable*, palpable,
*sensible*, plain, sensible,
*sûr*, sure,
*vrai*, true,
*visible*, obvious,
As likewise all verbs impersonal, denoting

a positive certainty of something: A

*Il est certain* (or) *il est vrai que le Roi va à Hanovre;*
It is certain, *or* true, that the King goes to Hanover.
*Il est clair* (or) *il est évident que cela ne sauroit arriver;*
It is clear *or* evident that that cannot happen.
*Il paroît* (or) *il y a apparence qu'il dit vrai;*
It appears, *or* it is likely that he says true.

But when the same impersonals cease to denote a positive certainty of the thing (which happens when they are used *interrogatively*, or with a *negative*, or the particle conditional *si*, if, whether), they then govern the subjunctive: as,

*Est-il certain* (or) *est-il vrai que le Roi* aille *à Hanovre?* B
Is it certain (or) is it true that the King goes to Hanover?
*Il n'est pas certain* (or) *il n'est pas vrai que le Roi* aille *à Hanovre;*
It is not certain (or) it is not true that the King goes to Hanover.
*S'il est certain* (or) *s'il est vrai que le Roi* aille *à Hanovre;*
If it be true that the King goes to Hanover.

I have said, that it is sometimes but an elegance, not a necessity, to use the subjunctive after verbs denoting *Belief*, or *Certainty*, and others mentioned in the third paragraph, when they are used *interrogatively* or *negatively*, or with *si;* but the C impersonals, which are the object of the last observation, when used in these three respects, require, by all means, the subjunctive after them.

Again, when the impersonal *il semble* meets with a noun governed by the preposition *à*, or a pronoun implying it, the following verb must not be in the subjunctive, but in the indicative with *que*, or the infinitive without any particle at all: as,

*Il me semble que vous* avez *peur*; It seems to me that you are afraid.
*Il* me *semble la voir* (or) *que je la vois;* Methinks I see her.
*Il semble* à un Mahométan *que les Chrétiens* sont *dans l'erreur;*
It seems to a Mahometan that Christians are in error.

Whereas without a pronoun before the impersonal, or a D noun after it, the subjunctive mood must be used: as,

*Il semble que vous* ayez *peur;* It seems that you are afraid.
*Il semble que les Turcs* soient *dans l'erreur;*
The Turks seem to be in error.

Observe besides, that *semble* has two significations in French: when it signifies *plain, evident, obvious*, it governs the indicative, and when used in the sense of *grievous, painful*, it governs the subjunctive.

A 6°. The subjunctive is used after *quelque, quel que,* and *quoi que* taken in the sense of *whatever* and *whatsoever:* as,

*Quelques amis que* j'aie, Whatever friends I have.
*Quels que* soient *les hommes,* Whatever men be.
*Quoi que je* fasse, Whatever I do.

7°. After *que,* used instead of repeating *si* (as we shall see more particularly in the chapter of Conjunctions), as also after *que* following the comparative *si:* as,

*Si vous y consentez, &* que *vous* preniez *des mesures pour,* &c.
If you consent to it, and take measures to, *&c.*
B *Il n'est pas* si *fou* qu'*il ne* sache *bien ce qu'il fait;*
He is not *so* foolish *but* he *knows* well what he does.

8°. After the relative *qui,* when it comes after a *superlative* or *negative:* and generally after any relation of that relative, (viz. *que, dont, où*), bewteen two verbs, so it denote some *desire, wish, want,* or *necessity:* as,

*Le meilleur ouvrage qui soit* (or *qu'il y* ait); The best work extant, *or* that is.
*Je ne connois personne qui* fasse *plus de cas des habiles gens;*
I know nobody that has more regard for learned men.
C *Choisissez une femme* que *vous aimiez, &* qui *soit prudente;*
Choose a wife whom you love, and who is prudent.

But when the relative *qui* denotes no *desire, wish, &c.* the next verb must be put in the indicative: as,

*Je plains un homme* qui a *une méchante femme;*
I pity a man who has a bad wife.

9°. The present subjunctive of *savoir* is familiarly used, when it is attended by a negative, instead of the indicative, though without being governed by any thing before; as,

*Je ne* sache *rien de plus fâcheux que,* &c.
D I know nothing more grievous than, *&c.*

But this subjunctive, thus used, is confined only to the first person singular; for we do not say in the other persons, *Vous ne sachiez rien,* or *Il ne sache rien de plus fâcheux* instead of *vous ne savez rien, il ne sait rien,* &c. *Pas* or *non pas que je sache;* Not that I know of. (Such phrases are only used in conversation.)

10°. The present tense of the subjunctive mood is used, when the first verb, governing the other, according to the aforesaid *rules,* is in the present, or future of the indicative; for when it

is in any other tense, either simple or compound, it is the pre- A
terite of the subjunctive it requires, unless there comes a third verb in the imperfect. As in the present and future we say,
*Je souhaite qu'il* vienne; I wish he comes, *or* he would come.
*Il souhaitera que nous ne* venions *pas;*
He will wish that we may not come.
So with the imperfect, conditional, and other tenses, we say,
*Je souhaitois qu'il* vînt; I wished that he had come.
*Je voudrois qu'il se dépêchât*; I would have him make haste.
*J'aurois craint que vous ne l'*eussiez *frappé*; B
I should have feared that you would have struck him.

But if the tense that comes after the present be followed by an imperfect, or preterite in English, which is an imperfect in French, it (the second verb) must be put in the preterite. As when the first verb is in the present, we put the second in the present too, thus,

*Je ne doute pas qu'il ne* vienne, *si on l'en* prie;
I do not doubt but he will come if he be asked:

so when it is the imperfect, we put the second in the preterite, thus,
*Je ne doute pas qu'il ne* vînt *si on l'en* prioit;
I do not doubt he would come, if he were asked. (See p. 293.)

Notwithstanding what has been said of the construction of the tenses, some are nevertheless confounded sometimes, and C
used for others; and it is common to all languages to use the present for the future; as,
*Avez-vous bientôt fait?* Have you almost done?
*Dinez-vous aujourd'hui chez vous?* Do you dine at home to-day?
*J'irai demain, s'il fait beau*; I will go to-morrow, if it is fine weather.

We use especially the present subjunctive for the future, as in these sentences, and others like,
*Je ne doute pas qu'il ne* vienne; I do not doubt but *he will* come.
*Croyez-vous que le Roi* aille *à Hanovre?* D
Do you think that the King will go to Hanover?

Therefore avoid carefully those faults which Foreigners are so apt to make, in considering rather the tense which they want to turn into French, than the mood, which the genius of the language requires: and do not say, *Je ne crois pas qu'il* viendra; I do not believe that he will come: *Je doute qu'il le* fera; I doubt that, *or* whether he will do it: because the tense is

A a future in English; but mind that *que* coming after a negative, and after *douter*, requires the subjunctive, thus:

*Je ne crois pas qu'il* vienne. *Je doute qu'il le* fasse.

As likewise that the conjunction *si* is hardly ever construed with the future, except with the verb *savoir* and *dire*: as, *Je ne sais s'il viendra*; I do not know whether he will come. *Dites-moi si vous viendrez ou non*; Tell me whether you will come or no.

The present is used for the preterite in narrations: as,

*L'Amour rassemble les Nymphes, & leur dit: Télémaque est encore en vos mains; hâtez-vous de brûler ce vaisseau que ce téméraire Mentor a fait pour s'enfuir. Aussitôt elles* allument *des flambeaux, elles* accourent B *sur le rivage, elles* frémissent, *elles* poussent *des hurlemens, elles* secouent *leurs cheveux épars comme des Bacchantes. Déjà la flâme* vole, *elle* dévore *le vaisseau, qui* est *d'un bois sec & enduit de résine; des tourbillons de fumée & de flâme* s'élèvent *dans les nues.*

Cupid gathers the Nymphs together and tells them: Telemachus is still in your hands; haste, and let devouring flames consume the ship which the rash Mentor has built to favour his escape. Immediately they *light* torches, *run* towards the sea-shore, they *quake, fill* the air with dreadful howlings, and *toss* about their dishevelled hair, like frantic Bacchanals. And now the greedy flames *devour* the ship, which *burn* the more fiercely, as she is made of dry wood, daubed over with rosin; and rolling clouds of smoke, streak'd with flames, *ascend* the skies.

Moreover the compound of the preterite of the subjunctive is often used for, and in the same sense as the compound of the conditional; as, J'eusse *été bien fâché de ne vous pas voir*; I should have been very sorry not to have seen you: which is the same as, but more elegant than, *J'aurois été bien fâché de ne vous pas voir*: as likewise for the compound of the imperfect after *si*: as, C *Si* J'eusse *fait cela*, better than *si* j'avois *fait cela*; if I had done that.

The present of the infinitive has in many cases a sense merely passive: as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *Il n'y a rien à* voir; | There is nothing to see, *or* to be seen. |
| *Cela n'est bon qu' à* jeter; | That is good only to throw away. |

An infinitive may, as well as a substantive, be the subject coming before a verb; in which case it has no preposition, takes sometimes the article, and is properly englished by the gerund: as,

*Manger & dormir sont les plus grandes nécessités de la vie;*
*Eating* and *sleeping* are the greatest necessities of life.

Part of a sentence, nay a whole sentence, may also serve as a subject to a verb; then the adnoun referring to it (when an adnoun follows) is of the masculine gender.

## *Of the Government of Verbs.*

§ IV. 1°. Verbs *active* are always attended by a noun, or pronoun, and sometimes by two. When they are attended by D two, the one is the *Object* of the verb, and the other the *End*. The noun expressing the end is always preceded by the preposition *à*, the pronoun generally implies it; as,

*Donner quelque chose à quelqu'un;*
To give something to somebody.

*quelque chose* is the *Object* of the verb, *à quelqu'un* is the *End*.

*Je* le lui *donne*; I give it to him *or* to her; *le* is the Object, *lui* is the End.

2°. Verbs *passive*, or taken passively, require the preposition *de*, or *par*, before the next noun, used on the same occasions as the English prepositions *by*, *of*, *from*: as, A

*La vertu est estimée* de *tous*; Virtue is esteemed by all.

*Il a été tué* par *ses domestiques*; He has been killed *by* his servants. *Par* is used only with a verb that denotes action. Therefore we do not say,

*Je suis environné* par *des gens ennuyeux*, but *de gens*, &c.
I am surrounded by tedious people.

However, when the verb passive is followed in English by any other prepositions than *of*, *by*, and *from* (as *with*, &c.), it must be expressed in French by *de*. (See Exerc. p. 6.) B

3°. The following verbs active require the preposition *de* before the next infinitive. Such of them as are marked with an asterisk, require moreover the subjunctive with *que*, according to the observation of the fourth paragraph of the third Section.

*Achever*, to make an end, finish,
*affecter*, to affect,
*affliger*, to afflict,
*approuver*, to approve of,
* *appréhender*, to apprehend,
*arrêter*, to decree,
*arrêter*, to stop,
*attendrir*, to soften, move to pity,
*attrister*, to grieve,
*avertir*, to warn, to tell,
*blâmer*, to blame,
*censurer*, to censure, check,
*cesser*, to cease, leave off, forbear,
*chagriner*, to vex,
*charger*, to charge,
*choisir*, to choose,
* *commander*, to command,
* *conjurer*, to conjure, entreat,
*conseiller*, to advise,
*contraindre*, to constrain,
*convaincre*, to convince,
*conclure*, to conclude,
* *craindre*, to fear,
*désoler*, to make one mad,
*détourner*, to deter from,
* *défendre*, to prohibit, forbid,
*décharger*, to discharge,
*décourager*, to discourage, C
*délibérer*, to deliberate,
* *demander en grâce*, to beg it as a favour,
*déterminer*, to determine, purpose,
*désespérer*, to despair,
*dégouter*, to disgust, put out of conceit,
*différer*, to defer, delay, put off,
*dire*, to say, to tell,
*dispenser*, to dispense, excuse, D
*divertir*, to divert,
*écrire*, *mander*, to write, to write word,
*édifier*, to edify, give good example,
*effrayer*, to frighten,
*embarrasser*, to puzzle,
* *empêcher*, to hinder,
*enjoindre*, to enjoin,

A *entreprendre*, to undertake,
*épouvanter*, to terrify,
*essayer*, to try,
*excuser*, to excuse,
*exempter*, to exempt,
* *exiger*, to require,
*feindre*, to feign, dissemble,
*finir*, to finish,
*gêner*, to make uneasy,
*gronder*, to scold, to chide,
*haïr*, to hate,
B *inspirer*, to inspire,
*jurer*, to swear, take an oath,
*justifier*, to justify, vindicate,
*louer*, to praise, commend,
*méditer*, to meditate, think of,
*mériter*, to merit, to deserve,
*négliger*, to neglect,
*notifier*, to notify, let one know,
*offrir*, to offer,
*omettre*, to omit,
* *ordonner*, to order,
C *oublier*, to forget,
*pardonner*, to pardon, forgive,
* *permettre*, to permit, allow,
*persuader*, to persuade,
*plaindre*, to pity,
*presser*, to press, to urge,
*prescrire*, to prescribe,
*présumer*, to presume,
* *prier*, to pray, desire, beg,
*professer*, to profess,
*promettre*, to promise,
*proposer*, to propose, move for,
*recommander*, to recommend,
*redouter*, to dread,
*refuser*, to refuse,
*réjouir*, to make glad,
*remercier*, to thank,
*reprendre*, to rebuke, reprove,
*réprimander*, to reprimand,
*reprocher*, to reproach, upbraid,
*résoudre*, to resolve upon,
*retenir*, to keep from,
*scandaliser*, to scandalise, give an offence,
*sommer*, to summon,
*soupçonner*, to suspect,
*suffire*, to suffice,
*suggérer*, to suggest,
* *supplier*, to beg, beseech,
*surprendre*, to surprise,
*susciter*, to put in mind of,
*tromper*, to deceive,
*troubler*, to trouble, disturb,

*Prier* requires *de* before the next infinitive: as, *Prier quelqu'un de faire quelque chose*, to desire, *or* beg one to do a thing. Except before these four verbs, *manger*, *déjeuner*, *dîner* and *souper*, with which it requires *à*, with this exception.

D We say both *Prier quelqu'un à dîner* and *Prier quelqu'un de dîner*, To invite one to dine; with this difference, that *prier à diner* is said of, and properly implies, a formal, express invitation; and *prier de diner*, a sudden and accidental one; as,

*Il l'a envoyé prier à dîner*; He sent to his house to invite him to dinner.

*Je me suis trouvé chez lui comme il alloit se mettre à table, & il m'a prié de dîner avec lui*; I was at his house as he was going to dine, and he has invited me, *or* offered me to take a dinner with him.

The following verbs (for the most part neuter or reflected) A re the preposition *de* before the next noun or infinitive.

*r*, to abuse,
*enir* de, to abstain from,
*mmoder quelque ose*, to make shift, or hold with a thing.
*ger*, to grieve, vex oneself,
*ercevoir*, to perceive,
*rocher* d'*un droit*, to come, draw *near* a place,
*uitter* de *devoir*, to perform, discharge one's duty,
*ister*, to be sorrowful,
*er*, to think,
*griner*, to grieve oneself,
*soler*, to comfort oneself,
*rger* de, to take upon oneself the care of a thing,
*onsterné*, to be dismayed,
*nir*, to agree to,
*ierormefier quelqu'un*, to mistrust *or* distrust one,
*habituer*, *acoutumer* to leave off doing a thing
*echer*, to make haste,
*ister*, to desist,
*nettre* d'*une ce*, to resign a place,
*rvenir*, to disagree,
*écher*, to forbear,
*resser*, to hasten,
*uracher* *me fille*, to fall in love *with* a girl,
*arer*, to take hold,
*rniper*, to take too much liberty.
*uyer*, to grow weary,
*or-* *gir*, to grow proud, be puffed up,

*s'étonner*, *être surpris*, to wonder, to be amazed, *or* surprised.
*enrager*, *pester*, to be mad at,
*se flatter*, to flatter oneself.
*se garder de*, to take care, *or* heed of,
*hésiter*, to hesitate,
*se hâter*, to hasten, hurry B oneself,
*s'informer* de, to enquire about *or after*,
*juger à propos*, to think proper,
*s'inquiéter*, to fret, make oneself uneasy,
*jouir*, to enjoy
*s'impatienter*, to lose one's patience,
*s'ingérer*, to take upon oneself,
*s'indigner*, to be provoked, incensed, exasperated, C
*se lasser*, to grow tired,
*manquer* de *quelque chose*, to want something,
*médire*, to traduce, slander,
*menacer* de, to threaten *with*,
*se mêler* de, to meddle *with*,
*se moquer* de, to mock, laugh at,
*parler*, to speak,
*profiter*, to improve,
*se précipiter*, to over-hasten D oneself,
*avoir pitié* de, to have pity on,
*se plaindre*, to complain,
*se piquer* (d'*une chose*), (or) se *piquer* (de *faire une chose*), to pretend to, to set up *for* a thing,
*se rire*, and *rire* de, to laugh *at*,
*se réjouir* de, to rejoice at,

A *se repentir* de, to repent,
*se ressouvenir*, to remember,
*se rétracter*, to recant,
*se rebuter*, to despond, be disheartened,
*se retenir* de, to keep oneself *from*,
*se soucier* de, to care *for*
*se saisir* de, to seize upon,

*se scandaliser* de *quelque chose*, to take umbrage, offence *at*, *or* to be scandalised *at* one thing,
*tâcher* and *s'efforcer*, to endeavour,
*se vanter*, to boast,
*user* and *se servir d'une chose*, to use *or* make use of a thing.

Observe that most of those verbs (if not all) which require
B the preposition *de* before them, are commonly, and can always be, rendered into English by a gerund, either absolutely, or with any of these prepositions *of*, *from*, *with*, &c, as,

*Il m'empêche* de *le faire*; He hinders me *from* doing it.
*J'ai du moins le plaisir* de *la voir*; I have at least the pleasure *of* seeing her.
*Vous me reprochez* de *vous aimer*; You upbraid me *with* loving you.
*J'ai l'honneur* de *le connoître*; I have the honour *to* be, *or of being* acquainted with him, *&c.*

C 5°. The following verbs require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive:

*admettre* (*quelqu'un*) à *se justifier*, to give one a fair hearing, and suffer him *to* justify himself,
*aimer*, to love, to like,
*avoir* to have, and *être*, to be,
*apprendre* à, to learn *to*,
D *apprêter à rire*, to afford matter of laughing,
*assigner* à *comparoître*, to summon, or cite *to* appear,
*autoriser*, to empower,
*chercher* à, to seek *to*, to want to,
*condamner*, to condemn,
*consister à*, to consist *in*,
*contribuer*, to contribute,

*convier* and *inviter*, to invite,
*dépenser* à, to spend *in*,
*demeurer* à, *tarder* à, to stay, tarry, delay *to*,
*destiner* à, to design *for*,
*disposer*, to dispose,
*donner*, to give,
*dresser*, to train up,
*éclairer*, to light,
*employer* (*quelqu'un*) à, to employ, to set one *to*,
*encourager*, to encourage,
*engager*, to engage,
*enhardir*, to embolden,
*enseigner*, to teach,
*exciter*, to excite,
*exercer*, to exercise,
exhorter to exhort,

*uer*, to use, accustom one,
*r*, to incite,
*uer*, to incline,
*rer*, to show,
*re*, to lose,
*porter* and *pousser* quelqu'un à *agir*, } to induce, excite, spur one *to* do, A
*présenter*, to present.

. The following verbs (for the most part neuter) require preposition *à* before the noun or infinitive.

*ndon-r*, } to indulge, abandon oneself,
*tir* à, to come *to* touch,
*nutumer*, } to accustom, or
*ituer* à, } use oneself to,
*nner*, to give oneself,
*rer*, to adhere,
*ler*, to help,
*liquer*, to apply oneself,
*rêter*, *parer*, *poser*, à *faire* quelque chose, } to prepare oneself for doing a thing.
*udir* à *qu'un*, } to applaud somebody,
*ter*, *s'a-er* à *des atelles*, } to stand upon trifles, to mind them,
*cher*, *vrer* à *chose*, } to give, apply, addict oneself *to* a thing,
*ndre* à *ir*, } to expect to see,
*atir*, to compassionate,
*re*, } to condescend, to comply *with*,
*evenir*, *ordres*, } to act contrary to orders,
*ire*, to displease,
*éir*, to disobey,
*erminer*, *oudre* à, } to resolve upon,
*ircir* à *tigue*, } to inure oneself to hardships,
*s'engager*, to take upon oneself *to*, B
*s'exposer*, to expose oneself,
*se fier* à *quelqu'un*, } to trust one,
*insulter* aux *misérables*, } to insult the unfortunate,
*jouer* à *tout perdre*, } to venture all, to stake all at once,
*nuire* à *autrui*, to hurt others,
*obéir* à *quelqu'un*, } to obey one, C
*obvier* à *des inconvéniens*, } to obviate difficulties,
*s'obstiner*, *s'opiniâtrer* à *faire quelque chose*, } to be obstinately bent, *or* resolved *to* do a thing.
*s'occuper* à, *passer son temps* à, } to be taken *with*, spend one's time *in*,
*s'opposer*, to oppose,
* *pardonner*, to forgive, D
*parvenir*, to arrive *to*, to get,
*penser* and *songer* à *faire une chose*, } to think *of* doing a thing,
*persister* à *faire quelque chose*, } to persist *in* doing something,
* *plaire* à *quelqu'un*, } to please one

A *se plaire*, or *prendre plaisir à faire quelque chose*, to delight *in* a thing, to take a pleasure *in* doing it.
*pourvoir au salut de l'Etat*, to provide *for* the safety of the state,
*prétendre à une chose*, to aim *at*, to lay claim *to* a thing,
*procéder à élire*, or *à l'élection*, to proceed to the election,
B *renoncer*, to give over,
*ressembler*, to resemble, be like,
*résister*, to resist, withstand,
*rester à rien faire*, to stand idle,
*se mettre à faire quelque chose*, to go, fall, set *about* a thing,
*subvenir aux nécessiteux*, to relieve the needy,
* *suffire*, to suffice, be enough,
*survivre à quelqu'un*, to outlive one, to survive him,
*tendre, viser à un but*, to aim *at* an end,
*travailler*, to work.

Observe that most of those verbs which require the preposition *à* before them, are commonly, and can always be rendered into English by a gerund, with the preposition *in*, or *for*: as,
*Aidez-moi à faire cela*; Help me *to* do that, or *in* doing that.
*Apprêter à rire*; To afford matter *for* laughing.
*Elle prend plaisir à le faire endêver*;
She takes a pleasure *in* teasing him.

C But * *aider* and *pourvoir* take indifferently the 3d and 4th state of pronouns; as,
*Aidez-lui*, Help him; *Aidez*-le *à faire cela*, Help him to do that.
* *Plaire*, * *pardonner*, and *suffire*, require the preposition *de* and not *à*, before the infinitive: as,
*Il me plaît* de *faire cela*; I like *or* choose *to* do that, *&c.*

*Satisfaire* (to satisfy) governs the 4th state of the person, and the 3d of the thing: as,
*Il n'a pas encore satisfait ses créanciers*;
D He has not as yet satisfied his creditors.
*Satisfaire à ses passions, à son ambition*, &c.
To gratify one's passions, ambition, *&c.*

7°. These nine verbs take indifferently *de* or *à* before the next infinitive. One must, however, in some cases, have regard to the best sound.
*commencer*, to begin,
*contraindre*, to constrain,
*continuer*, to continue, go on,
*discontinuer*, to discontinue,
*essayer*, to try,
*forcer*, to force, compel

*s'efforcer*, { to endeavour, to exert oneself, — *coûter*, to cost, *manquer*, to fail. A

*Contraindre* (to constrain, force, oblige), when used actively, indifferently takes *à*, or *de*, before the next infinitive: but when it is used in the passive voice, it always requires *de*: as,

*Contraignez-le* à *faire cela*; constrain him to do that.

*Je l'ai contraint* de *garder la maison*; I have obliged him to stay at home.

*Il fut contraint* de *se retirer*; He was obliged to withdraw.

*Cette fière nation est* à *la fin contrainte* de *se soumettre*; That proud nation is at last obliged to submit.

*Obliger*, signifying *to force*, requires *à*, and sometimes *de*, before the next infinitive in the active state: but in the passive state it always requires *de*: as, B

*Vous m'obligerez* à *vous abandonner*; You will force me *to* abandon you.

*Je suis obligé* de *vous abandonner*; I am forced *to* abandon you.

When it signifies to do a kindness, it is followed by no preposition, neither *à*, nor *de*. (*French Academy.*)

*Voulez-vous bien m'excuser auprès d'elle, vous m'obligerez*; Be pleased to excuse me to her, you will oblige me.

*Manquer* requires *de* before an infinitive, when it signifies *to fail*: and *à* when it signifies *to forget*: as, C

*Les malheureux ne manquent jamais* de *se plaindre*: The miserable never fail to complain.

*J'ai manqué* à *faire ce que je vous avois promis*: I forgot to do what I had promised you.

¶ It is not always indifferent to use either *de* or *à* after the same verb, and more regard must be had to the meaning than to the best sound of the phrase: most of the above examples countenance the remark. There is a material difference between the two prepositions: *à* denoting tendency, and *de* consequence.

For instance, *Pour les forcer* à *se rendre*, To force them to surrender, marks the end one aims at; whereas, *Pour les forcer* de *se rendre*, marks that one has succeeded, that they have been obliged to yield to a superior force, that they have actually surrendered. D

Likewise, *S'efforcer à* means to employ all one's strength; *Il s'est efforcé à courir*; He has exerted himself to run. *S'efforcer de* means to employ one's industry; *Il s'efforce d'être plaisant*, He endeavours to be witty.]

8°. ¶ These following verbs will have no preposition before the next infinitive,

*aller*, to go.

*compter*, { to expect, to rely upon.

before the next noun.

*affirmer*, to affirm, to assert.

*appercevoir*, to perceive.

*assurer*, to assure.

A before the next infinitive.

| | |
|---|---|
| *daigner,* | to deign, to be pleased. |
| *ouïr,* | to hear. |
| *il faut,* | must. |
| *oser,* | to dare. |
| *paroître,* | to appear. |
| *sembler,* | to seem. |
| * *il vaut mieux,* | it is better. |
| † *venir,* | to come. |

before the next noun.

| | |
|---|---|
| *avouer,* | to own. |
| *considérer,* | to consider, to behold. |
| *écouter,* | to listen to. |
| *épier,* | to spy. |
| *nier,* | to deny. |
| *observer,* | to observe. |
| *publier,* | to publish, to give out. |
| *rapporter,* | to report. |
| *regarder,* | to look at, to behold. |
| *soutenir,* | to maintain. |

B Before the next infinitive noun.

| | |
|---|---|
| * *aimer mieux,* | to have rather, to choose rather. |
| *confesser,* | to confess. |
| *croire,* | to think, to believe. |
| *déclarer,* | to tell, to declare. |
| *déposer,* | to depose, to say, to tell. |
| † *désirer,* | to desire. |
| *entendre,* | to hear. |
| *devoir,* | to owe. |
| *envoyer,* | to send. |
| C † *dire,* | to say. |
| † *espérer,* | to hope. |
| *faire,* | to make, to cause. |
| *s'imaginer,* | to imagine, to fancy. |
| *laisser,* | to let, to leave. |
| *penser,* | to think, to be like, or near. |
| *prétendre,* | to pretend. |
| *reconnoitre,* | to acknowledge. |
| *savoir,* | to know. |
| † *souhaiter,* | to wish. |
| *voir,* | to see. |
| *vouloir,* | to be willing. |

* *Aimer mieux* and *valoir mieux* will have no preposition before the next infinitive; but when that infinitive is followed by *que,* and another infinitive implying comparison, the second infinitive requires *de* before it (see p. 226. D.); as,

*Il aimeroit mieux mourir,* } que de *faire une*
He would rather die, } *action honteuse,*
*Il vaudroit mieux mourir,* } than to commit a
It would be better to die, } shameful action.

D † *Dire,* in the sense of *to bid,* takes *de* before the next infinitive: as, *Allez lui dire* de *venir:* Go and bid him come.

† *Désirer, espérer, souhaiter,* used in the infinitive, are always construed with *de* before the next infinitive; as,

*Pouvez-vous espérer* de *réussir sans son secours?* Can you expect to succeed without his assistance?

In the other moods, *de* is generally left out; as,

*Je désire le voir;* I desire to see him.
*J'espère gagner mon procès;* I hope I shall carry the cause.
*Je souhaiterois* pouvoir vous servir; I wish I could serve you

But *désirer*, followed by an adverb, requires *de*; as, A
*Je désire* fort de *le voir*; I long to see him.
*Venir*, in the sense of *to happen*, &c. takes *à*, especially when it is used impersonally: as,
*Quand il vint* à *ouvrir la bouche*; When he came *to* open his mouth.
*S'il vient* à *pleuvoir*: If it happens to rain.
*Venez boire*, Come *to* drink. *Il vient danser*, He comes *to* dance.
*Venir*, in the sense of *just*, takes *de*; as,
*Il vient* d'*arriver*; He is just arrived.
*Avec deux mots qu'il daigna dire*;
With two words he was pleased to speak.
*Il croyoit pouvoir le faire*; He thought he could have done it. B
*Il a pensé mourir*; He has been like to die.
*Il faut mourir tôt ou tard*; We must die sooner or later.

9°. The following Adnouns, commonly construed with *être*, require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive, as likewise all nouns, and adnouns, signifying *Inclination*, *Aptness*, *Fitness*, and *Unfitness*; all which will have *à* (or *au* and *aux*) before a noun.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Etre*, to be | *admirable*, | admirable, | à *faire quelque chose*, to do something. |
| | *adroit*, | dexterous, skilful, | |
| | *affreux*, | frightful, | |
| | *agile*, | agile, nimble, | C |
| | *agréable*, | agreeable, | |
| | *aisé*, *facile*, | easy, | |
| | *ardent*, | eager, | |
| | *assidu*, | assiduous, | |
| | *beau*, | handsome, fine, | |
| | *bon*, | good, | |
| | *charmant*, | charming, | |
| | *civil*, | civil, | |
| | *le dernier*, | the last of all *Numbers*, | |
| | *diligent*, | diligent, | D |
| | *doux*, | sweet, | |
| | *effroyable*, | dreadful, | |
| | *enclin*, | inclined, bent, | |
| | *exact*, | exact, | |
| | *habile*, | able, skilful, | |
| | *hardi*, | bold, | |
| | *hideux*, | hideous, | |
| | *honnête*, | honest, | |
| | *horrible*, | horrible, | |

A

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Etre*, to be | *incivil,* | uncivil, rude, | à *faire quelque chose, to do something.* |
| | *lent,* | slow, | |
| | *malhonnête,* | dishonest, | |
| | *disposé,* | prone, | |
| | *porté,* | apt, addicted, | |
| | *le premier,* | the first, | |
| | *prêt,* | ready, | |
| | *prompt,* | quick, | |
| | *propre,* | fit, qualified *for,* | |
| | *le second,* | the second, | |
| | *sujet,* | subject, liable, | |
| | *terrible,* | terrible, | |

B 10°. The following Adnouns, construed also with *être,* r quire the preposition *de* before the next infinitive and noun.

C

D

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Etre*, to be | *aise,* glad, | *bien aise,* very glad, | de *faire quelque chose, to do something.* |
| | *assuré,* | assured, | |
| | *avide,* | greedy, covetous, | |
| | *capable,* | capable, | |
| | *content,* | contented, pleased, | |
| | *curieux,* | curious inquisitive, | |
| | *digne,* | worthy, | |
| | *ennuyé,* | weary, | |
| | *en état,* | in a state, condition, | |
| | *fâché* | sorry, | |
| | *honteux,* | ashamed, | |
| | *incapable,* | incapable, | |
| | *incertain,* | uncertain, | |
| | *indigne,* | unworthy, | |
| | *joyeux,* | joyful, | |
| | *las,* tired, | *fatigué,* fatigued, | |
| | *mécontent,* | discontented, dissatisfied, | |
| | *ravi,* | overjoyed. | |
| | *satisfait,* | satisfied, | |
| | *sûr, certain,* | certain, | |
| | *à la veille,* ou *sur le point,* | upon the brink, *or* very near to, | |

11°. The following Nouns, chiefly construed with *avoir* without the article, require the preposition *de* before the ne infinitive.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Avoir, *to have* | *affaire,* | occasion, *or* to stand in need of, | de *faire quelque chose, to* do something. |
| | *besoin,* | occasion for, *or* to be in need of, | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| oir, *ave* | *congé*, | leave, | A |
| | *coutume*, or *être accoutumé*, | to use, *or* to be used, | |
| | *dessein*, | a design, *or* to intend, | |
| | *droit*, | a right, | |
| | *envie*, | a mind, | de *faire quelque chose*, *to* do something. |
| | *lieu*, | reason, room, | |
| | *occasion*, | an opportunity, | |
| | *permission*, | permission, | |
| | *raison*, | reason, *or* to be in the right, | |
| | *soin*, | care, *or* to take care. | |
| | *sujet*, | subject, occasion, | |
| | *tort*, | to be in the wrong, | B |

likewise all nouns construed with other verbs, either with without an article, so that they do not signify or imply clination, Reluctancy, Aptness, Fitness, or Unfitness: as, *m'a donné la peine* de *le faire*; He gave me the trouble *of* doing it.

*ai eu beaucoup de peine* à *le faire*; I have had much trouble to do it.

which last instance the noun *peine* implies *Difficulty*, *luctancy*, and therefore governs *à*.

his list of nouns, requiring *de* before the infinitive, will not be amiss for young learners. C

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *ition*, | ambition. | *chagrin*, | grief. | *imprudence*, | imprudence. |
| | art. | *désespoir*, | despair. | *impudence*, | impudence. |
| *ntage*, | advantage. | *dépit*, | spite. | *impuissance*, | impotence, inability. |
| *ntion*, | attention. | *désir*, | desire. | | |
| *ace*, | audaciousness. | *danger*, | danger. | *incommodité*, | inconveniency. |
| , | advice. | *déplaisir*, | displeasure. | | |
| *ur*, | eagerness. | *dureté*, | ill nature. | *insolence*, | insolence. |
| *lité*, | greediness. | *effronterie*, | sauciness. | *intention*, | intention. |
| *tié*, | friendship. | *embarras*, | trouble. | *inquiétude*, | uneasiness. |
| *ur*, | love. | *envie*, | mind. | *jugement*, | judgment. |
| *nte*, | expectation. | *espérance*, | expectation. | *justice*, | justice. |
| *gance*, | arrogance. | *espoir*, | hope. | *liberté*, | liberty. |
| *fice*, | art. | *esprit*, | wit, genius. | *maître*, | master. |
| *sse*, | skill. | *facilité*, | facility. | *mal-adresse*, | aukwardness |
| *on*, | action. | *faveur*, | favour. | *malheur*, | misfortune. D |
| *rité*, | authority. | *façon*, | way. | *malice*, | malice. |
| *rance*, | assurance. | *fermeté*, | firmness. | *manière*, | manner, way. |
| *é*, | goodness. | *fierté*, | haughtiness. | *mortification*, | grief. |
| *eur*, | good luck. | *force*, | strength. | *motif*, | motive. |
| *eil*, | council. | *fureur*, | fury. | *moyen*, | means. |
| *x*, | choice. | *front*, | face, assurance. | *nature*, | nature. |
| *r*, | heart. | *grâce*, | grace, favour. | *nécessité*, | necessity. |
| *age*, | courage. | *gloire*, | glory. | *obligation*, | obligation. |
| *modité*, | conveniency. | *habitude*, | custom. | *ordre*, | order. |
| *rainte*, | constraint. | *hardiesse*, | boldness. | *orgueil*, | pride. |
| *usion*, | confusion. | *hasard*, | chance. | *passion*, | passion. |
| *tance*, | constancy. | *honte*, | shame. | *patience*, | patience. |
| *osité*, | curiosity. | *honnêteté*, | kindness. | *peine*, | pains, concern. |

A

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *plaisir*, | pleasure. | *rage*, | rage. | *sens*, | sense |
| *pouvoir*, | power. | *risque*, | risk. | *souci*, | care |
| *précaution*, | precaution. | *ruse*, | cunning, craft. | *témérité*, | rashness |
| *présomption*, | presumption. | *sagesse*, | wisdom. | *vanité*, | vanity. |
| *puissance*, | might. | *satisfaction*, | satisfaction. | *volonté*, | will. |
| | | *scandale*, | sandal. | | |

Moreover observe, that any noun or adnoun, derived from verbs, requires the same preposition before the next infinitive or noun, as the verb which it is derived from. Thus *étonné* amazed, *résolu* resolved, &c. govern, the former the second state of nouns, and the latter the third, and both the preposition *de* before the infinitive, because their verbs *étonner* or *s'étonner* to wonder at, to be amazed, and *résoudre* to resolve, do so. It is the same with *force*, *obligation*, and *présomption*, &c. derived from *forcer*, *obliger*, *présumer*, &c.

B 12°. The impersonals, as *il appartient, il convient, il sied bien, il dépend, il plaît*, &c. *il est*, followed by an adnoun, and *c'est*, by a noun, require the preposition *de* before the infinitive: as,

Il appartient *aux pères* de *châtier leurs enfans;* It belongs to fathers to chastise their children.

Il *ne lui* convient *point* de *prendre des airs;* It does not become him *or* her to take airs.

Il *leur* sied *bien* de *se conduire ainsi;* It becomes them well to behave thus.

Il dépend *de lui* de *vous donner cet emploi*; It depends on him to appoint you to that employment.

C *Vous* plaît-il de *vous arrêter?* Do you choose to stop?

Il *n'*est *pas* décent *à un juge* de *montrer de la partialité;* It does not behove a judge to betray any partiality.

Il est dangereux *dans Londres* de *se retirer de nuit*; It is dangerous in London to walk home at night.

Est-il sensé de *laisser détruire un ouvrage si utile?* Is it prudent to let such a useful work be destroyed?

*C'est le propre de la vertu* de *nous charmer;* It is the property of virtue *to* charm us.

When *c'est* comes before a noun, followed by an infinitive, it
D requires *que* besides *de*, before the infinitive.—And when *c'est* comes before an infinitive, followed by a noun, and another infinitive, it will have no preposition before the first infinitive, and *que de* before the second: as,

*C'est sagesse* que d'*avouer sa faute*; It is wisdom to own one's fault.

*C'est* être *fou* que de *croire ce qui n'est pas concevable;* They, *or* these, are mad, who believe what is not conceivable.

13°. The impersonal *il y a*, and *c'est à vous, c'est à lui*, &c. require the preposition à before the infinitive: as,

*Il y a du plaisir à chasser,* or *à la chasse ;* A
There is a pleasure in hunting.
*C'est à vous à lui en parler ;*
It is your business *to* speak to him, *or* her, of it.
*Ce n'est pas à vous à me commander ;* You are not *to* command me.

¶ Instances occur in good writers of *de* being used instead of *à* after *c'est à . . . . ;* as,
*C'est à vous de régler nos destins ;* It belongs to you to decide our fate.
*C'est à la renommée d'exercer son empire sur votre nom ;* It belongs to fame to exercise her empire on your name.]

14°. These terms of comparison require *que de* before the next infinitive.

| | | | | | | B |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *plus,* | more. | *mieux,* | better. | *si peu,* | so little. | |
| *moins,* | less. | *plutôt,* | rather. | *tant,* | so much. | |
| *à moins,* | unless. | *si,* | so. | *tel,* | such like : as, | |

*Etudiez plutôt* que de *perdre votre temps ;*
Study rather than lose your time.
*Rien ne lui plaît tant* que d'*apprendre le malheur des autres, &c.*
Nothing pleases him so much as to hear of others' misfortune.

*Avertir* to warn, to give notice, and *charger* to charge with, being attended by two nouns, govern the first relation (*or* state) of the person, and the second of the thing, and require the infinitive with *de ;* as,
*Avertir quelqu'un de quelque chose,* or *de faire son devoir ;*
To give one notice of something, to forewarn him *to* do his duty.
*Défendre* to forbid, *permettre* to permit, to allow, and *refuser,* to deny, to refuse, govern the first relation of the thing, and the third of the person ; and require the infinitive with *de:* as, C
*Je vous permets* ou *défends* de *le faire ;* I permit, *or* forbid you *to* do it.
*Refuser quelque chose à quelqu'un ;* To deny somebody something.
*Défendre* is also construed with *que* and the subjunctive.
*Demander* requires the infinitive with *à,* when it signifies only *asking* or *demanding:* but in the sense of *desiring, begging, &c.* it requires *de.*—It is also better to use *prier,* in this sense, instead of *demander:* as, *Il demande à manger,* or *à aller se promener ;* He asks *to* eat, or *to* go a walking. *Il m'a demandé* ou *prié* de *lui rendre ce service-là ;* He desired me, begged of me, to do him that piece of service.
Again, *Prier* governs the first relation of the person and the second of the thing : as, *Prier quelqu'un d'une chose ;* To beg a thing of one.
*Insulter* governs the first relation when it is a person, or a pronoun personal, and the third when it is a thing : as, *insulter quelqu'un:* to insult, abuse, affront one. *Insulter à la misère d'autrui ;* to insult another's misfortune.—We D
likewise elegantly say, *insulter aux misérables ;* to insult the unfortunate.
*Mériter,* to deserve, requires either the infinitive with *de,* or the subjunctive with *que.*—It is the same with the adnouns *digne* and *indigne :* as,
*Il mérite d'être préféré,* ou qu'*on le préfère ;* He desires to be preferred.
*Il est indigne,* or *Il ne mérite pas* qu'*on lui* rende *service ;*
He does not deserve that one shall do him any service.
*Prendre garde,* to take care, which requires the second state in English, requires the third in French, and the infinitive with *de,* or the subjunctive with *que ;* as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *Prenez garde à cela ;* | Take care *of* that. |
| *Prenez garde de tomber ;* | Beware of falling, *or* take care you do not fall, *or* not to fall. |
| *Prenez garde qu'il ne fasse cela ;* | Take care lest he should do that. |

A But note, that the French use no negative after *prendre garde*, when the next verb is in the infinitive.

*Persuader*, to persuade, attended by one noun only, governs it in the first state: as, *persuader quelqu'un*, to persuade one; *persuader quelque chose*, to persuade one thing. When it is attended by two nouns, it governs the first state of the thing, and the third of the person; as, *persuader une chose à quelqu'un*; to persuade one to something. And when it is followed by a verb, it requires it in the infinitive with *de*: as also does *dissuader* to dissuade, and *détourner* to deter; but these two always govern the first state of the person, and the second of the thing: as, *dissuader quelqu'un de quelque chose*, to dissuade one from a thing; *le détourner* de *la faire*, to deter him from doing it.

*Instruire* to instruct, governs the first state of the person, and the second of the thing: as *instruire quelqu'un d'une chose*, to instruct one: but *enseigner, apprendre, montrer*, (to teach, learn, show), govern the third state of the person: as, *enseigner la Grammaire à quelqu'un*, to teach one Grammar.

B Lastly, Verbs and Adnouns, governing the *Genitive*, *Dative*, and *Ablative* in Latin, commonly govern the second and third state of the noun in French: as, *Meminisse alicujus rei*, to remember a thing; *se souvenir* d'*une chose*. *Resistere alicui*, to resist one; *résister* à *quelqu'un*. *Vesci pane & aquâ*, to live upon bread and water, *vivre* de *pain & d'eau*.

15°. The prepositions *de* and *à* construed with the infinitive, answer to the English preposition *to*, used also before verbs; and it ought to have been observed, that it is the foregoing verb, or noun, that determines which of the two must be used. But there remains another preposition *(pour)*, likewise answering to *to*, and of the same use, before verbs, and which denotes the *Design* or *End* of, or *Reason* for, doing something. Therefore,

C Whenever the particle *to* coming before an infinitive, can as well be rendered by *for to, in order to, with a design to*, with the infinitive, or *to the end that*, or only *that*, with the indicative, or subjunctive, or *for* with the gerund, it must be rendered into French by *pour*: as likewise the French for these expressions, *for to, in order to, with a design to, to the end that*, and *for* with a gerund, is *pour*, or *afin de* with the *infinitive*, or *afin que* with the subjunctive; as,

*Il l'a fait* pour *me faire de la peine*; He did it *to* make me uneasy.

*Il a été pendu* pour *avoir volé sur le grand chemin*;
He was hanged *for robbing* upon the highway.

Afin d'*obtenir cette grâce*; in order to obtain that favour.

D Afin que *je lui réponde*; that I may answer his letter.

16°. The verb coming after *trop, assez, suffisamment, suffisant*, and *suffire*, always requires the preposition *pour* before it: as, *Il est* trop *sensé* pour *faire cela*; He has too much sense *to* do that.

*Elle n'est pas* assez *riche* pour *épouser un Duc*;
She is not rich enough to marry a Duke.

*Le mérite ne* suffit *pas* pour *réussir*; Merit is not enough to thrive.

*Mind* then well the relations which the English particles *of, from, with, by, for*, and *to*, have to these three French ones, de, à, pour.

The gerund *(ing)* with the prepositions *of*, *from*, *with*, (or the infinitive that can be resolved by any of these prepositions and the gerund) is rendered by the infinitive with *de*.—The English gerund, with the prepositions *in* and *to* (or the infinitive that can be resolved after that manner) is rendered by the infinitive with *à*.——And the preposition *for* with the gerund (or the infinitive so resolved), by the infinitive with *pour*. See the examples above.—— The English gerund, with the prepositions *in* and *by*, is also rendered in French by the gerund, with the preposition *en:* as, by doing that, *or* in doing that, *en faisant cela.* A

Moreover observe, *1st*, that *pour* is never used in French with a gerund as in English, but always with the infinitive.

*2dly*, That English gerunds, construed with *for*, are rendered in French by the compound of the present of the infinitive, or by a noun: as, *Il a été pendu pour avoir volé* ou *pour vol;* He has been hanged for robbing: the noun denoting the action itself, and the compound tense the time of the action, which is past.

*3dly*, That these three prepositions, *de*, *à*, *pour*, are not always put so immediately before verbs, as in English, but some word or words may be put between, as pronouns, and some adverbs, which must come immedfately before the verb; as, B

| | |
|---|---|
| *Pour* vous *donner;* | To give you. |
| *Pour* mieux *répondre;* | To answer better. |

*4thly*, That they are also sometimes used before the infinitive, without any previous noun, or verb, that determine them, to wit, in the beginning of a sentence; as,

*De vous dire comment cela est arrivé, c'est ce que je ne puis;*

*To* tell you how that did happen, that I cannot, *or* it is what I cannot.

In which construction, *de* prepares the mind to a greater attention to what one is going to say.

*à* not only comes in the beginning of a sentence, but is also construed with verbs that require *de:* but then *à* falls under some of the relations of disposition and inclination, which (as we shall see in the chapter of prepositions) are denoted by that particle: and *à* thus used, can be resolved in English by *by*, or *with*, and a gerund: or *if*, and the indicative; as,

*A en juger par les apparences;* If we may judge by appearances, *or* probabilities.

*A vivre comme il fait, il n'ira pas loin;* If he lives at that rate he will not live long. C

*A l'entendre, on diroit que*, or *On diroit*, à *l'entendre, que*, &c.

To hear him speak, *or* by hearing him speak, one would say that, &c.

As for *pour*, before an infinitive, in the beginning of a sentence, it always keeps its property of denoting the *Design*, *End*, or *Cause* of doing something; as, Pour *avoir pris tant de peines, il n'en est pas mieux récompensé;*

*For* taking so much pains, he is not the better rewarded for it;

The infinitive can also begin the sentence without any preposition at all before it, which happens when one speaks sententiously, or is laying down general maxims: as,

*Pouvoir vivre avec soi même, & savoir vivre avec les autres, c'est la grande science de la vie;* To be able to live with oneself, and to know how to live with others, is the great science of life.

Lastly, Whenever in a sentence two verbs come together, joined by the enclitick *&*, great care must be taken (especially if they govern different relations and particles) to give to each of them the respective relation or particle which it requires: as in placing a noun after the first verb, and before the second a pronoun in that state, which it requires; or in repeating the pronoun before each verb. D

¶ Therefore this English sentence,

*That pleased and charmed the Prince*, is translated thus in French:

Cela plut au Prince & le charma, not *Cela plut & charma*, &c. because we say, *Charmer quelqu'un & plaire à quelqu'un.* It is the same with these sentences:

*I will, and bind myself to fulfil my promise;* Je veux accomplir ma promesse, & Je promets de le faire, not *Je veux & promets*, &c. because *vouloir* requires no preposition, and *promettre* requires *de.*

*He made much of his son, and gave him his blessing;*

Il fit des caresses à son fils, & lui donna sa bénédiction; not il fit . . . & *donna à son fils; because, though* the verbs have the same regimen, yet each *must be attended by its relation.*

A It is the same with two prepositions; each must have its separate regimen expressed or understood; and the understood regimen is always that of the latter preposition: as,

*The one sat above, and the other below, me;* L'un s'assit au-dessus de moi, & l'autre au-dessous; so regular and nice the French language is in its construction.]

N. B. In a collection of Phrases and Dialogues lately published by Mr. *Des Carrieres*, the verbs mentioned page 303 to 318 are instanced with their respective regimens.]

17°. The Gerund is always indeclinable; therefore we say in both genders and numbers,

*Un homme craignant Dieu;* a man fearing God.
*Une femme craignant Dieu;* a woman fearing God.
*Des gens craignant Dieu;* people fearing God.

Except only in some expressions of the Law-style, as *la ren-*
B *dante compte* (a woman giving an account at law of the money which she was accountable for). *Nos gens tenants nos Cours de Parlement* (style of Proclamation, to say only *Our parliaments*).

It is a great *Quære* among French Grammarians, whether the expressions of these sentences are gerunds, or only *verbal* adnouns.

*Une requete tendante à ce que*, &c.
A petition tending to what, &c.
*Une fille majeure usante et jouissante de ses droits;*
A young woman of age enjoying her rights.
*Ces étoffes ne sont pas approchantes de celles que je vis hier;*
These stuffs are not like those I saw yesterday.
*Son humeur est tellement répugnante à la mienne, que, &c.*
His or her temper is so repugnant to mine, that, &c.

*La campagne est pleine de troupeaux qui paissent errans à leur gré, & bondissans sur l'herbe;* The country is full of grazing cattle, wandering up and down,
C and skipping in the grass.

It is very indifferent what appellation to give to these derivatives (and others from verbs neuter), so they are known, and the learner is informed, that use will have them govern the same relation as the verbs from which they are derived, and besides agree, in gender and number, with the term to which they refer. I will insert a list of them in the Appendix: but the means to know whether they are gerunds or adnouns, is to see if they can be construed with the verb subst. *to be:* in which case they are adnouns, otherwise they are gerunds.

Likewise there are in French a great many words, which are both nouns and gerunds; as *appelant, assiégeant, conquérant, étudiant, savant, ignorant, habitant, négotiant, suppliant*, &c. but their construction has no difficulty; they are used like nouns, and they govern no state, as they do when used as gerunds.

A great many participles are also used substantively, as *allié, blessé, cousin, damné*, &c. &c. You will find complete lists of them in the Appendix.

D We often express with a conjunction and a tense of the indicative what is expressed with a gerund in other languages, in order to avoid the ambiguity that may arise from the gerund being indeclinable. Thus, instead of saying, *Je les ai rencontrés courant la poste*, I met them riding post, we say,

*Je les ai rencontrés* qui couroient *la poste*,

because *courant* may as well refer to the subject *je*, as to the object *les*. *Il a été chez elles, & il les a trouvées* qui buvoient & mangeoient, instead of buvant & mangeant; He has been at their house, and found them eating and drinking.

The gerund sometimes takes the preposition *en* before it, as A
in English *in* and *by*, and can be resolved by the conjunctions *when*, *whilst*, and *as*, with a tense of the indicative: as,

*Je l'ai vu en passant*; I saw him by the way, *or* as I passed by.

When the pronoun *en* meets with a gerund, it is put after it, and not before, as it might, if the gerund was resolved by a tense of the indicative, in order to avoid the equivocation, that may be occasioned by *en* pronoun, and *en* preposition: as,

*Il le pria d'instruire son fils, voulant en faire un savant*; or *comme il* en vouloit *faire*, or *comme il vouloit* en *faire un savant*; He desired him to instruct his son, as he would make a learned man of him.

The English gerund *(ing)* so much used with the particles *a*, *an*, *the*, or nothing before it, or with *of* after, is rendered B
into French by a noun, or by a pronoun and a verb, or an infinitive when it comes after a verb with *a* or *an*: as,

The *impoverishing* of the body is the *enriching* of the soul;

L'appauvrissement *du corps est* ce qui enrichit *l'âme*.

He is gone a *walking*; *Il est allé* se promener.

A virtuous man does not leave off *doing* good, but when he gives over *living*;

*L'homme vertueux ne cesse* de faire *du bien qu'en cessant* de vivre.

His perfect knowledge of the French Tongue is the reason of his *being chosen* for that embassy;

*La connoissance parfaite qu'il a de la langue Françoise, est* C
*la raison* pourquoi on l'a choisi *pour cette ambassade*.

Observe, besides, that the gerund with the verb substantive *to be* is rendered into French by the verb of the gerund, in the tense of the verb substantive: as,

*He is dancing*, Il danse; *I was reading*, Je lisois, *&c.*

¶ Mr. *Holder*, in his illustration of *Chambaud*'s Grammar, has taxed him with error, for not having distinguished the Participle present from the Gerund.

Without meaning the least offence to Mr. *H.* whose merit is readily acknowledged, as his corrections are altogether highly commendable, it may be observed, that he has espoused the wrong side of the question. His principal authority is *Restaut*, one of those antiquated grammarians, who, fettered with the prejudices of school, dare not soar higher, and are anxious to D
chalk the syntax of all languages after that of the Latin, without any regard to the peculiar genius of each.

This vindication of *Chambaud*, who himself has followed *Girard*, is grounded upon the opinion of *Wailly*, who is himself a professional man in Latin, and whose French Grammar has superseded that of *Restaut* in Paris, near thirty years, after receiving the sanction of the University of Paris; a class of men conversant in Latin, who have adopted the book, though the Participle present is missing in it.

It remains to prove that the opinion of *Chambaud* and *Wailly* is justifiable.

The Participle is so called, because it partakes of the nature of both the verb and the adjective; that is, verb-like, it governs; and adjective-like, it is declinable, and may be the predicate of a sentence; but the French Gerund, though possessing the first of the properties, *viz.* that of governing, does not now enjoy the others, as it did formerly; it therefore cannot be styled a Participle.

The Gerund is so called, because it is the vicegerent of a verb, always subordinate to the principal verb of the sentence, having the same regimen

A with its primitive verb, and standing, as it were, for a subject together with its attribute.

The Gerund serves to express, 1°. The state, chiefly of the subject, sometimes of the object of an action.

2°. The motive or ground of a subject for acting.

3°. The circumstance, manner, or means of an action.

N.B. The subject of an action is always a noun or pronoun governing a verb; as the object is a noun or pronoun governed by a verb. The object to which a Gerund may refer, must be governed without the assistance of any preposition.

In its two first capacities, the Gerund answers to the questions *why? how?* and may be resolved, either by the relative conjunctive *qui*, or the conjunctions *comme, parce que*, &c. prefixed to a verb in the indicative mood.

B In its third capacity, it answers to the questions *when? how?* and may be resolved by the conjunctions *lorsque, pendant que*, prefixed to a verb in the indicative mood.

1°. EXAMPLE *of Gerunds expressing the state of a subject and object.*

*Albert Valstein* fut *naturellement fort sobre; ne* dormant *presque point*, travaillant *toujours*, supportant *patiemment le froid & la faim*, &c. "Albert Valstein *was* naturally very sober; *taking* almost no sleep, *being* always at work, patiently *enduring* cold and hunger, &c." Here the state of Valstein is described; the gerunds *dormant*, &c. may be resolved by *comme il dormoit*, &c. or *qui dormoit*, &c. the imperfect of their respective verbs, because *fut*, the principal verb of the sentence, denotes a time past.

*Cette Dame* est *d'un excellent caractère*; soignant *les malades*, faisant *des aûmones*, obligeant *toujours quand elle le peut*. "This lady is of an excellent temper; *attending* the sick, *giving* alms, always *obliging* when

C she has it in her power." Here the disposition of the Lady is described; the gerunds may be resolved by *comme elle soigne*, &c. the present tense of their respective verbs, because *est*, the principal verb, denotes the present time.

*Combien* voyons-*nous de gens, qui* connoissant *le prix du temps, le perdent mal à propos!* "How many people we *see*, who *knowing* the value of time, yet waste it to no purpose!" Here *connoissant* may be resolved *quoiqu'ils connoissent*; or the second verb *perdent* may be accompanied with the conjunction *cependant*.

*On les* trouve *toujours* buvant & mangeant; "We always *find* them *eating* and *drinking*." *Je les* ai trouvés buvant & mangeant; "I found them *eating* and *drinking*." Here the gerunds *buvant* and *mangeant* describe the state of the object, and may be resolved by *qui boivent & mangent*, or *qui buvoient & mangeoient*, according to the tense of the principal verb to which they are subordinate.

2°. EXAMPLES *of Gerunds expressing the motive or ground for acting.*

D In that capacity the Gerund always refers to the subject of the sentence.

*Il envoie*
*Il a envoyé* (supposing he is still there)
*Il enverra*
} *son fils à Cambridge*, voulant *en faire un bon mathématicien*; "He *sends*, or *has sent*, or *will send*, his son to Cambridge, *wishing* to make a good mathematician of him." *Voulant* expresses the motive of his sending, &c.; it may be resolved by *parce qu'il veut*, the present tense, because the principal verb denotes a time present or future.

But in this phrase,

*Il a envoyé* (supposing he is no longer there)
*Il envoya*
*Il avoit envoyé*
} *son fils à Cambridge*, voulant *en faire*, &c. "He *sent* his son to Cambridge, *wishing* to make," &c. The Gerund *voulant* may be resolved by *parce qu'il* [illegible] imperfect tense, because the principal verb [illegible] past

Two or more gerunds employed together, must be joined, with a conjunction before the last: as, Craignant *d'un côté d'être abandonné, & de l'autre s'ennuyant d'entretenir tant de troupes à ses dépens, il se sauva dans les montagnes;* "*Fearing*, on one hand, to be deserted, *and being tired*, on the other, to keep so many men in his pay, he fled to the mountains." A

The gerunds past are formed with the assistance of the helping gerunds *ayant* and *étant*; as,

*La ville* ayant *été prise & abandonnée au pillage, le soldat y fit un immense butin*; "The town *having been* taken and delivered up to plunder, the soldiers made an immense booty." Here *ayant été* does for the two participles *prise* and *abandonnée*, because both are used affirmatively; but when one is used affirmatively and the other negatively, or *vice versâ*, the gerund must be repeated; as, *La ville n'*ayant *pas voulu se rendre, mais* ayant été *prise d'assaut*, &c.

In the two capacities above-mentioned, the French gerund, it is true, performs the same office as the participle present of the Latin: but, for the reasons already stated, it does not follow that it should go by the same name; no more than the French participle has a right to assume the denomination of the Latin supine, though it perform its part, when taken actively. B

3°. EXAMPLES *of Gerunds expressing the circumstance, manner, or means of an action.*

In that capacity the gerund always refers to the subject of the sentence, performing the same office as the gerund in *do* of the Latin, and having the import of a substantive, since it is, or may always be, preceded by the preposition *en*, with which it forms an adverbial phrase. (N. B. The other gerunds of the Latin, viz. in *di* and *dum*, have their offices performed by the French infinitive, preceded by *de* or *pour*.)

*Je l'ai rencontré* en allant *à la campagne*: "I met him *in going* into the country." *Je lirai sa lettre* en *me* promenant; "I shall read his letter *when I take* a walk." In these phrases the gerund expresses the circumstance of the action: *En allant* may be resolved by *Comme j'allois*, or *lorsque j'allois*: *En me promenant* may be resolved by *quand je me promenerai*, or *pendant que je me promenerai*.

*Vous l'avez fait* en courant; "You have done it *running*." *Il vous a dit la vérité*, tout en riant; "He spoke the truth to you, though *in a pleasant manner*." In these phrases the gerund expresses the manner of the action: *En courant* may be resolved by *comme* or *lorsque vous couriez*: *Tout en riant* may be resolved by *quoiqu'il rît*. C

*On l'a guéri d'un vomissement invétéré*, en *lui* faisant *prendre tous les jours deux cuillerées de vin d'Espagne*; "He has been cured of an inveterate vomiting, by *taking* two spoonfuls of Spanish wine every day." Here the gerund *en faisant* expresses the means employed to cure him, and be resolved by *parce qu'on lui a fait prendre*, &c.

If the principal verb were in the future tense, *on le guérira*; or in the conditional, *on le guérirait*, the gerund would be resolved by *si on lui fait*, or *si on lui faisoit prendre*, on account of the condition implied.

From the examples above stated, it plainly appears that the gerund, in any capacity, may be resolved nearly in the same manner, viz. by a conjunction and a verb: Now the difference of the conjunction is not a plea to give the gerund different denominations; therefore there is no impropriety in giving it but one name, provided it may equally well answer the purpose. D

Some Grammarians who reckon two sorts of participles in French, the active and the passive, do not seem more successful. They call our gerund the participle active, which, it is true, expresses an action; but, as has just been shown, cannot be denominated a participle. As to their participle passive, they confess that it is mostly used actively; why then should its denomination be confined to one voice only?

It may therefore be fairly inferred, that in French there is but one participle both nominally and really; which serves for the past as well as present time, in both the active and passive voice. This perhaps may be ascribed to a poverty of our language, which, however, does not militate against its clearness and perspicuity. Its deficiency is easily made up with the assistance of some words, and the language is not injured by it, since a multiplicity of beings is saved, which in the end would prove useless, and be deemed merely a luxury of expression.

A 18°. Participles are mere adnouns, sometimes construed with a subject, to make short accidental sentences, *Cela dit, il s'en alla;* After saying this, he went away; but most times serving to form the compound tenses of verbs. When they meet with nouns, they always agree with them in number and gender: as;

*un homme est*imé, { a man esteemed. } *une femme est*imée, { a woman esteemed.

*des gens est*imés, { people esteemed. } *des nations est*imées, { nations esteemed.

B When they are part of a tense compound, they are sometimes declinable, and sometimes indeclinable, according to the following observations:

1*st*, The participle is declinable, when it comes after the verb *être* considered only as a verb substantive, or (what is the same) when the participle is a predicate, that is, an adnoun affirmed of the subject; as,

*Il est per*du, *Elle est per*due; He *or* She, *or* It is lost.
*Ils sont per*dus, *Elle sont per*dues; They are lost.
*Il est ra*vi, *Elle est ra*vie *de danser*; He, *or* She is overjoyed [to dance.
*Elle a été* ravie *de vous voir*; She has been charmed to see you.

C ¶ *N.B.* The participle *été* is always indeclinable, as also *pu* and *fallu*; *voulu* is very seldom declined.]

2*dly*, When the tense compound, either of *avoir* or *être*, is preceded by a pronoun relative in the fourth state, governed as an object, such as *que, le, la, les, me, te, se, nous, vous,* or by a noun with a pronoun interrogative: as,

*Les peines* que *mes amis ont* prises;
The trouble which my friends have taken.
*Les peines* qu'*ils se sont* données;
The trouble which they gave themselves.
Quelles *peines a-t-il* prises (or) *s'est-il* données?
What trouble did he take, *or* give himself?

D *Ses sœurs ont bien du mérite, je* les *ai toujours est*imées;
His sisters are very deserving, I have always esteemed them.
*Nous* nous *sommes trom*pés; We are mistaken (Men speak).
*Elles s'étoient trom*pées; They were mistaken (said of women).

But the participle is indeclinable, 1*st*, when the pronoun is governed of a verb coming after the tense compound, and not of the tense compound: as,

*Les montres* qu'*il a fait* faire, *il ne* les *a pas voulu* payer;
The watches which he ordered to be made, he would not pay for them.

*Fait* and *voulu* do not agree with the pronouns *que* and *les*, A
relating to *les montres*, because these pronouns are not governed of the compound tenses *il a fait*, *il a voulu*, but by the following verbs *faire* and *payer*.

*2dly*, When it is governed in the third state expressing the end of the verb, and not in the fourth, expressing its object.

We say: *Elle s'est* tuée; She has killed herself; making the participle agree with the pronoun *se*, governed of the tense compound, as its object. But we say:

*Elle s'est* donné *la mort*, not *s'est donnée*; She put herself to death; because the tense compound does not govern *se* as its object, but *la mort*; and *se* is only the *end*, in the third state B
*(sibi)*.

The pronoun is not governed of the tense compound in these four cases: 1*st*, When the verb *faire*, serving to form the compound tense, signifies *to cease*, *to bespeak*, *to order*, as in the aforesaid example.

*Les montres qu'il a* fait *faire*; The watches which he ordered to be made.

2*dly*, With verbs impersonal: as,

*Les tumultes* qu'*il* a fallu *appaiser*; the riots which it was necessary to quell; wherein *que* is governed of *appaiser*, not of *il fallu*.

3*dly*, With the participle *pu* from *pouvoir*, *dû* from *devoir*, *voulu* from *vouloir*, and perhaps some others, after which there is an infinitive understood: as,

*Il a dit toutes les raisons* qu'*il a* voulu; He has said all the reasons that he would; *dire* being understood after *voulu*.

*Ménage*, *Corneille*, and *l'Abbé Desmarais* (the Grammar of the French Aca- C
demy) make three more exceptions to the general rule; pretending, that when the subject of the verb comes after it, or when the pronoun *cela* is the subject, whether it comes before or after the verb, or when the compound tense is followed by either a noun or adnoun, which it governs, together with the pronoun, the participle is indeclinable, and therefore will have writers say,

*Les peines qu'*ont pris *mes amis*, or *que se sont* donné *mes amis*.
*Les peines que m'a donné cette affaire*, or *que cela m'a* causé.
*Le commerce l'a* rendu *puissante*; Trade made it powerful.
*Les Anglois se sont* rendu *maîtres de la mer*; The English have made themselves masters of the sea.

But good writers now keep to the general rule, of making the participle agree with the foregoing pronoun, except only when it is not governed of the compound tense, or is in the third state.

Therefore we should say:—*Les peines qu'ont prises.—Les peines que m'a* D
*données.—L'a rendue puissante—Se sont rendus maîtres de la mer.*

## CHAP. VI.

### *Of* VERBS *Impersonal.*

¶ STRICTLY speaking there is no such thing as a Verb Impersonal, except in the infinitive mood; however, according to the trite language of Grammarians, such may be so called, in the indicative and subjunctive (see p. 130); as are not conjugated with the personal pronouns, *je*, I; *tu*, thou; *il*, he, it,

A *elle*, she, it, *&c.* but only with this pronoun, *il* it, impersonal, that is, relering to no antecedent; as in these phrases:

Il *tonne*, *it* thunders; il *neigeoit*, *it* snowed; il *pleuvra*, *it* will rain; (see p. 187.) wherein no antecedent appears, unless you suppose that such words *le ciel*, the sky; *le temps*, the weather, may be understood. Therefore a verb is known to be impersonal, when no substantive can be prefixed to it instead of *il*.

*Il* is also impersonal in phrases like this: Il *s'est passé bien des choses*; which has the same import as, *Bien des choses se sont passées*; Many things have happened. The virtual subject of the verb impersonal *s'est passée*, is *bien des choses*; hence may be inferred that the impersonal pronoun *il*, far from referring to an antecedent, rather refers to a consequent term.

B Even *il* has been reputed by judicious authors a mere article, belonging to a substantive expressed or understood, and following the verb when it is expressed, as in *il est jour* (*il jour est*, or *le jour est*).

These phrases, *il pleut*, *il tonne*, may be resolved in the same manner, viz. *il pluie est*, or *la pluie est*; (*il pleut*, comprehending in itself the subject, with the affirmative and attribute). (*Gram. de* P. R.)

Verbs *Impersonal*, in all their tenses, are used in the third person singular; hence they are of the same tribe as those used with the pronoun indeterminate *on*; the only difference is that they present something more general and indeterminate; as,

Il *se trouve des gens*, or On *trouve des gens*; People are found. (See the latter end of this Chapter.)

## § I. *Of the Impersonal* Il est, il étoit, *&c.*

This impersonal, and the demonstrative *c'est*, are of very extensive use in French, but cannot be used indiscriminately
C the one for the other; thus, in order to know how to employ them properly, make the following observations:

¶ The English Impersonal, *it is*, is used in sentences, the signification of which is sometimes absolute and indeterminate, sometimes relative and determinate. In the latter case, *c'est* must always be used; in the former, *il est* is more proper, unless you introduce a noun, which then determines the sense, and requires the use of *c'est*; instances will elucidate the matter.

This English phrase, *It is in vain you endeavour to corrupt him*, may be rendered into French two ways.

1o. C'est *en vain* que *vous cherchez à le corrompre*, (means something positive, an actual endeavour; and for this reason, the verb *cherchez* is in the indicative.)

2o. Il est *inutile* que *vous cherchiez à le corrompre*, (means something uncer-
D tain, an intended endeavour; and for this reason, the verb *cherchiez* is in the subjunctive.) This latter phrase rather signifies, It is in vain you would endeavour, *&c.*

From the above examples it appears that *il est* cannot be used for *c'est*, without altering the sense of the phrase.

On the contrary, *c'est*, accompanied with a noun, may perform the office of *il est*, still preserving its full import.

For instance, this phrase; *Il est fâcheux que son projet n'ait pas réussi*; It is grievous that his project did not succeed;

May be equally well, and still better rendered by this: *C'est une chose fâcheuse que son projet n'ait pas réussi.* Both phrases have the same import, since *que* in either govern the same mood; but the latter, as will be seen hereafter, is more agreeable to the genius of the French, and receives from the Gallicism *c'est . . . que* a degree of energy.

Therefore in the doubt which way the English Impersonal *it is*, followed by an adnoun, must be rendered into French, there can be no impropriety in using *c'est*, provided you introduce a noun, with which the adnoun will be construed, as in the last instance.] A

¶ *Il est* is construed, 1°, with nouns denoting time; as,

*Quelle heure* est-il? What o'clock is it? Il est *deux heures*; *It is* two o'clock.

*Quelle heure croyez-vous qu'*il soit? What o'clock do you think *it is?* Il est *minuit*; *It is* twelve (at night). Est-il *si tard que cela?* Is it so late? *Je ne croyois pas qu'*il fût *si tard*; I did not think it was so late.

*Quelle heure* étoit-il *quand vous êtes parti?* At what o'clock B did you set off? Il étoit *neuf heures*; *It was* nine.

Il est *jour*; It is day-light.—*Il est nuit*; It is dark.

Il est *heure de diner*; It is dinner-time.—Il est *heure de se retirer*; It is time to go home.

Il est *temps de partir*; *It is* time to set out. Il sera *tard quand nous arriverons à Douvres*; *It will be* late when we reach Dover.

N.B. In the above application of *il est*, the noun takes no article; the reason is obvious; *il* is itself an article, as has been said.]

¶ 2°. *Il est* is also construed with an adnoun, unaccompa- C nied with a noun, but followed by either *ne* or *que*, and a subsequent sentence explicative of the adnoun; as,

Il est *bien* fâcheux d'*être malade, & de n'avoir point d'argent*; *It is* a very sad thing to be sick, and have no money.

Il est bon de *se tenir sur ses gardes*; *It is* prudent to stand upon one's guard

The above phrases present something general and sententious; but when particularized, they must be construed with *que* instead of *de:* as,

Il est *fâcheux* que *cela soit arrivé*; It is sorrowful that such D a thing has happened.

Il est bon que *vous vous teniez sur vos gardes*: It is prudent for you to stand upon your guard.

Il est *bien* fâcheux que *vous soyez malade*, & que *vous n'ayez point d'argent*: *It is* a very sad thing *for you* to be sick, and have no money. [Sometimes you may say, as in English, *Il est bien fâcheux pour vous d'être*, &c. See the Impersonals *p.* 297 *and* 314.]

A ¶ 3°. *Il est*, in all its tenses, is also construed with prepositions: For instance,

With *à*, to express probability; as,

*Il est* à *croire que cela arrivera*; It may be thought that this will happen.

*Il étoit* à *présumer que cela seroit ainsi*; It was presumable that it would be so.

In this acceptation *il est* is elegantly used for *il y a*, (See page 338, A.)

With *de*, to express duty, obligation; as,

*Il est* de *la générosité de pardonner*; It behoves a generous B soul to forgive.

*Il est du devoir* d'*un bon citoyen de défendre sa patrie*; A good citizen ought to defend his native country.

With *en*, to express ability, character; as,

*Il n'est pas* en *moi de chercher à nuire*; It is not in my character to be hurtful.

*Il n'étoit pas* en *lui de le faire*; He had not it in his power to do so.

*S'il est* en *votre pouvoir*; If you have it in your power.

*Il est* en *son pouvoir de vous obliger*; He has it in his power to oblige you.]

C ¶ 4°. *Il est* construed with the particle, or rather the supplying pronoun *en*, prefixed to the verb, implies sometimes contingency; as,

*On lui a intenté un procès, & il n'*en *a rien été*; An action has been brought against him, which had no fatal consequence.

*Quand il l'auroit maltraité*, or *S'il l'avoit maltraité, qu'en seroit-il? il n'*en *seroit rien*; Though, *or* if he had ill-treated him, what would be the consequence? nothing at all.

*Il* en *sera ce qu'il plaira à Dieu*; It will happen as it pleases God.

D *Il* en *sera de cette affaire ce qu'il plaira aux ministres*; It will be with this affair as the ministers please.

Sometimes *il en est* implies comparison, then the preposition *de* (in English *with*) must be prefixed both to the noun compared and the noun of similitude; as,

*Il* en *est* de *la Poësie comme* de *la* Peinture; It is with Poetry as *with* Painting.

*Il* en *sera du vôtre comme du mien*; It will be with yours as *with* mine.]

*Of the pretended Impersonal, or rather the Verb Demonstrative* c'est, c'étoit, &c. A

¶ Mr. *Holder* has censured *Chambaud* pretty severely, for "having," said he, "very incautiously joined the personal applications of *c'est*, to its impersonal ones." This gentleman's animadversion seems rather incautious. With a little more attention to the nature of *ce*, and to the double acceptation of the English impersonal, *it is*, he might, perhaps, have come nearer to the point, by giving a general verdict against the impersonality of *c'est*. In this respect he would have agreed with the French Academy and our best grammarians, who do not reckon *c'est* a verb impersonal.

In effect, there is a material difference between *il est* and *c'est*. The former is mostly construed with an adnoun, or with a substantive taken adjectively, and is generally followed by an explicative sentence: the latter is generally construed with a noun, or with a verb in the infinitive, that is, used substantively, and may make a complete sentence. (See the following pages.)

If, therefore, there be already difficulty enough in defending the impersonality of *il est*, since in most of the examples above stated it has a great similarity to *on*, being in some measure its vicegerent; there is still no less B possibility to attribute impersonality to a verb depending on a true pronoun, and such is the case with *c'est*.

What may have caused the mistake, is perhaps the verb *être* being used in the third person singular; but a pronoun singular cannot govern a verb in another person.

Sometimes, it is true, the third person plural is used with *ce* (as will be seen hereafter); but the first and second persons plural cannot; because *the law* of harmony may sometimes authorise to alter the number, but never to change the person.]

¶ It has been said in the above examples, that the English Impersonal *it is*, presents something indeterminate, and for this reason is rendered into French by *il est*. But when *it is* presents something determinate, the French, as has been said, to point it out more precisely, make use of their convenient verb demonstrative *c'est*, which serves to give their sentences sometimes more elegance, at other times more energy. C

For the same reason, of elegance or energy, *c'est* is also used in some cases wherein, instead of the English impersonal *it*, a pronoun personal, or even a noun is construed with the verb *to be*. Hence, perhaps, Mr. Holder's distinction of *c'est* impersonal from *c'est* personal, which may hold good, but with respect to the English only.]

¶ N. B. *Ce* is sometimes an article, sometimes a pronoun demonstrative; in this latter capacity, it may be called pronoun primitive, being, in effect, the root of *celui, celle; ceux, celles; ceci, cela*, (See p. 264.)

¶ 1°. *C'est*, in all its tenses, both of the indicative and subjunctive moods, is idiomatically used in French, to point out more precisely an object determinate; as,

C'est *là mon livre;* This is my book.
C'est *aujourd'hui Dimanche*; To-day is Sunday. D
C'étoit *hier Samedi;* Yesterday was Saturday.
C'est *demain Lundi;* To-morrow is Monday.
C'est *Mardi fête*; Tuesday is a holiday.
C'est *demain congé;* To-morrow is a holiday.

N.B. There is a material difference between these two last phrases: *C'est demain congé* means a holiday as usual; *Ce sera demain congé* means an accidental holiday.]

A ¶ 2°. *Ce* in *c'est, c'étoit,* &c. stands sometimes for the pronoun *cela:* as,

C'est *juste;* It is just. C'est *vrai;* It is true.
C'est *très-bien fait*; It is very well done.
C'étoit *bon autrefois*; It was good formerly.
C'est *fâcheux; mais* c'est *votre faute;* It is unfortunate, but it is your fault.
C'est *beaucoup pour son âge*; that is a great deal for his age.
C'est *peu de chose;* That is very little.
C'est *trop*; It is too much. C'*en* est *trop*; That is too much.
Ce *n'*est *pas trop*; It is not too much.
B C'est *trop peu d'un;* One is too little.
C'étoit *beaucoup trop d'un*; One is too many
C'est *assez*; That will do. C'en est *assez*; That is enough.
C'est *assez disputer* or *disputé*; That is disputing enough.
C'étoit *assez de cette démarche imprudente pour vous perdre*; That imprudent step was sufficient to ruin you.
Ce sera *autant de fait*; That will be so much done.
C'est *ce que je pensois*; It is *or* It was what I thought.
C'est *être bien hardi*; It is very bold.
*A moins que* ce *ne* soit *en Angleterre*; Unless it be in England.

In which phrases, the impersonal *it* may, strictly speaking,
C be changed into *that*. Therefore, whenever this change may take place, *it* must be translated by *ce* or *cela,* not by *il.*

N. B. Observe that *ce* may stand for *cela* with the verb *être* only; for with other verbs, as in this phrase, Unless it may displease you, *ce* would be improper, and you must say, *à moins que* cela *ne vous déplaise.*]

¶ 3°. *C'est,* in all its tenses, may serve to design either a person or a thing already mentioned; as,

C'est *un modèle de vertu*; He *or* She is a pattern of virtue.
C'est *un Evêque*; He is a Bishop.
C'est *un malade*; It is a patient.
D C'est *un peintre*; It is a painter.
C'est *un marchand*; It is a merchant.
C'est *du pain*; It is bread. C'est *mon livre*; It is my book.
*Avez-vous lu le Voyage d'Anacharsis?* C'est *un ouvrage excellent;* Have you read the Travels of Anacharsis? *It* is an excellent work.
*Si vous voulez vous former à l'éloquence, lisez Démosthène & Cicéron*; ce sont *les deux plus grands orateurs de l'antiquité*; If you wish to form yourself for eloquence, read Demosthenes and Tully; *they are* the two greatest orators among the ancients.

N. B. Observe that in such phrases, *c'est*, as has been said, always requires A
to be followed by a noun, generally accompanied with an article; and when
that noun is plural, the verb demonstrative, for harmony's sake, is used in the
third person plural. All this implicitly proves (see p. 259, B.) that in phrases
construed with *c'est*, though *ce* be the ostensible grammatical nominative to *est*,
yet the following noun is the virtual subject of the sentence.]

But in phrases like this: *Lisez Démosthène & Cicéron*, ils sont *très-éloquens*; read Demosthenes and Tully, *they are* very eloquent: *ce* cannot be used instead of *ils*, because the verb *être* is followed by an adjective unaccompanied with a substantive. B

Again: In this phrase, Ce sont *autant de soleils* (speaking of fixed stars); *They are* as many suns; *autant* is used substantively; but it has no article, because it cannot admit of any; whereas, striking it off, you should say, *Ce sont des soleils*. And in this, Ce sont *de bonnes gens*; They are good people; there is a noun expressed *(gens)*, taken in a limited sense (page 214.) the article of which has disappeared on account of *bonnes* coming first.

¶ Here it may not be amiss to remark that such a phrase,—He is a physician—cannot, as some Grammarians give to understand, be indifferently rendered into French by *Il est médecin*, or *C'est un médecin*.

The two phrases are materially different; and, in this respect, the demonstrative verb *c'est* affords to the French a real advantage over the English language.

The first phrase, *Il est médecin*, answers to this question: What is he? *Qu'est ce qu'il est?* The substantive *médecin* is used adjectively, and qualifies the subject *il:* as such, it takes no article, and admits of no explicative member.

The second phrase, *C'est un médecin*, answers to this question: Who is C
there? *Qui est-là?* The substantive *médecin* retains its true force of a substantive, and is preceded by an article: it is the virtual subject of the sentence, and may sometimes be followed by a relative member explicative. The same phrase may sometimes answer to this question: Who is Mr. ———? but the question must be made in French with *c'est*, viz. *Qu'est-ce que c'est que M.* ———? as will be seen hereafter.

The same may be said of this phrase, *Elle est femme*, or *C'est une femme*; She is a woman. (See p. 219.)

¶ As the French demonstrative verb *c'est* requires to be followed by a noun; so when the English impersonal *it is* is followed by a pronoun personal, that pronoun must be, in French, a disjunctive one, that is, a pronoun which, from its nature, may stand for a substantive. Therefore, in such phrases, D

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| It is *I*, | we say, | C'est *moi*; not *c'est je*. |
| It is *thou*, | —— | C'est *toi*; not *c'est tu*. |
| It is *he*, | —— | C'est *lui*; not *c'est il*. |
| It is *she*, | —— | C'est *elle*. |
| It is *we*, | —— | C'est *nous*. |
| It is *you*, | —— | C'est *vous*. |
| It is *they*, | —— | C'est *eux*; not *c'est ils*. |
| (masc.) | *or* | Ce sont *eux*; not *ce sont ils*. |
| It is *they*, | —— | C'est *elles*. |
| (fem.) | *or* | Ce sont *elles*. |

A N. B. Observe that *elle, nous, vous, elles,* being both disjunctive and conjunctive, are in such phrases used in their disjunctive capacity.

Observe, also, that it is only in its simple tenses the verb may be plural; for in its compound we say,

Ç'avoit été *eux* or *elles;* it had been they.]

¶ 4°. *C'est* is sometimes followed by a relative member, which serves either to describe the very substantive announced by *c'est,* or to account for a preceding sentence; as,

C'est *un médecin* qui *a fait des cures étonnantes*; He is a physician who has done wonderful cures.

C'est *un ministre en* qui *le public a la plus grande confiance*;

B He is a minister in whom the public place an unbounded confidence.

C'est *un bonheur* que *tout le monde* envie; It is a happiness which every one envies.

C'est *la loi* qui *l'ordonne*; It is the law that prescribes it.

C'est *le laquais* qui *a dit cela*; It is the footman who said that.

C'est *moi* qui *le crois*; It is I who believe it.

C'est *vous, Messieurs,* qu'*il faut remercier*; It is you, Gentlemen, who must be thanked.

C'est *eux* (or) Ce sont *eux* qui *l'ont fait*; It is they who have done it, *or* It was they that did that.

C C'étoit (*or*) C'étoient *les dragons* qui *ne vouloient pas obéir*, It was the dragoons that would not obey.

Ce fut *lui* qui *le fit*; It was he that did it.

Ce furent *les François* qui *assiégèrent la place*; It was the French that besieged the place.

Ce seront *les grenadiers* qui *feront l'attaque*; The grenadiers are to make the attack.

Ce sont *vos ancêtres,* qui *par leurs vertus & leurs belles actions, vous ont mérité la qualité de nobles*; ce sont *eux* qui *vous rendent illustres*; *imitez-les, si vous ne voulez pas dégénérer*; It is

D your ancestors, who, by their virtues and great actions, have obtained for you the quality of noblemen; it is they that render you illustrious; imitate them, if you wish not to degenerate.

But the verb *c'est* must remain singular, when the next substantive or pronoun is preceded by a preposition and followed by the conjunction *que*; as will be seen presently.]

N. B. When the verb of the relative member is used in its simple tenses, similar tenses must be used for the verb demonstrative; as,

*C'est* moi qui le *fais;* It is I that do it. *C'étoit* moi qui le *faisois;* It was I that did it. *Ce fut* moi qui le *fis;* It was I that did it. *Ce sera* moi qui le *ferai;* I shall do it. *Ce seroit* moi qui le *ferois;* I would do it. *Ce soit* moi qui le *fasse.*

We may also say, *C'est* moi qui l'*ai fait.*—*C'est* moi qui le *fis.*—*C'est* moi qui le *fare.*

But with the compound of the imperfect. we must say, *C'étoit* moi qui *s'avois fait;* It was I that had done it.] A

¶ 5°. *C'est,* in all its tenses, may also refer to a person or thing yet to be spoken of, and not previously mentioned; then it is followed by the conductive *que* (see p. 259 and 265,); as,

C'étoit *un grand capitaine* que *César*; Cesar was a great captain.

C'est *une vertu bien estimable* que *la patience*; Patience is a very estimable virtue.

C'est *beaucoup* que *de savoir commander*; It is a great deal to know how to command.

C'est *peu de chose* que *cet homme-là*; That man is of very little consequence. B

C'est *peu* qu'*elle le méprise, elle veut encore le ruiner*; It is not enough if she despises him, she wishes to ruin him besides.

C'est *de cette chose-là* que *je parle*; It is of that thing I am speaking.

Ce n'est *pas un mal* que *d'avoir des envieux*; There is no harm in exciting envy.

C'est *une sorte de honte* que *d'être malheureux*; It is a kind of shame to be unfortunate.

N. B. The noun which follows *c'est,* at present is always attended by an article; however, in old proverbial phrases the article is still left out; as, C

C'est *pain bénit que d'escroquer un avare;* It is nuts to cheat a covetous man.]

C'est *ne pas connoître les courtisans,* que *de compter sur leurs promesses*; He who relies on the promises of courtiers, does not know them.

C'est *de la bonne ou de la mauvaise éducation* que *dépend le bonheur ou le malheur de la vie*; It is on a good or bad education the happiness or unhappiness of life depends.

C'est *de peur d'être injuste ou ingrat, disoit un juge,* que *je refuse vos présens*; It is, *said a judge,* for fear of being either unjust or ungrateful, I refuse your presents. D

Ce sera *donc le mois prochain* que *nous aurons le plaisir de le voir*; At last we shall have the pleasure of seeing him the next month.

Ce sont *de bons marins* que *les Anglois*; The English are very good sailors.

But *c'est,* as has been said before, cannot be made plural in such phrases construed with a preposition; as,

C'est à *eux* que *je l'ai promis*; It is to them I have promised it.

C'étoit d'*elles* que *je parlois*; It was of them I was speaking.

A Ce sera pour *vos frères* que *j'en enverrai*; It will be for your brothers I will send some.

C'est à *vous* qu'*il convenoit de faire cette démarche;* It was you it became to take this step.

C'est *ainsi* qu'*il parla*; He spoke thus.

C'est *alors* que *je vis*; Then I saw.

In such conductive phrases, as above, *c'est* and *que*, strictly speaking, are redundant; they form a Gallicism, which serves to give the speech more force and energy. The phrases might be worded thus: *Il parla ainsi.—Alors je vis.—Je refuse vos* B *présens, de peur,* &c.—*César étoit un grand capitaine.* They would have the same meaning, but not so much energy.]

¶ 6°. *C'est,* in all its tenses, followed by *à* and a personal noun or pronoun, is sometimes construed with a verb in the infinite, and then preceded by the prepositions *de* or *à*, instead of *que*; as,

C'est à *vous* à *faire*; You are to deal.

C'étoit à *vous* à *parler;* You were to speak.

C'étoit à *vous* de *parler*; You should have spoken.

*Quand* ce sera à *votre frère* à *jouer*; When your brother is C to play . . . .

N.B. *C'est,* in such cases, can be used but for persons, not for things.]

¶ 7°. To the above ways of using the demonstrative *c'est,* the following must be added.

*C'est,* in all its tenses, may be immediately followed by *de* or *que* governing a verb, and forming an explicative sentence; as,

*Il y a une chose que j'exige de vous,* c'est de *l'aller voir,* (or) c'est que *vous alliez la voir;* There is a thing I require of you, which is to go and see her.

In such phrases the tense of *c'est* is regulated by that of the preceding verb; for instance, we say, *Il y a une chose que j'aurois exigée de vous* D c'auroit été de *l'aller voir,* (or) que *vous fussiez allé la voir.*]

¶ *C'est que* sometimes forms an elliptical phrase, in which *que* stands for *parce que,* because; as,

C'est que *je ne savois pas qu'il fût arrivé;* It is because I did not know that he was arrived.

In this phrase, *c'est* is mostly used in the present; sometimes in the imperfect, *c'étoit,* it was; but never in the other tenses.

¶ *C'est,* in its conditional tenses, is also used with *que* in the sense of *quand,* though as,

*Donnez-lui quelque chose*; ne seroit-ce que, *or* ne fût-ce que *cinq schellings*; Give him something; were it but five shillings. A

*Vous auriez du lui donner quelque chose*; n'auroit-ce été que, *or* n'eût-ce été que *cinq schellings*; You should have given him something; had it been only five shillings.

Which phrases may be resolved by *Quand ce ne seroit que*, though it would only be; *Quand ce n'auroit été que*, though it would have only been.]

¶ Nor ought this conjunctive phrase, *Si ce n'est*, to remain unnoticed, in which the verb is never made plural; as,

*Tous les jeux y sont défendus*, si ce n'est *ceux d'exercice & d'adresse*; All games are forbidden there, except those of exercise and address.]

¶ This is also the proper place to mention an old elliptical phrase, now obsolete, or confined to the very familiar style only.

N'étoit *sa bonne conduite*; Were it not for his good conduct (instead of *si ce n'étoit sa bonne conduite.)* B

N'étoit que, *or* n'eût été que *je suis de vos amis*; Were I not, *or* Had I not been one of your friends (instead of *si ce n'étoit que je suis*, &c. or *Si je n'étois pas de vos amis.*]

¶ *C'est pourquoi*, another conjunctive phrase, is used with all the tenses of verbs in the indicative, but *c'est* always remains in the present; as,

C'est *pourquoi les Romaine immolèrent des victimes*; Wherefore the Romans sacrificed victims.]

¶ 8°. *C'est*, like *il est*, is used in interrogations, but still preserving its relative and determinate character, as,

Est-ce *là votre livre?* Is that your book?

Sera-ce *demain congé?* Shall we have a holiday to-morrow?

Est-ce *bon?* Is it good? Est-ce *vrai?* Is it true? C

Est-ce *un Evêque* qui *fera la cérémonie?* Is a Bishop to perform the ceremony?

Est-ce *un médecin* qui *vous l'a ordonné?* Has a physician prescribed it to you?

Est-ce *la loi* qui *l'ordonne?* Is it the law that prescribes it?

Est-ce *moi* qui *l'ai dit?* Did I say so?

Est-ce *toi* qui *l'as cru?* Did you believe it?

Est-ce *lui*, (or) Est-ce *elle* qui l'a fait? Is it he, *or* Is it she who has done it?

Est-ce nous qui *parlons?* Is it we who speak? D

Est-ce *vous, Messieurs*, qu'il *faut remercier?* Is it you, Gentlemen, we must thank?

Est-ce *eux*, (or) Est-ce *elles* qui *s'engagent?* Is it they who engage themselves?

Est-ce *les Dragons* qui *font l'attaque?* Do the Dragoons make the attack?

Etoit-ce *les Dragons* qui *ne vouloient pas obéir?* Was it the Dragoons who would not obey?

A Fut-ce *les Dragons* qui *ne voulurent pas obéir?* Was it, &c.
Sera-ce *les Dragons* qui *feront cette attaque?* Are the Dragoons to make that attack?
Seroit-ce *les richesses* qui *pourroient vous rendre heureux, si vous n'en faisiez pas un digne usage?* Could riches render you happy if you did not know how to make a worthy use of them?

¶ Good authors use the demonstrative verb interrogatively in the plural, and say,
Sont-ce *là vos ouvrages?* Are these your works?
Sont-ce *les honneurs* qui *vous flattent?* Is it honours that flatter you?
Etoient-ce *là vos affaires?* Was this your business?
Etoient-ce les Dragons qui ne vouloient pas obéir? *Was it the Dragoons,* &c.

B Seroient-ce *les Anglois* qui pourroient *commettre une telle injustice?* Would Englishmen commit such an injustice?
But *furent-ce* is never used; nor are the compound tenses.

Est-ce *à eux* que *vous l'avez promis?* Have you promised it to them?
Etoit-ce *d'elles* que *vous parliez?* Were you speaking of them?
Sera-ce *le mois prochain* que *le Parlement s'assemblera?* Will the Parliament meet next month?

C Est-ce *ainsi* qu'*il parla?* Did he speak thus?
Etoit-ce *ainsi* qu'*il parloit?* Was he speaking so?
Est-ce *à vous à faire?* Are you to deal?
Etoit-ce *à votre frère à jouer?* Was your brother to play?
(It is needless to say that all the above phrases may be used negatively.

N. B. As for the manner of interrogating with *est-ce* que (see p. 239).

*Est-ce* is sometimes preceded by the relative *qui*, who; and *lequel*, which; or by *que* (in the sense of *quoi*), what; or by *quel* and a noun; as,
*Qui* est-ce? Who is that? *Qui* étoit-ce? Who was there? *A qui* est-ce *à jouer?* Who is to play? *De qui* est-ce *le tour?* Whose turn is it? *Pour qui* est-ce? For whom is it?

D We say, in the same manner, *A qui* étoit-ce? *De qui* étoit-ce? *Pour qui* étoit ce? and sometimes, *A qui* sera-ce? *Pour qui* seroit-ce? But the other tenses are very seldom, if ever, used.

*Lequel* or *Laquelle* est-ce? Which is it? *Lequel*, or *Laquelle* étoit-ce? Which was it? *Lequel*, or *Laquelle* sera-ce? Which will it be? The plural is never used.

*Qu'est-ce?* What is that? *Qu'étoit-ce?* What was that?
*Que* sera-ce, *si* .... *Que* seroit-ce, *si* .... *Qu'auroit-ce été, si* .... What will it be, if .... What would be, if .... What would have been, if ....

*l homme* est-ce? What man is it? *Quel homme* étoit-ce? A
man was it? *Quel ministre* ce seroit, *si* . . . What a
er he would be, if . . .
*l livre* est-ce? What book is it? *Quel livre* étoit-ce?
book was it?

such phrases are more generally followed by the relative
the conductive *que* with another phrase; and, what is
observing, *est-ce* remains in the present tense: as,

| | |
|---|---|
| est-ce qui *vient*? Who is coming? | In these phrases *ce* stands for *cette personne*. B |
| est-ce qui *venoit*? Who was coming? | |
| est-ce qui *est venu*? Who is come? | |
| est-ce qui *viendra*? Who is to come? | |
| est-ce qui *viendroit*? Who would come? | |

nswer may be, *Pierre*, Peter; or more properly *C'est Pierre*, because
tion is asked with the pronoun *ce*; and the French politeness does not
short, rough, and raw answer, consisting of a single word. This
*C'est Pierre*, may be resolved in this manner: *Pierre est cette personne*

*instances* with substantives preceded by articles. *Qui* est-ce qui
Who knocks there? *C'est le facteur*; It is the post, viz. *Le facteur*
*personne qui frappe*. Again, *Vous faites tel remède: qui* est-ce qui *vous*
*sé*? You use such a remedy: who prescribed it to you? *C'est un mé-*
*t* is a physician, viz. *Un médecin est celui qui me l'a ordonné.*

est-ce que *vous demandez*? Whom do you want? (*que* C
ative.)

| | |
|---|---|
| *ui* est-ce que *vous parlez*? | In these phrases *que* is conductive, (see p. 259.) |
| Vhom do you speak to? | |
| *qui* est-ce que *vous parlez*? | |
| Vhom are you speaking of? | |
| *r qui* est-ce que *vous parlez*? | |
| om are you speaking for? | |

| | |
|---|---|
| est-ce que *vous faites*? | In these phrases *ce* stands for *cette chose*; the first *que* stands for *quoi*; the second is a relative governed by the next verb. D |
| Vhat are you doing? | |
| est-ce que *vous faisiez*? | |
| Vhat were you doing? | |
| est-ce que *vous avez fait*? | |
| Vhat have you done? | |
| est-ce que *vous ferez*? | |
| Vhat will you do? | |
| est-ce que *vous feriez*? | |
| Vhat would you do? | |

such phrases the answer may be, for instance; *Mon thème*, my exer-
more politely *Je fais mon thème*; an answer with *c'est* would border
ssness

A To find out a reason for this difference, it may not be improper to observe that this question, *Qui est-ce qui vient?* respects the subject; whereas this, *Qu'est-ce que vous faites?* respects the object of an action.]

*A quoi* est-ce que *vous vous appliquez?*
What do you apply to?
*De quoi* est-ce que *vous vous servez?*
What do you make use of?
*Avec quoi* est-ce que *vous le ferez?*
With what will you make it?

} In these phrases *que* is conductive as above.

B ¶ There is another manner of using *c'est* interrogatively, viz. *qu'est-ce que c'est que vous demandez* (see p. 263.); in which the first *que* stands for *qui*, the second is conductive, and the third is the regimen of *demandez*. This idiomatical reduplication of *c'est* is, perhaps, to show eagerness, impatience, &c. It seems tolerated only when speaking of things, and seldom, if ever, allowed when speaking of persons: for such a phrase, *Qui est-ce que c'est que vous demandez?* would be very barbarous French.]

*Quelle heure* est-ce qui *sonne?* What is the clock striking
*Deux heures*, two; *or* better, C'est *deux heures*; It strikes two.
*Quel livre* est-ce que *vous lisez?* What book do you read?
*Gil Blas*; or rather, *Je lis Gil-Blas*; I read Gil-Blas.

## § II. *Of the Impersonal* Il y a, *there is, there are.*

C 1°. Most ways of speaking, beginning with *some*, and the verb *to be*, are expressed in French by the impersonal *il y a:* as,

*Some* friends are false; Il y a *de faux amis.*
*Some* pains are wholesome; Il y a *des douleurs salutaires.*

Sometimes also the adnoun is joined to its noun, with the pronoun *qui* and the verb *être:* as,

Il y a *des douleurs* qui sont *salutaires.*
Il y a *des Chrétiens* qui sont *indignes de ce nom;*
*Some* Christians are unworthy of that name.

Observe, that *il y a* comes before a noun even of the plural number.

D 2°. The impersonal *il y a* is besides used to denote a quantity of Time, Space, and Number.

To denote the quantity of time past since an event, the English begin the sentence with a preterite, simple or compound, followed by the noun of time, attended by a pronoun *demonstrative* before it, or the preposition *ago*, after; as,
*He has been dead these thirty years*, or *He died thirty years ago.*

The French begin with the impersonal *il y a*; then comes the noun of time, with no pronoun demonstrative, but followed by *que;* then a noun, or pronoun, expressing the subject, with the verb in the present, unless the sense requires another tense; as

*Il y a trente ans* qu'il *est mort;* but in transposing the impersonal, we leave out *que,* and we say: *Il est mort il y a trente ans.* A

3°. Neither, in asking such questions, do we begin with *comment,* or *comment long,* or *comment long-temps,* but *Combien y a-t-il que,* then the noun, or pronoun of the subject, with its verb in the present, thus,

*Combien y a-t-il qu'il est mort?* How long has he been dead?
*Combien y a-t-il que vous demeurez à Londres?*
How long have you lived at London? How long is it since you lived at London?

The answer must likewise be made with the impersonal, and the noun of time, thus, B

*Il y a dix ans,* or simply, *dix ans:* these ten years.
*Il y a dix ans qu'il est mort,* ou *qu'il demeure à Londres;*
He has been dead, *or* He has lived at London these ten years.
*Il y a vingt ans qu'il fait la même chose;*
He has done the same thing these twenty years.
*Il y a vingt ans qu'il a fait,* or *qu'il fit la même chose;*
He has done, *or* He did the same thing twenty years ago.

These two last instances, very different in the sense which each of them implies, make me think, that though the English always begin these sorts of sentences with a preterite, yet they denote an action past, in a far remote time, by the preposition *ago* after the noun of time, without a pronoun demonstrative (which the French express only by a preterite, simple or compound). Whereas they express the same action, by the pronoun demonstrative before the noun of time, sometimes also preceded by the preposition *for,* when the same action continues still (which the French express by a present tense): as again, C

*Il y a vingt ans qu'il* voyage *par toute l'Europe;*
He has been travelling *for* these twenty years all over Europe
*Il y a vingt ans qu'il* a voyagé *par toute l'Europe;*
He has travelled all over Europe twenty years ago.

D

*Examples of Number and Space.*

*Il y a trente millions d'âmes en France, il n'y en a que neuf ou dix millions en Angleterre;*
There are thirty millions of souls in France, there are but nine or ten in England.

*Il y a cent-vingt lieues, ou trois cent soixante milles de Londres à Paris;*
Paris is 120 leagues, or 360 miles distant from London; *or,*
There are 120 leagues, or 360 miles from London to Paris.

A The Question of Space is asked thus,
*Combien y a-t-il de Londres à Paris?* How far is Paris from London? naming first the place where one is, or is supposed to come from, which is quite the reverse in English.

The impersonal *il est* is elegantly used instead of, and in the same sense as, *il y a*; as, *Il est des amitiés véritables*, or *Il y a des amitiés véritables*; There are true friendships.

*Il est à craindre*, or *Il y a à craindre que*; It is to be feared that, *&c.*

Observe, that a noun coming after *il y a*, and *il est*, must have one of these particles *un, du, de, des*, before it, and be followed by the relative *qui*, if the sentence is compound.

## § III. *Of the Impersonal* il fait, *it is.*

B 1°. The Impersonal *il fait* is used with adnouns, and some few nouns, denoting the disposition of the air and weather, and is englished by *it is*: as,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Il fait* | *beau*, or *beau temps*, | It is | fair, *or* fine weather, |
| | *chaud*, | | hot weather, |
| | *froid*, | | cold, |
| | *vilain*, | | ugly, |
| | *crotté*, | | dirty, |
| | *jour*, | | day-light, |
| | *nuit*, | | night, |
| | *obscur, sombre*, | | dark, |
| C | *du vent*, | | windy, *or* the wind blows, |
| | *soleil*, | | the sun shines, |
| | *clair de lune*, | | the moon shines. |

2°. The English impersonal *it is*, construed with an adnoun and a gerund, or with one of these adnouns, *good, bad, better, dangerous*, followed by a noun of place, is also rendered into French by *il fait*, followed by an adnoun, with a verb in the infinitive: as,

It is dear living at London; *Il fait cher vivre à Londres.*
Sometimes the verb is left out in French:
*Il fait bon ici*; It is good *being* here.

D

## § IV. *Of the Impersonal* il faut.

1°. The impersonal *il faut*, always requires after it either the subjunctive with *que*, or the infinitive without any preposition. It denotes the necessity of doing something, and is englished by *must*, for the present tenses *il faut*, and *qu'il faille*; the imperfect *il falloit*, and the preterite *il fallut*; by *should* for the future, and *should* for the *conditional*: and sometimes by the verb *to be*, though all its tenses, with one of these words *necessary, requisite, needful.*

In order, therefore, to put into French any English, ex- A
pressed by *must, shall,* or *should,* or by *it is,* or *it was necessary, requisite, needful,* one must begin the sentence with a tense of the impersonal *il faut que;* then the pronoun or noun coming before *must,* or *should,* must become the subject of the French verb that comes after *il faut que,* and is governed in the subjunctive:

The officers *must* do their duty;
Il faut que *les officiers* fassent *leur devoir.*
They *must* be courageous; Il faut qu'*ils* soient *courageux.*
Children should learn every day something by heart;
Il faudroit que *les enfans* apprissent *tous les jours quelque chose par cœur.* B

2°. *Il faut,* before an infinitive, denotes the necessity of doing something in general, without specifying *who must:* then the subject coming before *must* may be either *I* or *we, he* or *she,* or *any body,* according to the sense of the speech: as,
*Il faut faire cela;* One, *or* we, *or* you, he, somebody, must do that.
*Il faut y aller;* I, *or* you, *or* we, *or* somebody, must go there, *or* thither.

3°. Sometimes also the verb coming after the impersonal is englished by the passive voice, and (as in sentences expressed C
with the particle *on*) the noun that follows the verb in French, comes before the particle *must* in English; and the French infinitive active is made by the passive: as,
*Il faut instruire les enfans;* Children must be instructed.
All which sentences may equally well be expressed with the subjunctive: as,
*Il faut que les enfans soient instruits, Il faut que cela se fasse;* or *Il faut qu'il,* or *qu'elle,* or *qu'on fasse cela,* or *que nous fassions cela.*

4°. Again, The necessity of having something is also denoted by *il faut,* before the noun of the thing only, without any verb; D
and *il faut,* thus construed, is englished by *one must have,* or *something must be had:* as,
*Il faut de l'argent pour plaider;*
One must have money to go to law.
*Pour se pousser dans le monde, il faut des amis;*
To push one's fortune in the world, one must have friends:
And *il faut,* thus construed, as also with a pronoun persona between *il* and *faut,* denotes one's present want, that must be supplied, and the pronoun personal becomes the subject of *must* in English: as,

A *Il* me *faut de l'argent*, I must have, *or* I want money.
*Il* me *faut un chapeau*, I must buy a hat.
*Il* vous *faut des livres*, You must have, *or* buy, *or* get books
*Il* lui *faut un mari*, She wants a husband, she must have one.

5°. The impersonal *il faut* is used absolutely at the end of a sentence, with the pronoun *ce qui*, or the conjunction *comme* before it; in which case it denotes *Duty* and *Decency*, and is englished by *should*, and sometimes *should do*, and *should be*: as,
*Il ne se conduit pas comme il faut*; He don't behave as he should.
*Faites cela comme il faut*; Do that as it should be.
B *Cela n'est pas comme il faut*; That is not as it should be.
*Il fait ce qu'il faut*; He does what he must, *or* what is requisite.

There is an impersonal, which may be called *Reflected*, composed of the double pronoun *il se*, with the third person of any verb active, followed by a noun, with one of the particles *de, du, des*, before. This impersonal is englished by *there is*, before a noun, followed by a participle: as,
*Il se boit de bon vin en France;* There is good wine drank in France.
*Il se mange de bonne viande en Angleterre;* There is good meat eat in England.

The impersonal Reflected is also construed with the pronoun demonstrative *ceci, cela*: as,
*Cela ne se fait pas ainsi;* That is not done so, *or* in this manner.
*Cela se fait par-tout le monde;* That is done all over the world.

But observe, that these ways of speaking may as well be rendered by the
C particle *on*: as, *On boit de bon vin en France, On fait cela par-tout le monde*, &c.

I have sufficiently spoken of the other impersonals in the second part.

## CHAP. VII.

### *Of the* FRENCH NEGATIVES.

§ 1. I HAVE already said something of the negatives *ne* and *pas*, in treating of pronouns, but have considered them only with respect to the right placing of them with the pronouns con-
D junctive. I shall in this place consider their construction, as also that of several other negatives used in the French language.

1°. *Ne* comes (as has been said) after the subject, and immediately before the verb, and *pas* or *point*, after the verb, if the tense is simple: as, *Je ne sais pas*, I know not; and between the auxiliary and the participle, if the tense is compound: as, *Je n'ai point su cela*, I did not know that.

2°. When the verb is in the present of the infinitive, the two negatives come together before it, after the preposition

*Je vous dis de* ne pas *vous mêler de cela;* A
I bid you *not* to meddle with that.
*Pour* ne point *répéter ce que nous avons déjà dit;*
*Not* to repeat what we have already said.

3°. *No* is *non*, used at the end of a sentence, or absolutely, as in answer to questions, and *not* is *non pas*, used also absolutely, in the beginning of a sentence, and followed by *que*, with the subjunctive: as,

*Croyez vous cela? Non.* Do you believe that? No.

*Je ne crois point cette nouvelle-là*; non pas que *la chose soit impossible, mais parce qu'elle ne me paroît pas vraisemblable*; B
I don't believe that piece of news: not that the thing is impossible, but because it does not appear probable to me.

4°. Although *pas* or *point* may be sometimes indifferently used, yet *point* has a more negative force, it implies *not at all.* But note,

1*st*, That *point* always requires the particle *de* before nouns: as, *Il n'y a point* de *raison pour cela;* There is no reason for that: *Il n'en a point* de soin; He has no care of it: and *pas* sometimes takes the preposition *de* without an article; and sometimes an article before the noun that comes after it: as, C
*Il n'en a pas* le *soin qu'il faut*; He don't take care of it as he should:—and sometimes not: as, *Il n'en a pas soin*; He has no care of it:—and never *Il n'en a point soin,* or *point le soin qu'il faut.*

¶ *Pas* implies something actual and accidental: *point,* something habitual and permanent.
*Il ne lit* pas; he does not read, *viz.* now.
*Il ne lit* point; He does not read, *viz.* ever.
*Pas* expresses a mere negation; *point* inforces it. *Pas* sometimes denies D
partly, and admits of a modification; *point* always denies absolutely and without reserve.
*Il n'est* pas bien *riche;* He is not very rich. *Il n'est* point *riche;* He is not at all rich.]

2*dly*, That *pas*, for the reasons just given, is to be used before these modifying words, whereas *point* cannot be used with them:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *beaucoup*, | much, | *moins*, | less, | *tant*, | so much, |
| *peu*, | little, | *souvent*, | often, | *autant*, | as much, |
| *mieux*, | better, | *toujours*, | always, | *trop*, | too much, |
| *plus*, | more, | *si*, | so, | *fort, très*, | very, |
| *extrêmement*, | extremely, | *infiniment*, | infinitely; | and all adverbs: as, | |

A *Il n'y a* pas *beaucoup de monde aujourd'hui au Parc*;
There is not much company to-day in the Park.
*Il n'est* pas *peu difficile de lui plaire*;
It is not a little difficult to please him.
*Il ne la voit* pas *souvent*; He does not see her often, &c.

3*dly*, That when a question is asked, *pas* intimates that one supposes the thing concerning which the question is asked; whereas *point* intimates a mere doubt and ignorance of the same thing. For instance, by this question,

B *N'est il* point *Membre de la Société Royale?*
Is he not a Fellow of the Royal Society?

I want to be informed whether he is a Fellow of the Royal Society or no, being quite ignorant of it; but by this other,

*N'est-il* pas *Membre de la Société Royale?*

I intimate that I think he is a Fellow of that Society, and wonder that the others do not think so too.

5°. Besides these negatives (to which add *ni* repeated, *neither*, and *nor*) the following words, which are of themselves negative terms, require moreover the particle *ne* before their verb, which is then alone, without *pas* or *point*.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| C *personne*, | no body, | *nullement*, | no means, | *mot*, word, and *goutte*: |
| *pas un*, | not one, | *guères*, | but little, | but these two last require a negative only |
| *aucun*, | no, not any, | *jamais*, | never, | |
| *nul*, | none, | *rien*, | nothing, | with *dire* and *voir*: |

as, *Je* ne *vois personne*; I see nobody. *Vous* ne *dites rien*; You say nothing. *Elle* n *a aucun amant*; She has no sweetheart. *Il* ne *dit mot*; He does not say a word. *On* ne *voit goutte*; One cannot see at all, &c.

Observe, that *rien* signifies also sometimes *something* or *any thing*; and in that sense it is construed without a negative, and in sentences of interro-
D gation and doubt only; as,
*Avez-vous jamais rien vu de si beau?* Have you ever seen any thing so fine?
*Jamais* signifies also *ever*, and is construed without a negative: as,
*Si jamais j'y retourne*, &c. If ever I go there again, &c.

¶ *Rien* and *jamais* are also used without the particle *ne*, when they are preceded by the preposition *sans*, which implies exclusion and negation: as, *Sans* rien *faire*; without doing any thing. *Sans* jamais se plaindre; without *ever* complaining.]

2*dly*, The conjunction *à moins que*, unless; *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, lest, *or* for fear that (but not *de peur de*, *de crainte de*, which govern the infinitive), will have after them *ne* before the next verb; as likewise these four verbs, *empêcher*, *ne* [illegible]

to prevent; *craindre*, to fear; *appréhender*, to apprehend; A
*avoir peur*, to be afraid: when they are not used in the infinitive: as,

*A moins que vous* ne *le vouliez ainsi*; Unless you will have it so.

*J'empêcherai qu'il* ne *vous nuise*; I will hinder him from hurting you, *&c.*

¶ In such phrases, this word *ne* is the *ne* or *non* of the Latin, which has been introduced in our language. *French Academy.*]

But it is to be observed, with respect to the verbs of *fearing* and *apprehending*, that it is only when one speaks of an effect that is not wished for, that the second negative *pas*, or *point*, is left out after the next verb; for if one wishes that the thing spoken of should happen, then the verb that follows *craindre* B
and *appréhender*, must be attended with the two negatives: as,

*Il craint que sa femme* ne *meure*; He fears that *or* lest his wife should die.

*Il craint que sa femme* ne *meure pas*; He fears lest his wife should not die.

The first instance is of an effect not wished for, the last of one wished for, denoted in English by the negative *not*, whereas the other way of speaking is without negative.

Observe, also, that *empêcher* takes no negative, when the next verb is in the infinitive: as,

*Je l'empêcherai de vous nuire*; I will hinder him from hurting C
you.

*Nier*, to deny, requires also elegantly *ne* before the next verb, in negative sentences: as,

*Je* ne *nie pas que je* n'*aie dit cela*; I don't deny that I have said that.

¶ Here it may not be amiss to observe that there is a material difference between *de crainte de* and *de crainte que.*

Conjunctive phrases, formed with *de*, serve to connect sentences, the verbs of which are depending on, and governed by, the same subject; whereas conjunctive phrases, formed with *que*, chiefly serve to connect sentences, the verbs of which are governed by different subjects: for instance,

*Je ne le ferai pas*, de crainte de *vous déplaire*; I will not do it, *lest* I should D
displease you. The two verbs *ferai* and *déplaire* depend on the same subject *je.*

*Je ne le ferai pas*, de crainte que *vous ne le trouviez mauvais*; I will not do it *lest* you should think it amiss. The two subjects are different; *ferai* is governed by *je*, and *trouviez* by *vous.*

Conjunctive phrases with *que* may sometimes be used to connect sentences governed by the same subject; they then serve to give more energy: for instance,

*Je ne le ferai pas*, de crainte que *je ne m'en trouve plus mal* (I will not do it, *lest* I should be the worse for it); implies the same sense as *de m'en trouver plus mal*, but has more energy.

Conjunctive phrases with *de* cannot be used when the subjects are different.

This observation may account for not using *de* or *que* indifferently after *craindre*, *appréhender*, *avoir peur*; as also after *prendre garde*, which, in the sense of *to beware*, belongs to the same tribe; as,

A *Prenez garde de tomber*; Beware of falling. (The subject is the same.)
*Prenez garde* qu'*il ne tombe*; Take care *lest* he should fall. (The subjects are different.)
*Prenez garde* que *vous ne tombiez dans le piége*; take care *lest* you should fall into the snare (the subject is the same; but the phrase is more energetic than *Prenez garde* de *tomber dans le piége*.]

3*dly*, We use the negative *ne* before the verb that comes after these five words, *plus, moins, mieux, autre,* and *autrement*; as, *Il est* plus *sincère qu'il ne faudroit*; He is more sincere than he should.

*Elle est* moins *âgée que je* ne *croyois*; She is less old than I thought.

B *Il,* or *Elle est tout* autre *que je* ne *pensois*; (See p. 226, D.) He, *or* She is quite another than I thought.

*Vous avez fait tout* autrement *que je* n'*aurois fait*; You have acted quite *differently* from what *I would* have done.

¶ A Gentleman of profound knowledge, Mr. SALMON, in his *Complete System of the French Language*, p. 144, expresses himself thus:—"Grammarians are wrong to say that *que* always requires *ne* before the concluding verb of the comparison." He brings in the Genius of the French Language, and countenances his verdict by authorities of the first rate. Having, however, met in his way other authorities equally respectable, but contradictory to his decision, he concludes that it is indifferent, after a negative verb, to suppress or use *ne*, and yet wishes to inforce his own opinion.

This point is, indeed, one of the nicest to discuss; as most Grammarians give instances only for the sentence declarative affirmative, and leave the
C reader in the dark for the other sorts of sentences.

In my humble opinion, however, notwithstanding the authorities quoted by Mr. S., *ne*, in any case, cannot be suppressed; because such sentences imply negation, and the very Genius of the French Language, appealed to by Mr. S., far from rejecting *ne* in negative sentences, constantly requires it; as follows:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1*st* Case, *granted by Mr.* S. | Il écrit mieux qu'il ne parle, *He writes better than he speaks,* | may be resolved by its inverse; *Il ne parle pas aussi bien qu'il écrit.* |
| 2*d* Case, *contested by Mr.* S. | Eerit-il mieux qu'il ne parle? *Does he write better than he speaks?* | ——— *Il ne parle pas bien; écrit-il mieux?* |
| 3*d* Case, *contested by Mr.* S. | Il n'écrit pas mieux qu'il ne parle, *He does not write better than he speaks,* | ——— *Il ne parle pas bien; il n'écrit pas mieux.* |
| D 4*th* Case, *granted by Mr.* S. | N'écrit-il pas mieux qu'il ne parle? *Does he not write better than, &c.* | ——— *Il ne parle pas bien; n'écrit-il pas mieux?* |

This last has two meanings, 1*st*, *Ecrit-il aussi mal qu'il parle?* 2*d*, *Vous voyez qu'il écrit mieux qu'il ne parle.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Imperative sentence affirmative | not instanced by Mr. S. | Qu'il écrive mieux qu'il ne parle, *Let him write better than he speaks,* | ——— *Il ne parle pas bien; qu'il écrive cinq* (s'il veut qu'on le lise.) |
| Imperative sentence negative | not instanced by Mr. S. | Qu'il n'écrive pas plus mal qu'il ne parle, *Let him not write worse than he speaks,* | ——— *Il ne parle pas mal; qu'il écrive de même* (&c on le lira avec plaisir). |

From the above examples it appears that the Genius of the English Language is diametrically opposite to that of the French; but though opposite, either must be consistent with itself; therefore, as the English Genius constantly rejects the negation in concluding a comparison, so it may be neglected

that the French constantly requires it; therefore the particle *ne* granted by Mr. S. in two cases, cannot be contested in the two other cases; of course, Mr. S.'s distinction seems, at least, nugatory. A

With respect to his quotations, though my opinion is of no weight, yet I would rather advise not to imitate them, whatever the merit of their authors may be. If these sentences were put to the test, as above, they could not stand it. So it is that mistakes of the best writers are sometimes given out as rules; and so it was with the *la* of Madame de Sévigné, (see p. 248.)

¶ To the above words may be added these sentences: *peu s'en faut, il s'en faut peu, il s'en faut tant*, &c. which always announce a negation: as,

Peu s'en faut *que je* ne *me fasse un scrupule de prêter en denier cinq*; I can *hardly without* a scruple lend at five per cent.

Il s'en est peu fallu *qu'il n'ait été tué*: He was very near being killed.

Il s'en faut tant *que la somme entière* n'y *soit*; There is so much wanting to the whole sum.

Such phrases may be resolved thus: *Je* ne *me fais* point de *scrupule*, &c. *mais* peu s'en faut.] B

*4thly*, After *que* and *si*, signifying *before*, or *unless*, or *but*, in the middle of a compound sentence, the former part whereof is a negative sentence: as,

*Je ne la reverrai point*, que *sa mère* ne *m'envoie querir*:
I will not see her again, *before* her mother sends for me. [*prie*;
*Je n'y irai pas*, or *je n'irai pas s'il* ne *m'en prie*, or qu'*il* ne *m'en*
I will not go thither *if* he don't desire, (or) *unless* he desires me.
*Il ne sauroit ouvrir la bouche* qu'*il* ne *dise quelque impertinence*;
He cannot open his mouth *but* he says some foolish thing or other.

*5thly*, Before the verb that precedes *ni*, repeated in the sentence; which answers to *neither* and *nor*: as, C

*Je* n'*aime* ni *à boire* ni *à fumer*; I love neither drinking nor smoking.

And if no verb comes before *neither*, the English particle *neither* is *ne* only, and *nor* is *ni ne*: as,

*Je* ne *bois* ni ne *fume*; I neither drink nor smoke.

When two adnouns meet together in a negative sentence, they are not joined with the particle *ni*, if they are synonymous, or express both the same thing in different words; but only when they signify two different things, or quite contrary. When they are synonymous only, they are joined by the enclitick *et*; as,

*Je ne me ressouviens point d'hiver plus rude & plus froid que celui de* 1740; I do not remember a more severe and colder winter than that of 1740. *Rude* and *froid*, being synonymous, are coupled with *&*: but in this other, the two adnouns express very different things, and therefore are coupled by *ni*.] D

*Jamais on ne vit de saison plus pluvieuse ni plus froide*;
One never saw a more rainy or colder season.

¶ For the reason mentioned before, two or more nouns or infinitives governed by the preposition *sans*, must be joined with the conjunction *ni*: as,

*Une mer* sans *fond* ni *rive*; A sea *without either* bottom *or* shore.

Sans *boire* ni *manger*; Without eating or drinking; which is the same as *n'ayant ni bu ni mangé*; *sans* having of itself the force both of *ne* and the first *ni*.]

§ II. On the other hand, the French use the particle *ne* only, in some particular cases, when the analogy of speech requires a negative in all languages, and wherein therefore it seems that they *should not leave out pas*.

A 1*st*, With these five verbs used negatively; *oser* to dare, *cesser* to cease, *pouvoir* to be able, *savoir* to know, and *prendre garde*, to take care: as,

*Il* n'*ose me contredire*; He dares not contradict me.

*Elle* ne *cesse de babiller*; She does not cease prattling.

*Il ne peut*, or *Il ne sauroit marcher*; He cannot walk.

But note, 1*st*, that it is an elegance only to use but one negative with *pouvoir*, it being not improper to say, *Il* ne *peut* pas *marcher*; and that, when a question is asked, regard must be had to the ear, to express or leave out the second negative, according as it reads, and sounds best, though it is then most commonly expressed: *Ne peut-il* pas *faire cela?* which is better than *Ne peut-il faire cela?* Can't he do that?

2*dly*, When *savoir* is used for *pouvoir*, it requires only one negative, and can B never be used with two: as, *Il ne sauroit marcher*; He cannot walk. *Ne sauroit-il faire cela?* Can't he do that? and never *Il* ne *sauroit* pas—Ne *sauroit il pas?*

¶ There is this difference between *on ne peut* and *on ne sauroit*; the latter implies inability; the former impossibility.

*Ce qu'on* ne sauroit *faire est trop difficile*; What *one is not able* to do, is too difficult:

*Ce qu'on* ne peut pas *faire, est impossible*; What *one cannot* do, is impossible: And for that reason, *on ne peut*, in that sense, is always accompanied with *pas*; whereas *on ne sauroit* never admits of it.]

When *savoir* is used in its proper signification of *knowing*, there is another distinction to be made; for if it implies only an *uncertainty* of the mind, it requires but one negative; *Il* ne *sait ce qu'il doit espérer de son procès*; He does not know what he ought to expect of his lawsuit; that is, He is uncertain of the event of his cause; he hopes, but *knows not* how far to hope. But if *savoir* preserves its full energy, that is, if it implies a *full and entire ignorance* of the thing, it will have two negatives; as,

*Il ne sait pas que le Juge*, or *les Juges l'ont condamné*; C
He does not know that the Judge, or Judges, have cast him.

Again, *savoir* requires but one negative, when it meets with any of these particles *où*, *comment*, *combien*, *quand*, *quel*, *quoi*, *si*: which, by their nature, modify its energy; as,

*Il est je ne sais où*; He, *or* it is I do not know where.

*Cela s'est fait je ne sais comment*; That was done I do not know how.

*Là-dessus est entré je ne sais quel homme*; Thereupon entered I do not know what man.

*Je ne sais s'il dit vrai*; I do not know whether he tells the truth, &c.

3*dly*, *Prendre garde* signifies either *to take care*, or *to take notice, to mind, to consider*: and it is in the first signification only it requires but one negative before the next verb; for in the other signification it requires the two: as,

*Prenez garde qu'on* ne *vous trompe*; Take care lest they cheat you.

*Il prit garde qu'on* ne *le recevoit* pas *si bien que de coutume*;
He took notice that he was not so cordially received as usual.

¶ After *prendre garde*, in the sense of to take care, *que* governs the subjunc- D tive, and, in the other sense, the indicative mood; the reason for both is obvious.]

As for the first signification, viz. *to take care*, see above, p. 315, D.]

¶ *Pas*, or *point*, may also be elegantly suppressed in such interrogative phrases: *Avez-vous un ami qui* ne *soit des miens?* Have you a friend who is not mine?]

2*dly*, The French use the negative *ne* only, after the impersonal *il y a* followed by a compound of the present tense: as,

*Il y a dix ans que je* ne *l'ai vu*; I have not seen him these ten years.

But if any other tense comes after the impersonal, they use the two negatives:

*Il y a un mois que* je ne lui parle point; I have not spoken to him this month.

*Il y avoit un an que je* ne *la voyois* point; I had not seen her for a year. A

¶ It does not result from the above rules, that the sentence following the impersonal *il y a* should always be a negative one; for we say:

*Il y a dix ans que je le connois;* I have known him these ten years.

*Il y a dix ans que j'en ai entendu parler;* I heard speak of it ten years ago.]

3*dly*, When the verb meets with the particle *de*, denoting a space of time: as,

*Je* ne *lui parlerai* de *ma vie*; I won't speak to him as long as I live.

4*thly*, When a question is asked with *que*, signifying *pourquoi*: as *Que* ne *faites vous cela?* Why don't you do that?

5*thly*, With the adverb *plus* used absolutely: as,

*Je* ne *veux plus le voir*; I will see him no more. B

But when *plus* is used comparatively, that is, before an adnoun, with or without *que*, the two negatives are requisite before *plus*: as,

*Je* ne *le veux* pas *plus grand que l'autre*;
I won't have it larger than the other.

¶ 5*thly*, As also with the adverb *non plus*, signifying *pas davantage*, no more: as,

*On n'en parle* non plus *que s'il n'avoit jamais été*; He is no more spoken of than if he had never existed.

*Non plus* is sometimes used in the sense of *pareillement*; then it is preceded by the two negatives, *ne pas*, or by the particle *ni* only: as,

*Vous ne voulez pas le dire, je ne le dirai* pas non plus (*that is*, non plus *que vous*); You will not tell it, *nor* will I tell it *any more* (than you). Ni *moi* non plus; *nor I neither*.

*Ceux-ci n'en sont* pas, *ni ceux-là* non plus; These are *not* among the number, C *nor* those *neither*.

6*thly*, After *si*, and *que*, in the sense of *unless*, or *but* (see the 4*th* paragraph of the First Section, p. 345.); as,

*Je ne saurois boire si je* ne *mange*; I cannot drink if I don't eat.

*Je n'y irai pas*, or *je n'irai pas qu'elle* ne *m'y invite:* I will not go thither, unless she invites me.

It is indifferent in some few cases to use the two negatives, or one only, but they must be learnt by practice. Thus, we say,

*S'il ne me fait ce plaisir-là*, or *S'il ne me fait pas ce plaisir-là, je ne me mêlerai plus de ses affaires;* If he don't do me that kindness, I will not meddle with his affairs any more.

*S'il ne me paye cette semaine*, or *S'il ne me paye pas cette semaine, je le ferai arrêter;* If he don't pay me this week, I will arrest him. The ear must be the judge in those cases, whether it is better to express *pas* or no. D

7*thly*, *Ne*, followed in the same sentence by *que*, but separated by one or more words, expresses *seulement*, and is englished by *but*, or *nothing but*, also in the middle of the sentence, or by *only*: as, *Je* ne *ferai* que *ce qu'il vous plaira*; I will *only* do what you please. *Il* ne *fait* que *jouer*; He does nothing but play. *Je* ne *fais* qu'*un repas par jour*; I eat *but* one meal a-day.

8*thly*, *But*, likewise in the middle of a sentence, is rendered into French by *que* and *ne*, or the relative *qui* and ne, but with-

out *pas* or *point*, and the second verb is in the subjunctive (conformable to our former rules): as,
*Je ne doute point* qu'*il* ne *vienne*; I don't doubt *but* he will come.
*Y a-t-il quelqu'un* qui ne *le sache?* Is there any body *but knows it?*

## CHAP. VIII.

### § I. *Of the Formation of Adverbs.*

1°. GENERALLY speaking, one can make as many adverbs of *quality* and *manner* in French, as there are adnouns, by adding the termination *ment* to the adnoun; but with this previous distinction, that with adnouns ending in *é* acute, or in *i* or *u*, it is to the masculine; and with the other adnouns, it is to the feminine that *ment* is added. Thus,

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| from, *aisé*, | | easy, | is formed | *aisément*, | easily. |
| —— *assuré*, | | assured, | —— | *assurément*, | assuredly. |
| —— *sensé*, | | sensible, | —— | *sensément*, | sensibly. |
| —— *poli*, | | polite, | —— | *poliment*, | politely. |
| —— *hardi*, | | bold, | —— | *hardiment*, | boldly |
| —— *gentil* (*l* is silent), | | genteel, | —— | *gentiment*, | genteelly. |
| —— *absolu*, | | absolute, | —— | *absolument*, | absolutely. |
| —— *éperdu*, | | desperate, | —— | *éperdument*, | desperately. |
| —— *ingénu*, | | ingenuous, | —— | *ingénument*, | ingenuously. |
| —— *assidu*, | | assiduous, | —— | *assidument*, | assiduously. |
| —— *dû*, | | due, | —— | *dûment*, | duly |
| —— *grand*, | fem. *grande*, | great, | — | *grandement*, | greatly. |
| —— *bon*, | fem. *bonne*, | good, | — | *bonnement*, | plainly. |
| —— *doux*, | fem. *douce*, | sweet, | — | *doucement*, | sweetly. |
| —— *seul*, | fem. *seule*, | only, | — | *seulement*, | only. |
| —— *vif*, | fem. *vive*, | quick, | — | *vivement*, | quickly. |
| —— *certain*, | fem. *certaine*, | certain, | — | *certainement*, | certainly. |
| —— *lent*, | fem. *lente*, | slow, | — | *lentement*, | slowly. |
| —— *présent*, | fem. *presente*, | present, | — | *présentement*, | presently. |
| —— *sage* (masc. and fem.), | | wise, | — | *sagement*, | wisely. |
| —— *autre*, | —— | other, | — | *autrement*, | otherwise. |
| —— *digne*, | —— | worthy, | — | *dignement*, | worthily. |
| —— *honnête*, | —— | honest, | — | *honnêtement*, | honestly. |

2°. Observe that the adnoun masculine retains the sound of its final vowel in the adverb derived from it; and that the adnoun feminine keeps also its final mute, except in the following adverbs, wherein that *e* mute is transformed into *é* and protracted a little.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *aveuglément*, | blindly, | from | *aveugle*, | (m. & f.) | blind. |
| *commodément*, | commodiously, | —— | *commode*, | (m. & f.) | commodious. |
| *incommodément*, | inconveniently, | —— | *incommode*, | (m. & f.) | inconvenient. |
| *conformément*, | conformably, | —— | *conforme*, | (m. & f.) | conform. |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *rmément,* | hugely. | from *énorme,* | (m. & f.), | huge. |
| *iformément,* | uniformly, | —— *uniforme,* | (m. & f.), | uniform. |
| *ressément,* | expressedly, | —— *exprès,* | fem. *expresse,* | express. |
| *fusément,* | confusedly, | —— *confus* | — *confuse,* | confused. |
| *cisément,* | precisely, | —— *précis,* | — *précise,* | precise. |
| *mmunément,* | commonly, | —— *commun,* | — *commune,* | common, |
| *portunément,* | importunately, | —— *importun,* | — *importune,* | importunate. |
| *curément,* | obscurely, | —— *obscur,* | — *obscure,* | obscure. |
| *fondément,* | deeply, | —— *profond,* | — *profonde,* | deep. |
| *fusément,* | profusedly, | —— *profus,* | — *profuse,* | profuse. |

*punément,* with impunity, though derived from *impuni, impunie,* unpunished.

3° From adnouns ending in *ant* and *ent, (lent,* and *présent* cepted,) adverbs are formed, by changing that termination into *mment,* and *emment* (pronounced alike). Thus from *constant* nstant, is formed *constamment* constantly; from *évident* evident, *idemment* evidently, *&c.*

Six adverbs in *ment* are excepted; *diablement* devilishly, from e noun *diable* devil; *comment* how, from the conjunction *mme*; *incessamment* incessantly, from the verb *cesser* preceded *in,* a negative particle; *notamment* notedly, from *noter* to te; *nuitamment* by night, from *nuit* night; and *sciemment* ttingly, from *savoir* (derived from *scio*) to know.

4°. These following adnouns are also used adverbially with me verbs.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *ut,* | *parler haut,* | to speak aloud. |
| *s,* | *parler bas,* | to speak low. |
| *ir,* | *voir clair,* | to see plain, to be clear-sighted. |
| *uble,* | *voir double,* | to see double, (not clear and plain). |
| *nble,* | *voir trouble,* | to be dim-sighted. |
| *nc, net,* | *dire franc & net,* | to say *or* speak freely and plainly. |
| *te,* | *penser, parler, chanter juste,* | to think, sing, *&c.* right. |
| *t,* | *frapper fort,* | to strike hard. |
| *r,* | *entendre dur,* | to be thick, *or* dull of hearing. |
| *ux,* | *filer doux,* | to give fair words, to be submissive |
| *,* | *répondre sec,* | to make a sharp rough answer. |
| *n,* | *sentir bon,* ou *mauvais,* | to have a good *or* bad smell |
| *uvais,* | *trouver bon,* ou *mauvais,* | to like *or* dislike. |
| *me,* | *tenir ferme,* | to hold fast. |
| *it,* | *marcher droit,* | to keep to the behaviour. |
| *is,* | *boire frais,* | to drink cold. |
| *ud,* | *boire chaud,* | to drink warm. |
| *s,* | *parler gras,* | to lisp. |
| *s,* / *nu,* | *ecrire gros,* ou *menu,* | to write a large *or* small hand. |
| *r,* | *vendre cher,* | to sell dear. |
| *e,* | *aller vîte,* | to go fast. |

*belle, l'échapper belle,* to escape narrowly
*fin, couper fin,* to cut small.

As likewise *nouveau* and *nouvelle* new, *fraîche* (the feminine of *frais* fresh,) and even the nouns *goutte* & *mot:* as,

*un enfant* nouveau *né,* a new-born child,
*un* nouvel *arrivé,* / *une* nouvelle *arrivée,* } one newly arrived, } for *nouvellement.*
*des herbes toutes* fraîches *cueillies;* herbs fresh, *or* just gathered.
*ne voir,* or *n'entendre* goutte; to see, *or* hear nothing at all.
*ne dire* mot; not to say a word.

Moreover, observe, that from the prepositions *à, de, en, dans, du, avec, &c.* joined with nouns and adnouns, are formed so many adverbs compound, almost, as there are nouns and adnouns in the language. See the list of adverbs in the second part of this work.

## § II. *Of the Construction of Adverbs.*

1°. When adverbs meet with a verb, they are commonly put after it, if the tense is simple, and between the auxiliary and the participle, if it is compound: as,

*Elle parle beaucoup,* She speaks much.
*Je suis* fort *porté à le faire,* I am very much inclined to do it.
*Il n'a pas* encore *appris sa leçon,* He has not learnt his lesson yet

2°. Monosyllables *bien, mal, mieux, pis,* &c. may indifferently come either before or after an infinitive: as,

*Bien chanter,* / *Se mieux porter,* / *Se mal conduire,* } or { *chanter bien,* / *se porter mieux,* / *se conduire mal,* — to sing well. / to be better. / to behave ill.

3°. When the adverbs meet with an adnoun, they must be placed first: as, *bien fait* well made, *extrêmement heureux,* mighty happy.

4°. The adverbs *jamais, toujours, souvent,* meeting with no other, are also placed first; as,

*Nous sommes* souvent *ensemble;* We are often together.
*J'ai* toujours *mûrement considéré;* I've always considered maturely.
*Je ne bois* jamais *trop;* I never drink too much.

5°. Adverbs compound always come after the verbs or nouns: as,

*Il tomba* à la renverse; He fell backwards.
*Un homme* à la mode; A fashionable man.
*Méchant* de gaieté de cœur; Wilfully wicked.

6°. *Rien* and *tout,* meeting with a verb, are construed like adverbs, even after all the pronouns conjunctive: as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *tout vu*; | I have seen all. |
| *e* m'a rien *dit*; | He has told me nothing. |
| *ie veux* rien *manger*; | I will eat nothing. |

°. These three adverbs of place, *céans* within, *alentour* ut, *deçà*, on this side, come after nouns, with the preposition as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *naître* de *céans*; | The master of this place. |
| *échos* d'*alentour*; | The neighbouring echoes. |
| *partie* de *deçà*; | The part on this side. |

°. These seven become true nouns, being used with the ar-, and requiring the preposition *de* (or the particles *du, des*) ore the next nouns:

| | |
|---|---|
| *ehors*, the outside. | as, *Le devant est tout usé*; |
| *edans*, the inside. | The fore part is quite worn out. |
| *essus*, the upper part. | *Cela tient au dedans de la boîte*; |
| *essous*, the under part. | That sticks to the inside of the |
| *evant*, the fore part. | box. |
| *errière*, the hinder part. | *Les environs d'une place*; |
| *nvirons*, the adjacent places. | The adjacent *places of a town.* |

bserve that adverbs derived from verbs or adnouns, govern nouns in the states as the verb or adnoun, which they are derived from, governs: as *emment* de *ce que je vous montre*, differently from what I show you: *endammnent des lois*, without any dependence upon the laws: *relative- à l'acte du Parlement*, relatively to the act: *préférablement à toute chose*, preferably to, *or* before any thing, *&c.*

## CHAP. IX.

### *Of* PREPOSITIONS.

EPOSITIONS are words invented to express the relations which gs bear to one another. It was not possible for men to make aselves fully understood, without denoting those relations: efore such words must needs have been invented in all lan- ges. But (as the author of the *Grammaire Raisonnée* ob- es) men in no language have had any regard, concerning ositions, to what reason would have desired; to wit, that relation had been denoted by one preposition, and one pre- tion should have denoted one relation only: whereas, in all uages, one and the same relation is signified by many preposi- s, and one and the same preposition denotes several relations, e shall see in this chapter. It is in that, nevertheless, chiefly ist the different idioms of languages; and it is absolutely im-

possible ever to attain to the knowledge of any language whatever, without thoroughly understanding the divers relations denoted by the prepositions, with their respective regimens and constructions, or the several states of nouns which they govern: both which relations and states being arbitrary, vary and differ much in all languages. This only instance will evince it. The English say, *to think* of *a thing:* the French, *to think* to *a thing;* the Germans and Dutch, *to think* on *or* upon *a thing;* the Spaniards *to think* in *a thing,* &c. Now it will avail an Englishman but little to know, that *of* is expressed in French by *de,* if he don't know which relations of things the prepositions *à* and *de* denote in that language: since the French say, *to think to a thing,* and not *of a thing.* Therefore we shall minutely consider here all the French prepositions, except only such as are of the same signification, and denote the same relation of things, and require the same construction as in English.

*à, au, aux.*

*à* denotes,—1*st,* (whether alone or in composition) the end of the action of the verb, what person or thing it tends to (which relation answers to the dative case of the Latins), as likewise the end one aims at, and is englished by *to:* as, *Donner une chose à quelqu'un;* To give a thing to somebody: *A qui est ce livre?* Whose book is this? *Il est à moi;* It is mine, it belongs to me: *Parvenir à son but;* To obtain one's end.

2*dly, à* denotes the place where one is, and that whither one is going (in English *at, to, into, on, within,* &c.) as, *Demeurer à Londres;* To live *at* London: *Aller à Paris;* To go *to* Paris: *Vivre à la campagne;* To live *in* the country: *Aller à la campagne;* To go *into* the country: *Il demeure à vingt milles d'ici;* He lives twenty miles off: *Détournez à droite;* Turn *on* the right hand: *C'est à deux doigts de terre;* It is *within* two inches of the ground.

3*dly, à* denotes time, and succession of time and action, in English *at, in, by,* &c. as *Se lever à six heures, & déjeuner à neuf;* To rise *at* six o'clock, and breakfast *at* nine: *Arriver à temps;* To arrive *in* time: *A demain; Against* to-morrow: *Parler à son tour;* To speak *in* one's turn: *Se remettre peu à peu;* To recover by degrees: *Arracher brin à brin;* To pluck out slip *by* slip.

4*thly, à* denotes the part of the body that is affected, and is englished by *in:* as *Avoir mal à l'épaule;* To have a pain in one's shoulder: *Etre blessé* au *bras;* To be wounded *in* the arm.

5*thly*, *à* denotes the way of being or of doing of people, as also their posture, and gesture, or action; in English *at*, *after*, *with*, &c. as, *Etre à son aise*; To be at one's ease: *Vivre à sa fantaisie*; To live *as* one likes: *Faire tout à sa tête*; To do every thing *of* one's own head: *S'habiller à la Françoise*; To dress *after* the French way: *Aller à pied ou à cheval*; To go *on* foot, or *on* horseback: *Se mettre à genoux*; To kneel down *on* one's knees: *Recevoir à bras ouverts*; To receive *with* open arms.

6*thly*, *à* denotes the quality, price, weight, and measure of things; in English *at*, *by*, *with*, &c. as, *Des bas à trois fils*; Stockings *with* three threads: *De l'or à vingt-quatre carats*; Gold *at* four-and-twenty carats: *Du drap à dix-huit schellings la verge*; Eighteen shillings cloth: *Vendre de la viande à la livre*; To sell meat *by* the pound; *Mesurer* au *compas*, *ou* au *cordeau*; To measure *with* the compass, or the line.

7*thly*, *à* denotes the matter, instrument and tools used in working; in English *in*, *with*, *at*: as, *Travailler à de la dentelle*; To work *in* lace: *Bâtir à chaux & à ciment*: To build *with* lime and cement: *Peindre à l'huile*; To paint *in* oil: *Aller à voiles & à rames*; To go *with* sails and oars: *Elle travaille à l'aigüille*; She works *at* her needle.

8*thly*, *à* denotes the things which one applies oneself to, and the games one plays at; in English *to*, *at*: as, *S'appliquer à l'étude*, aux *Mathématiques*; To apply oneself *to* study, or *to* the Mathematics; *Jouer* aux *cartes*, To play *at* cards: *Jouer* au *piquet*, à *la bête*, à *la paume*, au *volant*, aux *échecs*, &c. To play *at* piquet, *at* loo, *at* tennis, *at* shuttlecock, *at* chess, *&c.*

9*thly*, *à* is used in reckoning games; in English, *to*, &c. as, *Deux à trois*, Two *to* three; *Trois à quatre*, Three *to* four; *Quatre à quatre*, Four all; *Cinq à cinq*, Five all; *Six à point*, Six to none; *Sept à point*, Seven love.

10*thly*, *à* signifies sometimes *according to*, sometimes *for*, sometimes *with*, sometimes *on*, sometimes *till* or *until*: as, *Cela n'est pas à son goût*; That is not *according* to his taste; *Je vous prends à témoin*; I take you *for* witness; *Se battre à l'épée & au pistolet*; To fight *with* sword and pistol: *Monter à cheval*; To ride *on* horseback: *Mettre pied à terre*; To alight: A *l'honneur*, au *revoir*; Till our next meeting, till we meet again.

11*thly*, *à* sometimes is a redundancy: as, *Il faut voir à qui l'aura*; We must see who shall have it: *C'est à qui l'attrapera*, It is who shall catch it.

12*thly*, *à* between two nouns appellative, denotes the manner, or form, of the thing signified by the first noun; as likewise the use which it is designed for; as, *Un Chandelier à bras*, A branched

candlestick: *Un chapeau à grands bords*, A broad brimmed hat; *Un clou à crochet*, A tenter-hook; *Une boîte à mouches*, A patch-box; *De l'huile à brûler*, Lamp-oil; *Une salle à manger*, A dining-room; *Un moulin à vent, ou à eau*, a wind, *or* water-mill; *Une arme à feu*, A fire-arm.

This relation is commonly expressed in English by two nouns making a compound word, the first of which signifies the *Manner, Form,* and *Use,* denoted by the French preposition.

13*thly, à,* between two nouns of number, signifies *between,* and sometimes *about:* as, *Un homme de quarante à cinquante ans*; A man *between* forty and fifty: *Il y a quatre à cinq lieues*; It is *about* four or five leagues distant.

14*thly, à,* before an infinitive, most commonly denotes what is proper to be done, the merit or demerit of persons and things, their seeming capacity, aptitude, fitness, and disposition, turn, or duty: as, *Un avis à suivre*; An advice worth following: *Des fruits bons à garder*; Fruit good, *or* fit for keeping: *Une occasion à ne pas laisser échapper*; An opportunity worth seizing (which one must not let slip): *Un homme à récompenser, ou à pendre*; A man that deserves to be rewarded, or hanged: *C'est une affaire à le perdre*; It is an affair that will ruin him: *C'est à vous à jouer*; You are *to* play: *C'est à lui à parler*; He is to speak (It is his business, duty, *or* turn to speak.)

15*thly, à* coming before an infinitive, signifies sometimes *wherewith,* and sometimes the verb may be resolved by the indicative with *if,* or by a gerund: as, *Verser à boire*; To fill some drink: *Il n'a pas à manger*; He has nothing to eat: A *en juger par les apparences*; *If* we may judge by appearances: *A vivre comme il fait, il n'ira pas loin*; *If* he lives at that rate, he will not live long: *On croiroit, à l'entendre, qu'il ne sait rien*; One would think, *by hearing* him speak, that he knows nothing.

*Etre à l'abri*; To be sheltered: *Se tenir à couvert*; To keep under cover *or* shelter: *Tenir à honneur*; To reckon it an honour: *Réputer à injure*; To deem it an affront: *Mettre un Officier aux arrêts*; To put an Officer under an arrest: A *votre avis*; In your opinion: A *son compte*; As he reckons: A *ce qu'il me semble*; As far as I apprehend: A *ce qu'elle dit*; As she says: *Parler à tort & à travers*; To speak *at* random: *Marcher à tâtons*; To go groping along in the dark: *Il est homme à s'en fâcher*; He is one who will take it ill: *Je suis ici à l'attendre depuis deux heures, & il est encore à revenir*; I have been waiting for him here these two hours, and he is not yet come back: A *cela près, nous sommes d'accord*; Excepting that, we are agreed, &c.

This preposition serves to make up a great many more adverbial ways of speaking, each of which is set down in its proper place in my Dictionary.

*de, du, des.*

*De* (whether alone or in composition) denotes, 1*st*, a relation of union or separation, effect, cause, dependence, &c. and is eng-

lished by *of, from, by;* as, *L'amour* de *Dieu;* The love of God: *Un membre* du *corps;* A member *of* the body: *Etre retranché* de *la société;* To be cut *off* from the society: *Etre estimé* de *tout le monde;* To be esteemed *by* every body.

2*dly, De* denotes the quality of a person or thing, the matter of which that thing is made. which is expressed by the first of the two nouns, whereof this preposition shows the relation, and is englished by *of:* as, *Un homme* d'*honneur,* A man of honour; *Un plat* d'*argent,* A silver-dish; *Un vont* de *pierre,* A stone-bridge.

Observe that these two nouns, so joined with either *de* or *à*, are commonly englished by two likewise, but without a preposition, or rather by a compound word, whose first noun (whether substantive or adjective) expresses the *Matter* and *Quality, Manner, Form,* and *Use* of the other, as a stone-bridge, *un pont de pierre;* a dancing-master, *un maître à danser.*

3*dly, De* denotes the limited sense of nouns, and distinguishes it from the universal and individual sense; which limited sense is expressed in English by *some:* as, De *l'argent, Some* money; *Donnez-moi* du *pain,* de *la viande,* des *habits,* Give me *some* bread, *some* meat, clothes, *J'ai affaire à* des *gens fort honnêtes,* or *à* de *fort honnêtes gens,* I have to do with very honest people.

4*thly, De* denotes the place from which one comes, and the term from which one begins to act, in English *from:* as, *Sortir* de *Londres,* To go *out* of London; *Revenir* de *France,* de *la campagne,* du *Palais,* des *Indes,* To return *from* France, *from* the country, *from* the Palace, *from* the Indies; *Tomber* de *haut,* To fall *from* a high place; *Mesurer* d'*un bout à l'autre,* To measure *from* one end to the other.

5*thly, De* denotes the manner of acting or being, the means or cause, in English *with, in, upon, for, after:* as, *faire* de *son mieux,* To do one's best, as well as one can; *Danser* de *bonne grâce,* To dance genteelly; *Couper* de *biais,* To cut slopingly, in a sloping manner; *S'y prendre* de *la bonne façon,* To go to work *after* the right way; *Mourir* de *froid,* To starve *with* cold; *Vivre* de *fruits & de légumes,* To live on vegetables, on fruits and greens; *Sauter* de *joie,* To leap for joy; *Il se conduit* de *cette manière-là,* He behaves *in,* or *after,* this manner; *Ils peuvent nous nuire* de *mille manières différentes,* They may hurt us a thousand different ways.

6*thly, De* is used before the noun of the thing made use of, and the instrument upon which one plays, in English *upon:* as, *Se servir* d'*une épée,* d'*un bâton,* d'*un pistolet,* To use a sword, to make use of a stick, of a pistol; *Jouer* de *la flûte,* du *violon,* des *instrumens,* To play *upon* the flute, the violin, upon instruments.

7*thly*, *De* is governed of several other verbs neuter, attended by a noun, in English *at*, *about*, *for*, *to*, &c. as *se moquer* de *quelqu'un*, To laugh *at* one; *Jouir* d'*une chose*, To enjoy a thing; *Se repentir* de *sa faute*, To repent one's fault, or *for* one's fault; *Mêlez-vous* de *vos affaires*, Trouble yourself *about* your business, Meddle with your own concerns.

8*thly*, *De*, before a noun of time, signifies the duration of the time specified, in English *during*, *for*, *by*: as, *Il partit* de *nuit*, de *jour*, de *grand matin*, He set out *by* night, *by* day, early; *Je ne l'ai point vu* d'*aujourd'hui*, I have not seen him to-day; *Je ne le verrai* de *ma vie*, I will not see him as long as I live.

9*thly*, *De* is used before nouns denoting dimension, and after nouns preceded by a number, and followed by a participle: as, *Il croît tous les jours* d'*un pouce*, It grows an inch every day; *Il y a trente vaisseaux* d'*achevés*, There are thirty ships finished.

10*thly*, *De* is used after pronouns indeterminate, adverbs of quantity, and these words *point*, *jamais*, *rien*, *quelque chose*, and *que* of admiration or exclamation, followed by a noun or adnoun: as, *Il n'y a personne* de *blessé*, There is nobody wounded; *Y en avoit-il quelqu'un* d'*ivre?* Was any of them drunk? *Assez* de *provisions*, Provisions enough; *Plus* d'*effets & moins* de *parole*, More deeds and less words; *Point* de *sens commun*, No common sense; *Quelque chose* de *bon*, Something good.

11*thly*, *De* is used before an infinitive after adnouns signifying *Fulness*, *Emptiness*, *Plenty*, or *Want*; as likewise after some verbs, and almost all nouns, so they do not signify or imply *Inclination*, *Reluctance*, *Aptness*, *Fitness*, or *Unfitness*, in English *to*: as, *Indigne* de *vivre*, Unworthy to live; *Il est capable* de *faire cela*, He is capable of doing that; *Je m'abstiendrai* d'*y aller*, I will refrain *from* going thither; *Il l'a détournée* de *le faire*, He has deterred her *from* doing it; *Le désir* d'*apprendre*, The desire *of* learning; *Il a le bonheur* de *plaire*, He has the good fortune to please.

*Si j'étois* de *vous*, *Si j'étois que* de *vous*; Were I in your place: *Son habit est comme* de *cire*; His coat fits well: De *grâce*, *n'en faites rien*; Pray, don't do it, I beg you would not do it: *Vous êtes fort* de *son goût*; You are very much to her taste: *Il vient* de *sortir*; He is just gone out: *De vous dire comme cela est arrivé*, *c'est ce que je ne sais pas*; As for telling you how that happened, it is more than I am able to do: *Les Magistrats doivent rendre la justice* de *citoyen à citoyen*; *chaque peuple la doit rendre lui-même* de *lui à un autre peuple*; the magistrates ought to do justice *between* citizen and citizen; every nation ought to do the same the one to the other: *Qu'est-ce que* de *nous!* What wretched creatures we are!

This preposition serves to make up a great many more adverbial ways of speaking, each of which is set down in its proper place in my Dictionary.

12*thly*, *De*, *dés*, an inseparable preposition, giving the words composed of it a signification contrary to that which they have when simple, in English, *un*, *dis*: as, *Défaire*, To *un*do; *Desavantage*, *dis*advantage.

13*thly*, *De par*, a form, made in English by *from*, *in the name of*: as, *De par le Roi*, In the King's name.

14*thly*, *De ce que*, a conjunction governing the indicative, in English, *because*, *though*: as, *De ce qu'un homme est plus adroit, ou plus fort qu'un autre, il ne s'ensuit pas qu'il ait de meilleures raisons*; Because one man is stronger, or more dexterous than another, it does not follow that he has the better cause.

## *Avant*

1*st*, *Avant* shows a relation of time, of which it denotes priority, as also of order and rank, and is always opposite to *après*, in English, *before*: as, *J'ai vu cela* avant *vous*, I have seen that *before* you; *Il faut mettre ce mot-ci* avant *l'autre*, This word must be placed *before* the other; *Il arriva* avant *moi*, He arrived *before* me.

2*dly*, *Avant* is also an adverb of place and time, commonly used with these adverbial particles, *si*, *bien*, *trop*, *plus*, *assez*, *fort*, and englished by *far*, *deep*: as, *N'allez pas* si avant, Don't go *so far*; *Creuser* fort avant, *or* trop avant *dans la terre*, To dig *very deep*, or *too deep* in the ground; *Plus avant*, further, deeper; *L'épée lui est entrée* bien avant *dans le corps*, The sword went deep into his body; *Bien avant dans la nuit*, When the night was far gone.

*Vous poussez les choses trop avant*, You carry things too far; *La chose alla si avant que*, Matters went so far, that, &c. *Jamais Philosophe ne pénétra plus avant dans la connoissance de la nature*, Never did any Philosopher make greater progress in the knowledge of nature; *Nous étions bien avant en mer*, We were gone a great way to sea; *Gravez cela bien avant dans votre mémoire*, Let that be deeply engraved on your memory.

*Avant que* before, is a conjunction governing the subjunctive, as, *avant qu'il soit un an*, Before twelve months are gone.

*Avant de* before, is another conjunction governing the infinitive: as, *Parlez-lui avant de le faire*, Speak to him before you do it. [*Avant que de*, before an infinitive, is now grown obsolete.]

*En avant* forward, is another adverb of place and time, as, *Aller en avant*, To go forward: *De ce jour-là en avant*, From that day forward; *Mettre en avant*, To advance, to assert; *Vous mettez en avant un principe fort dangereux*, You advance *or* assert a very dangerous principle.

## *Après.*

1*st*, *Après* denotes posteriority both of time, place, and order, and is used in opposition to *avant*, with respect to time, and to *devant*, with respect to place and order, in English, *after*, *next to*:

as, *Après le déluge,* after the deluge; *Sa maison est après la vôtre,* His house is after, *or* next to yours; *Il marchoit après moi,* He walked after me.

2*dly, Après* is construed with the infinitive of the auxiliary verb: as, *Il mourut après avoir bien diné,* He died after eating (having eat) a hearty dinner; *Après diner,* or *après le diner,* after dinner; *Après boire* (Hudibrastic style) after drinking.

*Il est toujours après moi,* He ever hangs about me, He is always at my elbow; He is always dangling after me; *Etre après quelque chose,* To be actually about something; *Je suis après votre montre,* I am about your watch; *On est après,* It is a doing; *Je vais me mettre après,* I will set about it presently; *Il y avoit long-temps, qu'il étoit après cet emploi, qu'il couroit après ce bénéfice, il l'a enfin obtenu;* He has been a long time about that place; He has solicited a long time for this living, at last he has got it; *Soupirer après quelque chose,* To wish a thing eagerly; *Se mettre après quelqu'un,* To fall upon one; *On a long-temps attendu après lui,* He has made us wait for him a long while; *On n'attend plus qu' après cela pour partir,* That's the only thing which hinders us to set out; *N'attendre pas après une chose,* To be in a condition to do *or* to live without a thing; *C'est un homme riche, & qui n'attend pas après cela,* He is a rich man, who can do *or* live without that; *Jeter le manche après la cognée,* To throw the handle after the hatchet; To venture the saddle after the horse; *Après lui il faut tirer l'échelle,* He is never to be undone.

3*dly, Après* signifies *excepté,* in English *except, next to:* as, *Nous n'avons rien de plus cher après l'honneur,* Next to our honour, nothing can be dearer to us; *C'est la plus laide bête après le loup* (is said of a very ugly person), He *or* She is enough to frighten a horse.

4*thly, Après* signifies *contre,* in English *at:* as, *Crier après quelqu'un,* To scold at one; *Cette femme-là crie toujours après ses servantes,* That woman is constantly scolding at her maids; *Tout le monde crie après lui,* Every body complains of him.

*Après,* is also an adverb of time, in English *after, after that, afterwards, then;* as, *Commencez par déjeuner, & vous étudierez après,* Begin with breakfasting, and after that you will study.

*Après que,* is a conjunction signifying *lorsque,* in English *after, when;* as, *Après que vous aurez fait,* After you have done; *Après que les troupes furent parties,* When the troops were gone.

*Après quoi,* is a form of speech signifying *après laquelle chose,* in English, *after that, then afterwards;* as, *On signa la capitulation, après quoi la place se rendit* They signed the capitulation, and afterwards the place surrendered.

*Après tout,* another form of speech of the same signification, as in English, *after all.*

5*thly, D'après* is another preposition, in English, *from, by, after:* as, *Ce portrait est fait d'après nature,* That picture is drawn after life; *Tableau d'après Raphaël,* A picture copied from the original of Raphael.

*Ci-après,* is an adverb, signifying *dans la suite,* in English *hereafter; afterwards, in the sequel;* as, *Comme on verra ci-après,* As will be seen in the sequel.

## *Of* PREPOSITIONS.

### *Devant.*

1*st*, *Devant* is used in opposition to *derrière*, and is construed with *de*, *au*, and *par*; in English *before*, *against*, *over-against*: as, *Mettez cela devant le feu*, Put that before the fire; *Il demeure tout devant l'église*, He lives quite over-against the church; *Otez-vous de devant mon jour*, Get out of my light; *Otez-vous de devant moi*, Stand out of my sight, Get out of my sight, Avoid my presence; *Ils passent par devant chez nous*, They pass before our door: *Un acte par devant notaire*, A deed drawn by a lawyer.

*Sens devant derrière*; Preposterously, the wrong way, in the wrong situation: *Il met sa chemise sens devant derrière*; He puts on his shirt the wrong way.

*Aller*, *Venir*, *Envoyer au devant de quelqu'un*; To go, to come, to send to meet one. *Aller au devant d'une chose*; To obviate a thing, to prevent it.

2*dly*, *Devant* is used in opposition to *après*: as, *Il marchoit devant moi*, He walked before me; *Avoir le pas devant quelqu'un*, To have the precedency of one.

3*dly*, *Devant* signifies in the presence of, in English *before*, *in the presence of*: as, *Prêcher devant le Roi*, To preach before the King; *Quand il fut devant ses Juges*, When he was in the presence of his Judges; *Il est devant Dieu*, *Son âme est devant Dieu*, He is before God, He is dead and gone.

*Devant* is also an adverb, and serves to make some phrases: as *Passez devant*, Go before; *Si vous êtes pressé, courez devant* (a proverb;) If you are in a hurry, set forward, *or* you may set off when you please; *Les premiers vont devant* (another proverb), Those that are most diligent get the start of others; *Comme nous avons dit ci-devant*, As we said before; *Il est blessé par devant*, He is wounded in the fore part of his body.

*Le chapitre de devant*, The chapter before; *Le train de devant d'un carrosse*, The fore-wheels of a coach; *Les jambes de devant d'un cheval*, The fore-legs of a horse.

*Devant* is also a noun signifying the *fore-part* of a thing; as, *Un devant de chemise*, The fore-flap of a shirt; *Un devant d'estomac*, A stomacher; *Le devant d'une perruque*, The fore-top of a perriwig; *Le devant d'une cuirasse*, The breast of an armour; *Un devant d'autel*, The antependium of an altar; *Prendre le devant*, *Gagner le devant*, To go, *or* set out before; *La cavalerie tenoit le devant*, The cavalry marched first; *Il sera ici dans un instant, j'ai pris les devants pour vous en avertir*, He will be here presently, I came before to give you notice of his coming; *Prendre le devant* (in a figurative sense): To prevent, to be beforehand with one, to get the start of him. *Bâtir sur le devant* (another metaphorical phrase), To grow lusty *or* bulky, to get a big belly.

### *Derrière.*

1*st*, *Derrière* denotes place, and is opposite to *devant*; in English *behind*: as, *Regardez derrière vous*, Look behind you.

2*dly*, *Derrière* is also an adverb construed with *de* and *par*, in English *back*, *behind*: as, *Qu'importe que cela soit devant ou derrière*, What matters it, whether it is before or behind? *Par derrière*,

Backwards; *Porte de derrière,* A back-door, (and figuratively) evasion, shift; *Mettre une chose sens devant derrière,* To put a thing preposterously, to put backward what should be forward.

*Derrière* is also a noun said of the posterior part of a thing or person; in English, *the back side, the hind parts*: as, *Les jambes de derrière d'un cheval,* the hind legs of a horse. *Etre logé sur le derrière,* To lodge backwards. *Faire rage des pieds de derrière* (a proverbial phrase), To work with might and main; *Montrer le derriere* (another metaphorical phrase), To fail in one's promise.

*Chez.*

1*st*, *Chez* denotes, and is englished by, *at*, or *to somebody's house*, and is construed with *de* and *par*; as, *Il est chez moi,* He is at my house *or* home; *Je vais chez vous,* I am going to your house; *Je viens de chez Madame le Blanc,* I come from Mistress White's; *J'ai passé par chez lui,* I have called at his house; *Chacun est maître chez soi,* Every body is master of his own house; *Avoir un chez soi,* To have a house of one's own.

2*dly*, *Chez* signifies also *among, with*: as, *Il y avoit une coutume chez les Athéniens, chez les Romains,* There was a custom among the Athenians *or* Romans.

*Contre.*

1*st*, *Contre* denotes opposition, signifying *against, contrary to*, and is englished by *with* or *at* after verbs signifying being angry, incensed, irritated, provoked, and exasperated; as, *Aller contre vent & marée,* To go, to sail against wind and tide; *Se fâcher contre quelqu'un,* To be angry with one; *Se battre contre quelqu'un,* To fight one.

*Quand on fit cette proposition, tout le monde s'éleva contre*; When this was moved every body expressed his dislike to the motion. *Pour moi, je suis contre,* For my part, I am against it. *Je ne suis ni pour ni contre,* I am neither pro nor con, *or* neither for nor against it.

2*dly*, *Contre* denotes also proximity of situation, and signifies *near, by*: as, *J'étois assis contre lui,* I sat by him; *Sa maison est contre la mienne,* His house is by mine; *Contre le bois,* Near the wood; *Tout contre,* Hard by.

*Contre*, is also a noun signifying *con* (the opposite of *pro*) and *against*: as, *On parle diversement de cette affaire, il faut savoir le pour & le contre,* They talk variously of this affair, one must hear what is said pro and con, or hear both sides. *La chose n'est pas sans difficulté, il y a du pour & du contre,* The matter is not without difficulty, much may be said on both sides. (See in my Dictionary another signification of *le contre.*)

## *Dans* and *En.*

1*st*, *Dans* denotes a relation of time and place, and is englished by *in, into, to, within:* as, *Etre dans la boîte, dans la maison, dans la ville*; To be in the box, in the house, in the town: *Quand il entra dans la chambre*; When he got into the room: *Dans la même année*; In the same year: *Dans un mois*; Within a month.

2*dly*, *Dans* denotes the state and disposition of the body, the mind, manners and fortune: as, *Etre dans une posture contrainte*; To be in an uneasy posture: *Dans la colère où il étoit*, In the passion he was in.

3*dly*, *Dans* denotes the motive and view of one's acting, which is usually expressed in English by *with:* as, *Il fait sa cour dans le dessein de s'avancer*; He makes his court with a design to be preferred.

4*thly*, *Dans* signifies also *according to:* as, *Cela est vrai dans les principes d'Aristote*; That is true according to Aristotle's principles.

5*thly*, *Dans* is used, and never *en*, before proper names of towns and authors: as, *Il est dans Londres*; He is in London: *Nous lisons dans Cicéron*; We read in Cicero: *J'ai vu cela dans Ovide*; I have read that in Ovid.

6*thly*, *En* denotes a place, and the things considered as relating to place: and is never used with the articles *le, la, les*, and is englished by *in*: as, *Entre en Angleterre*; To be in England: *Vivre en sa maison*; To live in one's own house.

7*thly*, *En* denotes the country whither one is going, and is englished by *to:* as *Aller* en *France*; To go to France: *Venir* or *Passer* en *Angleterre*; To come *or* pass over *to* England.

8*thly*, *En* denotes time, and things considered as relating to time, and is rendered by *at* and *in:* as, *En tout temps*, At all times; *En plein jour*, In open day-light; *En hiver*, In winter; *Tant en paix qu'en guerre*, Both in peace and war.

9*thly*, *En* before a noun of time, denotes the space of time that slides away in doing something; and *dans* the space of time after which something is to be done; as, *Le Roi va à Hanovre en trois jours*; The King goes to Hanover in three days; that is, he is no longer than three days in going; *Le Roi va à Hanovre dans trois jours*; The King goes to Hanover in three days hence; that is, after three days are gone, he will set out.

10*thly*, *En* denotes the state and disposition of persons and things, and is englished by *in* and *at*; as, *Etre en vie*; To be alive;

*Etre en bonne santé*; To be in good health: *Un enfant en nourrice*; A child at nurse: *Une femme en couche*; A woman lying in: *Etre en bonheur*; To be lucky, to have good luck, to play with good luck.

11*thly*, *En* denotes what one is employed in, and is englished by *at* and *in*: as, *Etre en oraison, en prières*; To be at one's devotions, *or* prayers.

12*thly*, *En* denotes the manner of being, of behaving, of acting, and is englished by *like* and *in*: as, *Etre en robe de chambre, en bonnet de nuit & en pantoufles*; To be in one's morning gown, night-cap and slippers: *Vivre* en *Roi*, To live *like* a King: *Se conduire* en *étourdi*; To behave *like* a blunderer.

13*thly*, *En* denotes the motive and end of acting, and is englished by *through, out, of, in*; as, *Il fit cela en haine de ce que*, &c. He did it through hatred of, &c. *En considération de ses services*; In consideration of his services: *En dépit de lui*; In spite of him.

14*thly*, *En* denotes the passage from one place to another, the progress of things, the change of condition both of persons and things, and is englished by *to* and *into*: as, *Courir de rue en rue*; To run from street to street: *Narcisse fut métamorphosé en fleur*; Narcissus was metamorphosed into a flower: *L'affaire va de mal en pis*; The case is worse and worse: *De mieux en mieux* Better and better.

15*thly*, *Dans* and *en*, must be repeated before each noun governed; as, *Il étoit* en *robe de chambre*, en *bonnet de nuit* & en *pantoufles*; He was in his morning-gown, night-cap, and slippers: *On ne voit que des brochures* dans *sa salle*, dans *sa chambre*, & dans *son cabinet*; One sees nothing but pamphlets in his parlour, his room, and study.

Though it is sometimes indifferent to use either of these two prepositions yet that must continue the same before each noun, which was used before the first, when it is the same sense all along the sentence, and the same thread of speech: as, *Séville, capitale de l'Andalousie, surpasse toutes les villes d'Espagne en grandeur, en commerce, en richesses & en beauté*; Seville, the capital of Andalusia, exceeds in largeness, trade, riches, and beauty, all the cities in Spain. *Il est fidelle dans ses promesses, inépuisable dans ses bienfaits, juste dans ses jugemens*; He is faithful in his promises, inexhaustible in his favours, just in his judgments.

But if it is not the same thread or speech, and the same sense all along the sentence, both prepositions must be used for variety sake; as, *Il passa un jour & une nuit entière* en *une si profonde méditation, qu'il se tint toujours dans une même posture*; He spent a whole day and night in so deep a meditation, that he always remained in the same posture.

16*thly*, *En*, when it is construed with a gerund, denotes either time or manner, and may be resolved by the conjunctions *while, whilst*, or *as*, with a tense of the indicative: as, *Parler en tremblant*; To speak trembling: *Il laissa ordre en partant*; He left order

when he went away; *Il l'aborda en riant,* He came up to her with a smile; *En passant,* By the way.

*En tant que,* is a conjunction signifying *as, considered as:* as, *Jésus-Christ en tant qu'homme;* Christ as a man. It is also a law expression, signifying *as far as, as much as:* as, *En tant que je puis,* As far as lies in my power; *En tant que besoin sera,* As far as need will require.

We say both *en été* and *dans l'été,* in summer; *en hiver* and *dans l'hiver,* in winter; *en automne* and *dans l'automne,* in autumn; but we do not say *en printemps,* in the spring; but *dans le printemps* or *au printemps.*

Observe, further, that *in* and *into* must be rendered into French by *entre,* and never by *dans* or *en,* in these following expressions: To hold a child in one's arms, *Tenir un enfant* entre *ses bras;* To deliver a thing *into* somebody's hands, *Remettre quelque chose* entre *les mains de quelqu'un,* or *Remettre en main;* To get it again from his hands, *Le retirer d'*entre *ses mains.*

*Etre en butte à tout le monde,* To be exposed to all the world; *s'en aller, s'en revenir,* to go away or come back again; *En avant,* Forward; *En dedans,* Within; *Etre en train,* To begin, to be at it; *Mettre en train,* To set on, to set a-going; *Se mettre en train,* To begin doing a thing, &c. &c. &c.

The other significations of *en* must be looked for in my Dictionary.

## *Depuis.*

1*st*, *Depuis* denotes both time, place, and order, or enumeration of things, and is englished by *since* and *from;* and is commonly followed in the sentence by *jusqu'à* (to): then *depuis* denotes the term *from whence,* and *jusqu'à,* that of *hitherto,* as, *Depuis ce temps-là,* Since that time; *Je ne l'ai pas vu depuis son retour,* I have not seen him since his return; *Je vous attendrai depuis cinq jusqu'à six,* I'll wait for you from five to six; *Vous êtes venu depuis moi,* You came after me; *Elle est arrivée depuis lui,* She is arrived since he did; *Depuis le commencement jusqu'à la fin,* from the beginning to the end; *Il m'a suivi depuis la Bourse jusqu'au Palais,* He has followed me from the Royal Exchange to the Palace; *Je les ai tous vus depuis le premier jusqu'au dernier,* I have seen them all from the first to the last.

Observe the difference between *depuis* and *jusqu' à, de* and *à,* and *de* and *en,* all which prepositions are englished by *from* and *to.*

*De* and *à,* before nouns of places, denote simply the distance that is between the two places; as, *On compte vingt-deux milles* de *Windsor à Londres,* They reckon twenty-two miles *from* Windsor *to* London.

*Depuis* and *jusqu'à,* denote, besides, the quality of the distance, its being great or little; as,

*Il marcha* depuis *Windsor* jusqu'à *Londres,* He walked *from* Windsor *to* London.

*De* and *en,* with the same noun repeated, denote succession of place; as,

*Il va* de *cabaret* en *cabaret,* He goes *from* alehouse *to* alehouse.

*Depuis peu,* lately, not long since, *or* ago; *Depuis quand?* How long? How long since? *Depuis deux ans,* These two years; *Depuis long-temps,* This great while.

2*dly*, *Depuis* is also an adverb signifying *since, since that time:* as, *Je n'en ai point ouï parler depuis,* I have not heard of it since.

3*dly*, ***Depuis que*** is a conjunction governing the indicative, and is also englished by *since*: as, *Depuis que vous êtes parti*, Since you went away.

### *Jusque*, or *Jusques*.

1*st*, ***Jusque*** *(to, even to, as far as, till, until)*, denotes both place and time, to a degree that cannot be exceeded, and besides requires the preposition *à* before a noun. It is indifferent to spell it with or without an *s* at the end, but when it is construed with a word beginning with a vowel, it loses its final *s*: as, *Depuis Paris jusqu'à Londres*, From Paris to London; *Depuis la St. Jean jusqu'à Noël*, From Midsummer to Christmas; *Il alla jusqu'au Grand-Caire*, He went as far as Grand Cairo; *Le vice règne jusques sur le trône*, Vice rides triumphant, even to the throne; *Jusqu'à présent*, Till now, until now; *Jusqu'où?* To what place? How far? *Jusqu'ici*, To this place, hither, so far; *Jusques-là*, To that place, thither, so far; *Ils en vinrent jusque-là qu'on crut quils s'alloient battre*, They went so far, *or* to such extremities, that people thought they were going to fight.

*Crier jusqu'à s'enrouer*, To bawl oneself hoarse; *Brûler du vin jusqu'au déchet de deux tiers*, To burn two-thirds of wine away. *Jusqu'au revoir* (a phrase at parting), Till our next meeting, Till we meet again; *Ami jusqu'aux autels*, A friend as far as conscience permits. *Brave jusqu'au dégaîner* (a said of a bully), Courageous till the question is to draw.

2*dly*, *Jusqu'à, jusqu'aux (even, very)*, denotes also excess; as, *Il aime jusqu'à ses ennemis*, He loves even his enemies; *Jusqu'aux plus abjects des hommes se donnoient la licence de*, &c. (which may also be expressed thus), *Il n'y avoit pas jusqu'aux plus abjects des hommes qui ne se donnassent la licence de*, &c. The very worst of men took such a liberty as to, *&c.*

*Jusqu'à* and *jusqu'aux*, taken in this sense, are also used in the third state, but with such verbs only as require after them nothing but the third state, or govern both the absolute and respective state together, that is, or are attended with an object and term. Thus we say: *Il étendit sa libéralité jusqu'aux valets*, He extended his generosity even to the servants, because *étendre* requires here both the absolute and respective state after it. But we do not say: *Il donna jusqu'aux valets*, to mean that, He gave to every body, and even to the servants, because as *Il donna jusqu'à son carrosse*, signifies that he gave every thing he had, and even *his very coach* (in which sentence, *jusqu'à son carrosse* expresses the word of the object coming after the verb); so *Il donna jusqu'aux valets* would signify that he gave every thing he had, and even his servants: which causes an ambiguity, that ought to be carefully avoided in French.

3*dly*, *Jusqu'à ce que* is a conjunction which governs the subjunctive, *till, until*: as, Jusqu'à ce qu'*il vienne*, Until he comes

And *Jusqu'à quand,* pronounced in declamation *Jusques à quand)* governs the indicative, *How long.*

### *Hors, Hormis, Excepté,* &c.

*Hors (out, except, but)* denotes exclusion and exception. When it comes before a noun of time and place, it requires the preposition *de* before it, as also before the infinitive; or it governs the indicative with *que:* as, *Vous les verrez quand ils seront* hors de *table,* You shall see them when they have left table; *Hors du royaume,* Out of the kingdom: *Hors* de *saison,* Out of season; *Il ne pouvoit faire pis* hors de *se pendre,* He could not do worse, except *or* but to hang himself; *Il lui a fait toutes sortes de mauvais traitemens,* hors qu'*il ne l'*a *pas battu,* He has used him as ill as he possibly could, except that he has not beat him; *Hors cela nous sommes d'accord,* Except that we agree.

2*dly, Hormis* and *excepté (but, except, save, saving)* denote also exception and exclusion, but they govern the noun immediately, without *de,* though they require this preposition before the infinitive; they also govern the indicative with *que:* as, *Il sortirent tous* hormis *or* excepté *deux ou trois,* They all went out, except *or* but two or three; *Il lui permet tout* excepté d'*aller aux assemblées,* He indulges her in every thing, but going to assemblies; *Je me porte assez bien,* excepté que *mon bras* est *toujours enflé,* or *excepté, or hormis mon bras qui,* &c. I am pretty well, but my arm is still swelled.

3*dly, à la réserve* is used in the same sense, and englished after the same manner, but is attended with *de* before the next noun and infinitive: as, *Il a donné tout son bien à ses enfans, à la réserve* de *ses rentes viagères,* He has given all his substance to his children, except his annuities for life; *Il a tout pouvoir, à la réserve* de *conclure,* He has full powers, except of concluding.

### *Loin.*

*Loin (far, at a distance, a great way off,)* requires the preposition *de* before the next noun and infinitive, or *que* before the subjunctive: as, *Loin* du *chemin,* de *la rue,* de *chez nous,* Far from the road, the street, from home: *Loin d'ici,* Far from hence; *Loin* de *secourir ses alliés, il se déclare contre eux,* Far from assisting his allies, he declares himself against them; *Loin* qu'*il* soit *disposé à vous faire satisfaction, il est homme à vous quereller,* Far from being disposed to offer you satisfaction, it is likely he will pick a

quarrel with you: *Bien loin* que *cela* soit; It is so far from being so.

### *Malgré, En Dépit.*

*Malgré* and *en dépit (maugré, in spite of, notwithstanding)* govern, *malgré*, the first state of the noun, and *en dépit*, the second; they also form with *que* a conjunction governing the subjunctive: as, *Il l'a fait malgré moi*, He did it in spite of me: *En dépit* de *lui* & de *tout le monde*, In spite of him and of all the world; *Il le fera malgré* qu'*il en ait*, He shall do it in spite of his teeth; *Bon gré, malgré je l'aurai*, Will he, n'ill he, I shall get it.

### *Par.*

1*st*, *Par* denotes the cause, motive, means, instrument and manner, and is englished thus, *by, through, out of, for, at:* as, *Par ordre du Roi*, by the King's order; *Je lui ai fait dire par un tel*, I sent him word by such a one; *Il l'a obtenu par mon moyen*, He got it through my means; *Vous n'en parlez que par envie*, It is out of envy only you speak of it; *Je l'ai fait par cette raison*, I did it for that very reason; *Il entra par la porte, mais il sortit par la fenêtre*, He got in at the door, but he got out at the window; *Je le lui ferai tenir par la première occasion*, I will send it to him by the first opportunity; *Je compris par là*, By that *or* thereby I understood.

2*dly*, *Par* denotes the place, being englished by *in*, and is construed with several prepositions and adverbs of place: as, *Cela se fait par tout pays*, That's done in all countries; *Par-tout*, Every where; *Par-tout le Royaume*, All over the Kingdom; *Par-tout où*, Wherever; *Par où?* Which way? *Par ici*, This way; *Par là*, That way; *Par deçà*, This side, on this side; *Par delà*, That ride, t'other side, on the other side; *Par dedans*, Within; *Par dehors*, Without; *Par après*, By; *Par devers*, By; *Par dessus*, Upon, over, above, over and above; *Par dessous*, Under, underneath; *Par devant*, Before, forwards; *Par derrière*, Behind, backwards; *Par à côté*, By; *Par le haut, Par en haut*, Towards the top, upwards; *Par le bas, Par en bas*, Downward; *Par haut & par bas*, Upwards and downwards; *Par le passé*, Formerly, in time past, heretofore; *Par ci par là*, Here and there, now and then, at several times; *Par ainsi* (obsolete), Therefore.

3*dly*, *Par* denotes motion and going through, being englished by *through, about, by, out of*: as, *Il a passé par Paris*, He went

through Paris. *Se promener par les rues*; To walk about the streets: *Jeter par la fenêtre*; To throw out of the window.

*Passer par l'examen*; To submit to the examination. *Il en faut passer par là, Il faut passer par là ou par la fenêtre* (a proverb); One, You, They, &c. must submit to that.

4*thly*, *Par* is construed with nouns denoting the accidents of the weather, and is englished by *in*: as, *Où allez-vous* par *cette pluie-là?* Where are you going *in* such a rain as this? *Nous partimes* par *un beau temps*; We set out *in* fair weather.

5*thly*, *Par* is construed with the infinitive after verbs signifying *beginning* and *ending*, and is englished by *with*, *by*, *in*: as, *Il commença* par *se plaindre*, *& finit* par *demander de l'argent*; He began *with* complaining, and concluded *with* asking money: *Elle conclut par le supplier de*;—She concluded *in* beseeching him to——.

6*thly*, *Par*, construed with nouns, without the article, denotes distribution and division of people, time, place, or any thing signified by the noun, and is sometimes englished by *by*, *in*, *into*, *for* *per*; but that distribution is commonly expressed by *a*, *each*, or *every*, before the noun, but without a preposition (at least expressed, for *for* is grammatically understood): as, *Distribuer* par *chapitres*; To divide into chapters: *Aller* par *bandes*; To go *in* companies: *Donner tant* par *tête*; To give so much *a* head: *Cent pièces* par *an*; An hundred pounds *a* year, *or per annum*: *Une Guinée* par *soldat*; A Guinea *a* soldier, *or every* soldier.

## *Pour.*

1*st*, *Pour* denotes the same relations as in English, to wit, of the end or final cause, motive and reason of action, and the use which a thing is designed for, and is englished by *for*, *upon the account of*: as, *Cela est pour vous, & ceci pour moi*; That is for you, and this for me: *J'ai eu tant pour ma part*; I have had so much for my share: *Pour l'amour de vous*; For your sake: *Il fera cela pour vous*; He will do that upon your account, *or* for your sake.

2*dly*, *Pour* is commonly englished by *considering*, or *with respect to*, when it denotes the suitableness or unsuitableness of a thing: as, *Cet enfant est bien avancé pour son âge*, or *pour le peu de temps qu'il a appris*; That child is very forward for his age, or considering the little time he has learnt.

*Pour toujours, pour jamais*; For ever. *Pour le moins*; At least. *Pour lors*; Then, at that time. *Pour cet effet*; Therefore, and therefore. *Je compte son témoignage pour dix autres*; I reckon his testimony as good as ten

others. *Je le tiens pour mon ami*; I take him to be my friend. *Je n'en dis pas davantage, & pour cause;* I say no more, and good reason why, *or* because of something. *Ne laissons pas pour cela de nous divertir*; Let us divert ourselves nevertheless, Let us be merry for all that. *Pour ainsi dire;* As one may say, If I *or* We may say so, *or* if I may use the expression.

3*dly*, *Pour* is construed with the infinitive (and never *de* or *à*) after *trop*, *assez*, *suffisant*, and *suffire;* and whenever we express the design, cause, and reason of doing something, it is englished by *to*, *in order to*, *with a design to;* as, *Il est trop sensé pour faire cela*, He has too much sense to do that; *Le mérite ne suffit pas pour réussir*, Merit is not enough to thrive; *Il l'a fait pour me faire de la peine*, He did it to make me uneasy; *Il a été pendu pour avoir volé sur le grand chemin*, He was hanged for robbing upon the highway.

4*thly*, *Pour*, before an infinitive followed by *moins*, and a negative in the latter part of the sentence, or by *ne laisser pas de*, *ne laisser pas que de*, signifies *although* or *though*; and *moins* with the negative, or *ne laisser pas de*, *ne laisser pas que de*, signifies and is englished by *nevertheless* or *yet*; as, *Pour avoir de la Religion, elle n'en est pas moins femme*, *Although* she is a religious woman, *yet* she is still a woman; *Pour n'avoir point de bien, elle ne laisse pas d'être extrêmement fière*, Though she has no fortune, she is *nevertheless*, *or* for all that, very proud.

5*thly*, *Pour*, between two nouns without the article, or between two infinitives without a preposition, denotes the choice which one makes between two things alike in their nature, but different in their circumstances. The two nouns or verbs thus construed are rendered into English with a paraphrase; as, *Chambre pour chambre, j'aime mieux celle-ci que l'autre*, Since I must have one of these two rooms, I like this better than the other; *Mourir pour mourir, il vaut mieux mourir en combattant qu'en fuyant*, When a man must die, it is better to die in fighting than in running away.

6*thly*, *Pour*, followed by *que*, but coming after *assez* and *trop*, makes a conjunction governing the subjunctive, and may be englished by *that*: as, *Je ne suis pas assez heureux pour que cela m'arrive;* I am not so lucky as that should happen to me: *C'est trop outrageant pour que je ne m'en venge pas;* It is too outrageous for me not to resent it.

*Pour peu que*, is another conjunction governing the subjunctive, and is englished by *If ever so little*, *let ever be so little*; as, *Pour peu que vous en preniez soin;* If you take ever so little care of it. *Pour peu qu'ils soient jolis;* If they are at all pretty.

*Pour*, before nouns and pronouns personal, signifies sometimes *as for*: as, *Il a beaucoup d'esprit, mais pour du jugement, il n'en a guères;* He has much wit, but as for sense, he has but little. *Pour moi, je crois;* As for me, *or* for my part, I believe, &c. Pour ce qui est de moi, As for me.

*For*, before a noun of time, is made in French by *pendant*, before that noun of time, or *durant* after it: as, He has drank the water *for* six weeks; *Il a pris les eaux* pendant *six semaines*, or *six semaines* durant.

## *Près.*

1*st*, *Près* denotes proximity of place, and is always attended by *de* (or the particles *du*, *des*), except in some few instances of common discourse, and is englished by *by*, *near*, *nigh*, *close to*: as, *S'asseoir près de quelqu'un*; To sit by *or* near one: *Il demeure* près du *palais*; He lives by the palace.

*Près* is usually construed with *trop*, *si*, *assez*, *plus*, *bien*,—and these adverbs are never construed with *auprès*.

2*dly*, *Près* denotes proximity of time, and is construed with the infinitive: as, *Il est bien près de midi*; It is very near twelve, *or* upon twelve: *Cela n'est pas près d'être fait*; That is not near being done: *Elle est près d'accoucher*; She is near her time.

3*dly*, *Près* signifies also *almost*: as, *Il a été près de trois heures à diner*; He was almost three hours at dinner: *Son armée est de près de cinquante mille hommes*; His army is almost fifty thousand strong.

4*thly*, *Près* is also used in the sense of *save*, *excepting*, but it always comes after its regimen, and therefore is not attended by *de*: as, *C'est un galant homme, à son humeur* près; He is a clever man, *save* his temper: *J'ai été payé à cent guinées près*; I have been paid all to an hundred guineas: *A cent pistoles* près, *nous sommes d'accord*; There is but one hundred pistoles difference between us: *A cela près*, *A telle chose près*, Save that, That being excepted, Nevertheless, For all that: *Ne laissez pas de conclure votre marché, à cela près*; Strike up the bargain for all that, *or* nevertheless: *Il n'est pas à cent guinées près*, *Il n'en est pas à cela près*; He can afford to lose, to give, *or* to throw away an hundred guineas.

*Près*, *de près*, adverbs, signifying *near*, *hard by*, *close*; *Plus près*, Nearer; *Près à près*, Close, close together, quite near each other; *Plus près à près*, Closer; *A peu près*, Pretty near, near about, nearly, within compass, within a little matter; *Il reconnoît une Divinité, mais à peu près de la trempe des Dieux d'Epicure*, He believes a God, but it is one much of the same kind with the Gods of Epicurus. (See in my Dictionary for the phrases made of that preposition.)

## *Auprès.*

1*st*, *Auprès* denotes also proximity of place, and is attended by *de*, and englished likewise by *near*, *nigh*, *by*, but signifies particu-

larly *next to:* as, *Sa maison est auprès de la mienne*; His house is next to mine.

2*dly*, *Auprès* denotes a relation of domestic or servile attachment, and is rendered by *to, with, by, near:* as, *Etre auprès d'un Seigneur;* To live with a Nobleman: *L'Ambassadeur de sa Majesté Britannique auprès du Roi très-Chrétien;* The Ambassador of his Britannic Majesty to the most Christian King: *Il me demanda pour être auprès de son fils unique, qui avoit à peu près mon âge;* He asked me as a companion to his only son, who was pretty much of my age.

*Etre bien auprès de quelqu'un;* To be in somebody's favour and benevolence: *N'être pas bien auprès de quelqu'un;* To be under somebody's disgrace: *Pouvoir beaucoup auprès de quelqu'un, Avoir du pouvoir auprès de lui;* To have a great influence *or* power over somebody's mind: *Elle peut tout auprès de lui;* She can do any thing with him.

3*dly*, *Auprès* denotes a relation of comparison, and signifies *to, in comparison:* as, *La terre n'est qu'un point auprès du reste de l'univers;* The earth is but one point of the universe.

*Auprès* is also an adverb of place, of the same signification as the preposition: as, *Je ne puis voir cela, si je ne suis auprès, tout auprès;* I cannot see that, except I am near it, hard by. *Par auprès;* By, near, a little aside.

## *Proche.*

*Proche,* near by, hard by, is also attended by *de,* and is likewise an adverb: as, *Proche de la ville, du Palais;* Near the town, *or* the Palace: *Il demeure ici proche*; He lives hard by.

*De proche en proche,* another adverb, signifying *contiguous to one another:* as, *Couper les bois de proche en proche;* To cut the woods gradually, one after another: *Faire des conquêtes de proche en proche;* To make one's conquests contiguous to one another.

## *Vis-à-vis, à l'opposite.*

*Vis-à-vis, à l'opposite,* over-against, opposite, are also attended by *de,* and are likewise adverbs: but when they are adverbs, they are not attended by the preposition *de:* as, *Je me plaçai vis à-vis de lui;* I sat over-against him: *Il est vis-à-vis:* He is over the way: *A l'opposite de sa maison est une colline;* Over-against his house is a hill.

The preposition *de* is sometimes left out, in common conversation, after *près, proche,* and *vis-à-vis:* as, *Près l'Eglise St. Paul;* Near St. Paul's Church; *Proche le pont de Londres;* Near London-bridge: *Vis-à-vis la Bourse;* opposite the Royal Exchange.

*Vis-à-vis* is said of both persons and things, and signifies properly two persons or things facing one another: but *à l'opposite*, though of the same signification, is said of places and things only, not of persons.

*A côté de* (by) denotes also proximity of place: as, *S'asseoir à côté de quelqu'un*; To sit by one: *Passer à côté* du village; To pass by the village.

*sans.*

*Sans* without, denoting exclusion, is construed with the infinitive (which is rendered into English by the gerund); and is besides, with *que*, a conjunction governing the subjunctive: as, *Sans argent*, Without money; *Sans amis*, Friendless; *Un homme sans morale*, An immoral man; *Sans parler*, Without speaking; *Sans y penser*, Unaware, Unwittingly; *Vous ferez bien cela, sans* que j'*y* aille, You'll do that well enough, without my going thither; *Sans faire semblant de rien*, As though he did not.

*selon, suivant.*

*Selon* and *suivant*, according to, agreeably, conformably, *or* pursuant to, govern the noun immediately, never taking *à* before it as in English *to*, and form also an adverb; and along with *que*, a conjunction governing the indicative: *selon* is said of an opinion, and *suivant* of practice: as, *On l'a traité selon son mérite*; He was treated according to his deserts: *Il sera payé selon qu'il travaillera*; He shall be paid according to his work: *Selon moi*; In my judgment *or* opinion: *C'est selon*; It is as it happens, May be yes, may be not, That's according: *Je me conduirai en tout suivant vos avis*; I will conduct myself, *or* behave, in every thing according *or* conformably to your advice.

*sur.*

1*st*, *Sur*, denoting place and matter, is *upon, on, over*, both in the proper and figurative sense: as, *Sur la table*, Upon the table; *Sur la rivière*, Upon the river; *Sur un vaisseau*, On board a ship; *Se reposer sur quelqu'un*, To rely *or* depend upon one.

2*dly*, *Sur*, denoting time, is *about, against, towards, by*: as, *Je partirai sur les trois heures*; I shall set out about *or* by three: *Sur le soir*; Towards the evening: *Sur la brune*; In the dusk of the evening: *Il est sur son départ*; He is upon his departure.

3*dly*, *Sur*, denoting the superiority of power or excellence, is rendered by *over*: as, *Un Prince qui règne sur plusieurs peuples*; A Prince that reigns over many nations: *Les François ont de grands avantages sur les autres nations*; The French have great advantages over the other nations.

*Sur* signifies also *against, by, on account of*: as, *Sur la fin de la semaine*, Against the end of the week: *Je me réglerai sur son exemple*, I shall regulate myself by his example: *Il s'excusa sur son âge*, He excused himself on account of his age.

*Sur* coming before *ce que*, makes a conjunction governing the indicative, and is englished by *as* with the indicative, or *on* or *upon* with the gerund: as, *Sur ce qu'il apprit que*, As he learnt that, *or* On *or* Upon hearing that.

The English particle *on* coming after a verb, of whose action it denotes the continuation, is rendered into French by the verb *continuer*, or the adverb *toujours*: as, Play on, *Continuez de jouer*, or *Jouez toujours*: Read on, *Lisez toujours* or *Continuez de lire*.

*Sur* is used besides in a great many figurative phrases, which must be learned in my Dictionary.

## *au-dessus, au-dessous.*

1*st*, *Au-dessus* (above, over, beyond), *au-dessous* (below, under), compound prepositions, denoting superiority and inferiority of age, place, rank, and other physical and moral subjects, require besides the other preposition *de* before their regimen: as, *Loger au-dessus* or *au-dessous de quelqu'un*; To lodge above *or* below one: *On enrôle tous les gens au-dessus de quatorze ans, & au-dessous de cinquante*; They enlist every body above fourteen, and under fifty: *Il fait un peu trop le familier avec ceux qui sont au-dessus de lui*; He makes himself too familiar with his betters: *Il est au-dessus de ses affaires*; He is beforehand with the world: *Etre au-dessous d'un autre en mérite, en bien*, &c. To be inferior to one in merit, wealth, *&c.*

2*dly*, *Au-dessus* and *au-dessous* are also adverbs: as, *Il occupe le premier étage, & je loge au-dessus*; He occupies the first floor, and I lodge above: *Hérode fit tuer tous les enfans de l'âge de deux ans & au-dessous*; Herod put to death all the children of two years old and under.——*Par dessus* and *par dessous* are also both adverbs and prepositions, but without requiring *de* before their regimen.

*Sur, sous, dans*, and *hors*, are prepositions always requiring a regimen: but *dessus, dessous, dedans*, and *dehors*, which are adverbs, signifying as much as the prepositions with a noun, become also prepositions, used instead of, and in the same sense as, *sur, sous, sans, hors*, of which they are composed, whenever they are preceded by the prepositions *par* and *de*, or when they both serve for one and the same noun; especially if the two prepositions are the two contraries, or opposite the one to the other. In which case *dehors* governs its noun immediately, though *hors* always requires *de* before it: as,

*Cherchez dessus & dessous la table*; Look upon and under the table, not *sur & sous*.

*Il n'est ni dedans ni dessous le coffre*; It is neither in nor under the chest, not *dans & sous*.

*La balle lui passa par dessus la tête*; The ball went over his head, and not *par sur*.

*Il passa par dedans la ville*; He went through the city, and not *par dans*.

*On le tira de dessous le lit*; He was got from under the bed, and not *de sous*.

Those cases excepted, *sur, sous, dans, hors*, must always be prepositions; and *dessus, dessous, dedans*, and dehors, adverbs.

*vers, envers.*

1*st*, *Vers* (towards, to) denotes a certain side or situation: as, *Vers l'Orient*, Towards, *or* to the East, *or* Eastwards.

2*dly*, *Vers* (to) denotes sometimes the residence of a Minister: as, *Envoyé vers les Princes d'Allemagne;* Envoy to the Princes of Germany.

3*dly*, *Vers* (about, towards) denotes time: as, *Vers les quatre heures;* About four o'clock.

4*thly*, *Envers* (towards, to) is only said of persons: as, *Sa tendresse envers eux* (or *à leur égard*); His tenderness towards *or* to them; *Ingrat envers son bienfaiteur*, Ungrateful to one's benefactor; *Je vous défendrai envers & contre tous*, I will defend you against all manner of persons.

*à l'égard.*

*à l'égard* (as to *or* for, with respect to, in comparison with) requires *de* before its regimen: as, *A l'égard du prix, nous en conviendrons*, As to the price, we shall agree; *A l'égard de ce que vous me devez*, As to what you owe me; *La terre est petite à l'égard du soleil*, The earth is small in comparison with the sun, *or*, if compared to the sun; *A mon égard*, For my sake, upon my account; *On doit être honnête à son égard, & à l'égard des autres*, One ought to be honest to oneself, and to others.

*au lieu.*

1*st*, *Au lieu* requires also the other preposition *de* before the next noun or infinitive, being englished by *in the place of, instead of, in lieu of:* as, *Au lieu de celui que j'attendois, il est venu un homme de sa part*, Instead of the person I expected, there came a man from him; *Au lieu de secourir son ami, il l'a trahi*, Instead of succouring his friend, he has betrayed him.

2*dly*, *Au lieu que* is a conjunction governing the indicative, and is englished by *whereas, while, when on the contrary:* as, *Il ne songe qu'à son plaisir, au lieu qu'il devroit veiller à ses affaires*, He minds nothing but his pleasure, when, on the contrary, he should look after his own concerns.

*à rebours, au rebours.*

*à rebours* (against the hair *or* grain, the wrong way, preposterously, cross, quite contrary), which is an adverb, is also made a

preposition with *de:* as, *Vergeter du drap à rebours,* To brush cloth against the grain; *Il fait tout à rebours, au rebours de ce qu'on lui dit,* He does every thing the wrong way, quite the reverse of what he is bid.

### *à travers, au travers.*

*A travers* (through, cross), comes immediately before its regimen, and *au travers* requires *de:* as, *A travers le corps,* or *Au travers du corps,* Through the body; *Il se fit jour au travers des ennemis,* or *à travers les ennemis,* He made his way through the enemies; *à travers champs,* Cross the fields; *Regarder au travers d'une jalousie,* To look through a lattice-window; *Parler à tort & à travers,* To talk at random.

In some occasions two prepositions come together before a noun, as in this instance, *Il peint* d'après *nature;* He draws *by* the life.

These six prepositions have the right of governing others before the noun: *de, pour, excepté, hors, jusque, par.*

*De* governs these eight: *entre, après, chez, avec, par, en, dessus, dessous:* as,

*Plusieurs* d'entre *eux y allèrent,* Many of them went thither; *Je viens* de chez *vous,* I come from your house; *Je sors* d'avec *lui,* I have just left him; *La partie* d'en *haut,* The upper part; De par *le Roi* (style of proclamation, *&c.*)

*Pour* governs these five, *à, après, dans, devant, derrière.*

*Ce sera* pour après *le dîner;* It will be for after dinner.

*C'est* pour dans *quinze jours;* It is for a fortnight hence.

*Ce morceau-ci est destiné* pour devant *la porte, celui-là* pour *à* côté, *& l'autre* pour derrière *le lit;* This piece is designed for before the door, that for the side, and this other for behind the bed.

*Jusque* governs these six, *à* (or *au* or *aux,*) *par, en, dans, sur, sous:* as,

*Jusqu'*au *plancher,* as high, *or* as far as the ceiling; *Jusques dans le lit,* Even in bed; *Jusques par delà la rivière,* Even beyond the river, *&c.*

*Par* governs these eight; *chez, à côté, dessus, dessous, devant, derrière, deçà, delà,* as, *Passez* par *chez nous,* Call at our house; *Par dessus la tête,* Above one's head: *Par delà la mer,* Beyond the sea, *&c.*

*Excepté* and *hors* govern these nineteen: *chez, dans, sous, sur, devant, derrière, parmi, vers, avant, après, entre, depuis, avec, par, durant, pendant, à, de,* and *en.* Examples may be found every where.

Prepositions always come before the noun which they govern, never after, as they do sometimes in English: as, *Avec qui,* or *à qui voulez-vous que je parle?* Whom will you have me speak with, *or* to? Except these three, *après, durant, près:* as,

*Quelque temps après* or *après quelque temps;* Some time after. *Sa vie durant,* or *durant sa vie,* During, *or* for his life.

*A son humeur près.* Save his humour.

Thus it is not necessary for *après* and *durant* to come after the noun, but only for *près.*

From a great many nouns prepositions are formed, by putting before them some particle, especially *à, au, aux, en:* which compound prepositions are always attended by *de, du, des,* before the noun: as,

*Au milieu* de *la compagnie;* In the middle of the company.

*En présence* de *ses amis;* In the presence of his friends.

*A l'insçu* de *son père;* Unknown to his father.

*A raison* de *vingt* pour *cent;* At the rate of twenty per cent.

These prepositions, *de, contre, sur, sous, sans,* which are seldom, if ever, repeated in English, must always be repeated in French before each noun governed: as,

*Beaucoup* d'*amour pour le plaisir, &* de *haîne pour le travail;*

Much love for pleasure, and aversion for work.

*Je suis* sans *amis,* sans *protection,* sans *secours, & je meurs de faim;*

I am friendless, without protection, without help, and starving

These others must be also repeated when the following noun, or nouns, are not synonymous, or pretty near of the same signification, *à, par, pour, avec*: as,

*Il est venu à bout de ses desseins* par *les ruses &* par *les armes de mes ennemis;*

He has compassed his ends by the devices and arms of my enemies.

*Devices* and *arms,* not signifying the same thing, *par* is repeated: but if there were *par l'assistance & les armes,* as *assistance* and *arms* signify pretty near the same, *par* should not be repeated.

*Il n'y a rien qui porte tant les hommes* à *aimer ou* à *haïr leurs semblables, que,* &c.

Nothing induces men so much to love or hate their equals, as, *&c.*

*To love* and *hate* are the two contraries, and therefore *à* is repeated.

*Il n'y a rien qui porte tant les hommes* à *louer &* à *imiter leurs semblables, que,* &c.

Nothing induces men so much to commend and imitate their equals, as, *&c.*

*To commend* and *to imitate* are not contraries indeed, but they are different, therefore *à* is repeated.

*Il n'y a rien qui porte tant les hommes* à *aimer & estimer leurs semblables, que,* &c.

Nothing induces men so much to love and esteem their equals, as, &c.

*To love* and *esteem* are nearly of the same signification, therefore *à* is not repeated.

*On les envoya* pour *avitailler les vaisseaux, &* pour *sonder le port;*

They were sent to victual the ships, and sound the haven.

*To victual* and *sound* are very different, therefore *pour* is repeated.

*On les envoya au port* pour *radouber les vaisseaux, & en construire de nouveaux;*

They were sent to harbour to refit the ships, and build new ones

*To refit* and *build* are pretty near alike, therefore *pour* is not repeated.

### *Further Observations upon some* English *Prepositions.*

These particles, *again, back, away, up, down, in, out of, over, forth,* &c. oftentimes make part of the signification of the verbs which they attend, and are not particularly expressed in French: as, to keep back, *retenir;* to take away, *emporter;* to come up, *monter;* to take up arms, *prendre les armes;* to lay them down, *les quitter, les mettre bas;* to pull off, *arracher;* to go, *or* set forth, *partir,* &c.

*Aboard a ship,* is *à bord d'un vaisseau;* but *to embark on board a ship,* is *s'embarquer sur un vaisseau, monter sur un vaisseau.*

*About* answers to these different French prepositions.

*sur,*
*touchant,*
*vers,*
*dans,*
*par,*
} *about* the year's end; *sur la fin de l'année.*
I come to you about that business; *Je viens vous voir touchant cette affaire.*
*about* the latter end of the book; *vers la fin du livre.*
What do they cry *about* the streets? *Qu'est-ce qu'on crie dans les rues?*
He took him *about* the middle; *Il le prit par le milieu du corps.*

*Against,* which signifies *contre* in its general sense, denotes also *Time,* and is rendered sometimes by *sur:* as, *Against the end of the week; Sur la fin de la semaine:* Sometimes without any preposition at all: as, *Your shoes will be made* against *after to-morrow; Vos souliers seront faits après demain.—Against* is also a conjunction, several ways expressed in French: as, *Against he comes; En attendant qu'il vienne:* Let all things be ready against we come; *Que tout soit prêt à notre retour.*

*Away,* another particle, so variously and elegantly used, cannot be rendered in French without a verb, which is also performed several ways, conformably to the genius of the language: as, Away with this; *Otez tout ceci:* Away with him to the University; *Qu'on l'envoie à l'Université:* I cannot away with it; *Je ne saurois souffrir,* or *digérer cela:* Away with these fopperies; *Défaites-vous de ces sottises.* To eat a bit and away; *Manger un morceau à la hâte, avant de partir:* To scold one away: *Obliger quelqu'un de s'en aller, à force de le gronder:* He shall not go away with it so; *Il n'en sera pas quitte à si bon marché.*

*Both,* before two nouns copulated with *and,* is rendered in French, either by *et* before each noun, or by *tant* before the first noun, and *que* before the second, or is not expressed at all: as, *Both* young and rich; Et *jeune & riche,* Tant *jeune* que *riche:* Both by sea and land; *Par mer & par terre,* Tant *par mer* que *par terre:* Both at home and abroad; *Au dedans & au dehors, & au dedans & au dehors,* Tant *au dedans* qu'*au dehors.*

## CHAP. X.

### *Of* CONJUNCTIONS.

Of Conjunctions, some govern, that is, will have the next verb in the indicative mood, some in the subjunctive, and some in the infinitive.

1°. These following conjunctions govern the indicative:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *ainsi que,* | as. | *de même que,* | even as. |
| *tout ainsi que,* | just as. | *si,* | if |

| | |
|---|---|
| *a que,* *te que,* | so that. |
| *nière que,* *con que,* | in such a manner that. |
| *ent que,* | so that. |
| *e,* *it que,* | as. |
| *ue,* | according to. |
| *e si,* | as if, as though. |
| *e,* *l,* | when. |
| *nt que,* *i que,* | whilst. |
| *se que,* *que,* *ue,* | because, |
| *e,* | scarcely, hardly*. |
| *ôt que,* *que* *e,* | as soon as. |
| *uoi,* | why. |
| *ient que?* | how comes it to pass? |

| | |
|---|---|
| *après que,* | after that, when. |
| *depuis que,* *puisque,* | since |
| *vu que,* | seeing, being that. |
| *attendu que,* | considering that. |
| *au lieu que,* | whereas |
| *à mesure que,* | in proportion as |
| *tant que,* | as long as |
| *autant que,* | as much as. |
| *outre que,* | besides that. |
| *joint que,* | add to that. |
| *selon que,* *suivant que,* | as, according to. |
| *peut-être que,* | perhaps. |
| *d'autant que,* | whereas, forasmuch as. |
| *or est-il que?* | now is it that? |
| *aussi long-temps que,* | as long as. |
| *bien entendu que,* | with a proviso that. |

and the others not included in the next list.

2°. These Conjunctions govern the Subjunctive:

| | |
|---|---|
| *ue,* *que,* | that, to the end that. |
| *que,* | before. |
| *que,* | without that. |
| *que,* *ue,* *e que,* | though. although. |
| *ue,* | whether *and* or. |
| *sez que,* | suppose that. |
| *sons que,* | let us suppose that |
| *le cas que,* | put the case that. |
| *bonne heure* *e,* | I grant that, &c. |

| | |
|---|---|
| *au cas que,* *en cas que,* | in case that, *or* if. |
| *non que,* | not that. |
| *non pas que,* | not but. |
| *ce n'est pas que,* | it is not but that. |
| *pourvu que,* *moyennant que,* | so if, provided that. |
| *à moins que,* *si ce n'est que,* | unless |
| *pour peu que,* | if ever so little. |
| *à condition que*†, | upon condition that. |

*peine* is followed by *que* in the second part of the sentence, and that *que* is ced by *than*, or *but*.

*condition que*, is also construed with the future and conditional.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *excepté que,* | except that. | *tant s'en faut que,* / *bien loin que,* | we, he, they people, &c. are so far from |
| *hormis que,* / *hors que,* | save that. | *malgré que,* | for all that |
| *sinon que,* | but that. | *non obstant que,* | notwithstanding that. |
| *de peur que,* | for fear that. | *Dieu veuille que,* | God grant. |
| *de crainte que,* | lest. | *Plaise,* or *Plût à Dieu que,* | would to God. |
| *loin que*,* | far. | *A Dieu ne plaise que,* | God forbid. |
| *bien loin que*,* | very far from. | | |
| *jusqu'à ce que,* | till, until. | | |
| *tant s'en faut que,* / *il s'en faut bien que*,* | it is so far from. | | |

* These three are used in compound sentences, and require *que* before the second part of the sentence; but *Il s'en faut bien que* is used in simple sentences.

3°. These govern the infinitive:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *à* and *de,* | to. | *au lieu de,* | instead of, |
| *par,* | by. | *loin de,* | far from. |
| *pour,* | to, in order to. | *bien loin de,* | very far from. |
| *après,* | after. | *excepté de,* | except to. |
| *sans,* | without. | *avant de,* / *avant que de,* | before. |
| *jusqu'à,* | to that degree, till. | *à moins de,* / *à moins que de,* | unless. |
| *sauf à,* | save. | *plûtot que de,* | rather than to; and all conjunctions ending in *de.* |
| *faute de,* | for want of. | | |
| *afin de,* | in order to. | | |
| *de peur de,* / *de crainte de,* | for fear of. | | |

for *de crainte que* and *de crainte de,* see page 343, C.

4°. The French use the conjunction *que* in the second part of a compound sentence, instead of repeating the following conjunctions, expressed in the first:

*si,* if. *quand,* / *lorsque,* when. *pourquoi,* why. *comme,* as. *peut-être,* perhaps. *parce que,* because. *quoique,* although. *afin que,* that; and others composed of *que*; which particle always governs the subjunctive, when it stands for *si, quoique,* and *afin que*: and therefore causes the verb, governed in the indicative in the first part of the sentence, to be changed into the subjunctive in the second part; but the verb continues in the indicative, when *que* stands for *quand, lorsque, comme,* &c., as,

*Si vous m'*aimez, *&* que *vous* vouliez *me le persuader,* for *& si vous voulez me le persuader;* If you love me, and want to persuade me of it.

*Afin que vous en* soyez *sûr, &* que *vous ne* croyiez *pas qu'on vous trompe;* That you may be sure of it, and don't think that one cheats you.

*La raison pourquoi il ne* pouvoit *venir alors, &* que *les autres ne se* soucioient *guères de l'attendre,* &c. The reason why he could not come at that time, and the others did not care to wait for him.

*Peut être l'aime t-il, mais* qu'*il ne* veut *pas l'avouer, de peur,* &c. Perhaps he loves her, but is unwilling to own it, lest, &c.

*Afin* may be attended in the same sentence, both by *que* and *de,* governing each its respective mood, viz. *que* the subjunctive and *de* the infinitive; but *que* must come the last: as,

*Afin* de *vous* convaincre, & que *vous n'en* doutiez *plus;*
In order to convince you, and that you doubt no more of it.

5°. *When* is both *lorsque* and *quand,* indifferently used for one another, except that *quand* denotes time in a more positive and determinate manner, and *lorsque* denotes occasion: as,

*Ne manquez pas de venir,* quand *je vous appellerai;*
Be sure to come, when I shall call for you.

*On ne fait jamais tant de folies, que* quand *on aime;* we never commit so many extravagancies, as *when* we are in love.

*On se fait aimer* lorsqu'*on aime;* It is by loving we make ourselves beloved.

*Les chanoines vont à l'office,* quand *la cloche sonne;* Canons go to divine service, *when* the bell rings.

*Et* lorsqu'*ils assistent à l'office, ils font leur devoir;* And *when* they assist, *or, by* assisting in the service, they do their duty.

When a question is asked, we always do it with *quand,* and never *lorsque:* as, *Quand viendrez-vous?* When will you come?

*Quand* being construed with the conditional, has the signification of *though* or *although;* and *même,* or *bien même,* is sometimes added to *quand,* to give more weight to what one says: as,

*Quand il y consentiroit,* or *Quand même, Quand bien même il y consentiroit, cela ne pourroit pas se faire;* Although he would consent to it, that could not be done.

Sometimes, also, *though* may be left out in French, that is, the French conjunctions *quand,* or *quand même* may be suppressed in the sentence; then the pronoun expressing the subject of the verb comes after the verb, and the verb is made by the subjunctive; as,

Fût-elle *riche à millions, je n'en voudrois point;*
*Though* she *were* worth several millions, I would not have her: which answers to this English locution: *Were she worth,* &c.

6°. *Si* is never construed with the conditional as in English. Therefore that tense with *if* is made by the imperfect in French: as, If he should come, *S'il venoit.*

*Si*, after *et*, signifies *yet*, or *although*: as,

*Il travaille toujours*, & si *il meurt de faim*;

He is always at work, *and yet* is starving.

But that is of the low style.

7°. *D'où vient que* (conjunction interrogative) requires immediately after it the pronoun, or noun, that expresses the subject of the verb of the question: whereas, with the other conjunctions interrogative, it comes after the verb: as,

*D'où vient que* vous *ne voulez pas faire cela?* or,

*Pourquoi ne voulez*-vous *pas faire cela?* Why won't you do that?

8°. *Pourtant*, *cependant*, and *toutefois* (yet, however); *toutefois* begins to be obsolete.——*Pourtant* always comes after the verb, or between the auxiliary and the participle, if the tense is compound, and assures more positively than *cependant*.—*Cependant* may indifferently begin the sentence, or come after the verb; and they both make a contrast with these two other conjunctions *quoique* and *bien que*: as,

Quoiqu'*il ait tant étudié, il ne sait* pourtant *pas cela* (or) cependant *il ne sait pas cela*: *Although* he has learnt so much, *yet* he don't know that.

9°. *Donc*, *c'est pourquoi* (therefore, then); *c'est pourquoi* always begins the sentence, and *donc* never does, but always comes the second or third word; except, however, when the case is to draw a consequence of premises: as,

*C'est pourquoi vous m'obligerez de faire cela*, or

*Vous m'obligerez* donc *de faire cela*;

Therefore you will oblige (*that is* compel) me to do that.

*Il rougit*; donc *il est coupable*;

He blushes; therefore he is guilty.

*Encore*, being an adverb, signifies *again*, *yet*, *still*: being a conjunctive copulative, it signifies *even*, *also*; and *else* and *besides* in such expressions as these: *Qui encore?* Who else? *Quoi encore?* What else, what besides? But *encore* is besides a conjunction adversative, especially when *& si* comes before it, which signifies, and is englished by *besides* and *nevertheless*: as,

*Il est extrêmement riche*, encore *n'est il pas content*, (or) *&* si encore *il ne plaint*;

He is extremely rich, *yet* he is not contented, *or nevertheless* he complains.

*Encore* has a sense of restriction, in some ways of speaking rendered into English thus:

Encore *s'il ne faisoit pas l'entendu*, *on lui passeroit son ignorance*;

Should he not pretend to great matters, one would not mind his ignorance

Encore *s'il savoit quelque chose, mais il ne sait rien du tout;*
If he knew something, well and good: but he knows nothing at all.

*Au moins, du moins,* and *pour le moins,* are three conjunctions of restriction, signifying *at least,* but which must not be confounded: *au moins* being used to say something to one by way of advice, as also to clear oneself of something, and englished thus:

*Si vous ne voulez pas prendre son parti,* du moins *ne vous déclarez pas contre lui;*
If you won't take his part, at least do not declare against him.

*Prenez garde* au moins *à vous retirer de bonne heure;*
Take care to come home betimes, *I must desire you,* or, Be sure to keep good hours, *I beg of you.*

Au moins *ce n'est pas moi qui en suis cause;*
I am not the cause of it, however, *or,* I can tell you.

Sometimes also *tout* is put before these conjunctions, and *tout au moins, tout du moins,* to denote still a greater restriction of what one says.

This particle conjunctive *tout* is likewise sometimes put before these comparative terms, *comme, de même que, aussi bien que,* as well as; *autant que,* as much as; and *aussi peu que,* as little as: which may be properly englished by *just* or *full:* as,

*Vous fuites* tout *comme il vous plaît;* You do *just* as you please.
*Je vis* tout *aussi bien en Angleterre qu'en France;*
I live *full* as well in England as in France.

From the abuse sometimes made of the conjunction transitive *à propos,* very much used in conversation, is come this proverbial phrase, *A propos de bottes, comment se porte Mr. votre père?* (word for word) Now we are speaking of boots, how does your father do? The meaning of which is, *Now we don't speak or think of your father.* How does he do?

10°. These conjunctions, *either* and *or,* used in the same sentence before nouns and verbs, are rendered into French, *either* by *soit,* before the first noun, or verb, and *or* by *ou,* before the other or others: or by *soit,* before each noun or verb; which last way is more emphatical: as,

*Either* through gratitude, *or* clemency, *or* policy, he pardoned [him;
Soit *par reconnoissance,* ou *par clémence,* ou *par politique, il lui pardonna,* (or) Soit *par reconnoissance,* soit *par clémence,* soit *par politique, il lui pardonna.*

¶ Sometimes the preposition is left out after *soit;* and we may say likewise *Soit reconnoissance, soit clémence, soit politique, il lui pardonna.*]

When the same conjunctions disjunctive serve to distinguish two things, or two parts of a sentence, they are also rendered into French by *soit* repeated, by *ou,* likewise repeated: or by *soit* before the first noun, and *ou* before the second: as,

An exercise *either* of the body, *or* the mind,
*Un exercice* soit *du corps,* soit *de l'esprit,* or
*Un exercice* soit *du corps* ou *de l'esprit.*
Either he is a wise man *or* a fool; *Ou il est sage,* ou *il est fou.*

11°. The conjunctions *whether* and *or,* are rendered into French either by *soit que* repeated, or by *soit que* before the first part of the sentence, and *ou que* before the other: as,

*Whether* you have done that *or* no;
Soit que *vous ayez fait cela,* soit que *vous ne l'ayez pas fait:* or,
Soit que *vous ayez fait cela,* ou que *vous ne l'ayez pas fait:* or only
Soit que *vous ayez fait cela, ou non;* but *soit que* repeated, is much better.

12°. *Or else* is rendered into French by *ou bien,* or *ou* only, or *sinon:* as,

The case is so; *or else* I should have been deceived;
*La chose est ainsi,* ou bien, *or* ou *l'on m'auroit trompé.*

Moreover, observe, that some words answer to divers parts of speech together, according to the grammatical use which they are put to: as, *après,* which is an adverb in the first following example, a preposition in the second, and a conjunction in the third:

| | |
|---|---|
| *Il parla après,* | He spoke afterwards. |
| *Il parla après moi,* | He spoke after me. |
| *Après qu'il eut parlé,* | After he had spoken. |

# APPENDIX.

## SECTION I.

## THE ANALOGY OF SPEECH;

### OR, THE GROUNDS AND PRINCIPLES OF THE ART OF SPEAKING CONTINUED.

We have seen, in the Introduction to this work, that the words of which speech is composed, and the letters which compose those words, are signs, invented by men, to represent their thoughts. Now these signs have been found out in a quite natural manner. For, as the mouth is the organ that forms them, it has been observed, that some sounds are formed with a larger some with a less degree of opening the mouth, others through the throat, and others through the nose. And likewise according to the differences observed in the forming of the articulation, that is, as the breath emitted from the lungs is, in its way through the throat and mouth, more or less forcibly compressed by the palate, the lips, or the teeth, or any where intercepted, the consonants have been distinguished into Labial, Hissing, Palatal, Guttural, Liquid, and Aspirative.

Our acute sounds were called by the Ancients *narrow* or *close* vowels; and they called *broad* and *open* vowels our grave sounds: they had neither guttural nor nasal vowels. They called *mute* our weak consonants: but our distinction of them into weak and strong has a better foundation in nature.

And indeed B, and P, have so great an affinity the one to the other, that some nations often pronounce one for the other. The Germans pronounce *ponum finum* for *bonum vinum*. The Latins as Quintilian reports, pronounced the *b* in *obtinere* exactly like *p*. The French do it too in *obtenir*, and perhaps the English in *to obtain*.

There are many English and Dutch words that differ only in one of these two letters F and V. *Father*, for example, being pronounced *Vather*; and the German Swisses pronounce French V's like F's, and B's like P's, and D's like T's, saying *Foulez-fous foir, une pelle tame*, instead of *Voulez-vous voir une belle dame*? Will you see a fine lady? *Foulez-fous poire tu fin*? or in English, *Fwill you trink some fwine*? instead of *Voulez-vous boire du vin*?

The relation there is between C, Q, and K, is so obvious, that there is perhaps no language but these three letters have the same power and articulation before *a, o, u*.

It is the same with G and J before some vowels, as in *George*, that might as well be spelt *Jorje*. Moreover G is only a lessening or decreasing of C, as D is of T: nay *d* final is articulated in French with all the power and force of *t*, when the next word begins with a vowel, as *gran tami* for *grand ami*, great friend.

The Ancients called L, M, N, R liquid, or flowing, as consonants of a very agreeable and easy articulation; though strictly speaking, L alone deserves that appellation. The Romans found the articulation of M so swelling in the ear, and so disagreeable, that, most times, they did not pronounce it even in prose, saying *die' hanc* for *diem; restitutu' iri*, for *restitutum* (in their law): which made Quintilian call it *mugientem litteram*. For the same reason the Greeks never used it in the end of words. The same, after the Chaldeans, often changed ρ into λ, saying ωλεύμων for πνευμων, from whence *pulmo* is derived: and Μαλλιος for *Manlius*, &c.—As to R, we daily see many people who cannot pronounce it.

Again. L and R, Z and J, or G, are so near a kin to one another, that those who cannot pronounce R, on account of its roaring articulation, naturally fall into the pronunciation of L; as likewise those who cannot pronounce J, or G, before a vowel, express of course the articulation of Z, saying *King Zorze and the Loyal Family*, for *King George and the Royal Family*.

S had no other articulation in Latin but its hissing one; but in our modern languages it takes the articulation of *z*, when it comes between two vowels; as in the French word *misère*, from the Latins, which they pronounce *misseria*.

H serves only to denote aspiration. The Oriental languages had three or four guttural letters, serving to that purpose only. The Romans have only preserved that letter, with which they supplied in their language, what the Greeks used to denote by their *esprits rudes*, and aspirate consonants. It keeps still some-

thing of that use in many English words spelt with *th*, which answers the θ of the Greeks. Besides, it does not always denote aspiration, in our modern languages, but most times serves only to show the Etymology of words.

The Ancients called X and Z double, because they were, the first as much as *cs* and *gz*, and the other as *ds*. The Greeks had, besides, their ψ, which was as much as *ps*.

X keeps still the same power and articulation with us. Z has another more simple and less harsh. But the English have some other double consonants, especially G and J, which are as much as *dg* or *dj*, and *c* before *h*, followed by a vowel, which is as much as *tch*, as in the word *chin*, which is pronounced *tshin*

It is still a great difficulty to resolve, among Grammarians, whether the Latins had our J and V, and therefore whether or not they had Tripthongs in their language (that is, the meeting of three vowels in one syllable, each expressed by its peculiar and usual sound). One may see what learned Grammarians have written thereupon. It is to be observed here, that although the English gave the name of vowels to the five or six first figures, yet when they pronounce I, U, and Y, by themselves, they express the natural and peculiar sound of Diphthongs, expressing in the sound of U by itself, the very same that is heard in pronouncing the pronoun *you*; and in the sound of Y, the very same that is heard in *why*.

However it be, as to the invention of these sounds and articulations, and of the figures that represent them, as also the different distinctions Grammarians have made of them, it is certain that in every language reason has been left unregarded, which prescribed, in the first place, to make as many vowels as the mouth can naturally form simple sounds, and mark them with so many simple figures or letters. Thus, although five vowels only are usually reckoned, yet the Greeks have seven or eight, marked with so many simple figures: and since they thought the difference in pronouncing one and the same sound, as *e* and *o*, sufficient to make two several and distinct sounds of each of these two vowels, according as it is formed with a larger or less degree of opening the mouth, and have likewise marked them with very different figures ε, η, ο, ω; had they done the same thing with respect to the other vowels, and considered the difference that may be found in each of them, according to the various opening of the mouth, and as the breath which forms them is affected in its passage by

the several parts of that organ, they should have discovered at least sixteen or seventeen, all which are found in the French language; *a, â, é* or *ai, è* or *ait, ê* or *ais, e* or *eu, i, o, ô,* or *aux, u, an, en, in, on, un, eux, ou:* all sounds as simple as *a, e, i, o, u,* and which could have been represented by simple figures thus:

a, â, e, é, è, ê, i, o, u, ă, ĕ, ĭ, ŏ, ŭ, ɛ, ɶ.

Again: it is certain that it would have been more natural, and more convenient for the mutual correspondence of nations, to have marked with simple figures the articulations which we mark with two figures, though we only intend to express and represent a consonant. Such are the articulations of *gn* and *ill* before vowels, which could have been marked, the first called *n liquid,* with ɲ; and the second called *l liquid* with ʎ. Such is also the articulation of *ch,* or the English *sh,* marked in Hebrew with the simple letter ש *(schim).* So that the French language should have had about forty figures or letters, instead of its five-and-twenty, to mark its sounds and articulations in the most natural manner, as appears by the tables prefixed to the Treatise of the Pronunciation: without taking notice here of other figures, that might have been invented for the perfection of writing, as the Greeks did their ξ, or ξ, ψ, ϛ, and στ, which are only abbreviations for *cs, ps, st,* and *sk* of which we have preserved only X.

Another thing, that reason prescribed in the invention of figures or letters, is, that one and the same sound should not be marked with more figures than one, or with different figures; as the sound of *ea* in *read,* which is marked with *ee* in *feed;* or *ea* in *bread* denoted by *e* in *bred, bed,* &c. nor that the same figures should have marked different sounds, as *ea,* that denotes in *earth* the sound of French *a,* in *bread* that of French *e,* in *meat* that of French *i,* &c.

For the like reason, one and the same articulation should not have been marked with these three different figures, C, K, Q: nor should C have taken the power of *s* before *e* and *i;* nor g before the same vowels, have been pronounced otherwise than before *a, o, u,* nor *t* have been articulated like *s* before *i,* followed by another vowel.

Lastly. Reason required that every figure should mark some sound or articulation; that is, that no letter should be set down in any word but what is pronounced. For although the superfluous letters in words often denote their Etymology, modern languages being all derived from the ancient ones; as *p* in the French

word *champs* denotes its being derived from the Latin *campus*, and *t* in *chants* from *cantus*; yet it seems that the inconvenience would have been less to pronounce these words *champs* and *chants* conformable to the whole import and force of the letters, even without excepting the characteristic letter of the plural number, than to mark with these so many different figures *(amps* and *ants)* the simple sound of *a* (nasal), or *an*.

Upon the whole, there are abuses common to all languages, and there is no possibility of remedying them, since the Emperor *Claudius* could not get one new letter only introduced into the Roman language. (It was the Diganima of the *Æolians*, very likely to serve as V.) But there is no nation that has less reason to complain that the French write otherwise than they pronounce, than the English; there being perhaps no language in the world, wherein the sounds are marked with more different letters, and the same letters mark more various sounds, than in the English tongue; which, besides, wants the foundation essential to all languages, I mean a Grammar, to promote the learning of it, and make it easy to foreigners.

¶ This was written in 1750.]

From these observations upon letters it follows,

1*st*, That in all languages there are more simple sounds or vowels, than are used to be marked with simple figures or letters.

2*dly*, That of these three compound sounds, C, K, Q, two of them are useless, they all three expressing but one and the same articulation: as likewise the power and use of G, before *e* and *i*, in some languages, which marks no other articulation but that of J, and therefore might have kept before these two vowels, the same power and use that it has in all languages before *a*, *o*, *u*.

3*dly*, That these three consonants might, nay should, have been supplied by three or more others, essential in some languages, to mark the liquid articulations denoted by *gn* and *ill*, as also the articulations of *ch*, *sh*, &c.

4*thly*, That the Hebrews and Greeks, from whom the Latins took their letters, always began with a consonant to name the letters of that appellation, calling, the Greeks their B *Beta*, and the Hebrews, their ב *Beth*, &c. But that the Latins, from whom our modern languages have taken their consonants, with their appellations, most arbitrarily, and injudiciously too, changed that natural order, calling *el*, *em*, *en*, &c. the λ *Lambda*, μ *Mu*, ν *Nu*, of the Greeks, and the ל *Lamed*, מ *Mem*, נ *Nun* of the Hebrews. They had indeed some reason to shorten the appellation of conso-

nauts, calling only *bee* and *ell* what the others called *beta*, *lambda*, &c. But it was contrary to all reason they began the appellation of some of them with the vowel *e*: although they, at the same time, abstained, either through caprice or reason, to put *e* before some others, and rather chose to say, *bee*, *cee*, *dee*, than *eb*, *ec*, *ed*, as they said *el*, *em*, *en*, &c.

*5thly*, That double letters, though ever so useful for the perfection of writing, yet are not necessary in the language; they expressing and denoting no peculiar articulation, but what may be, and is, in effect, denoted by other letters; and therefore we could as well be without ϰ, as without ψ, ϛ, and σχ, instead of which we use the two letters *ps*, *st*, *sc*. (So that even omitting K, Q, and G, which we have seen to be useless in speech, having no other power than C and J; and reducing therefore the letters to the number of twenty-one, or even twenty (for H is no letter, and denotes only aspiration); these twenty letters not only serve as much as the forty, which I have said the French language should have had, if regard had been had to reason in the invention of sounds and figures: but also they are sufficient for all languages that ever were, or ever can be, to distinguish every modification of the voice, and by their various combinations to form that infinite number of words which represent our thoughts.

"There are, indeed, but twenty-six in our tongue (says the au-
" thor of an English Grammar), and yet they may be so vari-
" ously disposed as to make more than five hundred and seventy-
" six several words of two letters; and twenty-six times as many
" words may be formed of three letters; that is to say, fifteen
" thousand and six; and twenty-six times as many more may be
" made of four several letters, that is, nine hundred thousand and
" thirty-six; and so on in proportion. From this manifold gene-
" ration of words, from the various combinations of letters, we
" may judge of their vast variety, as being indeed not much less
" than infinite."—*Eng. Gram.* N. 2. p. 61.

These characters, or letters, were called in Greek γραμματα, from whence the word *Grammar* is derived: not that Grammar treats of sounds and letters only, but because they are the foundation and basis of speech. And the set of letters used in any language, is called *Alphabet*, from the two first Greek letters Αλφα, Βητα.

A syllable, which we have said to be part of words, either spoken or written, is derived from the Greek word συλλαβη, which is, Comprehension, *to wit*, of letters in one sound, though

single vowel can make a syllable. Thus much for sounds and letters.

The several species of words of which speech is composed, is also a natural consequence of what passes in our mind: and the order in which they have been invented for representing our thoughts, has necessarily its ground in the nature of things.

The first thing men did, was to give names to the various beings of the universe, in the middle of which they lived, and of which they wanted to speak. Considering therefore every being as a thing subsisting, as well as themselves, in nature, they called *Nouns* or *Substantives* the words of this species.

As they found it disagreeable to repeat the same name, when they wanted to speak of its subject several times together; in order to remedy that inconvenience they invented a species of words, whose part is to denote what other words are to name. They have been well named *Pronouns*, as if one said, which is used instead of nouns. And this proves evidently that these words commonly ranged among pronouns, *mon, ma, mes,* my; *ton, ta, tes,* thy; *son, sa ses,* his; *notre, nos,* our; *votre, vos,* your · *le mien,* mine, *&c. quelque* some, *quel* what, *chaque* every, *&c.* do not belong to this species of words, being only adnouns qualifying and restraining, instead of articles, the sense of the nouns before which they come.

As men cannot speak of things but in saying what they are, or do, or what happens to them, that is, in giving them qualities, or showing their actions by events, it was necessary to establish words for these two ends. Those used to denote the Qualities are called *Adnouns,* or *Adjectives,* because they are added and joined to the nouns or substantives, to qualify the things named by them. Such is the third species of words.

The words designed to denote the actions and events, caused by the perpetual motion of all the parts of the universe, make the fourth species, called *Verbs;* which signifies *speech* in an eminent sense, because there can be no speech without verbs.

In considering the Qualifications and Actions, it appeared that they were susceptible of different modifications. From thence arose the *Adverbs;* which are only modifications of actions and qualifications, and signify what is added to the verbs.

The number of the same objects, or the repeating of the same actions caused of course the invention of another species of words proper to denote *Calculation* or *Reckoning:* and these are the *Numerals,* or nouns of number, which cannot be ranged in any

other class, being as different from the other words by their accidents, as by the origin and cause of their institution.

Afterwards men saw that they wanted words proper to denote the relations that are put between things, in order to fix the idea of the one by that of the other. For which purpose they invented the *Prepositions*, which (as their signification is,) being put before a noun, denote the relation which it has with the noun or verb that comes before.

They likewise perceived that, things being often connected together, it was necessary to express those connections, in order to make a coherent and well-connected speech; which occasioned the species of words called *Conjunctions*, whose name shows plain enough the part which they act in speech.

*Lastly*, After providing for the words fit to express the name, denotation, qualification, action, modification, calculation, as likewise the relations and connections of things, they wanted moreover to express the passions and emotions of their mind; and to that end they invented *Particles*, which are more or less in number, according to the genius of languages.

Thus the Art of Speech turns upon nine species of words, vulgarly called by Grammarians *Parts of Speech*. Some add to them the Article; but I think it is only an accident in the noun, its power being to extend or restrain the signification of it: nouns being as often used without the article as with it; and therefore I have ranged the Article among the Particles. Others make a particular species of words of the Participle, which is nothing but a mode of the verb, and will not allow the adjectives to be one, but confound them with the substantives, though essentially different; so that Grammarians are not agreed as yet concerning the number of the parts of speech, nor what they are.

I have kept in my Grammar to the number and divisions of the parts of speech which seem to be more natural; though, upon the whole, it is very indifferent how many I admit, and how I divide them, so I thoroughly explain the proper use and construction of the words of the French language: which I think I have done in the most accurate and intelligible manner, in the third part of this Grammar. The narrow compass of this work does not permit me to enlarge more upon the relations that the parts of speech have to each other, and to the nature of things; nor to treat of the subdistinctions of the same parts of speech, and the reasons of them. (One may consult thereupon the learned Authors of *la Grammaire raisonnée, Port-Royal's Latin Grammar*, and the notes upon the English Grammar, which contains an abridg-

ment of the said works.) I shall only set down here the chief divisions, with the significations of such Grammatical Terms as most occur, and of which one must not be quite ignorant.

Words are considered both with respect to their Figure or Frame, and with respect to their Species or Origin.

Words, considered with respect to their figure, are either Simple, as, *juste*, just, *dire* to say; or Compound, that is, made up of one or more words, or that take some syllabical adjection; as *injuste* unjuste, *redire* to say again.

Words, considered with respect to their species, are either Primitive, which come from no other word, as *mort* death, *babil* prattling; or Derivative, which come from another word, as, *mortel* mortal, *babiller* to prattle.

Nouns are divided into Substantive and Adjective by most Grammarians. Nouns substantive are again divided into Proper and Appellative, or Common; and this last into Abstract, Patrial, Equivocal, Synonyma's, Verbal, Augmentative, and Diminutive.

A Proper noun is the particular name of any singular person, or thing, or place: as, *George*, *Londres*, London, *la Tamise*, the Thames.

An Appellative, or Common noun, is that which is applicable to all things of the same kind; as, *Animal*, *homme* a man, *Roi* a king, *ville* a city, *rivière* a river.

Men have besides joined two accessary Ideas to that of the noun. The one is a respect to the sex, called *Gender:* the other a respect to unity, or plurality, which is called *Number;* and both together are called *Accidence.*

An Abstract noun is a substantive derived from an adjective, expressing the quality of that adjective in general, without regard to the thing in which the quality is: as, *bonté* goodness, from *bon* good; *douceur* sweetness, from *doux* sweet.

A Patrial or Gentile noun is derived from a Substantive Proper, signifying one's country: as, *François* a Frenchman, *Parisien* of Paris, *Bourguignon*, *Gascon*, &c, of Burgundy, Gascogne, *&c.*

An *Equivocal* noun is that which has a double meaning; as, *un livre* a book, *une livre* a pound.

*Synonyma's* are words of the same import, or which express the same thing several ways; as, *chemin* way, *route* road, *&c.*

Verbal nouns are substantives or adjectives derived from a verb; as, *amour* love, *aimable* lovely, from *aimer* to love; *parleur* talker, from *parler* to talk, *&c.*

Augmentative and Diminutive nouns are substantives importing an increase, or lessening of the signification of their primitive: as, *lourdaut* a loggerhead, from *lourd* heavy; *fillette* a little girl, from *fille* a girl; *arbrisseau* a shrub, from *arbre* a tree; *lapereau* a young rabbit, from *lapin* a rabbit, *&c.*——Some diminutives have no resemblance at all to the substantives of which they lessen the signification: as, *bidet* a pony, being the diminutive of *cheval* a horse; *marcassin*, a young wild boar, of *sanglier* a wild boar.

§ I. *Observations on the Construction, Use, and Signification of certain Words, which most frequently occur in Speech, wherein chiefly consists the*

IDIOM *of* FRENCH.

Grammar should, if it were possible, treat of all the words of a language, and take notice of the signification of each singly; for it is not the art of making oneself understood and how, but of exhibiting one's thoughts with propriety and perspicuity; which cannot be done without a thorough knowledge of all the various significations and constructions of the words of which it is composed. The Genius of a language consists in the latter, the other relates to its idiom. Grammar hardly treats of the significations of words. It suffices for it to consider such constructions wherein the Genius of the language consists, and leaves it to Dictionaries to treat of the words and Idioms. I shall nevertheless consider here orderly the common Idiom of the French with respect to English; and have reserved for a particular book such Idioms as cannot be treated methodically.

I. *Amitié (friendship)* is often used in the singular for *favour, kindness:* as,

*Faites-moi cette amitié;* Do me that kindness, *or* favour.

*Amitiés* (in the plural) is said of *caresses*, and *making much of:* as,

*Il m'a fait mille amitiés;* He made very much of me.

II. *Amours* (in the plural) is feminine, except when it signifies *Cupids:* as, *Il n'est point de* laides *amours*; Never seemed a mistress foul. *Il y a autour d'elle mille* petits *amours;* A thousand Cupids stand around her.

III. *An, Année* (a year) are not used promiscuously; as is used,

°. After nouns of the cardinal number: as, *J'ai trente ans,* I hirty years old; *C'est une fille de quinze ans,* She is a girl of fif- ı; *Il y a vingt-cinq ans passée,* It was five and twenty years ago.
°. Before nouns of the ordinal number: as, *L'an quinzième 'Empire,* the fifteenth year of the Empire; *L'an mil sept cent rante-neuf,* the year one thousand seven hundred and forty- : (wherein the cardinal number is used for the ordinal). say, *le jour de l'an,* New Year's day; *le premier jour de l'an,* first day of the year.
*nnée* is used, 1°, After nouns of the ordinal number: as, : *est dans sa vingtième année,* or *Elle a vingt ans;* She is in twentieth year, *or* she is twenty.
°. After the article: as, *l'année passée* or *dernière,* last year; *née qui vient* or *l'année prochaine,* next year; although we *l'an de grâce,* the year of grace; *l'an du monde,* or *de notre rneur,* the year of the world, *or* of our Lord.
°. With an epithet, or adnoun, signifying any thing but sure of time; as, *Une bonne & heureuse année,* a happy new ; *Nos belles années passent bien vîte,* Our prime goes away quick.
°. We almost always use *année* before and after nouns: as, *grand nombre d'années,* a great number of years; *Il reste en- trois mois de l'année,* We have three months yet to come of year.

V. *Accoutumer (to use),* and *s'Accoutumer (to use* or *accus- oneself), Etre accoutumé (to be used),* require the preposition efore the next infinitive: *Avoir coutume, Avoir accoutumé* s last begins to be obsolete) require *de:* as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *l l'accoutume* à *le suivre;* | He uses him to follow him. |
| *l s'accoutume* à *lire;* | He uses himself to read. |
| *'e suis accoutumé* à *souffrir;* | I am used to bear. |
| *'ai coutume* de *perdre;* | I use to lose. |

*. *Agir (to act),* preceded by the particle *en,* and followed an adverb, signifies *to do by, to deal with,* or *use one:* as, *En bien avec,* or *envers quelqu'un,* or à *son égard,* To do well by , to deal well with him. *Il en agit mal envers elle* or à *son rd,* He uses her ill.
And when *agir* is used impersonally with the reflected pronoun *'agit, il s'agissoit),* it is englished as follows:
*De quoi s'agit-il?* What is the matter? *Il s'agit de faire cela,* s is the business in question; *Il ne s'agissoit pas de cela,* That

was not the business in hand; *Il ne s'agit pas de peu de chose*, It is not a trifling concern.

VI. *Aider (to help)* governs both the first and third state, as *Aidez-le à faire cela*, Help him to do that; *Aidez-lui à porter sa charge*, Help him to carry his burthen. It governs the third state, when it signifies *to share and divide the trouble with one;* and the first state, when it signifies *to help one with money, counsel*, &c.

VII. *Aimer* is *to love:* but *Aimer mieux* denotes commonly the choice which one makes of one thing before another, and is expressed by *to have rather, to choose rather*, &c. as *J'aime mieux celui-ci que l'autre*, I like this better than the other; *J'aime mieux rester au logis que d'aller me promener*, I rather choose to stay at home than go a walking.

VIII. The Present and Imperfect of *Aller (to go)*, coming before an infinitive without a preposition, denote a thing which one is, or was about to do, or which is, or was about to fall out, and is rendered with *to be going, to be ready, to be about*, or *upon the point*, and sometimes with a future only: as,

*Je vais étudier*, I am going to study; *Elle alloit chanter*, She was going to sing; *Je vais*, or *Je m'en vais partir tout à l'heure*, I'll set out presently. Nay, these two tenses are even construed with the verb *aller* in that sense: as,

*Je vais m'en aller*, I am going away; *Il alloit y aller*, He was going thither; *Nous allions aller chez vous*, We were upon the point of going to your house.

IX. The Present and Imperfect of *Venir (to come)*, coming before an infinitive with the preposition *de*, denotes a thing *just now* done, which is most times too expressed with these two particles: as, *Je viens de diner*, I have *just dined*; *Elle venoit de lui écrire quand*, &c. She had *just* written to him when—— *Le Roi vient de le nommer à cet Evêché*, The King has *lately* named him to that bishoprick.

*Venir*, before the infinitive with *à*, denotes, and is englished by, *setting*, or *going about something*, or *to begin:* as, *Quand il vint à danser*, When he began to dance.——*Se mettre à*, is another verb of the same signification: as, *Pour peu que vous lui parliez, elle se met à pleurer*, If you speak to her ever so little, she *falls a* crying.

Again: *Aller*, as well as *venir*, sometimes seems only to denote the possibility there is for the action of the verb following to happen, and is englished sometimes by *to happen, to chance*, and some

times by a Conditional tense only; as, *Il seroit perdu si sa femme venoit à savoir cela,* He would be undone if his wife should happen to know that: *Voyez où j'en serois, si elle alloit croire cela,* Mind what case I should be in, if she should chance to believe that.

*Aller* is also said, as well as *faire,* of things that fit, or do not fit one well: as, *Cet habit vous va bien,* This coat fits you well; *Cette grande perruque ne lui va,* or *ne lui fait pas bien du tout,* That great wig does not fit him at all.

*Aller, venir,* and *revenir,* are said of ships bound from one place to another: as, *Ce vaisseau vient de la Havanne, & va à Cadiz,* That ship is *bound* from the Havannah *to* Cadiz; *Nous allions à la Chine,* We were sailing to China; *Un vaisseau qui revient de l'Amérique,* A ship *homeward bound* from the West-Indies.

*Aller,* used impersonally with the particle *y* before, and a noun in the second state after it, is englished thus, *Il y va de l'honneur,* Honour is at stake; *Il y alloit de la vie,* Life was concerned in it, *or* life was at stake.

X. *Apparoître* and *Paroître (to appear).* The first is said only *of spirits* and *ghosts:* as, *Un ange lui apparut,* An angel appeared to him; *Les spectres n'apparoissent que dans la nuit,* Ghosts *or* spirits appear only in the night-time. The other is said of whatever falls under the eyes: as, *Le soleil paroît,* The sun appears, *or* shows itself; *Il paroît une Comète,* A Comet appears.

XI. *Avoir (to have)* is used instead of *être,* when we speak of *being old, hungry, thirsty, cold,* and *hot* (relating to the weather, as it affects men); as, *Il a six ans,* He is six years old; *J'ai faim,* I am hungry; *Je n'ai pas soif,* I am not thirsty; *Elle a chaud,* She is warm.

Observe that *chaud* and *froid* are indeclinable in these sentences; these words being then used adverbially; Therefore let not a woman say, *J'ai chaude,* and still less *Je suis chaude.*

But with respect to being hot and cold, the English Pronouns possessive, construed with the nouns of the parts said to be hot or cold, are made moreover by the pronoun personal, expressing the subject before *avoir,* in French, and the noun of the part is put in the 3d state; as, *J'ai froid* aux *pieds, My* feet *are* cold; *Il a chaud aux mains, His* hands *are* warm.

It is the same when we speak of any *pain, wound,* or *sore,* which we have got in any part of the body. We use *avoir* without a

pronoun possessive before the noun of the sick or wounded part, which is always put in the third state, and the words *pain* and *sore* are rendered by *mal:* as, *J'ai mal à la tête,* I have a pain in my head; *Il a mal aux yeux,* He has sore eyes.

*Avoir beau,* used to denote that one does a thing in vain, is englished several ways, as follows:

*J'ai beau l'attendre, il ne viendra pas,* I may stay long enough for him, he will not come; *Il a beau faire, il n'en viendra jamais à bout,* Let him do what he will, *or* what he can, *or* for all that he may do, he will never bring it about; *Vous avez beau lui donner des avis, elle ne veut suivre que sa tête,* It signifies nothing to advise her ever so much, *or* ever so well, she will follow her own head nevertheless; *Vous avez beau faire & beau dire, il n'en sera ni plus ni moins,* You may do and say what you please, *or* whatsoever you may do and say, *or* for all you may do and say, it will be so nevertheless; *Il aura beau dire & beau faire, je n'en rabattrai rien,* He may do and say whatever he pleases, I will not abate an inch on it; *Le pauvre homme eut beau appeler du secours,* It was to little purpose the poor man called for assistance.

XII. *N'avoir garde,* signifies *to have not the inclination* or *power* to do a thing, and is englished thus: *Il n'a garde de tromper, il est trop honnête homme,* He is too honest a man to think of cheating; *Il n'a garde de s'enfuir, il a la jambe cassée;* How can he run away, since his leg is broken?

XIII. *To do nothing but,* is *Ne faire que,* with an infinitive without a preposition: as, *Il ne fait que boire & manger,* He does nothing but eat and drink.

XIV. *To want none of, To have no occasion for,* or *no need of,* is *N'avoir que faire de:* as *Avoir affaire de* is *to want, to have occasion for:* as,

*Je n'ai que faire de votre argent,* I want none of your money.

*Elle n'a que faire de parler,* She has no occasion to speak, she needs not speak. (See page 400.)

XV. *Au reste, Du reste (as for the rest, besides),* must not be confounded. *Au reste* is used, when, to what comes before, something is added of the same kind, and is the sequel of it: as, *Cette poursuite ne se peut faire qu'à grands frais. Au reste elle a peu de bien, huit enfans, & elle est endettée;* This prosecution cannot be but very expensive; As for the rest, *or* besides, her fortune is but small, she has eight children, and is in debt.

*Du reste* is used, when what follows is not of the same kind as that which comes before, or is not essentially related to it, as, *Il étoit colère, bizarre, prodigue; du reste, homme d'honneur & bon ami;* He was passionate, whimsical, and extravagant; but in other respects, a man of honour and a good friend.

*Au reste* outdoes most commonly what has been said; *Du reste* always implies opposition, and signifies almost the same thing, as, *for all that, that being excepted.*

*Au reste* sometimes elegantly comes after the first word or words of the sentence; *Du reste* always comes the first.

XVI. *Aïeux* (plur. numb. of *aïeul*, Grandfather) is generally used to signify *ancestors* and *forefathers:* as, *Ses aïeux ont possédé de grandes charges,* His ancestors have enjoyed great places; *ancestors* signifying no more *Grandfathers* than *Great-grandfathers,* or *Great-great-grandfathers,* &c. But *aïeux* may be (though seldom) restrained to its first signification of the plural of *aïeul:* as, *Ses deux aïeux ont été honorés des plus belles charges du Royaume,* Both his grandfathers have been honoured with the handsomest places in the kingdom.

XVII. *To know,* is both *Savoir* and *Connoître,* with the difference, that the former is said of Sciences and things that are properly the object of the intellectual faculties, and have been studied or got by heart: as, *Savez-vous votre leçon?* Can you say your lesson? *Il sait le Latin,* He understands Latin; *Je sais ce que vous dites,* I know what you say; *Il sait mieux qu'il ne dit,* He knows better than he says.

The latter is said of things that are the object of our senses, and import properly *being acquainted with:* as, *Je connois cet homme-là,* I know that man; *Il connoît ce pays-là,* He knows that country.

Again: Whenever *to know* can be resolved by *to understand,* it is *savoir,* otherwise it is *connoître.*

*Savoir bon gré à quelqu'un d'une chose,* To take it well *or* kindly of him.

*Lui en savoir mauvais gré,* To take it amiss, *or* unkindly of him.

*Faire savoir une chose à quelqu'un,* To let one know a thing, to acquaint him with it.

XVIII. *Devoir (to owe, to be bound),* when it comes before an infinitive without a preposition, denotes only futurity in the action of the following verb, and is made by the future of the

second verb in *English*, or by the verb *to be*, before an infinitive; as,

*Il doit venir*, He is to come; *Elle doit partir demain*, She will set out to-morrow; *Je dois parler sur cette affaire*, I am to speak about that affair.

Sometimes *devoir* signifies *must needs*: as, *Il est tout nu, il doit avoir bien froid*, He is all naked, he *must needs* be very cold.

XIX. *Ecouter* sometimes signifies *to hearken* and *to listen to*. as, *Ecoutez*, Hark'ye; *Il écoute ce que nous disons*, He listens to what we say; and sometimes *to mind, to attend*: as, *Ecoutez ce qu'on dit*, Mind what is said.

*Entendre* signifies *to hear* and *to overhear*: as, *Il nous a entendus tout le temps*, He has overheard us all the while.

XX. *Emplir (to fill up)* is said of liquids only: as, *Emplir un tonneau, une bouteille*, &c. to fill a cask, a bottle, *&c.*

*Remplir* is said of any thing but liquids, besides its signification of reduplification: as, *Remplir ses coffres d'or & d'argent*, To fill up one's trunk with gold and silver; *Remplissez le verre*, Fill up the glass again.

XXI. *Enfermer* is said of what is locked or shut up in a box, trunk, chamber, *&c.* and *Renfermer*, of what nature produces, and is contained, or included in the earth or sea; as,
*Je l'ai enfermé dans mon bureau*, I have locked it up in my bureau:
*Que de trésors la Nature ne renferme-t-elle pas dans son sein!*
What treasure does not Nature inclose in her bosom!

XXII. *Enfer*, with the Christians, is not used in the plural, except in the article of the Creed: as, *Il est descendu aux Enfers*, He descended into Hell.

But we say *les peines de l'enfer*, the torments of hell.

With the Heathens it is not used in the singular: as, *Mercure conduisoit les âmes aux enfers*, Mercury carried the souls to hell.

XXIII. *Entendre* is both *to hear* and *to understand*, according as the thing is the object of the sense of *hearing*, or that of the *understanding*: as, *Je vous entends*, I hear you, I understand you.

*Il entend cela mieux que vous*, He understands that better than you.

*Faire entendre*, is *to intimate*.

*To understand*, signifies also *savoir*, when the thing spoken of is a science or an art: as, *Elle sait le Latin*, She understands Latin.

And when the thing meant, or the object of the verb is any quality of things, *to understand* is made in *French* by *se connoître en*, or *à*: as, *Il se connoît en toile*, He understands linen-cloth.

*Vous y connoissez-vous?* Do you understand these things?

XXIV. *Espèrer (to hope)* is never said in *French* of what is present or past: because hope is the expectation of things to come, though not certain or sure. Therefore do not say, *J'espère que vous vous portez bien*, I hope that you are well; *J'espère qu'il s'est bien porté à la campagne*, I hope that he has been well in the country; But say, *Il paroît, il me semble*, or *Je présume que vous vous portez bien; Je me flatte*, or *J'ai lieu de croire*, or *Je m'imagine qu'il s'est bien porté à la campagne*: or else take another turn, as an interrogation, saying simply, *Vous portez-vous bien? Comment s'est-il porté à la campagne?*

XXV. *Eveiller* and *Réveiller (to awake, to call up)*: *éveiller* is said of a regular time, and intimates something natural and usual: as, *On m'éveille tous les matins à cinq heures*, I am awaked every morning at five; *Ne m'éveillez demain qu'à sept heures*, Do not awake me to-morrow till seven.

*Réveiller* implies something irregular and sudden, and is said, with respect to an extraordinary, unusual time: as,

*Un grand bruit m'a réveillé*, A great noise has awaked me.

*Le ministre veut qu'on le réveille toutes les fois qu'il arrive un courier*, The Minister will be awaked whenever an express *or* messenger comes.

XXVI. *Faire*, in its most general signification, is *to do*, or *to make*: but it has a great many more particular significations much in use.

1°. *Faire*, before an infinitive, without any preposition, signifies generally *to get, to bid*; *to cause, to order*, with the noun expressing the object after the verb in the infinitive, and not before, as in *English*: and when it signifies *to cause*, or *order*, the *French* infinitive is turned from its active state into the passive: as,

*Faites lire cet enfant*; Make that child read.

*Faites venir cet homme*; Bid that man come.

*Il le fit mettre à mort*; He ordered him to be put to death.

*Elle fit assassiner son amant*; She caused her lover to be murdered.

2°. Before the infinitive of *faire*, it signifies *to bespeak, to get made*: as,

*Il a fait faire une montre d'or à répétition*;
He has bespoke a gold repeating watch.

3°. It signifies *to see, to do in such a manner that:* as,
*Faites qu'il soit content,* or, } See that he is contented.
*Faites en sorte qu'il soit content,* }
4°. *To counterfeit:* as,
*Ceux qui font les fous à propos ne le sont guères.*
Those who counterfeit themselves mad seasonably, are hardly so.
5°. *To pretend, set up, personate,* or *act:* as,
*Il fait le Philosophe;* He sets up for a Philosopher.
*Elle fait la belle,* She pretends to be handsome.
*Vous ferez l'avare,* You will act *or* personate the Miser.
6°. *To dress, clean,* or *make up:* as,
*Faire la chambre,* To clean the room.
*Faire le lit,* To make the bed.
7°. *Se faire,* is *to use oneself to:* as,
*Se faire à la fatigue,* To use, *or* inure oneself to hardships.
8°. *Faire,* used impersonally with an adnoun, expresses the qualities of the weather: as,
*Il fait beau,* or *beau temps,* It is fine weather:
*Il fait froid,* It is cold.
9°. *Avoir,* with the word *affaire,* signifies *to want;* and with *faire,* but preceded by *ne* and *que,* it signifies *not to want, to need not, to have no occasion for:* as, *J'ai affaire de cela, & vous n'en avez que faire,* I want that, and you do not, *or* you have no occasion for it. (See p. 396.)
10°. *Faire* is used, as in English, instead of repeating a verb that has just been expressed in the sentence, especially after a comparative; but it is not so frequently used in this sense as it is in English: as,
*Il apprend mieux qu'il ne faisoit,* He learns better than he did.

XXVII. *Faire grâce* signifies *to forgive,* or *excuse:* as,
*Je vous fais grâce de la moitié des dépens;* } I forgive you half of the charges.
*Le Roi lui a fait grâce,* { The King has forgiven him, or granted him his pardon.
*Faire une grâce,* is *to do a favour:* as,
*Faites-moi une grâce,* Do me a favour. We also say,
*Il lui fait grâce,* He favours him, he befriends him.
*Dieu lui en fasse la grâce,* God grant he may.

XXVIII. *Fleurir,* signifies, in its proper sense, *to blossom,* and in its figurative *to flourish, to be in repute;* the French having but one expression for these two English words. But in order to distinguish more particularly between the proper sense and the

figurative, an irregularity has been introduced in some of the inflexions of this verb. The regular gerund of *fleurir* is *fleurissant*: as, *les arbres fleurissant*, the trees being in blossom: but in their figurative sense we say *florissant*; as *un état, un empire florissant*, a flourishing state, or empire.

The same irregularity takes place in the imperfect: we say, in the proper sense, *Cet arbre fleurissoit tous les ans deux fois*, That tree was in blossom twice every year: and in the figurative sense, *Un tel florissoit sous son règne*, Such a one flourished, *or* was in repute under his reign; *Les Arts & les Sciences florissoient alors*, Arts and Sciences flourished at that time, *or* were in high esteem.

We also say figuratively *un style fleuri*, a florid style; *un teint fleuri*, a blooming complexion.

XXIX. *Se Fier (to trust)* has a threefold construction. *Se fier à son mérite, se fier en son mérite, se fier sur son mérite*, to trust to one's merit.

XXX. *Fournir (to afford, to supply with)* is construed with both the first and third state: as,

*La rivière* le *fournit de sel, La rivière* lui *fournit du sel*,
The river affords him salt, *or* supplies him with salt.

The former way signifies, properly, that the river supplies him with as much salt as he can consume in his family. The latter may signify besides, that the river affords him so great a quantity of salt as to sell and trade therewith.

XXXI. *Gens (people)*. There is not one word in the French language liable to more several and odd constructions than this.

*Gens* is a plural noun, which is never said of a determinate number of people, unless it is attended by an adnoun. Therefore we do not say *trois ou quatre gens, six gens*, &c. as the *English* do, three or four people, six people, *&c.* but we say *trois honnêtes gens*, three honest people (meaning gentlemen); *dix jeunes gens*, ten young people, and *trois ou quatre personnes*.

*Gens* is masculine when it comes before its adnoun, and feminine when the adnoun comes first: as,

*Ce sont des gens résolus*, They are resolute people.
*Ce sont de bonnes gens*, They are good people.

But though the adnoun coming before *gens* is feminine, yet if there follows another adnoun, or a participle, this last must be masculine: as,

*Il y a de certaines gens qui sont bien sots*, and not *sottes*,
Some people are very foolish.

*Ce sont les* meilleures *gens que j'aie jamais* vus, and not *vues*;
They are the best sort of people I have ever seen.

The word *tout* coming before *gens*, is put in the masculine when it is attended by no other adnouns, or the adnoun coming before it is of the common gender: as,

*Tous les gens que, &c.* All people that, &c.
*Tous les honnêtes gens font cela*; All gentlefolks do that.
*Tous les jeunes gens sont volages*; All young people are fickle.

But when the adnoun attending *gens* is feminine, the word *tout* agrees with it too: as,

*Toutes les vieilles gens*; All old people.
*Toutes les bonnes gens*; All good people.

*Gens* signifies also *domestics*, and is used with a determinate number: as, *Il arriva avec quatre de ses gens*;
He arrived with four of his men, *or* servants.

XXXII. *Bonne grâce*, in the singular, signifies *gentleness, agreeableness*: as, *Elle a bonne grâce*; She is genteel.
*Il salue de bonne grâce*; He bows in a genteel manner.
In the plural, *bonnes grâces* signifies *favour* and *benevolence*: as,
*Il est dans ses bonnes grâces*; He is in his *or* her favour.
*Conservez-moi l'honneur de vos bonnes grâces*;
Do me the honour to keep me a place in your favour.

XXXIII. *Jouer (to play)* is both neuter and active in French; though it is but in very few cases active in English: as,

*Jouer quelque chose*; To play for something.
*Jouons un écu*; Let us play for a crown.

The particle *at*, used after the word *playing*, before the names of *Games* and *Exercises*, is expressed in French by the particles *à, au, à la, aux*: and the particle *upon*, before the names of *Instruments*, by *du, de la, des*: as,

*Jouer aux cartes*; To play at cards.
*Jouons* au *Piquet*, à la *Bête*, aux *Echecs*, à la *Paume*, aux *Barres*, &c. Let us play *at* Piquet, *at* Loo, *at* Chess, *at* Tennis, *at* Running-Bars, *&c.*
*Jouer* des *instrumens*; du *violon*, de la *flûte*, &c.
To play *upon* the instruments; *upon* the violin, the flute, &c.
*Jouer une pièce de Théâtre*; To act a play.
*Jouer gros jeu*; To play high, *or* deep.
*Jouer quelqu'un*; To make a fool of one, to play upon him.
*Jouer au plus fin avec quelqu'un*; To vie in cunning with him.
*Jouer de la prunelle*; To ogle, *or* leer.
*Jouer à quitte ou double*; To run all hazards.

*Jouer une pièce*, or *un tour à quelqu'un*, or *lui en jouer d'une*; To serve one a trick, *or* put a trick upon one.

*Jouer* before an infinitive, with *à*, signifies *to hazard, to venture*: as, *Vous jouez à vous faire tuer*; You venture your life.

*Il joue à perdre sa place*; He runs the hazard of losing his place.

*Se jouer* is *to sport*, and *se jouer de quelqu'un*, to make a fool of one.—*Jouer* is besides used in some phrases like these:

*Ne vous jouez pas à lui*; Do not meddle *or* make with him.

*Ne vous y jouez pas*; Do not fool with it; do not be such a fool as to do it.

XXXIV. *Jour* and *Journée (a day)*. *Journée* is usually understood and said of what is done during one day: as,

*Payer la journée aux ouvriers*; To pay the workmen for their day's labour.

*Marcher à grandes journées*; To make great marches.

*Il y a huit journées de chemin*; It is eight days' journey.

We say, likewise, in that sense, *la journée d'Actium, la journée de Fontenoy*, the day *or* battle of *Actium*, or *Fontenoy*, &c.

We use *jour* when we speak of time only, and absolutely: as, *les jours sont courts*; The days are short.

*Il y a plus de huit jours que cela est passée*; It is above a week ago.

We say, indifferently, *Voilà un beau jour*, or *une belle journée*; this is a fine day: *J'ai travaillé tout le jour*, or *toute la journée*; have been at work, *or* have studied all the day.

*Vivre au jour la journée*, To live from hand to mouth.

There is the same difference with *matin* and *matinée* (morning), and *soir* and *soirée* (evening).

XXXV. *Laisser* to leave, to let, and sometimes to forget: as,

*Laissez ici votre manteau*; Leave your cloak here.

*Il ne veut pas me laisser parler*; He will not let me speak.

*J'ai laissé ma bourse sur la table*, { I have left, *or* forgot my purse upon the table.

*Laisser*, being construed with *ne* and *pas*, attended by *de*, denotes only affirmation in the next verb, which is rendered in English several ways, importing generally *still, nevertheless, for all that*, &c. as,

*Cela ne laisse pas d'être vrai, quoique vous en doutiez*; Although you doubt of it, it is true nevertheless, *or* for all that.

*Malgré tout ce que je lui ai dit, elle ne laisse pas de le faire*; For all that I told her, she still does it, *or* does not forbear doing it.

*Vous ne savez que faire de ces bagatelles, elles ne laissent pas d'avoir leur usage*; } You do not know what to do with these trifles, yet they are not without their use.

XXXVI. *Livres* and *Francs (Livres.)* These two words signifying the same thing, are liable to several various and odd constructions.——We say, *Il a quatre mille livres de pension, dix mille livres de pension, vingt mille livres de rente, cent mille livres de rente,* &c. and never *quatre mille francs de pension, cent mille francs de rente,* &c. He has a pension of four, *or* ten thousand livres, twenty thousand, *or* an hundred thousand livres *per annum.*

We on the contrary say: *Sa maison lui a couté vingt mille francs*; His house has cost him twenty thousand livres: *Sa charge vaut cent mille francs*; His place is worth an hundred thousand livres, *&c.* and never *vingt mille livres, cent mille livres.*

When *cent* meets with *mille,* but coming after it, we always use the word *livres*; as likewise with the addition of these words *de rente, de pension* (when the words *a pension, a year,* or *per annum,* meet with livres); as, *Une somme de deux mille trois cens livres*; A sum of two thousand three hundred livres: *Six mille neuf cens livres*; Six thousand nine hundred livres.

We never say *un franc,* neither absolutely, nor with another number: as, *vingt & un francs, trente & un francs,* &c. we say, *vingt & une livres, trente & une livres,* &c. one-and-twenty, or thirty livres.

Neither do we say *deux francs, trois francs, cinq francs* (two, three, five livres), tho' we say *quatre francs, six francs, sept francs, huit francs,* up to *vingt francs.* We say neither *trente francs* nor *trente livres,* nor *soixante francs,* nor *soixante livres,* but *dix écus, vingt écus* (ten or twenty half-crowns). We say *quarante francs, cinquante francs, quatre-vingts francs,* and *cent francs.*

Neither do we say *une livre, deux livres, trois livres,* &c. though we write it in Bank-notes, Letters of Exchange, Bills and Accompts. We say *vingt sous* for one livre, *quarante sous* for two, *un écu* for three. Instead of *cinq livres,* we say *cent sous.* But when pence *(des sous)* make part of the sum, we then always use the word *livre:* as, *quatre livres dix sous,* four livres and ten-pence; *six livres huit sous,* six livres and eight-pence; not *quatre francs dix sous, six francs huit sous.*

When the sum exceeds an hundred, we, speaking of a debt, use indifferently *livres* or *francs:* as, *Il me doit deux cens francs,* or *deux cens livres*; He owes me two hundred livres: *Je dois quinze ou seize cens livres* or *francs*; I owe fifteen or sixteen hundred livres.

However, we say, *un sac de mille francs,* and not *un sac de mille livres*; a bag of a thousand livres.

When people distinguish, as in foreign countries, between *Tournois* and *Sterling* (the pound *Sterling* and the pound *Tournois*), they must always use the word *livre:* as, *Il a apporté de France dix mille livres Tournois, c'est-à-dire, près de cinq cens livres sterling*; He has brought over from France ten thousand livres, *or* pounds *Tournois;* that is, near five hundred pounds *Sterling.* —A livre, or *livre Tournois,* is twenty-pence *(Tournois).* A pound *Sterling* is two-and-twenty livres, *or* pounds *Tournois.*

XXXVII. *Un coup de main,* signifies *a bold action,* and *Un homme de main,* a man fit for a bold and hazardous enterprise; *Des coups de main,* handy blows; *main forte,* assistance; *A pleines mains,* largely, plentifully; *Sous main,* underhand, secretly.

*Donner,* or *Prêter la main à quelqu'un;* To help one.
*Donner les mains à quelque chose;* To consent to a thing.
*Etre en main,* or *à main pour faire une chose;* [hand easily.
To be in a convenient posture, *or* situation for one to use his
*En venir aux mains;* To come to blows, to engage.
*Prêter main forte à quelqu'un;* { To succour one, to come to his assistance with main strength.
*Donner de main en main;* To hand about.
*Cela est fait à la main;* That is done with concert.
*Lever la main;* { To take one's oath before a judge, to swear, to lay one's hand upon the Bible.
*To have a good hand at doing something,* } is { *S'entendre à faire quelque chose.*

XXXVIII. *To walk* (a verb neuter) is both *Marcher* and *se Promener,* with this difference, that *marcher* is said of going out for business, and imports going from one place to another; and *se promener* is said of taking a walk, walking for pleasure-sake: as,

*J'ai beaucoup marché aujourd'hui;* I have walked much to-day
*Je me suis promené aujourd'hui une heure dans le jardin;*
I have walked an hour to-day in the garden.

We say, *Se promener à cheval,* ou *en carrosse;*
To take a ride, *or* airing on horseback, *or* in a coach.
*Se promener sur l'eau, sur la rivière, sur la Tamise;*
To go upon the water, upon the river, *&c.*
*Marcher sur quelqu'un,* ou *sur quelque chose;*
To tread upon one, *or* upon a thing.
*Marcher sur les traces de quelqu'un;* to follow one's steps

*Promener* is also used actively: as,

*Promener quelqu'un*; To lead one, to make him walk.
*Promener sa vue sur plusieurs objets*: To carry one's sight to many different objects.
*Envoyer quelqu'un se promener*; To send one packing to the devil.
*Marcher droit*; To keep to one's behaviour.
*Je le ferai marcher droit*; I will keep him to his behaviour.

XXXIX. *Marier, Epouser, Se marier (to marry)*. The two first are active, and the last a reflected verb; but *marier* is said only of the Parson or Priest who performs the ceremony; and *épouser* of the person who is married: as,
*Monsieur A. doit épouser Mademoiselle B. & c'est Monsieur le Curé qui les mariera,*
Mr. A. is to marry Miss B. and it is the Rector of the Parish, or the Parson who will marry them.
*Elle ne veut point se marier*; She will not marry.

XL. *Mener* and *Porter (to carry)*, *Amener* and *Apporter (to bring)*, must be very accurately distinguished, and fitted to the speech.

*Mener* is said of such creatures, either rational or irrational, that have by nature the capacity of walking, and are not disabled, either through accident or illness: and *Porter* is said of things that cannot walk by their nature, and of persons and dumb creatures that are disabled from walking, on account of lameness or illness, and other infirmities: as,
*Menez Monsieur chez cette Dame*, and not *Portez Monsieur*, &c.
Carry the Gentleman to that Lady's house.
*Portez-y vos chansons nouvelles*, and not *Menez-y*;
Carry there your new songs.
*Menez le cheval à l'écurie*, or *chez le Maréchal*;
Carry the horse to the stable, *or* to the farrier's, and not *Portez*, because horses, dogs, &c. have legs to walk.
*Portez cette étoffe chez le tailleur*, Carry that stuff to the taylor's.
*Cet enfant est las, portez-le à la maison*;
That child is tired, carry him home (because he cannot walk).

Again: *Mener* and *amener*, *porter* and *apporter*, import a relation of place, answering to the question, *where, whither*: *Amener* and *apporter*, are used with reference to the local adverbs *here, hither*: and *mener* and *porter* to *there, thither*: as,

*Amenez-moi votre ami*; Bring your friend to me.
*Apportez-moi votre ouvrage*; Bring your work to me.
*Il les a amenés, or apportés ici*; He has brought them here, or hither.

All which instances are said with respect to the place where one is: but these following are said with reference to a place at any distance from that where one is.

*Il les y a amenés*, or *portés*; He carried them there, *or* thither.
*Portez votre ouvrage à votre sœur*; Carry your work to your sister.
*Menez-le chez le Commissaire*; Carry him *or* take him to the Justice's.
Observe that expression *to take one to a place*, rendered in French by *Mener quelqu'un à un endroit.*

XLI. *Mourir (to die), Se mourir (to be dying).* We say,

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Mourir* | *de faim,* | to starve with hunger. |
| | *de soif,* | to be choaked with thirst. |
| | *de froid,* | to starve with cold. |
| | *de chaud,* | to be extremely hot. |
| | *de peur,* | to be affrighted to death. |
| | *d'envie,* | to long mightily for a thing. |
| | *d'impatience,* | |
| | *de chagrin* | to grieve oneself to death. |
| | *de déplaisir,* | to be vexed to death. |
| | *de douleur,* | to have one's heart broken. |

XLII. *Neuf* and *Nouveau (new).* The construction of these two words is worth observing. *Neuf* must always come after the noun, and *nouveau* may come either before or after. But there is this difference between *neuf* and *nouveau*, that *neuf* is used only when one speaks of material things that are the object of Mechanic Arts; and *nouveau* of things that are the object of Liberal Arts, and relate to the mind, or else are produced by nature: as, *un habit neuf*, a new suit of clothes; *un nouvel ouvrage*, or *un ouvrage nouveau*, a new performance.

Of these two expressions in use, *un livre neuf*, and *un livre nouveau*, the former is said of its first coming out of the bookseller's shop, and having not been used or worn. The latter is said of, and imports, its not being extant before, and considers it only as being the work of the mind.

*Neuf* is also said with respect to what is newly done, and *nouveau*, to what surprises one, and was unexpected. Thus *une maison neuve* signifies a house newly built: and *une maison nouvelle*, one that we had not seen before, and is therefore the object of our surprise, and which may be an old one.

XLIII. *Parens*, is said of all those that belong to us, or we belong to, by the ties of blood, or of those of the same consanguinity; as, *Nos parens ne sont pas toujours nos meilleurs amis*, Our kindred and relations are not always our best friends.

Therefore *kindred, kin, kinsman, relation*, signify the French *Pa-*

*rens.* His *or* her parent, is *son père* ou *sa mère,* and his parents *son père & sa mère.*

XLIV. *Personne* has been considered in the Syntax with respect to its being a pronoun: but it is besides a noun feminine of a very extensive use, answering in its singular, sometimes to this word *person,* but most commonly to these, *man* and *woman, gentleman* and *gentlewoman*; as, *Je vis hier la personne dont vous parlez*; I saw yesterday the person, *or* the man, *or* woman, you speak of, (*L'homme* and *la femme* seldom being used, but out of scorn and contempt; and *le Monsieur,* or *la Dame,* in a banter, and through derision, or speaking of people of a station eminently superior to one's own).

In the Plural, it answers to the word *people:* as,

*Des personnes honnêtes & civiles*; Honest and civil people.

Although the noun *personne,* when used in the plural, requires an adnoun feminine, yet if two adnouns, or some pronoun refering to it, meet in the same sentence, the pronouns and the second adnoun must be masculine; regard being then had to the thing signified by the word, viz. *men* in general, and not to the grammatical gender of the word: as,

*Les personnes* consommées *dans la vertu, ont en toutes choses une droiture d'esprit & une attention judicieuse, qui les empêche d'être* médisans.

Such persons as are perfect in virtue have in every thing an uprightness of mind and a judicious attention, which hinders them from being slanderers.

Wherein the adnoun *médisans* referring to *personnes* is masculine, though the first adnoun *consommées* is feminine.—Whereupon it is to be observed, that in order to make an adnoun masculine that has a reference to *personnes*: 1°. There must be, between the noun and the adnoun, a sufficient number of words, to make one forget that the adnoun masculine refers to the noun feminine, *personnes:* so that the hearer, or reader, minds no longer the word, but only what is signified by it, as in the aforesaid instance.

2°. That the adnoun must not be governed by the verb that has *personnes* for its subject: otherwise it must be feminine, whatever number of words there may be between *personnes* and the adnouns. Thus we say:

*Les personnes, qui ont le cœur bon, & les sentimens de l'âme élevés, sont ordinairement généreuses*;

Good-natured people, who have elevated sentiments, are commonly generous;

and not *généreux,* because it is governed of *sont,* before which comes the subject *personnes.* For the same reason, we do not use

the relative masculine *ils*, though ever so far from *personnes*, when it is near the adnoun feminine, referring also to *personnes*: as,

*Les personnes qui ont l'esprit pénétrant, & une expérience de beaucoup d'années, sont presque toujours si* judicieuses *qu'*elles *se trompent rarement.*

People of a sagacious mind, that have the experience of many years, are almost always so judicious, that they are seldom mistaken.

We do not say *qu'ils se trompent*, on account of *ils* being too near the adnoun feminine, which determines it likewise to agree with the noun feminine.—Again, we say,

*Les* personnes *qui ont l'âme belle sont si* ravies *quand* elles *trouvent l'occasion de reconnoître un bienfait, qu'elles ne la laissent jamais échapper* (not *qu'*ils).

People of a noble soul are so delighted when they find an opportunity of being grateful for a good turn, that they never let it slip.

The first relative feminine, *elles*, determining the second in the same gender, though there is a pretty good number of words between the Antecedent and the Relative. But we say,

*Il y a à Paris une société de* personnes *très-*savantes, *auxquelles l'Europe est redevable d'un nombre infini de connoissances.* Ils *n'ont en vue que la perfection des Arts & des Sciences: & c'est dans ce motif qu'*ils *font tous les jours d'utiles découvertes.*

There is at Paris a society of very learned men, to whom Europe is beholden for a vast deal of knowledge. They have nothing in view but the improvement of Arts and Sciences: and it is with that motive only they every day make useful discoveries.

In which instance the pronoun *ils* refers to the thing signified by the word *personnes*, that is, *men*, and therefore agrees with the masculine; and the adnoun *savantes* agrees with the feminine, because it is next to the noun feminine *personnes*: as does likewise the relative *auxquelles*, which is next to the adnoun.

Here follows another instance with respect to number, wherein less regard is had to the noun than to the thing signified by it.

*De deux mille hommes qu'ils étoient, six cens demeurèrent sur la place, &* le reste *se* sauva *par la connoissance qu'*ils avoient *du pays.*

Out of two thousand men that were there, six hundred fell upon the spot, and the rest escaped, by their being acquainted with the country.

One should say, to speak conformably to the grammar, *par la connoissance qu'il avoit du pays*, since the pronoun *il* refers to *le reste*, which governs *sauva* in the singular.

XLV. *Pâque*, and more commonly *Pâques*, is masculine, when it signifies *Easter-day*: as, *Pâque est bien* reculé *& bien* chaud

*cette année;* Easter is very late and very hot this year: *quand Pâques sera venu;* when Easter is come.

But *Pâques* is feminine, and spelt without *s*, when it signifies the Jewish *Passover;* as, *Manger la Pâque;* To eat the Passover. *Préparer la Pâque;* To make ready the Passover.

*Pâques*, signifying the christian devotion at that season, is feminine, and in the plural number: as, *Mes Pâques sont* faites; I have received the Sacrament this Easter.

We say ironically of immoral people who receive the Sacrament at that time, *Faire de belles Pâques.*

XLVI. *Se Passer* de quelque chose (to do *or* to go without a thing). *Si vous ne voulez pas me donner cela, il faudra bien que je m'en passe;* If you will not give me that, I must needs go without it.

XLVII. *To think,* is both *Penser* and *Songer,* with the preposition *à* before its regimen: as, *Penser à quelque chose;* To think of a thing, to consider it. *Vous ne songez pas à ce que vous faites,* better than *Vous ne pensez pas,* &c. You do not think of what you are doing. But when *to think* is used as a verb active, and not neuter, it is *penser,* and not *songer.* Therefore do not say, *On songe de vous,* but *On pense de vous cent choses désavantageuses* · People think an hundred things to your disadvantage.

*Penser à mal;* To have some ill design.

*Il ne pense pas à mal;* He means no harm.

*Penser,* in the preterite, either simple or compound, before an infinitive without a preposition, signifies any thing that *was like* or *near to have been done,* but has not been done: and is englished by *to be like, to be near,* or *ready:* as, *Il pensa se noyer;* He was like to be drowned.

*J'ai pensé mourir*; I had like to die, *or* to have died.

*Nous pensames nous couper la gorge*;

We were very near cuitting one another's throat.

XLVIII. *More,* is *Plus, Davantage, Encore. Plus* is never used at the end of an affirmative sentence. Therefore say,

*Donnez-m'en davantage*; Give me some more, *or* more on it.

*En voulez-vous davantage,* or *En voulez-vous encore?* Will you have any more? *Encore un peu,* A little more; and never *Donnez-m'en plus. En voulez-vous plus*; *Un peu encore.*

*Davantage* can likewise be used at the end of negative sentences, but with the two negative particles, whereas *plus* requires but *ne:* as,

*Je* n'*en veux plus,* or *Je* n'*en veux* pas *davantage*; I will have no more, *or* I do not choose any more of it.

Neither does *davantage* govern a noun after it, as *plus*. Therefore don't say, *Mangez davantage de pain avec votre viande*, but *Mangez avec votre viande plus de pain que vous ne faites*; Eat more bread with your meat than you do.

*Encore*, at the end of negative sentences, does not signify *more*, but, *as yet*, or *again*: as, *Je n'en veux pas encore*; I will not have any yet.

XLIX. *Plaire (to please)* must be attended with the preposition *à*; as, *plaire à quelqu'un*, To please one. But the construction of this verb, used impersonally in these, and other like sentences, is very remarkable, with respect to the English.

*S'il vous plaît*; If you please. *S'il plaît Dieu*; If God pleases. *Cela lui plaît à dire*; He is pleased to say so. *Il a plu au Roi d'ordonner*; The King has been pleased to order. *Il me plaît de faire cela*; I am pleased to do so.

*Se plaire à quelque chose*: to take a pleasure, *or* delight in a thing.

L. *Picture* is in French *Peinture*, *Portrait*, and *Tableau*; but these three words do not signify the same thing, when they are taken in the proper sense.

*Peinture* signifies, 1°. the art of painting *or* drawing: as, *Il excelle dans la peinture*; He excels in painting *or* drawing.

2°. The colour in general: as, *La peinture de ce tableau n'est pas encore sèche*; The colour of that picture is not yet dry.

3°. What is painted upon a wall or wainscot: as, *On ne peut rien distinguer aux peintures du dôme de St. Paul. Les peintures du dôme des Invalides sont des chefs-d'œuvre de l'art*; One can distinguish nothing in the paintings of the Cupola of St. Paul's. The paintings of the Cupola of the Invalids are master-pieces of art.

*Portrait* signifies a picture representing any body drawn after life: *Voilà mon portrait*; That is my picture. *Le portrait du Roi ne lui ressemble pas*; The King's picture is not like him.

*Tableau* signifies, and is said of any picture upon cloth, wood, or brass, representing an history, a landscape, building, in short, any thing that can be thought of. Even what is drawn out of fancy, or after a statue, bust, or even after a picture drawn after life, is not called *portrait*, but *tableau*.

Therefore *Tableau* is equally said of *Portraits* or *Tableaux*; and *Portrait* is said only of the representation of one drawn after life.

But these three words signify the same thing, when they are used in the figurative sense:

*Il a fait* { *une agréable peinture* / *un agréable portrait* / *un agréable tableau* } *de toutes les personnes de la Cour*;

He has drawn a charming character of every one at Court.

LI. *Prendre (to take, seize, lay hold of)* is besides used in several other senses, as in these instances:

*La feu a pris à sa maison,* A fire broke out in his house.

*Prendre les devans,* To get the start of one, to be beforehand with him.

*Se bien prendre à faire une chose, s'y prendre de la bonne manière,* To go the right way to work, to take a right method, *or* course.

*Il s'y prend mal,* He goes the wrong way to work.

*De la manière dont il s'y prend,* As he goes to work, as he manages matters.

*S'en prendre à quelqu'un,* or *à quelque chose,* To tax one, To lay the fault, *or* lay it upon one, *or* upon a thing.

*Se prendre à quelque chose,* To take hold of something.

*Les gens qui se noient se prennent à tout ce qu'ils trouvent,* People who are drowning take hold of any thing they meet with

*Si l'affaire ne réussit pas, je m'en prendrai à vous,* If the affair does not succeed, I will come upon you, I will lay the blame upon you.

*S'il y a du mal, prenez-vous-en à vous-même,* If any thing be amiss, you may thank yourself for it.

*Prendre parti,* To enlist oneself.

*Prenez votre parti,* Take your resolution.

LII. *Prendre garde, Se donner de garde (to take heed,* or *care). Prendre garde à quelque chose,* to take care of a thing, to mind a thing, to take notice of it.

*Se donner de garde de quelqu'un,* To beware of one.

*N'avoir garde de,* To be far from, to take care not to, is besides used in some particular phrases, englished as follows:

*Il n'a garde de courir, il a une jambe cassée?* How can he, *or* how could he run, when one of his legs is broken?

*Je n'a garde d'y aller,* I am not such a fool as to go thither, *or* I will be sure not to go thither.

*Se bien garder de faire une chose,* To be sure not to do a thing.

*Prenez garde de tomber,* See p. 315, D. and 346, B.

LIII. *Rompre, Briser, Casser (to break). Rompre,* is said of a thing broken asunder; and when it is broken in pieces, we use *briser:* as,

*Un des pieds de la table est rompu,* One of the legs of the table is broken.

*Le table est brisée,* The table is broken to pieces.

*Rompre,* is said of metals, stones, and wood; and *Casser,* of frail things, as glass, earthen-ware, *&c.* as, *La colonne est rompue* or *brisée,* the post, *or* pillar is broken asunder, *or* broken in pieces.

*Le pot en casse,* The pot is broken. *Les verres sont cassés,* The glasses are broken. But we never say *rompre un pot, rompre un verre, de la porcelaine,* &c.

To bruise, is *bossuer, faire une bosse;* and to split, *fendre.*

In a figurative sense we say, *Casser un testament, un contrat, une sentence, des vœux,* and never *briser,* or *rompre un contrat,* &c. to reverse, *or* annul a will, to make void a contract, a sentence, vows, &c.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Casser un Parlément,* | To dissolve a Parliament. |
| *Casser un Officier,* | To cashier an Officer. |
| *Casser des troupes,* | To disband troops. |
| *Casser quelqu'un,* | To turn one out of his place. |

*Rompre la glace,* To break the ice, signifies, figuratively, to take the first steps in an affair, and overcome the first difficulties.

LIV. *Seulement,* signifies sometimes, *so much as:* as, *J'ai salue une personne, qui n'a pas seulement daigne me regarder;* I have bowed to one who has not *so much as* vouchsafed to look at me.

LV. *Suppléer (to supply, to make up)* is sometimes indifferently used either with the 1st or the 3d state; as, *Je suppléerai la reste,* or *Je suppléerai au reste;* I shall make up the rest. But *suppleer,* without the preposition, signifies, properly, *to make up what is deficient;* and with *à, to be sufficient for repairing,* or *making amends for the defects of a thing:* as, *La valeur supplée au nombre;* Valour supplies the deficiency of the number.

LVI. *Traiter mal (to abuse)* implies only outrageous words, *Maltraiter (to use ill)* implies ill usage with blows.

LVII. *Valoir,* is *to be good,* or *as good as,* when there is comparison: as,

*Vous ne les valez pas,* You are not so good as they are.

*Il valoit mieux qu'elle,* He was better than she.

It signifies *to be worth,* when one speaks of things bought and sold.

*Cela ne vaut pas dix schellings,* That is not worth ten shillings.

But *to be worth,* speaking of people's fortune and circumstances, is expressed in French by *avoir du bien;* and sometimes *avoir vaillant:* as,

*Il a dix mille pièces de bien;* He is worth ten thousand pounds.

*Il n'a pas mille livres sterling vaillant;* He is not worth a thousand pounds.

*Il a du bien,* He is worth money. *Il n'a rien,* He is worth nothing.

LVIII. *Voilà* (a word worth observing). It serves to show, and points at, somebody, or something, and has the force of a verb, making a complete sentence with a noun after it, or a pro-

noun before; which is usually englished by *there is, that is, there be, there are, those are*, &c. as, *Voilà l'homme*, That is the man, Behold the man; *Le voilà, la voilà*, there he is, there she is, there it is.

*Voici* is construed after the same manner, but it denotes, and points at, a very near object.—Sometimes *le voici*, and *le voilà*, are followed by a relative and a verb: as, *Le voici qui vient*, Here he is a coming; *La voilà qui gronde*, There she scolds, Now she is scolding.

But *Voilà*, followed by an adnoun, and preceded by a pronoun personal, denotes, and stands for, the verb *être*, in the present tense: as,

*Voyez comme les voilà mouillés*, See how wet they are.

*Comme la voilà triste*, How sorrowful she is.

*Nous voilà quittes*, We are quit, *or* even; *Les voilà fâchés*, They are angry, *or* vexed; *Voilà qu'on m'appelle*, Somebody calls me.

*Ne nous voilà pas mal;* We are in a fine pickle.

*Voilà bien du préambule;* What a deal of preamble.

*Les sottes raisons que voilà*; Very foolish reasons those.

LIX. *To be just, to have just*, followed by a participle, is expressed in French by *Ne faire que de*, or *Venir de*, and the English participle is made by the present of the infinitive: as, To be just arrived, *Ne faire que d'arriver.*

A child that is just born, *Un enfant qui vient de naître*, or *qui ne fait que de naître*, We have just finished. *Nous ne faisons que d'achever*, or *Nous venons d'achever.* The first way is more expressive.

LX The impersonal *Il y a* is construed with a negative, and *que*, in phrases worth observing: as, *Vous vous imaginez qu'il* n'y a qu'*à demander*, You fancy that you have nothing to do but ask.

*Elle croit qu'*il n'y a qu'*à dire*, She thinks that speaking will do

LXI. The names of some parts of some animals are not the same in French as in English.

We say *pied* (foot) of such animals only as are hoofed; and *patte* of all others. Thus we say, *le pied d'un cheval, d'un bœuf, d'un cerf*, &c. the foot of a horse, ox, stag, *&c. la patte d'un chien, d'un chat, d'une souris, d'un lion, d'un oiseau*, &c. the paw of a dog, cat, mouse, lion, bird, *&c.*

We say *les griffes d'un lion, d'un chat*, &c. a lion's, a cat's claws, *&c. les serres d'un aigle, & d'un épervier*, the talons of an eagle, of a hawk; *les bras d'une écrevisse, & d'un cancre*

claws of a lobster, crawfish, and crab: *les gardes d'un sanglier*, the hinder claws of a wild boar.

*La bouche d'un cheval*, a horse's mouth: we also say *les naseaux d'un cheval*, not *les narines*, the nostrils of a horse; *la gueule d'un lion, d'un chien, d'un chat, d'un loup, d'un serpent, d'un dragon, &c.* the mouth of a lion, a dog, a cat, a wolf, a serpent, a dragon, *&c.*

*Le groin d'un pourceau*, the snout of a hog; *le muffle d'un cerf, d'un lion, d'un tigre, d'un taureau*, the muzzle of a stag, lion, tiger, bull; *le museau d'un chien, d'un renard, d'un poisson*, the muzzle, *or* snout of a dog, a fox, a fish; *le bec d'un oiseau*, the beak, *or* bill of a bird.

*Les défenses d'un sanglier*, the tusks of a wild boar; *les soies d'un sanglier, & d'un cochon*, the bristle of a wild boar, and a hog; *le poil d'un chien, d'un chat, d'un cheval & des autres animaux*, the hair of a dog, a cat, a horse, and other creatures; *la crinière d'un cheval, & d'un lion*, the mane of a horse and a lion; *du crin*, horse hair (or the tail): The hair of the human body, is *le poil*, but of the head, is *les cheveux*.

We also say *la hure d'un sanglier, d'un saumon & d'un brochet*, the head of a wild boar, and of a large pike, and the jowl of a salmon.

Speaking of *Deer*, we call *bois* what the English call *horns*, or *head*; and we say, *un bois de cerf, de daim, de chevreuil*, the horns *or* head of a stag, deer, roe-buck; but we call *corne* the same when it is wrought and manufactured: as, *le manche de mon couteau est de corne de cerf*, the handle of my knife is of a deer's horn.

LXII. The sounds of birds and of beasts:

| | |
|---|---|
| *Les oiseaux chantent & gazouillent*,* | Birds sing and chirp. |
| *Le perroquet parle*, | The parrot talks. |
| *La pie caquette*, | The magpie chatters. |
| *Le merle siffle*, | The blackbird whistles. |
| *La colombe gémit*, | The dove cooes. |
| *Le coq chante*†, | The cock crows†. |
| *La poule glousse*, | The hen clucks. |
| *Le corbeau & la grenouille croassent*, | The raven and the frog croak. |
| *Le chien aboie & hurle*, | The dog barks and howls. |

* And the singing, chirping, or warbling of birds, is called by the French *ramage*.

† *Et coche la poule*; and treads the hen.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Les petits chiens jappent,* | The puppies yelp. |
| *Le chat miaule, & file,* | The cat mews, and purrs. |
| *Le loup hurle,* | The wolf howls. |
| *Le renard glapit,* | The fox yelps. |
| *Le lièvre crie,* | The hare squeaks. |
| *La brebis bêle,* | The sheep bleats, *or* bays. |
| *Le serpent siffle,* | The snake hisses. |
| *Le pourceau grogne,* | The hog grunts. |
| *Le cheval hennit,* | The horse neighs. |
| *L'âne braît,* | The ass brays. |
| *Le bœuf & la vache beuglent & meuglent,* | The ox and cow bellow. |
| *Le taureau mugit,* | The bull roars. |
| *Le lion rugit,* | The lion roars. |

§ III. *A List of* Verbs, *attended by a Noun without an Article, which form both together but one particular idea.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Ajouter foi, | | *To give credit.* |
| Avoir | accès, | *To have free access to.* |
| | affaire, *or* | *To have to do,* or |
| | besoin, | *To want, to be in need of.* |
| | appétit, | *To have a stomach,* or |
| | bon, } appétit, | *— an appetite.* |
| | grand, } | *To have a good stomach.* |
| | faim, } | *To be hungry.* |
| | grand' faim, } | *— very hungry.* |
| | soif, } | *To be dry,* or *thirsty.* |
| | grand' soif, } | *— very dry.* |
| | froid, } | *To be* { *cold,* / *hot,* or *warm.* |
| | chaud, } | |
| | cours, | *To take, to be in vogue.* |
| | envie, | *To have a mind.* |
| | dessein, | *To have a design, to design, to intend.* |
| | droit, | *To have a right.* |
| | égard, | *To have a regard.* |
| | coutume, | *To use, to be wont* |
| | espérance, | *To hope.* |
| | compassion, | *To compassionate, to commiserate* |
| | pitié, | *To pity, to have a pity of.* |
| | honte, | *To be ashamed.* |
| | attention, | *To attend.* |
| | part, | *To have a share, to be concerned in* |
| | patience, | To have patience. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | confiance, | *To repose a confidence in.* |
| | peur, | *To be afraid, to fear.* |
| | connoissance, avis, | *To have notice.* |
| | permission, | *To have* { *leave,* or *power.* |
| | carte blanche, | |
| | plein pouvoir, | *full power, and liberty.* |
| | tout pouvoir, | |
| | lieu, | *room,* |
| | sujet, | *or,* |
| | raison, | *reason.* |
| | justice, | *justice.* |
| | soin, | *care,* [care. |
| | grand soin, | *a great,* or *special* |
| | ordre, | *order.* |
| | occasion, | *an opportunity.* |
| | obligation, | *To be obligated.* |
| voir | tort, | *To be in the wrong.* |
| | grand tort, | *To be very much in the wrong* |
| | horreur, | *To quake with horror.* |
| | vent & marée, | *To sail with wind and tide.* |
| | querelle, | *To have a quarrel.* |
| | rapport, | *To respect to.* |
| | mal à la tête | *To have the head-ache.* |
| | mal aux dents, | *To have the tooth-ache.* |
| | mal aux yeux, | *To have sore eyes.* |
| | mal aux pieds, | *To have sore feet.* |
| | mal au ventre, | *To have the belly-ache.* |
| | mal au côté, | *To have a pain in one's side.* |
| | mal au bras, | *To have a pain in one's arm.* |
| | mal à l'épaule, | *To have a pain in one's shoulder.* |
| | mal au nez, | *To have a sore nose.* |
| | mal à l'oreille, *&c.* | *To have sore ears.* |
| hanter, | pouilles, goguettes, | *To call names, to rail at one at a strange rate. To rattle one bitterly.* |
| | matines, vêpres, | *To sing matins, vespers.* |
| hercher, | chicane, | *To cavil.* |
| | fortune, | *To seek one's fortune.* |
| | querelle, | *To pick a quarrel.* |
| | malheur, | *To hunt for misfortune.* |
| ouper cours, | | *To stop the course* |
| ouper court, | | *To abridge.* |
| ourir risque, | | *To run the risk.* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Crier vengeance,** | | *To call for revenge.* |
| **Demander** | **audience,** | *audience.* |
| | **avis,** | *advice.* |
| | **caution,** | *a security.* |
| | **compte,** | *an account.* |
| | **conseil,** | *counsel.* |
| | **grâce, pardon,** | *one's pardon.* |
| | **quartier,** | *To beg quarter.* |
| | **justice,** | *To demand justice.* |
| | **raison,** | *To demand a satisfaction.* |
| | **satisfaction,** | |
| **Demeurer court,** | | *To be at a stand, mum; to stop* |
| **Dire** | **vrai,** | *To speak the truth.* |
| | **faux,** | *To say a falsehood.* |
| | **matines,** | *matins.* |
| | **vêpres, &c.** | *vespers, &c.* |
| **Donner** | **atteinte,** | *to strike at.* |
| | **audience,** | *to give an audience.* |
| | **avis,** | *To give advice, to let one know* |
| | **beau jeu,** | *To give fair play.* |
| | **conseil,** | *To give counsel.* |
| | **caution,** | *To give bail, a security.* |
| | **carrière à son esprit,** | *To give one's wit full scope.* |
| | **congé,** | *To give leave,* (also) *a holiday.* |
| | **courage,** | *To encourage.* |
| | **permission,** | *To give permission.* |
| | **envie,** | *To put in mind, to set one agog.* |
| | **exemple,** | *To set an example.* |
| | **parole,** | *To give word.* |
| | **pouvoir,** | *To give power.* |
| | **plein pouvoir,** | *To give full power and liberty.* |
| | **tout pouvoir,** | |
| | **carte blanche** | |
| | **part,** | *To impart a thing to one.* |
| | **ordre,** | *To give orders.* |
| | **charge,** | *To charge one.* |
| | **vent,** | *To give vent.* |
| | **leçon,** | *To give a lesson.* |
| | **heure,** | *To appoint an hour.* |
| | **jour,** | *To fix upon a day.* |
| | **cours,** | *To make a thing current.* |
| | **prise,** | *To give one an advantage, a hold upon one.* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | quartier, | *To give quarter.* [*charge.* |
| | quittance, | *To give, write a receipt* or *dis-* |
| | rendez-vous, | *To give a* rendezvous, *to make an affirmative, to appoint a place to meet.* |
| nner | lieu, | *To give* room. |
| | sujet, | *To give* occasion. |
| | raison, | *To give* reason. |
| | occasion, | *To give an opportunity.* |
| | raison, | *To understand reason and sense.* |
| tendre | malice, finesse, | *To be acquainted with the jest.* |
| | raillerie, | *To take a joke well.* |
| | vêpres, | *To be at vespers.* |
| chapper belle, | | *To escape it narrowly.* |
| | abjuration, | *To abjure, to recant.* |
| | abstinence, | *To fast.* |
| | alliance, | *To make an alliance.* |
| | alte, | *To halt.* |
| | aiguade, | *To take in fresh water.* |
| | amas, | *To heap up.* |
| | argent de— | *To raise money with—* |
| | amitié, | *To show oneself kind to one,* or *to make much of him.* |
| | arrêt, | *To make an arrest upon one, to arrest him.* |
| | affaire, | *To make an end of a business.* |
| | attention, | *To attend, to mind.* |
| ire | binet, | *To make use of a save-all.* |
| | cas de, | *To value.* |
| | compte, | *To assure oneself.* |
| | affront, | *To affront.* |
| | banqueroute, | *To break, to turn a bankrupt.* |
| | bonne, *ou* mauvaise mine, | *To put a good* or *bad face on the matter.* |
| | brèche, | *To cut.* |
| | bombance, bonne chère, grand' chère, | *To feast, to live, to feed luxuriously.* |
| | choix, | *To make choice, to choose.* |
| | dépit, | *To spite, to vex.* |
| | difficulté, | *To make a scruple* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Faire | conscience, | *to scruple.* |
| | compassion, | *to raise compassion.* |
| | confidence, | *to trust a secret with one.* |
| | corps neuf, | * *to take a new lease.* |
| | éclat, | *to break out, to come abroad.* |
| | envie, | *to raise envy.* |
| | emplette, | *to market, to bargain, to purchase.* |
| | épreuve, | *to experiment.* |
| | excuse, | *to beg pardon.* |
| | face, | *to face.* |
| | feu, | *to fire.* |
| | long feu, | *to flash in the pan, to miss fire.* |
| | faute, | *to miss one thing, to want it.* |
| | fête, | *to give one a kind entertainment.* |
| | feinte, | *to pretend, to dissemble.* |
| | fond, | *to depend upon.* |
| | fortune, | *to make a fortune.* |
| | flèche, | * *to make a shift.* |
| | front, | *to face.* |
| | foi, | *to prove.* |
| | grâce, | *to favour.* |
| | gloire d'une chose, | *to pride*, or *take a pride in a thing.* / *to value oneself upon it.* |
| | gras *ou* maigre, | *to eat flesh*, or *abstain from it.* |
| | honneur, | *to do honour.* |
| | déshonneur, | *to disgrace.* |
| | honte, | *to shame, to disgrace one.* |
| | horreur | *to strike with horror.* |
| | insulte, | *to abuse, to insult.* |
| | injure, | *to do an injury, to offend.* |
| | inventaire, | *to make an inventory.* |
| | impression, | *to make an impression.* |
| | justice, | *to do justice.* |
| | jour (se faire) | *to make way, to break through.* |
| | marché, | *to make a bargain, an agreement.* |
| | main basse, | *to put all to the sword.* |
| | mine de, | *to look as if, to seem.* |
| | montre, / parade, | *to make a parade* or *show.* |
| | naufrage, | *to suffer shipwreck, to be wrecked* |
| | ombrage, | *to give an umbrage.* |
| | pacte, | *to make a pact.* |
| | part, | *to impart, to communicate.* |

re,

| | |
|---|---|
| pari, gageure, | *to lay, to lay a wager* |
| pitié, | *to move* or *raise pity*, or *compassion* |
| peine, | *to make uneasy.* |
| plaisir, | *to do a pleasure.* |
| peur, | *to affright.* |
| partie, | *to make a party.* |
| pénitence, | *to do penance, to repent, to atone for* |
| présent, | *to make a present, to present with.* |
| place, | *to make room.* |
| provision, | *to provide,* or *supply oneself with.* |
| preuve, | *to prove.* |
| quartier, | *to give quarter, to spare.* |
| raison, | *to pledge one, to satisfy one.* |
| réflexion, | *to reflect.* |
| réparation, | *to make a satisfaction.* |
| ressort, | *to fly back again, to spring.* |
| ripaille, | *to feast, to junket.* |
| route, | *to sail, to be bound to* (a sea term). |
| satisfaction, | *to do a satisfaction.* |
| semblant, | *to pretend, to feign, to make as if one were.* |
| scrupule, | *to scruple.* |
| sentinelle, | *to stand sentry.* |
| serment, | *to make an oath.* |
| signe, | *to make a sign, to beckon, nod, wink.* |
| tapage, | *to make a clutter, to keep a racket.* |
| tort, | *to wrong.* |
| trafic *ou* commerce, | *to traffic, to deal, to trade.* |
| trève, | *to forbear.* |
| trophée, | *to glory in a thing, to pride oneself in it.* |
| usage, | *to use, to make use of.* |
| vie qui dure, | *to live within compass.* *to spare oneself.* |
| bonne vie, joyeuse vie, | *to lead a merry life.* |
| voile, | *to set sail, to make sail.* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Il fait, | jour, | *It is day-light, or broad-day.* |
| | clair, | *day-light, or broad-day.* |
| | nuit, | *night.* |
| | sombre, | *cloudy.* |
| | obscur, | *dusk.* |
| | chaud, | *hot.* |
| | froid, | *cold.* |
| | beau / mauvais / vilain temps, | *fine. / fair / bad weather.* |
| | sale, / crotté, | *dirty.* |
| | du brouillard, | *foggy.* |
| | du vent, | *the wind blows, it is windy.* |
| | soleil, | *the sun shines.* |
| | clair de lune, | *it is moon light, the moon shine* |
| Filer | doux, | *to give fair words.* |
| Gâgner | pays, | *to scamper away.* |
| Jeter | feu & flammes, | *to fret and fume.* |
| Lâche | prise, | *to let go one's hold.* |
| Laisser | parole, | *to leave word.* |
| Lier, | amitié / commerce, | *to engage in a friendship an correspondence with one.* |
| Mettre | bas, | *to bring forth.* |
| | fin, | *to put an end.* |
| | pied à terre, | *to light or alight.* |
| | ordre à ses affaires, | *to settle one's affairs.* |
| Obtenir | permission, | *to obtain leave.* |
| Parler | raison, | *to speak reason, or plain sense.* |
| | clair, | *reason, or plain sense.* |
| | juste, | *right.* |
| | vrai, | *the truth.* |
| | François, | *French.* |
| | Latin, | *Latin.* |
| | Anglois, &c. | *English, &c.* |
| Prendre | courage, | *to be disheartened, to despond* |
| | patience, | *to lose patience.* |
| | terre, | *to go out of one's depth.* |
| | fond, | *to drive with the anchors* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| er | baggage, | *to pack away, to pack up one's all. to truss up bag and baggage.* |
| ter | bonheur, malheur, guignon, | *to bear* (*good* / *ill* / *bad*) *luck.* |
| | compassion, | *to pity.* |
| | coup, | *to hit* or *strike home.* |
| | préjudice, | *to prejudice, to be prejudicial.* |
| | envie, | *to bear envy.* |
| | témoignage, | *to bear witness.* |
| | honneur, | *to honour.* |
| | respect, | *to respect.* |
| ndre | avantage, | *to take advantage of.* |
| | chair, | *to gather flesh.* |
| | courage, | *to cheer up, to take courage.* |
| | conseil, avis, | *to take one's advice.* |
| | congé, | *to take one's leave of one.* |
| | garde, | *to take care* or *notice.* |
| | feu, | *to take* or *catch fire.* |
| | confiance, | *to confide.* |
| | connoissance, | *to take notice* or *to inform oneself.* |
| | couleur, | *to begin to be brown.* |
| | cours, | *to take, to be in vogue.* |
| | heure, | *to fix upon a time, day, and hour.* |
| | exemple sur quelqu'un, | *to take example by one, to square one's life* or *conduct by his.* |
| | faveur, | *to get favour.* |
| | fin, | *to end.* |
| | goût, | *to like.* |
| | jour, | *to appoint a day, to make an assignation.* |
| | haleine, | *to take one's breath.* |
| | langue, | *to get intelligence, to find out.* |
| | naissance, | *to be born.* |
| | médecine, | *to take physic.* |
| | pitié, | *to take pity,* or *compassion, to commiserate.* |
| | part, intérêt, | *to take a part, to concern oneself in a thing.* |
| | plaisir, | *to take pleasure, to delight.* |
| | place, | *to take one's place.* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Prendre | patience, | *to take patience, to bear* or *wait patiently.* |
| | possession, | *to enter into possession.* |
| | pied, | *to take, to set footing.* |
| | racine, | *to take root, to strike, get a footing.* |
| | séance, | *to take one's place (in).* |
| | sel, | *to take salt.* |
| | soin, | *to take care of, to look to,* or *after a thing.* |
| | suif, (*said of a candle*) | *to be lighting, to light.* |
| | terre, | *to land, to get ashore.* |
| | prétexte, | *to take a pretence.* |
| | parti, | *to enlist as a soldier.* |
| Prêter serment, | | *to take an oath.* |
| Promettre monts & merveilles, | | *to promise wonders.* |
| Recevoir ordre, | | *to receive orders.* |
| Rendre | compte, | *to account for,* or *give an account for.* |
| | gorge, | *to bring off the stomach, to disgorge, to refund.* |
| | gloire, | *to give glory.* |
| | grâce, | *to return thanks.* |
| | hommage, | *to pay homage.* |
| | justice, | *to do justice.* |
| | raison, | *to give an account of.* |
| | service, | *to do service.* |
| | témoignage, | *to witness.* |
| | visite, | *to pay a visit.* |
| Savoir | gré, | *to take a thing kindly.* |
| Tenir | bon, | *to stand firm, not to get over.* |
| | compte, | *to make account, to value.* |
| | lieu, | *to be as* or *in the place of.* |
| | tête, | *to cope with one, to oppose, to resist.* |
| | parole, | *to be as good as one's word.* |
| | pied (à boule), | *to stand fair.* |
| | table ouverte, | *to keep an open table.* |
| | boutique, | *to be a shop-keeper.* |
| | café, | *to keep a coffee-house.* |
| | cabaret, *&c.* | *to keep an ale-house, &c.* |
| Tirer avantage *or* parti de, | | *to make an advantage of.* |
| Vivre content, | | *to live contentedly.* |
| Vouloir mal à quelqu'un, | | *to bear one a grudge.* |

*To which add the adnouns used with* c'est: *as,* c'est fâcheux, dommage, honteux, *&c. It is sad, pity, a shame.*

## § IV. *Observations upon* VERBS, *considered with respect to the Idiom of the English Tongue.*

WE have seen how verbs are conjugated in English by means of these signs, *do, did; shall, will; can, may; might, could, should, would;* and *let;* which, being put before the verb, distinguish its moods and tenses, except the preterite, which is distinguished by a particular termination. But the same particles are also verbs, having particular significations of themselves, which must be carefully distinguished from their nature of signs. In order to which make the following observations:

1°. *Do* and *did* are construed with any verb, to express its present or past action more fully, distinctly, and emphatically; as, *I do love,* for *I love* (J'aime); *I did love,* for *I loved* (J'aimois, or J'aimai). But

*Do* and *did* signify only action of themselves, and are expressed in French by *faire,* being conjugated like other verbs with their signs, except in the present and imperfect tenses:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* | I do, | *Je fais,* |
| *Imp.* / *Pret.* | I did, | *Je faisois.* / *Je fis.* |
| *Fut.* | I shall or will do, | *Je ferai.* |
| *Cond.* | I should, would, *&c.* do, | *Je ferois.* |
| *Comp.* | I have done, *&c.* | *J'ai fait,* &c. as in the sixth [Conjugation. |

2°. *Will* and *would,* or *wou'd,* which denote the time to come when they are placed before verbs, are also used in the sense of *willing*; to wit, when they imply *order, command, will,* and *earnestness* of desire; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| I *will* have you do so; | *Je* veux *que vous fassiez cela.* |
| He *will* not have him study; | *Il ne* veut *pas qu'il étudie.* |
| You *would* have us do it; | *Vous* vouliez *que nous le fissions* |
| You *would* have us had done it; | *Vous* vouliez *ou vous* voudriez *que nous l'eussions fait.* |

*Pres* and *Fut.* I will, *Je veux. Je voudrai,* for *I am* or *shall be willing.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Imp.* / *Pret.* / *Cond.* / *Comp.* | I would | *Je voulois,* / *Je voulus,* / *Je voudrois,* / *J'ai, J'avois voulu,* &c. | for | *I was* / *I was* / *I would,* &c. be / *I have, I had* been — *willing.* |

3°. *Should* or *shou'd*, is the sign of the conditional, but generally denotes the *necessity* and *duty* of doing a thing. It implies and stands for *must* or *ought*, and is made in French by the conditional tenses of *devoir*: as,

We *should* do that; *Nous* devrions *faire cela.*
They *should* not lose their time; *Ils ne* devroient *pas perdre leur temps.*
You *should have* learnt your lesson; *Vous* auriez du *apprendre votre leçon.*

4°. *Can* and *could*, *may* and *might*, import *power* and *possibility*, and are almost always taken in the sense of *being able*, and made in French by *pouvoir*, though *might* and *could* are oftener used as signs, than *can* and *may*: as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *They could* not do it; | *Ils ne* pouvoient *pas le faire.* |
| You *could* or *might* work; | *Vous* pourriez *travailler.* |
| He *could* or *might have* done that; | *Il* auroit pu *faire cela.* |
| I *could* or *might have* gone thither; | *J'*aurois pu *y aller.* |
| I *can* or *may* do it; | *Je* puis *le faire.* |
| That we *may* see; | *Afin que nous voyions*, or *puissions voir.* |
| That I *might* read; | *Afin que je lusse*, or *que je pusse lire.* |

N. B. *Though there is a difference between* could *and* might, *and they cannot be used in English promiscuously the one for the other, yet I have coupled them together in the aforesaid examples, because there is but one way to render them in French, to wit, the* conditional *tense of* pouvoir.

5°. I might, I could, *Je pourrois*, before an *infinitive*, being made in French by the *conditional* simple of *pouvoir*, to be able;
I*would, *Je voudrois*, before an *infinitive*, being made in French by the *conditional* simple of *vouloir*, to be willing;
I should, I*ought, *Je devrois*, before an *infinitive*, being made in French by the *conditional* simple of *devoir*, ought *or* must;

when the same come before a *Compound* tense of the infinitive, they must be made in the French by the *Compound* of the *Conditional* of the aforesaid verbs, and the Compound of the English infinitive, without any preposition before: as,

I might *have* / I could *have* } *done that*, *J'*aurois pu *faire cela.*
I would *have done* that, *J'*aurois voulu, *or* souhaité *faire cela.*
I should *have* / I ought to *have* } *done* that, *J'*aurois du *faire cela.*

* I could, is also *Je pouvois*, *Je pus*, and *J'ai pu*; I would, *Je voulois*, *Je voulus*, *J'ai voulu*; and I ought, *Je devois*, *J'ai du.*

In all other cases *do, did, shall, will, should,* &c. are only signs which (with the verb to which they are joined) are expressed in French by one word only, to wit, the person of any tense simple or compound. Therefore do not say,

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *Je* fais *aimer,* | | *J'aime,* I do love. |
| *Je* faisois, *or* fis *travailler,* | | *Je travaillai,* I did work |
| *Nous* voulons, *or* voudrons *aller,* | } but | *Nous irons,* we shall or will go. |
| *Vous* vouliez, *or* voudriez *avoir,* | | *Vous auriez,* you would have. |
| *Je* voudrois *faire cela,* | | *Je ferois cela,* I would do that. |

Though it is sometimes indifferent to say with the signs *could, may, might.*

*Je* ferois *cela,* or *Je* pourrois *faire cela;* I could do that.

*Afin que je le* fasse, or *que je* puisse *le faire*; That I may do it.

*Afin qu'il* apprît, or *qu'il* pût *apprendre;* That he might learn.

Again: Do not say

*Je veux avoir vous faire cela,* or *Je veux vous avoir faire cela*; but *Je veux* que *vous* fassiez *cela;* I will have you do that.

*Nous ne voulions pas avoir eux venir,* or *les avoir venir*; but *Nous ne voulions pas* qu'*ils* vinssent; We would not have them come.

*Je devois avoir fait cela;* but *Je devois,* or *J'aurois du* faire *cela;* I should have done that, *or* ought to have done that.

*Vous pouviez,* or *pourriez l'avoir fait;* but *Vous* auriez pu *le faire;* You might have done that, *or* You could have done it.

*Il vouloit avoir nous avoir fait cela,* or *Il nous auroit eu fait cela;* but *Il* vouloit *que nous* fissions *cela,* or *Il voudroit que nous l'eussions fait:* He would have had us done that, *&c.*

6°. *Will* and *shall* are sometimes left out in English after the conjunction *when,* denoting a future action; but the verb must always be expressed in the future in French: as,

*When we have done that,* for *When we* shall *have done that, Quand nous* aurons *fait cela.*

When he is come, *or* when he comes, *for* When he *shall* or *will* have come; *Quand il* sera *venu.*

It is to be noted here also, that we use the present tense, and never the future, after the conjunction *si,* if, in a great many cases, when it is understood in English with the future: as,

If he *shall* come, *s'il vient;* though we say,

*Je ne sais s'il* viendra, I do not know whether he will come.

7°. The English use the signs *shall, will,* &c. without any verb expressed in the second part of the sentence, or in answer to a question; but we always repeat in French the future or condi-

tional of the verb, expressed in the first part of the sentence, or the future of *faire;* as,

Will you do that? I *will.* *Voulez-vous faire cela,* or *ferez vous cela? Je le ferai,* and not *Je veux.*

He will have me do that: but *I shall* not. *Il veut que je fasse cela; mais je ne le* ferai *pas,* or *mais je n'en* ferai *rien.*

Learn that this afternoon; *I will.* *Apprenez cela tantôt: Je l'*apprendrai.

It is the same with the word *do, have,* or *did,* standing for a present or preterite, expressed in the question to which we answer: which tense must be repeated in French in the answer: as,

Do you know him? Yes, I *do.*

*Le connoissez-vous? Oui, je le connois;* and not *oui je fais.*

Have you done that? Yes, I *have.*

*Avez-vous fait cela? Oui, je l'ai* fait; and not, *oui, J'ai.*

Did you go to Court yesterday? Yes, I *did.*

*Allates-vous hier, à la Cour? Oui, j'y* allai, or *J'y* fus.

Observe, that in such cases the verb repeated is also attended by its relation.

Moreover, observe, that the verb *vouloir* governs, as an active verb, a noun in the first state, for its direct *Regimen;* and will not take after it any such verb as *have, get,* or *take,* before its noun, as in English: as,

*Voulez-vous un livre,* and not *Voulez-vous* avoir *un livre?*

Will you have a book?

*En voulez-vous un écu?* Will you *take* a crown for it? :

*Voulez-vous du tabac dans votre tabatière?* and not *Voulez-vous avoir du,* &c. Will you *have* any snuff in your box?

It is the same with *avoir:* as,

*J'ai un beau tableau à vendre;* I have *got* a fine picture to sell.

8°. To express the continuance of an action or thing, in English, the verb is varied in all its tenses, by the gerund, with the verb substantive *to be:* as,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Pres.* | I am writing, | Instead of | I write. |
| *Imp.* *Pret.* | I was writing, | | I wrote. I did write. |
| *Con.* | I have been writing, | | I have written. |
| | I had been writing. | | I had written. |
| *Fut.* | I shall be writing. | | I shall write. |

That continuance of action is likewise expressed in French by the several tenses of *être,* but with the present tense simply of the infinitive, preceded by the preposition *à* instead of the gerund,

I am writing; *Je suis à écrire.*
I was writing; *J'étois à écrire.*
What were you doing? *Qu'est-ce que vous étiez à faire?*
When I shall be finishing my work; *Pendant que je serai à finir mon ouvrage.*

Sometimes *a* is put before the English gerund.

Sometimes also that continuance of an action is expressed in French by turning the verb *to be*, and the gerund, into a reciprocal verb: as,

It is a doing; *Cela se fait*, or *On est à le faire.*

The work was then forwarding; *L'ouvrage s'avançoit alors.*

Observe, that those ways of speaking are sometimes necessarily expressed by *on*: as, The house is building; *On est à bâtir la maison*, or only *On bâtit la maison.*

While the house was building, *Pendant qu'on étoit à bâtir la maison*, or *Pendant qu'on bâtissoit la maison*, which is better than *Pendant que la maison se bâtit* or *se bâtissoit.*

## § V. *Of the Construction of certain English Particles, with respect to French.*

THE English use their adverbs of place, *here, there, where*, compounded with those particles, *of, by, upon, about, in, with*, instead of the pronouns, *this, that, which*, and *what*, with the same particles: as,

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| hereof, *for* | of this, | *de ceci*, or *d'en.* |
| thereof, | of that, | *de cela*, or *d'en.* |
| whereof, | of what, of which, | *de quoi, duquel, desquels, dont* |
| hereby, | by this, | *par ceci.* |
| thereby, | by that, | *par là, par cela.* |
| whereby, | by what, by which, | *par qui, par lequel, par où.* |
| hereupon, | upon this, | *sur ceci.* |
| thereupon, | upon that, | *sur cela, là-dessus.* |
| whereupon, | upon what, *or* which, | *sur quoi.* |
| hereabouts, | about this place, | *autour d'ici, ici autour.* |
| thereabouts, | about that place, | *autour de là, là autour.* |
| whereabouts, | about what place, | *en quel endroit, où, vers où.* |
| herein, | in this, | *en ceci.* |
| therein, | in that, | *en cela.* |
| wherein, | in what, in which, | *en quoi.* |
| herewith, | with this, | *avec ceci.* |
| therewith, | with that, | *avec cela.* |
| wherewith, | with what, *or* which, | *avec quoi, avec lequel.* |

*Whose* and *its (dont)* are also used instead of, *of whom, of which, of it (duquel, desquels, de laquelle, desquelles).*

## § VI. *Of the various Significations and Constructions of the Particle* que.

It ought to have been observed, all along this treatise on the French language, that there are many particles, which, though the same with respect to their form, yet are very different with respect to their nature, or considered grammatically. Thus *le, la, les,* articles, must be carefully distinguished from *le, la, les,* pronouns: *à* preposition from *a* verb: *leur* pronoun personal from *leur* pronoun possessive; *si* conjunction conditional from *si* conjunction dubitative, and *si* comparative: as likewise several other words which are sometimes adverbs, sometimes prepositions, and sometimes conjunctions, according to the relation in which they stand to the parts of speech. But of all these particles there is none more variously used, and that gives more perplexity to the learner, in the construing of French Authors, than the particle *que.* Therefore it will not be amiss to make a particular section of this particle, and collect together all its several constructions.

*Que* is the fourth state of the pronoun relative *qui,* for both genders and numbers, and is said of all sorts of objects, rational, irrational, animate, and inanimate: as, *L'homme, la femme* que *vous voyez;* The man *or* woman *whom* you see: *Les malheurs* que *vous appréhendez;* The misfortunes *which,* or *that* you fear.

¶ Such relative pronouns *whom, which,* are most times left out in English.

*Que* is the fourth state, and even the first (though seldom) of the pronoun interrogative *quoi* (what): as, Que *dites-vous?* Qu'*est-ce que vous dites?* *What* do you say? Qu'*est-ce que de nous?* *What* wretched creatures are we?

*Que* is the second and third state of the pronoun relative and interrogative *que* and *quoi,* standing for *de qui, de quoi, dont, à qui, à quoi,* for both genders and numbers: as, *C'est de vous* qu'*on parle;* It is you they are speaking of. *C'est à vous* qu'*on s'adresse* To you they make application. (See p. 259, B.)

*Que* is a particle of which most conjunctions are composed: as, *Afin* que, That; *De sorte* que, So that; *Puis*que, Since; *Quoi*que, Although, &c.

*Que* is a conjunction, used in the second part of a period, joined to the first by the enclitic *&,* instead of repeating the conjunction *si,* expressed at the head of the first sentence: and this *que* governs the subjunctive: as, *S'il le souhaite, &* que *je le voulie;* if he desires it, and you will have it so.

*Que* is used in the middle of a sentence in lieu of the conjunctions *Comme, lorsque* (as, when), though they were not expressed.

fore: as, *Ils arrivèrent*, que *j'allois partir*: They arrived *as* or *when* I was about to depart. *Nous partîmes*, qu'*il pleuvoit à verse*, We set out *at a time when* it did rain as fast as it could pour.

Where *peut-être* occurs in the first member of a phrase, *Que* is its vicegerent in the second: as, *Peut-être l'aime-t-il, mais* qu'*il ne veût pas l'épouser*; Perhaps he loves her, but perhaps he is unwilling to marry her.

*Que* is used instead of *à moins que, avant que, sans que* (unless, before, without); and, like these conjunctions, governs the subjunctive, and requires the negative *ne* before the next verb: as, *Je ne serai point content* que *je* ne *le* sache; I shall never be contented *unless* I know it: *Je n'irai point* qu'*elle* ne soit *venue*; I will not go thither *before* she come.

*Que* is used for *jusqu'à ce que* (till, until) and, like this conjunction, governs the subjunctive: as, *attendez* qu'*il* vienne, stay *till* or *until* he come.

*Que* is used for *cependant* (yet, as yet): *Il me verroit périr*, qu'*il n'en seroit pas touché*; He would see me die, *yet* he would not be concerned at it: *Il auroit tout l'or du monde*, qu'*il en voudroit encore davantage*; Though he should enjoy all the gold in the world, *yet* he would wish for more.

*Que* is used instead of *afin que* (that, to the end that), and, like this conjunction, governs the subjunctive: as, *Approchez*, que *je vous baise*, Draw near, that I may kiss you: *Je vous prie de venir ici*, que *je vous* dise *quelque chose*; Pray, come hither, *that* I may speak to you.

*Que* is used in lieu of *de peur que* lest, (*or* for fear of), and, like this conjunction, governs the subjunctive, and requires the particle *ne* before the verb: as, *N'approchez pas de ce chien*, qu'*il* ne *vous* morde; Do not go near *that* dog, *lest* he should bite you. *Dépêchons-nous*, que *quelqu'un* ne vienne; Let us make haste, *for fear* somebody should happen to come.

*Que* is used in the place of *si* or *dès que* (if, as soon *as*) in the beginning of a sentence, and governs the subjunctive: as, Qu'*il* boive *de la bière, il est malade à la mort*; *If* or *When*, or *As soon as* he drinks beer, he is sick to death.

*Que* is used in the middle of a sentence for *depuis que* (since); as, *Il n'y a qu'une heure*, qu'*il est parti*; It is but an hour since he went away.

*Que* is used for *de sorte que* (so that): as, *Si vous n'êtes pas sage, je vous étrillerai*, que *rien n'y manquera*; If you are not good, I will flog you soundly.

*Que* is used before the second verb of a sentence beginning with the conjunction *à peine*, which it serves to compose (scarce,

hardly than): as, *A* peine *eut-il achevé de parler,* qu'*il expira*: He had *hardly* done speaking, *but* he expired, *or* he had *no sooner* done speaking, *than* he expired.

*Que* (than), is used before the noun or adnoun following an adverb comparative: as, *Le mari est* plus *raisonnable* que *la femme*; The husband is *more* reasonable *than* the wife. *Plutôt* que *de le faire*; Rather *than* do it.

*Que*, coming after an adnoun, signifies *comme*; and *quoique*, if the adnoun is preceded by *tout*: as, *malade* qu'*il est, il ne sauroit vaquer à ses affaires*; Being ill, he cannot attend business. Tout *savant* qu'*il est, il a bien peu de jugement*; *As* learned *as* he is, he has but very little judgment.

*Que*, after a noun of time, signifies *quand* (when); as, *Le jour* qu'*il partit*; The day *when* he set out.

*Que*, after a noun of place, signifies *où* (where): as, *C'est à la cour*, qu'*on apprend les manières polies*; It is at court one learns *or where* one learns politeness, *or* polite ways of behaving.

*Que*, (let) denotes the third person of the imperative: as, Qu'*il parle*; *Let* him speak. Qu'*ils rient*; *Let* them laugh.

*Que* is left out in these following imperative phrases of the sing. numb. *Viendra qui voudra*; Come who will. *Sauve qui peut*; Save himself who can, *or* let every one make the best of his way, *or* take to his heels. *Qui m'aime me suive*; Let him that loves me follow me.

*Que* (that) is used in the beginning of a sentence with the indicative; but such sentences as these are mostly titles to a chapter or section: as, *Qu'on ne* peut *prouver l'immortalité de l'âme, avant d'en connoître la nature, & que sa nature est incompréhensible*; *That* the immortality of the soul cannot be proved before its nature is known, and *that* the nature of the soul is incomprehensible.

*Que* is used between two verbs, to determine and specify the sense of the first, and governs sometimes the indicative, and sometimes the subjunctive, according to the nature and signification of the first verb. This determinate conjunction is sometimes englished by *that*, but most times left out and understood: as, *Je vous assure* que *cela* est *ainsi*; I assure you *that* it is so. *Je doute* que *cela* soit *ainsi*; I doubt whether it be so or no.

*Que*, in the middle of a sentence beginning with the demonstrative *c'est*, is conductive, and has the force of *namely*: as, *C'est une passion dangereuse* que *le jeu*; Gaming is a dangerous passion. *C'est une sorte de honte* que *d'être malheureux*; It is a kind of shame to be miserable.

*Que*, being immediately preceded by *c'est*, signifies *parce que*: as, C'est que *je ne savois pas que*—It is, *or* It was, *because*

I did not know that:—And when a word comes between *c'est* and *que*, *c'est que* is a redundancy: as, C'est *alors* que *je vis*; It was then I saw, *or only* then I saw.

*Que*, after the impersonal *il y a*, with a noun denoting time, is only an expletive: as, *Il y a dix ans* que *je l'aime*; I have loved her these ten years.

*Que*, being followed by *si* in the beginning of a sentence, is only an expletive; as, *Que si vous dites*; If you say, And if you say.

*Que*, after *tel*, or an adnoun preceded by the adverb *si*, is englished by *as*: as, *Soyez* tel que *vous voulez être estimé*; Be *such as* you would be taken for: *Je ne suis pas* si *fou* que *de le croire*; I am not *such* a fool *as* to believe it.

*Que*, after *autre* and *autrement*, signifies than; as, *Il est tout autre* que *vous ne disiez*; He is *quite* another man *than* you said.

*Que*, being used in the beginning of a sentence with the subjunctive, denotes wishing or imprecation: as, Que *Dieu vous bénisse*; God bless you: Que *je* meure *si j'en sais quelque chose*, Let me die if I know any thing of it.

Sometimes also *que* is left out in this kind of sentences: as, *Dieu vous bénisse*, God bless you; *Grand bien vous fasse*, Much good may it do you.

*Que* is also used in the beginning of a sentence with the subjunctive, to denote, by an exclamation, one's surprise, aversion, and reluctancy of something; in which case there is a verb grammatically understood before *que*; as, *Qu'il se soit oublié jusqu'à ce point!* I wonder, *or* is it possible for him to have forgot himself so far? *Que j'agisse contre ma conscience!* Must I do a thing, *or* How can I do a thing against my conscience!

*Que* is used adverbially in the beginning of a sentence of exclamation with the indicative, and is rendered into English several ways, according to the nature of the sentence; for if the verb coming after *que* is followed by another verb, *que* is englished by *how much*: as, Que *vous aimez à parler! How much* you like to talk!—If the verb coming after *que* is followed by an adnoun only, *que* is englished by *how*, only, before the adnoun: as, Qu'*il fait crotté! How* dirty it is! Qu'*elle est aimable! How* lovely she is!—Sometimes the exclamation, or admiration, is expressed without any verb: as, Que *de plaisir & de peine tout à la fois! How much* pleasure and trouble at once!—Sometimes also *que* comes after the noun, especially if indignation meets with admiration; as, *Le malheureux* qu'*il est!* What a wretch he is! *L'indigne action*

que *la sienne!* O the unworty action of his! *Les beaux livres que vous avez!* What fine books you have!

*Que*, in the beginning of an interrogative sentence, signifies *comment* (how): as, Que *savez-vous si l'âme de votre père n'est pas passée dans cette bête?* *How* do you know but that your father's soul had passed into that creature?

*Que*, beginning a sentence of interrogation, and followed by the negative *ne* only, stands for *pourquoi* (why): as, Que ne *parlez-vous?* Why do not you speak? Que ne *lui dites-vous cela?* Why do not you tell him that? And when *que* is followed by the double negative *ne* and *pas*, it stands for *quelle chose* (what or what thing): as, Que ne *fait-il* pas *pour s'enrichir?* What thing does he not do to grow rich? Que ne *lui dites-vous pas pour l'en détourner?* Is there any thing but you told him to deter him from it?

*Que*, in the beginning of a sentence of exclamation, and followed by *ne* denotes only a wish and a great desire: as, *Que ne suis-je déjà aux portes de Valence!* Would I were already at the gates of Valencia!

*Que*, in the middle of a sentence, but preceded by *ne* with some words between, signifies *seulement* (only, but, nothing but, &c.) as, *Le Roi n'a en vue* que *le bien public;* The King has *no other* view *but*, *or* only aims at, the public good. And when *que* is preceded by the two negatives, and followed by a verb, it signifies *à moins que* (unless, but), and the verb must be put in the subjunctive with *ne*: as, *Je* ne *sors* point que *je* ne *m'enrhume;* I never go abroad, but I catch cold.

*Que*, preceded by *ne*, and followed by the infinitive *faire*, without a preposition, signifies *nothing*; or *to need not*, if *faire* is followed by another infinitive with *de:* as, *Je* n'*ai* que *faire de cela*, I have *nothing* to do with that; *Je n'ai que faire d'y aller*, I need not go there. If *faire* is followed by the preposition *à*, it makes another idiom of a different signification: as, *Je n'ai que faire à cela*, I am not concerned with that.

*Que*, preceded by any tense of *faire* with the negative *ne*, and followed by an infinitive without any preposition at all, denotes only the continuance of the action signified by the second verb, and is englished by *to do nothing but:* as, *Il ne fait que boire et manger*, He does nothing but eat and drink.

*Que*, preceded by any tense of *faire* with the negative *ne*, and followed by an infinitive with the preposition *de*, denotes that the action signified by the second verb began some few minutes, very little while, one moment before, that it does or did just

just now begin, and is expressed by *just*, or *just now*: as, *Nous* ne *faisons* que de *commencer*, We *do but* begin, We have *but just* begun: *Il ne faisoit* que *d'achever, quand*—He had *just* finished, when—

*Que*, besides these 38 significations, serves to form a great many idiomatical phrases, which must be learnt in my Dictionary, at this word.

## § VII. *Of inseparable Prepositions.*

Besides the prepositions that have been fully treated of, there are several particles in the beginning of words which are mere prepositions that have passed from the Latin Tongue into the French, wherein they signify nothing of themselves, without the words that are composed of them; and are therefore called *inseparable* prepositions. These particles are *de, des, dis, é, ex, en, in, im, il, ir, ig, re, sur*, which may deserve the following observations.

1°. The particles *de, des*, and *dis*, usually serve, in the beginning of words, to denote the contrary of what is signified by the words which they compose, and have the same signification, as the English particle *un* in the beginning of words: as, *défaire* to undo, *dédire* to unsay, *décamper* to decamp, march off, *déranger* to put out of order, *désarmer* to disarm, *déshabiller* to undress, *désunir* to disunite, *disgrâce* disgrace, *disproportion*, disproportion, &c.—Sometimes also they only serve to extend more the signification of the simple: as, *découper* to cut (not in its common signification), to carve, *démontrer* to demonstrate, *disperser* to disperse, to scatter about, *dissoudre* to dissolve.

2°. *é* and *ex*, in the beginning of words, sometimes denote privation and separation, or taking off: as, *écervelé* hare-brained, *écrémer* to take off the cream from the milk, *effilé* fringed (not in the common signification), *essouffler* to put out of breath, *excommunier* to excommunicate, *exterminer* to exterminate, destroy entirely, *extraire* to extract, draw, *or* take out. Sometimes they denote production of an action, and add to, or extend more, the signification of the simple; as *ébranler* to shake, *échanger* to exchange, *échauder* to scald, *éprouver* to try, *exalter* to exalt, extol, *exhausser* to raise higher, *expliquer* to explain, expound.

The particle *en*, in words compound, keeps pretty near the same signification which it has with the simple, when it has a separable preposition; and usually denotes either the action whereby a thing

is in some manner put in another: as, *enclorre* to inclose, *enchaîner* to chain, *embrasser* to embrace, *emporter* to take away, *enrôler* to enlist, *envelopper* to fold up, involve; or the impression by which a thing receives such or such a form, and becomes such or such; as, *encourager* to encourage, *enrichir* to enrich, *enivrer* to fuddle, *engrosser* to get with child.

*in*, in the beginning of words, has sometimes the same use and signification as *en*; as in *investir* to invest, *insister* to insist; but it has commonly a privative power, and denotes quite the contrary of the signification of the simple: as, *inanimé* inanimate, *inconstant* inconstant, *incivil* uncivil, *infortuné* unfortunate, *injuste* unjust, *inhumain* inhuman, *innombrable* innumerable, *invincible* invincible, *inutile* useless, *&c.*

It is the same with these inseparable particles: *im*, in *immodeste* immodest, *imprimer* to print, *imparfait* imperfect; *il* in *illégitime* illegitimate, *illicite* unlawful; *ir*, in *irrégulier* irregular, *irrésolu* irresolute; *ig*, in *ignoble* ignoble, base; all which particles are but the same particle *in*, which changes its *n* into the initial consonant of the word to which it is joined, according to the Genius of the language.

*re*, in the beginning of words, usually denotes either reiteration and reduplication of the action denoted by the word; as in *refaire* to make *or* do again, *redire* to say again, *revenir* to come back again; or restitution and re-establishment into a former state, as in *redresser* to make straight again, *rallumer* to light again, *réunir* to re-unite, *&c.* Sometimes also it only serves to extend further the signification of the simple: as in *réveiller* to awake, *reluire* to shine, *repaître* to feed, *radoucir* to appease, to sweeten.

*re*, is found besides in the beginning of a great many words simple, without making a part of them; as in *recommander* to recommend, *renoncer* to renounce, *redoutable* dreadful, *se repentir* to repent, *&c.*

The particle *sur*, denotes excess of the action signified by the simple: as, *surabondance* superabundance, *surcharger* to overcharge, *surnaturel* supernatural, *surfaire* to exact, *survivre* to outlive, *&c.*

## § VIII. *Observations upon Proper Names.*

Reason requires that proper names of places, as Kingdoms, Counties, Cities, and Towns, should keep the same appellation all over the world, without varying according to the diversity of the languages spoken by the several nations; so that *England*, *London*, &c. should be called by the same name, by the French, Spaniards, Italians, Turks, Russians, *&c.* as well as by the En-

lish: yet custom has obtained among most, if not all nations, to adopt foreign names to the Genius of their own language. Thus England is called by the French *l'Angleterre*; London, *Londres*; Germany, *l'Allemagne*; Bohemia, *la Bohème*; Poland, *la Pologne*; Cracow, *Cracovie*; &c. but it is only the most renowned places whose names are liable to variation. The others keep their national appellation: as, *Kent, Bristol, Breslau*, &c.

Neither are foreign proper names of men subject to any alteration. The following observations are only upon ancient Latin and Greek Proper Names, that occur in History, to which custom has given a French termination.

1*st*, Latin names of men in *a* never change; *Agrippa, Dolabella, Nerva, Galba, Sylla*, &c. are the same in French as in Latin, except *Seneca* that is changed into *Sénèque*. But proper names of women in *a* take all a French termination: some *ie*, as, Julia *Julie*, Livia *Livie*, Octavia *Octavie*; and some *ine*, as, Aggrippina *Agrippine*; Cleopatra makes *Cléopatre*, and Poppea *Poppée*.

2*dly*, Names of men terminating in *as*, change *as* into *e not sounded*: as, Pythagoras *Pythagore*, Anaxagoras *Anaxagore*, Mecenas *Mécène*, Æneas *Enée*; Except *Léonidas, Pélopidas, Prusias, Phidias, Epaminondas, Josias, Ananias*, and all Hebrew names, that continue the same; as likewise names of women, as, *Olympias*, Alexander's mother, *&c.* and *s* final is sounded.

3*dly*, Names in *e*, take some the accent acute over it: as, *Daphné, Phryné, Circé, Thisbé, Hébé, Cloé*, &c. others make that *e* mute: as, *Calliope, Climène, Melpomène, Mnémosine, Amphitrite, Ariadne, Cybèle, Euridice, Pénélope*, &c.

4*thly*, Names in *ander* make *andre*: as, Alexander *Alexandre*, Leander *Léandre*, Scamander *Scamandre*, &c.

5*thly*, Names in *es* lose their final *s*, and the *e* is not sounded: as, Demosthenes *Démosthène*, Mithridates *Mithridate*, Arsaces *Arsace*, Isocrates *Isocrate*, Apelles *Apelle*, Aristides *Aristide*, &c. except *Cérès, Artaxerxès, Xerxès, Péricles, Chosroès, Verrès*, and all dissyllables, that continue the same; but their last syllable has the sound of *è grave*, and the second *x* in *Xerxès*, the articulation of *s*.

6*thly*, Names in *is*, and in *al*, continue the same: as, *Adonis, Omphis, Memphis, Sisygambis, Thalestris*, &c. *Annibal, Asdrubal*, &c. Except *Martial, Juvenal*, and *Mathilde*, from *Martialis, Juvenalis, Mathildis*.

7*thly*, Latin names in *o*, and Greek in ω, have the termination of *o nasal*: as, Cicero *Ciceron*, Corbulo *Corbulon*, Varro

*Varron*, Strabo *Strabon*, Dido *Didon*, Xenophon *Xenophon*, *&c.* Except *Labeo* and *Carbo*; *Clio*, *Calypso*, *Erato*, *Echo* and *Sappho*.

8*thly*, As to names in *us*, this distinction is to be made. Proper names of two syllables only: as, *Brutus*, *Cyrus*, *Crœsus*, *Porus*, *Pyrrhus*, remain the same; except Titus that makes *Tite*, and Plautus *Plaute*, and such names of saints as, *Petrus*, *Paulus*, &c. that have been entirely frenchified into *Pierre* and *Paul*. Those of three or four syllables, if they are much celebrated, take the termination of *e* not sounded; as, Tacitus *Tacite*, Plutarchus *Plutarque*, Homerus *Homère*, Virgilius *Virgile*, Ovidius *Ovide*, Horatius *Horace*, Petronius *Pétrone*, Pompeius *Pompée*, Quintus Curtius *Quint Curce*, Julius Cæsar *Jule César*, Aulu-Gellius *Aulu-Gelle*, Paulus Æmilius *Paul-Emile*, Lucretius *Lucrèce*. *Terentius* is changed into *Térence*, and *Antonius* into *Antoine*. The others, that do not occur so much, keep the Latin termination, *Fulvius*, *Proculus*, *Quintius*, *Virginius*, as likewise *Darius* and *Marius*; and the names of Barbarians, *Alaric*, *Chilpéric*, *Théodoric*. We also say *Les Gracques* the Gracchi.

9*thly*, Proper names in *ianus* take the French termination *ien*, *Quintilien*, *Tertullien*, *Cyprien*, &c. We say also *Chaldéen*, *Lernéen*, *Néméen*. But *anus*, preceded by a consonant, is changed into *an*; as, Coriolanus *Coriolan*. We also say *Trajan*, *Séjan*, *Titan*.

Names of Sects terminate also most commonly in *ien*; as, *Presbytérien*, *Luthérien*, *Nestoriens*, *Eutychéens*, *Sociniens*, &c. Some few only are excepted; as, *Calviniste*, *Anabaptiste*, &c.

As to the other proper names, ending with one or more consonants: as, *Agar*, *Cæsar*, *Castor*, *Jacob*, *Joachim*, *Minos*, *Béatrix*, &c. they remain the same in French.

Mr. *Menage* has made complete lists of all Hebrew, Greek, Latin, and Gothic proper names, which change their termination in the French, as also those that do not. Those who are desirous to know more of this matter must consult him.

## § IX. *Observations upon the Titles annexed by Custom to the divers Ranks and Stations of civil Life.*

It is the custom in *France* to call any Gentleman *Monsieur*, any married Gentlewoman *Madame*, and any Miss, young Lady, as well as any unmarried Gentlewoman (though she is ever so old), *Mademoiselle*. We say in the plural *Messieurs*, *Mesdames*, *Mesdemoiselles*. If in a company of young Ladies, or unmarried Gen-

tlewomen (*Demoiselles*), there is one married Gentlewoman only (*une Dame*), we say *Mesdames* in speaking of them; and not *Mesdemoiselles*. We say, in speaking of a woman, *La Dame*, or *la Demoiselle dont je vous ai parlé*; The Lady, or Miss, whom I told you of. But we do not say *le sieur* nor *les sieurs*. *Le Monsieur*, for the *Gentleman*, is very seldom used, and *le Gentilhomme* (in that sense) never. In public acts, and through contempt, or in a banter, we say *le sieur un tel*, instead of *Monsieur* (Master such a one) and although these words are composed of a pronoun, and we write in two words *nos Dames*, *nos Demoiselles*, yet we make but one word of *Monsieur*, *Messieurs*, *Madame*, *Mademoiselle*, *Monseigneur*, and even the pronoun possessive in *Monsieur* stands for nothing, when an adnoun comes before the word, so that the adnoun must be preceded by another pronoun thus, *Mon cher Monsieur*, Dear Sir. Yet we do not say *Ma chère Madame*, but *Ma chère Dame*, *Ma chère Demoiselle*, Dear Madam, or Miss; *Mon cher Seigneur*, My dear Lord.

In speaking to the King, we say, *Sire*, *Votre Majesté*, Sire, Your Majesty; to the Queen, *Madame*, *Votre Majesté*, Madam, Your Majesty. Then we use the personal and possessive pronouns of the third person relating to *Majesté*, instead of the personal pronoun of the second person: as,

*Votre Majesté ne peut montrer pour* son *peuple plus d'amour qu'*elle *ne fait*. Your Majesty cannot show more love to *your* people than *you* do.

*Votre Majesté a enfin triomphé de* ses *ennemis; &* elle *les convainc que*, &c. Your Majesty has at last triumphed over *your* enemies, and *you* convince them that, *&c.*

The King's Children, and Grand-children, are called *Enfans de France*. His brother's children, when he has any, are called *Petits-fils de France*. The eldest Prince (*le fils aîné de France*) is called *Dauphin*. In speaking of him, we say *Monseigneur* only, and he is never called *Royal Highness*: as, *J'aurai l'honneur de dire à Monseigneur que j'ai exécuté ses ordres*. The other Princes, his brothers, have divers titles, according to their appendages: as, the Duke of Burgundy, the Duke of Anjou, *&c.* and they are called *Monseigneur*, with the title *Altesse Royale*.

The Princesses of *France*, the King's daughters, are called *Mesdames de France*, as soon as they are born: *Madame de France l'aînée*, *Madame de France puisnée*, *Madame de France troisième*. The King's Brother is called *Monsieur* only, when he is spoken of; but when we speak to him, we say *Monseigneur*, *Votre Altesse Royale*.

*Les Petites-filles de France* have the title of *Mademoiselle.* If there is but one, she is called *Mademoiselle* only; if she has any sisters, they take besides the title of some *appendage:* as, *Mademoiselle de Clermont, Mademoiselle de Charolois,* &c. When we speak to them, we say *Mademoiselle, Votre Altesse Royale.*

The princes of the Royal Blood, but who are not *Petits-fils de France,* are called the first *Monsieur le Prince,* the second *Monsieur le Duc;* the others have the title of some appendage or other: and when we speak to them, we say *Monseigneur, Votre Altesse Sérénissime.* The late Regent of France, great-grand-father of the present Duke of Orleans (1790), was *Petit-fils de France,* being son to Gaston, Lewis the XIVth's Brother The present Duke of Orleans is only the first Prince of the blood. The son of *Mr. le Duc's* title is Prince of *Condé,* and that of the Prince of Condé's son is Duke of Bourbon: The present Prince of Condé's son is Duke of Bourbon, as the late Duke of Bourbon was his father.

The *Dauphin's* Consort is called *Madame la Dauphine,* and those of the children, grand-children, and Princes of the blood, have the same title as the Princes their consorts.

When the King dies, his Queen is called *la Reine Mère*; and *Madame la Dauphine,* then Queen, is called *la Reine.* If there were more Queens, as we have seen lately in Spain, the next to the *Queen Mother* is called *Reine-Douairière.* The widows of the Princes of the Blood are also called *Douairières* (Dowagers).

As to the Princes that are not of the Royal Blood, they are called *Mon Prince, Votre Altesse.*

The Chancellor of France, the Keeper of the Seals, the Members of the Council, and the Four Secretaries of State, the Dukes and Peers, the *Contrôleur Général,* and *les Intendans* (the Lieutenants of the Counties), are called *Monseigneur,* with the title of *Grandeur,* when we speak or write to them: in speaking of them, we only say *Monsieur le Chancelier, Monsieur de Maurepas.*

The Marshals of France, Lieutenants-General, and Ambassadors' titles, are *Monseigneur, Votre Excellence.*

We say to the Parliaments, to the *Chambres des Parlemens* (the Houses of Parliaments) and other sovereign Companies *(collectively), Nos Seigneurs du Parlement. Nos Seigneurs de la Grande Chambre.* To their Speakers *(les Présidens des Parlemens)* the Attornies-General of Parliaments, and other sovereign Courts *(distributively)* we say *Monseigneur, Votre Grandeur.* But *les Avocats-généraux, les Substituts, les Conseillers* and other Magistrates, are called only *Monsieur.*

The Consorts to the Chancellor, Marshals, *les Présidens*, and Ambassadors, as likewise those of Dukes, Counts, Marquisses, and Barons, are called *Madame la Chancelière, Madame la Maréchale, la Présidente, l'Ambassadrice; Madame la Duchesse, la Marquise, la Comtesse*, &c. with the titles of *Grandeur* and *Excellence*, if their husbands have them: but we do not say *Madame la Chevalière.*

The Bishop of Rome is called *le Pape* (Pope), with the titles of *Très-Saint-Père, Votre Sainteté* (most holy Father, your Holiness). His Legates, and Apostolic Nuncios, have the title of *Excellence;* the Cardinals, that of *Eminence;* and the Archbishops and Bishops, that of *Grandeur;* and in speaking to them we say: *Monseigneur, votre Eminence, votre Grandeur.* The direction of a letter, or of a Dedication to them, is *A Son Eminence, Monseigneur le Cardinal. A Monseigneur l'Illustrissime & Révérendissime, Archevêque*, or *Evêque.* We also write *Au Roi, A Monseigneur le Dauphin.*

Any other person of what condition or rank soever they are, as, *Marquis, Comte, Baron, Chevalier*, are also called *Monsieur*, the French having nothing to answer these petty English titles, *Worship, Honour, Reverence, Esquire.* But in speaking to them we say *Monsieur le Comte, Mr. le Chevalier.*

When we speak to one below us in the world, as a Gentleman to a Tradesman, we add his name to *Mr.* as, *Monsieur Renaut, je suis content de votre ouvrage, mais je trouve que vous êtes bien cher;* Mr. *Renant*, I like your work very well, but think that you are very dear. To a soldier we say *Camarade;* to a countryman, and others of the lowest class of people, we say: *mon ami, bon homme, bonne femme.*

I had almost forgot to say, that Lawyers at the Bar call one another *Maître* instead of *Monsieur:* as, *Maître Patru, Maître Chevalier*, &c.

The expressions of tenderness, used among the French, are *mon cher, ma chère; mon ami, mon cher ami, ma chère amie; mon cœur, mon cher cœur; mon petit, ma petite.* But we do not say, as the English, *mon âme, ma chère âme, ma précieuse, ma chère précieuse*, &c.

Children call their parents *mon cher père, ma chere mère, mon frère, ma sœur, mon oncle, ma cousine:* the pronoun possessive must not be left out, as in English, *Father, Sister, Cousin*, &c. They call their nurses *mamie, ma bonne*, (a contraction for *mon amie, ma bonne amie*): and they are called by them *mon fils, ma fille, mon cher, mon poulet, ma poule.*

School-boys call their master *Monsieur*, and they are called by him by their proper names, and never by the Christian one. *Sometimes he calls* his boys *mon ami*, petit garçon.

To conclude, the French language does not suffer many things to be called by their true names, either in conversation or writing, which can be expressed so in Latin, and other languages, without any indecency; but requires that they be expressed with Circumlocutions and Periphrases.

## § X. *Observations upon the writing of Letters.*

1°. Mr. *Vaugelas* pretends that a letter must not begin with *Monsieur, Madame, Monseigneur,* on account of these words being already at the top of the page. Indeed it is better to avoid the repeating of them, if possible; but, upon the whole, it is not so shocking as it seemed to our author.

2°. These same words must never be repeated in the same period, though it is ever so long; and the writer must endeavour to place them, either mediately or immediately, after the pronoun *vous:* as,

*Il n'appartient qu'à vous, Monsieur, de,* &c.
It becomes you alone, Sir, to, *&c.*
*Pour vous dire, Madame, ce que je pense,* &c.
To tell you, Madam, what I think, *&c.*

These honorary terms come also very properly after these conjunctions Copulative and Transitive, beginning sentences: as, *Après tout, Monsieur, — Au reste, Monseigneur, — C'est pourquoi, Madame,*—But,

3°. A special care ought to be taken, lest those terms should come in some part of the sentence, where they might cause a ridiculous equivocation, after a verb active; as,

*Je ne veux pas acheter, Madame, si peu de chose à si haut prix;*
I will not buy, Madam, so small a matter at so dear a rate.
*Je ne doute pas que vous n'ayez reçu, Monsieur, ce que je vous ai envoyé;*
I doubt not but you have received, Sir, what I sent you.

We write

*Je ne doute pas, Monsieur, que,* &c. *Je ne veux pas, Madame,* &c.

4°. If the letter is written to a King, a Prince, or a person of a distinguished rank, and is not a long one, the terms of *Votre Majesté, Votre Altesse, Votre Excellence, Votre Grandeur,* must be used with the pronoun *elle* instead of *vous.* If the letter is pretty long, *vous* may be used for variety (though not often); but it must always be attended by *Votre Majesté, Votre Grandeur,* &c.

5°. Never begin a letter thus: *J'ai reçu la vôtre du premier du courant,* ou *du vingt-six du passé;* I have received yours of the

1st instant, or the 26th past: or *Vous verrez par celle ci*, &c. You will see by this, &c. *Celle-ci, la vôtre, le courant*, and *le passé*, supposing always an antecedent, expressed before, to which they relate. However, as merchants do not scruple to write in this manner, those expressions may be looked upon as appropriated to trade and merchants' business; but quite banished from polite correspondence.

6°. Lastly, never end a letter, as in English, with a noun governed by a preposition. Therefore the ending of letters in the following manner will not do in French, and is contrary to the Genius of the language, inasmuch as the words are in a wrong order and false construction.

*Permettez-moi de prendre le titre de, Monsieur, ou le titre, Monsieur de votre très-humble Serviteur;* Permit me to take the title of, Sir, your most humble Servant.

*Vous connoîtrez-dans peu que vous n'avez pas obligé un ingrat, en faisant un plaisir à, Monsieur, V. T. H. S.* You will see in a short time that you have not obliged an ungrateful person, in doing a kindness to, Sir, Y. M. H. S.

*Il n'y a point de service qui ne vous doive être rendu par Mons. V. T. H. S.* There is no service but ought to be done to you by, Sir, Y. M. H. S.

*Sachant bien qu'il n'y a rien que vous ne voulussiez faire pour, Mr. V. T. H. S.* Knowing very well that there is nothing but what you would do for, Sir, Y. M. H. S.

Therefore nothing but a noun, expressing the subject or object of a verb can end a letter; thus,

*J'ai l'honneur d'être, Mr. V. T. H. S.*
I have the honour to be, Sir, Y. M. H. S.
*Faites-moi l'honneur de me croire, Monsieur, V. T. H. S.*
Do me the honour to believe me, Sir, Y. M. H. S.

## § XI. *Of some Adnouns, whose Signification is different according to the different placing of them before or after some nouns.*

These adnouns are fourteen or fifteen in number, which import, in the examples of the second column, an idea quite different from that which they do when considered as adnouns only, as in the first column.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *honnête,* | *Un honnête homme;* An honest man. | *Un homme honnête;* A civil man. |
| *brave,* | *Un brave homme;* An honest man, a gentleman. | *Un homme brave.* One that has courage. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *gentil,* | *Un Gentilhomme;* | *Un homme gentil;* |
| | A man nobly descended. | A genteel man. |
| *pauvre,* | *Un homme pauvre;* | *Un pauvre homme;* |
| | A poor man. | A man without genius or parts. |
| *sage,* | *Une femme sage;* | *Une sage femme;* |
| | A sober discreet woman. | A midwife. |
| *grosse,* | *Une grosse femme;* | *Une femme grosse;* |
| | A big fat woman. | A woman with child. |
| *cruel,* | *Une femme cruelle;* | *Une cruelle femme;* |
| | A cruel woman. | A hard woman. |
| *galant,* | *Un galant homme;* | *Un homme galant;* |
| | A clever well bred man, a complete gentleman. | One who runs after ladies. |
| *plaisant,* | *Un homme plaisant;* | *Un plaisant homme;* |
| | A good, merry, facetious companion. | A ridiculous and impertinent fellow. |
| *vilain,* | *Un vilain homme;* | *Un homme vilain;* |
| | A disagreeable man. | A niggardly fellow. |
| *furieux,* | *Un furieux animal;* | *Un animal furieux;* |
| | A huge creature. | A fierce creature. |
| *certain,* | *Une nouvelle certaine;* | *Une certaine nouvelle;* |
| | True *or* sure news (the certainty whereof cannot be questioned). | A certain piece of news (but which requires confirmation.) |
| *grand,* | *Avoir l'air grand;* | *Avoir le grand air;* |
| | To have a noble aspect, to look grand. | To copy after great folks, to make a great figure, to live grand. |
| | *Un grand homme;* | *Un homme grand;* |
| | A great man. | A tall man. |

Again, *Grand*, speaking of a man, is said with respect to his merit, parts, and stature; whereas, speaking of a woman, it is said with respect to her stature only. Thus *un grand homme* may equally well signify *a tall man*, and *one of great parts and merit*: but *une grande femme* signifies only a tall woman.

These five, used only in the following ways of speaking, are taken adverbially, and, as such, are indeclinable. (See also

t. *Ils sont demeuré court.* They were mum, or *Elles sont demeurées court;* They were at a stand.
*Il se fait fort de,* &c. He takes upon him to, *&c.* *Elle se fait fort de,* &c. She takes, *&c.* *Ils se font,* &c. They, *&c.*
, *Vous êtes assise trop haut,* You sit too high, } said of a
*Elle est assise trop bas,* She sits too low, } woman.
*Des deniers revenant bon,* So much money good, the remainder of a sum of money.

*eu, feue* (late), is an adjective without plural, and even with feminine when it is placed before the article, and we say:

*Feu la reine,* } the late queen.
*La feue reine,* }

II. *A List of the Nouns which are masculine in one Signification, and feminine in another.*

| *Masculine.* | | *Feminine.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| aigle, | *an eagle.* | L'aigle Romaine, or Impériale, | *the Roman, or Imperial eagle.* |
| Ange, | *an Angel.* | Une ange, | *Skate, a sort of fish.* |
| aune, | *an alder-tree.* | Une aune, | *an ell.* |
| Barbe, | *A Barb (a horse).* | Une barbe, | *a beard.* |
| Câpre, | *Corsair, a privateer.* | Une câpre, | *a caper (fruit).* |
| carpe, | *(part of the wrist).* | Une carpe, | a carp. |
| carouge, | *the carob tree.* | La carouge, | *the carob-bean (its fruit).* |
| coche, | *a caravan.* | Une coche, | *a sow;* (fig.) *a woman noisomely fat.* |
| cornette, | *a cornet (of a troop of horse).* | Une cornet. | *a woman's cornet, (a head dress.)* |
| couple, | *a couple (two people united together).* | Une couple, | *a pair, a yoke, a brace (two things together).* |
| cravate, | *a Croatian (soldier).* | Une cravate, | *a cravat (neck-cloth).* |
| Enseigne, | *an Ensign.* | Une enseigne, | *a sign (a sign post).* |
| Saint ême, | *Chrism (ointment used in popish worship).* | De la crème, | *cream.* |
| exemple, | *an example, a pattern.* | Une exemple, | *a copy for writing or drawing.* |
| in d'une ffaire, | *the main,* or *chief point of a business.* | La fin d'une affaire, | *the end,* or *conclusion of a thing,* or *business.* |

fin des choses, *the nicest point, the quintessence of things.*

| *Masculine.* | | *Feminine.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Un foret, | *a drill, a piercer.* | Une forêt, | *a forest.* |
| Le foudre de Jupiter, | *Jupiter's thunder-bolt.* | La foudre, | *the thunder (a poetical expression for* le tonnerre*).* |
| Un foudre de guerre, | *a warlike general, dreaded by his enemies (a figurative expression).* | | |
| Un garde, | *one of the guards.* | Une garde, | *many soldiers to guard, to wait on somebody.* |
| Un garde du corps, | *a life-guard.* | Une garde, | *a nurse (for sick persons).* |
| Le Greffe, | *the Rolls.* | La greffe, | *the graft.* |
| Le Gueule, | *the Gules (in Heraldry).* | La gueule, | *the mouth (of a dog, cat,* &c.) |
| Le hâle, | *drying weather.* | La halle, | *a market-hall.* |
| Un huitième, | *the eighth part of something.* | Une huitième, | *a sequence of* 8 *cards at piquet.* |
| Un livre, | *a book.* | Une livre, | *a pound.* |
| Un loutre, | *a sort of hat.* | Une loutre, | *an otter.* |
| Un manœuvre, | *a labourer.* | Une manœuvre, | *the working of a ship; also secret practices in an affair.* |
| Un manche, | *a handle.* | Une manche, | *a sleeve.* |
| | | La Manche, | *the Channel.* |
| Un mémoire, | *a bill, memoir, memorial.* | Une bonne mémoire, | *a good memory.* |
| Un Mestre de camp, | *a Colonel of horse.* | La Mestre de camp, | *the first company of a regiment of horse.* |
| Un mode, | *a mood, modality.* | Une mode, | *a fashion.* |
| Un môle, | *a mole, a pier.* | Une môle, | *a tympany, or moon-calf.* |
| Un moule, | *a mould (to cast).* | Une moule, | *a muscle (a shell-fish).* |
| Un mousse, | *a ship-boy.* | De la mousse, | *moss.* |
| Un bon office, | *a good turn.* | Une Office, | *a buttery.* |
| L'office divin, | *the divine service.* | | |
| Le St. Office, | *the Inquisition.* | | |
| L'hombre, | *ombre (a card-game).* | Une ombre, | *a shade, shadow.* |
| Un page, | *a page.* | Une page, | *a page of a book.* |

| *Masculine.* | | *Feminine.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| palme, | *a hand's breadth.* | Une palme, | *a branch of a palm-tree.* |
| parallèle, | *a comparison.* | Une parallèle, | *a parallel-line.* |
| pendule, | *a pendulum.* | Une pendule, | *a clock.* |
| période (*n figur.* *nse*), | *pitch, summit, end.* | Une période, | *a revolution, epocha; period (in a speech).* |
| pique, | *a spade (at cards).* | Une pique, | *a pike.* |
| pivoine, | *a gnat-snapper.* | La pivoine, | *peony.* |
| poêle, | *a stove.* | Une poele, | *a frying pan.* |
| plane, *or* latane, | *a plane-tree.* | Une plane, | *a plane (instrument of steel).* |
| poste, | *a post, place, station, employment.* | La poste, | *the post-boy, or the post-office,* &c. |
| Ponte, | *Ponto.* | La ponte (des oiseaux), | *bird's egg.* |
| pourpre, | *purples, (a sort of distemper with a violent fever).* | La pourpre, | *the purple-colour,* also *the mark of cardinalship,* &c. |
| réclame, | *the sign* or *sound, to call back a hawk.* | La réclame, | *the catch-word at the bottom of a page.* |
| Satyre, | *a sylvan god.* | Une satire, | *a lampoon, satire.* |
| somme, | *a nap.* | Une somme, | *a sum.* |
| souris, | *a smile.* | Une souris, | *a mouse.* |
| temple, | *the church.* | La tempe, | *(called by some people* la temple, *but very improperly), the temple of the head.* |
| triomphe, | *a triumph.* | Une triomphe, | *trump at cards.* |
| trompette, | *a trumpeter.* | Une trompette, | *a trumpet.* |
| voile, | *a veil.* | Une voile, | *a sail.* |
| tour, | *a turn, a trick, tour.* | Une tour, | *a tower.* |
| teneur de livres, | *a book-keeper.* | La teneur d'un acte, | *the tenor* or *contents of a writing.* |
| vase, | *a jar, a vessel.* | La vase, | *mud* or *mire.* |
| grand œuvre, | *the philosopher's stone.* | Une bonne œuvre, | *a good deed.* |

§ XIII. ***A List of Names that have also their Feminine Gender, because they are applied to both Sexes, and are Noems, but improperly. They, for the most part, follow the Rules of Adnouns, adding only e to the final letter of their Masculine, or doubling its last Consonant before e.***

| *Masc. Gender.* | | *Fem. Gender.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Dieu, | *God,* | Déesse, | *Goddess.* |
| Roi, | *King,* | Reine, | *Queen.* |
| Empereur, | *Emperor,* | Impératrice, | *Empress.* |
| Sultan, | *Sultan.* | Sultane, | *Sultana.* |
| Prince, | *Prince,* | Princesse, | *Princess.* |
| Duc, | *Duke,* | Duchesse, | *Duchess.* |
| Comte, | *Count, Earl,* | Comtesse, | *Countess.* |
| Baron, | *Baron,* | Baronne, | *Baroness.* |
| Marquis, | *Marquis,* | Marquise, | *Marchioness.* |
| Ambassadeur, | *Ambassador,* | Ambassadrice, | *his Lady.* |
| Electeur, | *Elector,* | Electrice *Electress* | *(his Lady).* |
| Régent, | *Regent,* | Régente, | *Regent.* |
| Marié, | *the Bridegroom,* | Mariée, | *the Bride.* |
| Epoux, | *Spouse,* | Epouse, | *Consort.* |
| Mari, | *Husband,* | Femme, | *Wife.* |
| Père, | *Father,* | Mère, | *Mother.* |
| Frère, | *Brother,* | Sœur, | *Sister.* |
| Fils, | *Son,* | Fille, | *Daughter.* |
| Aïeul, | *Grandfather,* | Aïeule, | *Grandmother.* |
| Cousin, | *He-Cousin,* | Cousine, | *She-Cousin.* |
| Cousin germain, | *He-first Cousin,* | Cousine germaine, | *She-first Cousin.* |
| Neveu, | *Nephew,* | Nièce, | *Niece.* |
| Parrain, | *Godfather,* | Marraine, | *God-mother.* |
| Filleul, | *God-son,* | Filleule, | *God-daughter.* |
| Parent, | *Relation, Kinsman,* | Parente, | *Kinswoman.* |
| Allié, | *Kin,* | Alliée, | *Kin.* |
| Jumeau, | *a Twin,* | Jumelle, | *a Twin.* |
| Ami, | *a Friend,* | Amie, | *a She-Friend.* |
| Compagnon, | *a He-companion,* | Compagne, | *a She-Companion.* |
| Mignon, | *Darling,* | Mignonne, | *Darling.* |
| Compère, | *a He-Gossip,* | Commère, | *a She-Gossip.* |
| Voisin, | *a He-Neighbour,* | Voisine, | *a She-Neighbour.* |
| Hôte, | *Landlord,* | Hôtesse, | *Landlady.* |
| Héritier, | *an Heir,* | Héritière, | *an Heiress.* |

| *Masc. Gender.* | | *Fem. Gender.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| f, | *a Widower,* | Veuve, | *a Widow.* |
| helin, | *an Orphan,* | Orpheline, | *a She-Orphan.* |
| tre, | *Master,* | Maîtresse, | *Mistress.* |
| iteur, | *Servant,* | Servante, | *Servant.* |
| verneur, | *Governor,* | Gouvernante, | *Governess.* |
| eur, | *He-Guardian,* | Tutrice, | *She-Guardian.* |
| lier, | *a He-Scholar,* | Ecolière, | *a She-Scholar.* |
| pupille, | *a He-Pupil,* | une Pupille, | *a She-Pupil.* |
| pprenti, | *a Prentice,* | une Apprentie, | *a Prentice-Girl.* |
| ard, | *a He-Bastard,* | Bâtarde, | *a She-Bastard* |
| teur, | *a Trustee,* | Curatrice, | *a She-Trustee.* |
| tecteur, | *Protector,* | Protectrice, | *Protectrix.* |
| faiteur, | *Benefactor,* | Bienfaitrice, | *Benefactress.* |
| liateur, | *Mediator,* | Médiatrice, | *Mediatrix.* |
| ateur, | *Testator,* | Testatrice, | *Testatrix.* |
| servateur, | *Conservator,* | Conservatrice*, | *Conservatrix.* |
| eur, | *Mover,* | Motrice*, | *Motive.* |
| iteur, | *Debtor,* | Débitrice, | *a Woman-Debtor.* |
| mandeur, | *Plaintiff,* | Demanderesse, } | *Law Terms.* |
| ndeur, | *Defendant,* | Défenderesse, } | |
| é, | *Abbot,* | Abbesse, | *Abbess* |
| ur, | *Prior,* | Prieure, | *the Prior Nun.* |
| re, | *a Priest,* | Prêtresse, | *Priestess.* |
| gieux, | *a Friar,* | Religieuse, | *a Nun.* |
| Profès, | *a profess'd Monk,* | Professe, | *a profess'd Nun.* |
| eur, | *Reader,* | Lectrice, | *(said only of the Nun who reads while the Nuns are at dinner or supper.* |
| ier, | *Porter,* | Portière, | *a Nun who keeps the door.* |
| noine, | *a Canon,* | Chanoinesse, | *a She-Canon.* |
| ecur, | *Sinner,* | Pécheresse, | *She-Sinner.* |
| geur, | *Avenger,* | Vengeresse, | *She-Avenger.* |
| teur, | *a Flatterer,* | Flatteuse, | *She-Flatterer.* |
| hanteur, | *Bewitcher,* | Enchanteresse, | *Enchantress.* |
| ur, | *an Actor,* | Actrice, | *Actress.* |
| médien, | *a Comedian,* | Comédienne, | *a She-Comedian.* |
| rer, | *a Shepherd,* | Bergère, | *a Shepherdess.* |
| Paysan, | *a Countryman,* | une Paysanne, | *a Country-Girl.* |

*Used only in these technical expressions,* Faculté conservatrice, *The conservatrix faculty;* Vertu motrice, *The motive virtue.*

| *Masc. Gender.* | | *Fem. Gender.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Chien, | *a Dog,* | Chienne, | *a Bitch* |
| Lion, | *a Lion,* | Lionne, | *a Lioness* |
| Tigre, | *a Tiger,* | Tigresse, | *a Tigress.* |
| Lévrier, | *a Greyhound,* | Levrette, | *a Greyhound-Bitch* |
| un Chat, | *a Cat,* | une Chatte, | *a She-Cat.* |
| Ivrogne, | *a Drunken Man,* | Ivrognesse, | *a drunken Woman.* |
| Courtaud, | *a short thick-set man.* | Courtaude, | *a short thick-set woman.* |
| Noiraud, | *one of a black complexion.* | Noiraude, | |
| Lourdaud, | *an aukward fellow,* | Lourdaude, | *an aukward wench* |
| Menteur, | *a Liar,* | Menteuse, | *a She-Liar.* |
| Traître, | *a Traitor.* | Traîtresse, | *a She-Traitor.* |
| Coquin, | *a Rascal, a Rogue, a Knave,* | Coquine, | *Baggage, She-Rogue.* |
| Prisonnier, | *a Prisonner,* | Prisonnière, | *a She-Prisonner.* |
| Marchand, | *a Merchant,* | Marchande, | *a Shopkeeperwoman* |
| Cuisinier, | *a man-cook,* | Cuisinière, | *a maid-cook.* |

*Names of Women, that sell any thing in Shops, take a feminine Termination in this manner:*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Boulanger, | *a Baker,* | Boulangère. |
| Meûnier, | *a Miller,* | Meûnière. |
| Fruitier, | *Fruiterer,* | Fruitière. |
| Vendeur, | *any Seller,* | Vendeuse. |
| Faiseur, | *any Workman.* | Faiseuse. |
| Ouvrier, | or *Tradesman,* | Ouvrière, &c. |

*Témoin* a Witness, *Auteur* an Author, and *Poëte* a Poet, are said of both men and women. *Possesseur* Possessor, and *Successeur* Successor, are never said of women; but we say: *Inventeur* or *Inventrice* Inventor.

*More,* a Black-moor, makes also *Moresque*; and *Suisse,* a Swiss, *Suissesse*; though we say also *Penser à la Suisse,* To think on nothing.

§ XIV. *A List of Adnouns used substantively, but which cannot stand by themselves in English, without a Noun, such as* Man, Woman, Fellow, *or some such Word, or are englished by Nouns, or a Periphrasis.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Un abandonné, | *a lewd profligate fellow.* | Une abandonnée, | *a lewd loose woman.* |

:cessoire, *what is accessary.*
:cidentel, *what is accidental.*
accouchée, { *a woman in child-bed.*
avorton, *an abortive child.*
;réable, *agreeableness.*
sentiel, *the main thing.*
ile, *usefulness.*
)nnête, *what is honest.*
:cusé,-ée, *the party accused.*
affran- } *one that of bond is*
ii,-ie, } *made free.*
udacieux, } *a daring rash*
:use, } *man* or *woman.*
)arbare, *a barbarous man.*
:eau, { *what is fairest, best in any thing, excellency,* &c.
:eau & l'ef- } *the fair and*
oyable, } *the foul.*
belle, *a fair one.*
belles, *the fair sex.*
)on, *what is good.*
illeur, { *a noisy, obstreperous fellow; a*
use, { *bawling noisy woman.*
)rillant, *the brilliancy.*
)rûlé, *something burnt.*
convié, *a guest.*
ricieux, } *a whimsical man*
se, } or *woman,*
icat,-cate, *a nice person.*
lésespéré, } *a desperate man*
:e, } or *woman.*
déterminé, { *a resolute desperate fellow.*
dévot, } *a religious man* or
)te, } *woman.*
élu, les élus, *an elect, the elect.*
entêté, } *an obstinate per-*
:e. } *son.*

Faire le fâché, { *to act the angry person, to*
-la fâchée, { *pretend to be angry.*
Le faux, *what is false.*
Le fort, { *the strongest part of a thing.*
Le foible, *the weak side of a thing.*
Les foibles, *the feeble minded.*
Le gras, *the fat.*
Le maigre, *the lean.*
Un galeux, } *a scabby man* or
-euse, } *woman.*
Un ignorant, *an ignorant fellow.*
Imprudent,-te, *a foolish fellow.*
Un impudent, } *an impudent*
-te, } *fellow* or *slut.*
Impudique, { *a lewd man* or *woman.*
Incommode, *a troublesome person.*
Impertinent,-te, { *an impertinent coxcomb,* or
Importun,-e, { *slut.*
Un inconnu, { *an unknown person.*
Un incrédule, *an unbeliever.*
Un indis- } *an indiscreet man*
cret,-ette, } or *woman.*
Un, une infâme, } *an infamous person.*
Un ingrat, } *an ungrateful*
-te, } *wretch.*
Un innocent, } *an innocent, a*
-te, } *silly person.*
Un insensé,ée, *a mad person.*
Un insolent, } *a saucy per*
-te, } *son.*
L'intérieur, { *the inward part of a thing.*
Un lénitif, *a lenitive.*
L'extérieur, { *the outward part of a thing, the outside.*

Un malheureux,-euse, *a wretch.*
La mariée, *the bride.*
Un, une misérable, *a pitiful good for nothing wretch.*
Un méchant, -ante, *a naughty person.*
Un malotru, *a sad soul.*
Le merveilleux, *what is wonderful in any thing.*
Le nécessaire, *necessaries, a competency.*
Un obstiné-ée, *an obstinate person.*
Le possible, *what is possible.*
Le principal, *the principal.*
Un préservatif, *a preservative.*
Un purgatif, *a purgative.*
Un orgueilleux,-euse, *a proud, haughty person.*
L'impossible, *impossibilities.*
Une prude, *a prude.*
Les prédestinés, *those that are predestinated.*
Le réel, *the reality.*
Un refait, *a draw-game.*
Un réfractaire, *a refractory person.*
Un, une ridicule, *a ridiculous person.*
Le superflu, *that which is superfluous; superfluity.*
Le sec, *the dry*
L'humide, *the moist.*
Le froid, *the cold.*
Le chaud, *the hot.*
Un suffisant, *a conceited coxcomb.*
Le comique, *the comical part of a thing or story.*
Le tragique, *the tragical part.*
Le temporel, *a competency; the temporalities of the Church.*
Un rusé-ée, *a cunning, sly man or woman, a sharp blade.*
Sanguin,-ine, *of a sanguine constitution.*
Un sensuel, *a voluptuous person.*
Un sage, *a wise man.*
Le sublime, *the lofty style.*
Le solide, *what is solid.*
Un superstitieux,-euse, *a superstitious man or woman.*
Un extraordinaire, *an extraordinary case.*
L'extrême, *extreme.*
Un, une téméraire, *a rash person.*
Le taillant, Le tranchant, *the edge.*
Le vif, *the quick.*
Un vide, *an empty place.*
Le vrai, *what is true.*

*Besides adjectives of Nations, as,* un Anglois, *an English man;* une Françoise, *a French woman,* &c.

*Examples.*

Le vrai *ou* le faux d'une chose; *The truth* or *falsehood of something.*
Tenter l'impossible; *To attempt impossibilities.*
Joindre l'agréable à l'utile; *To join profit to pleasure.*
C'est une orgueilleuse; *She is a proud creature,* &c.

*oreover, some words are both adnouns and nouns together, as* adultère, chagrin, colère, sacrilége, politique: *as,* Com- re un adultère, *to commit an adultery;* une femme adultère, *dulteress*; le chagrin, *grief;* un homme chagrin, *a morose, sh man:* un homme colère, *a passionate man;* la colère de , *the wrath of God.*

## XV. *A List of Nouns masculine ending in* e *not sounded.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| rdage, | *the boarding of a ship.* | Ancêtres, | *ancestors.* |
| | | Ancrage, | *anchorage.* |
| ne, | *an abyss.* | Ange, | *an angel.* |
| ssoire, | *accessary.* | Archange, | *an archangel.* |
| stiche, | *an acrostick* | Angle, | *an angle.* |
| , | *deed, an act.* | Anniversaire, | *anniversary.* |
| inicule, | *an aid.* | Anonyme, | *anonymous.* |
| rbe, | *an adverb.* | Anthropophage, | *a man-eater.* |
| tère, | *adultery.* | Antidote, | *an antidote.* |
| rage, | *the assize,* or *price of a commodity, set by a magistrate.* | Antimoine, | *antimony.* |
| | | Antipodes, | *Antipodes.* |
| | | Antre, | *a den, a cave.* |
| | *age.* | Aoriste, | *an aorist.* |
| | | Aphthes, | *aphthæ.* |
| es, | *love-feasts.* | Appanage, | *appendage.* |
| ave, | *a threatening monitory.* | Apogée, | *apogeon.* |
| | | Apologue, | *apologue.* |
| tage, | *stock-jobbing.* | Apophthegme, | *apophthegm.* |
| e, | *an eagle.* | Aposème, | *an apozem.* |
| tre, | *alabaster.* | Aposthème, | *an imposthume.* |
| ge, | *mixture.* | Apôtre, | *an apostle.* |
| ole, | *a hole in the honey-comb, a socket.* | Apothicaire, | *an apothecary.* |
| | | Arbitrage, | *an arbitration.* |
| le, | *amble,* or *pace.* | Arbitre, | *Umpire* or *Will.* |
| re, | *amber.* | Arbre, | *a tree.* |
| hithéâtre, | *an amphi-theatre.* | Arbuste, | *a shrub.* |
| | | Archétype, | *archetype.* |
| icisme, | *an anglicism.* | Argue, | *a machine to wire-draw gold.* |
| hronisme, | *anachronism.* | | |
| hème, | *anathema.* | Aromate, | *sweet smelling herb* |

**Arpentage,** *the survey of lands.*
**Arrérages,** *arrears.*
**Article,** *an article.*
**Artifice,** *artifice, trick.*
**Arrhes,** *earnest penny.*
**Ane,** *an ass.*
**Astérisme,** *an asterism.*
**Astérisque,** *an asterisk.*
**Asthme,** *an asthma.*
**Astragale,** *astragal.*
**Astre,** *a star.*
**Astrolabe,** *an astrolabe.*
**Asyle,** *asylum, a sanctuary.*
**Attelage,** *a set of coach-horses.*
**Attérage,** *landing.*
**Atre,** *the hearth in a chimney.*
**Avage,** *a duty which the hangman has in some places every market-day.*
**Avantage,** *an advantage.*
**Auditoire,** *a congregation, audience.*
**Augure,** *an augury, omen.*
**Aune,** *an elder-tree.*
**Aunage,** *measuring by ells.*
**Auspice,** *auspice.*
**Automate,** *an automaton.*
**Axe,** *an axis, axle-tree.*
**Axiome,** *an axiom.*
**Azymes,** *azymes.*
**Badinage,** *wantonness.*
**Bagage,** *baggage, goods.*
**Ballustre,** *balluster, rails.*
**Bandage,** *a truss, ligature.*
**Barbouillage,** *dawbing.*
**Barrage,** *a duty for passing toll.*
**Baptême,** *a christening.*
**Baptistère,** *a certificate out of a church-book.*
**Baume,** *balsam.*
**Bénéfice,** *a living, benefit.*
**Beurre,** *butter.*
**Blâme,** *blame.*
**Blasphême,** *a blasphemy.*
**Bièvre,** *a beaver.*
**Billonage,** *the debasing the coin.*
**Bitume,** *bitumen.*
**Blocage,** *rubbish.*
**Bocage,** *a grove.*
**Bordage,** *the side planks of a ship.*
**Bouge,** *a closet, a little room.*
**Bousillage,** *mud-walling.*
**Branchage,** *branches.*
**Branle,** *motion* or *dance.*
**Brassage,** *the coining of money.*
**Bréviaire,** *breviary.*
**Breuvage,** *a potion, a draught.*
**Bronze,** *cast copper.*
**Buffle,** *a buffalo, a wild ox.*
**Busque,** *a busk.*
**Buste,** *a bust.*
**Câble,** *a cable.*
**Cadâvre,** *a corpse.*
**Câdre,** *a frame.*
**Caducée,** *caduceum, Mercury's wand.*
**Caïque,** *galley-boat.*
**Calibre,** *kind, size.*
**Calice,** *chalice.*
**Calme,** *calm.*
**Calvaire,** *a hill's name.*
**Camphre,** *camphire.*
**Cancre,** *a crab-fish.*
**Cantique,** *a spiritual song.*
**Capitole,** *the capitol.*
**Capitulaire,** *capitular.*
**Caprice,** *a capriee, whim.*
**Capricorne** *the Capricorn.*
**Capuce,** *a cowl.*
**Caractère,** *a character.*
**Carême,**
**Carénage,** *a careening.*

ıage, *slaughter.*
elage, *the paving of a room.*
'osse, *a coach.*
ilage, *a cartilage.*
ouche, *a cartridge.*
:ulaire, *a register-book of a monastery.*
ıue, *a helmet.*
ıfalque, *a catafalk (used in obsequies).*
ılogue, *a catalogue, list.*
ıplasme, *a cataplasm, a poultice.*
ırre, *a catarrh.*
échisme, *a catechism.*
tère, *a cautery.*
re, *a cedar-tree.*
tre, *the centre.*
acle, *a cenacle.*
otaphe, *a cenotaph.*
taure, *a centaur.*
tuple, *a hundred fold.*
cle, *a circle.*
ne, *a circle black and blue under the eye.*
te, *cestus.*
mbranle, *the mantle-piece of a chimney.*
ncre, *a shanker.*
ınge, *exchange.*
ınvre, *hemp.*
pitre, *a chapter.*
riage, *the carriage.*
ırme, *charm, hornbeam.*
ırnage, *flesh-time.*
ıuffage, *fuel.*
ıume, *stubble.*
ne, *an oak.*
ivre-feuille, *honey-suckle.*
f-d'œuvre, *a master-piece.*
ffre, *a cypher.*
ême, *chrism.*
Chyle, *chyle.*
Chômage, *rest.*
Ciboire, *pyx, a cup.*
Cidre, *cider.*
Cierge, *a wax-taper.*
Cygne, *a swan.*
Cilice, *hair-cloth.*
Cylindre, *a cylinder.*
Cimeterre, *a cimeter.*
Cimetière, *a church-yard.*
Cinabre, *cinabar.*
Cinnamome, *cinnamon-tree.*
Cinquième, *the fifth part.*
Cintre, *an arch.*
Cippe, (*a term of architecture*).
Cirage, *the waxing of a thing.*
Ciroène, *a sear-cloth.*
Circonflexe, *circumflex.*
Cirque, *circus.*
Cistre, *a sistrum.*
Clystère, *a clyster.*
Cloäque, *a common sewer.*
Cloître, *a cloister.*
Cloporte, *a wood-louse.*
Coche, *a caravan.*
Code, *the code.*
Codicile, *a codicil.*
Coffre, *a trunk.*
Collyre, *a collyrium.*
Collége, *a college.*
Collègue, *copartner in an office.*
Colloque, *a conference.*
Comble, *the top of a thing.*
Colosse, *a colossus.*
Colure, *colure.*
Commerce, *commerce, trade.*
Conclave, *the conclave.*
Concile, *a council.*
Conciliabule, *a conventicle.*
Concombre, *a cucumber.*
Concubinage, *concubinage.*
Cône, *a cone.*

Congre, *a conger.*
Comte, *a count, earl.*
Compte, *an account, reckoning.*
Conte, *a story, tale.*
Contraire, *contrary.*
Contraste, *contrast, opposite.*
Contre-ordre, *counter-order.*
Contrôle, *a register-book, a roll.*
Conventicule, *conventicle.*
Corpuscule, *a corpuscle.*
Cortége, *a train* or *retinue.*
Coryphée, *Coripheus, the chief.*
Corollaire, *a corollary.*
Cothurne, *a buskin.*
Courage, *courage.*
Coude, *the elbow.*
Couvercle, *a lid.*
Crépuscule, *the twilight.*
Crible, *a sieve.*
Cube, *a cube.*
Cuivre, *copper.*
Culte, *worship.*
Coutre, *coulter.*
Crâne, *a skull.*
Crêpe, *a crape.*
Crime, *a crime.*
Crocodile, *a crocodile.*
Cycle, *cycle.*
Dactyle, *a dactil.*
Déboire, *grief a choak-pear.*
Décalogue, *the decalogue.*
Décagone, *a decagon.*
Dédale, *a maze.*
Décombres, *rubbish.*
Décompte, *discounting.*
Définitoire, *a chapter in a con-*
Décuple, *tenfold.* [*gregation.*
Délire, *delirium.*
Délivre, *the secundine.*
Déluge, *a flood.*
Démérite, *demerit.*
Denticules *dentelli.*
Dentifrice, *dentifrice*
Dépilatoire, *depilatory.*
Derrière, *the back-side.*
Désastre, *the disaster.*
Désavantage, *a disadvantage.*
Désordre, *a disorder.*
Diâble, *devil.*
Diadème, *a diadem.*
Diagnostique, *diagnostic.*
Dialecte, *dialect.*
Dialogue, *a dialogue.*
Diamètre, *the diameter.*
Diaphragme, *the diaphragm.*
Dictame, *garden-ginger.*
Dièse, *a sharp, diesis.*
Digeste, *digest.*
Diocèse, *a diocese.*
Disque, *disk, quoit.*
Distique, *a distich.*
Dictionnaire, *a dictionary.*
Dimanche, *Sunday.*
Dilème, *a dilemma.*
Dimissoire, *a dimissory.*
Dire, *and* ouï-dire, *a hearsay.*
Dividende, *a dividend.*
Divorce, *divorce.*
Dogme, *a dogma.*
Dogue, *a mastiff-dog.*
Domaine, *domain.*
Domicile, *abode, dwelling-place.*
Dommage, *a damage.*
Douaire, *a dowry.*
Double, *a double.*
Doute, *a doubt.*
Dromadaire, *a dromedary.*
Echange, *exchange.*
Ecoufle, *a puttock*
Edifice, *an edifice*
Ellébore, *hellebore.*
Eloge, *eulogy, encomium.*
Emétique, *emetick.*
Empire, *an empire*

ɔyrée, *the highest heaven.*
'ecolonne, *intercolumniation*
ıousiasme, *enthusiasm.*
'acte, *an interlude.*
ierme, *epidermis.*
didyme, *Epididymis.*
gastre, *epigastrium.*
logue, *an epilogue.*
ɔode, *an episode.*
halame, *epithalamium.*
hème, *epithema.*
ôme, *an epitome.*
ilibre, *equilibrium.*
ipage, *an equipage.*
inoxe, *equinox.*
andre, *a bustle.*
avage, *slavery.*
ɔmpte, *discount.*
phage, *œsophagus.*
ace, *space.*
ge, *a story.*
age, *stallage, sample.*
, *a being.*
ngile, *the gospel.*
mple, *a pattern.*
mplaire, *a copy.*
rgue, *the exergue of a medal.*
rcice, *an exercise.*
rde, *an exordium.*
de, *Exodus.*
rcisme, *exorcism.*
aordinaire, { *extraordinary case.*
ême, *an extreme.*
e, *the top, height of a thing.*
ıge, *hay-making.*
ôme, *a phantom.*
, { *fare, light-house, (a watch-tower).*
inage, *fascine-work.*
e, *ostentation.*

Fastes, *the Roman calendar.*
Fauchage, *mowing.*
Fenêtrage, *the windows.*
Fermage, *farm-rent.*
Feurre, *straw.*
Feûtre, *felt, a scurvy hat.*
Fiacre, *a hackney-coach.*
Fifre, *a fife* or *flute.*
Filage, *spinning.*
Filigrane, *filigree.*
Filtre, *charm, love-potion.*
Finage, { *the extent* or *liberties of a jurisdiction.*
Flegme, *phlegm.*
Fleuve, *a great river.*
Foible, *a weak side.*
Foie, *the liver.*
Fossile, *fossil.*
Follicule, *follicle.*
Formulaire, *a form,*
Fouage, *hearth-money.*
Fourrage, *fodder, forage.*
Frêne, *an ash-tree.*
Fromage, *cheese.*
Frontispice, *frontispiece.*
Gage, *pledge.*
Gages, { *(only in the plural) salary, wages.*
Gallicisme, *Gallicism.*
Genièvre, *juniper-berry.*
Génie, *genius.*
Genre, *kind, gender, genius.*
Germe, *sperm, germe.*
Geste, *gesture, action.*
Gingembre, *ginger*
Girofle, *clove.*
Gîte, *a dwelling-place.*
Glaire, *the white of an egg.*
Glaive, *a sword.*
Globe, *a globe.*
Globule, *a globule*

Glossaire, *a glossary.*
Golfe, *a gulph.*
Gouffre, *whirlpool, swallow.*
Grade, *a degree.*
Grêffe, *the rolls.*
Grimoire *a conjuring book.*
Groupe, *a group.*
Hâle, *drying weather.*
Haut-de-chausse, *small-clothes.*
Hâvre, *haven.*
Héliotrope, *a turnsol.*
Hémisphère, *an hemisphere.*
Hémistiche, *hemistich.*
Hermitage, *an hermitage.*
Hêtre, *a beech-tree.*
Hiéroglyphe, *hieroglyphick.*
Hippogriffe, *hippogriff.*
Holocauste, *a burnt-offering.*
Hombre, *Humber.*
Homicide, *a murder.*
Hommage, *a homage.*
Horoscope, *a horoscope.*
Homme, *a man.*
Hongre, *a gelding.*
Hospice, *an hospital.*
Hôte, *a landlord.*
Huitième, *the eighth part.*
Jade, *a green sort of precious stone*
Jambage, *jambs, stroke.*
Jaune, *the yolk of an egg.*
Jaspe, *jasper.*
Jeûne, *a fast.*
Jule, a *Julio (an Italian five pence).*
Iambe, *an Iambick verse.*
Incendie, *a conflagration.*
Indice, *a sign.*
In-douze, *in twelve.*
In-seize, *in sixteen.*
Inceste *an incest.*
Incube *an incubus.*
Insecte, *an insect.*
Interlope, *interloper.*
Intermède, *an interlude.*
Interrègne, *an interreign.*
Interstice, *an interval of time.*
Intervalle, *an interval.*
Inventaire, *an inventory.*
Isthme, *isthmus.*
Itinéraire, *an itinerary.*
Laboratoire, *a laboratory.*
Labourage, *tillage.*
Labyrinthe, *a labyrinth.*
Langage, *a language.*
Langes, *swaddling-clothes.*
Lavage, *a washing.*
Légiste, *a civilian.*
Légume, *pulse, vegetables.*
Leurre, *a lure for a hawk.*
Libelle, *a libel.*
Liége, *cork.*
Lierre, *ivy.*
Lièvre, *a hare.*
Limbe, *limb* or *border.*
Limbes, *limbs.*
Linge, *linen.*
Livre, *a book.*
Lobe, *a lobe.*
Louage, *letting out, hiring.*
Logarithme, *logarithm.*
Logogriphe, *logogriph.*
Lombes, *the loins.*
Louvre, *a palace.*
Lucre, *gain, profit.*
Luminaire, *the light of a place.*
Lustre, *lustre, brightness,* also *a branched candlestick, a chandelier.*
Luxe, *luxury.*
Mâle, *a male.*
Maléfice, *witchcraft.*
Manche, *a handle.*

| | |
|---|---|
| nége, | *a riding-school.* |
| nes, | *the manes* or *ghost.* |
| nifeste, | *a manifesto.* |
| nipule, | *maniple.* |
| nque, | *want, lack.* |
| rbre, | *marble.* |
| riage, | *marriage.* |
| rtyre, | *martyrdom.* |
| sque, | *a mask.* |
| ssacre, | *massacre.* |
| nsolée, | *a mausoleum.* |
| compte, | *a mistake in reckoning.* |
| lianoche, | *a mid-night meal.* |
| mbre, | *a member.* |
| lange, | *a mixture.* |
| moire, | *bill, memoirs.* |
| nage, | *house-keeping.* |
| nsonge, | *a lie.* |
| rcure, | *Mercury.* |
| rite, | *merit, desert.* |
| le, | *a black-bird.* |
| senière, | *mesentery.* |
| surage, | *measuring.* |
| téore, | *a meteor.* |
| ble, | *furniture of the house.* |
| rtre, | *a murder.* |
| roscope, | *a microscope.* |
| le, | *a mile.* |
| lésime, | *the date of a medal.* |
| lième, | *the thousandth part.* |
| nistère, | *ministry.* |
| acle, | *a miracle.* |
| bile, | *a motion.* |
| dèle, | *a model, sample.* |
| dule, | *module.* |
| le, | *a mole.* |
| narque, | *a monarch.* |
| nde, | *the world.* |
| nastère, | *a monastery.* |
| Monochorde, | *a monochord.* |
| Monitoire, | *a monitory.* |
| Monogramme, | *a monogram.* |
| Monologue, | *a monologue.* |
| Monopole, | *a monopoly.* |
| Monosyllabe, | *a monosyllable.* |
| Monstre, | *a monster.* |
| Moule, | *a mould.* |
| Muffle, | *a muzzle.* |
| Murmure, | *murmur* |
| Muscle, | *a muscle.* |
| Myrte, | *the myrtle-tree.* |
| Mystère, | *a mystery.* |
| Narcisse, | *a daffodil.* |
| Naufrage, | *a ship-wreck.* |
| Navire, | *a ship* |
| Nécessaire, | *the necessaries.* |
| Négoce, | *trade.* |
| Neuvième, | *the ninth part.* |
| Nitre, | *nitre.* |
| Nombre, | *a number.* |
| Nuage, | *a cloud.* |
| Obélisque, | *an obelisk.* |
| Observatoire, | *an observatory.* |
| Obstacle, | *an hindrance.* |
| Octogone, | *octagon.* |
| Office, | *a good turn.* |
| Ogre, | *an ogre.* |
| Olympe, | *Olympus.* |
| Ombrage, | *shade, umbrage.* |
| Oncle, | *an uncle.* |
| Ongle, | *a nail.* |
| Opprobre, | *reproach.* |
| Opuscule, | *a little book.* |
| Oracle, | *an oracle* |
| Orage, | *a storm.* |
| Oratoire, | *an oratory.* |
| Orbe, | *an orb.* |
| Ordinaire, | *ordinary, the mail.* |
| Ordre, | *an order.* |
| Organe, | *an organ.* |

Orgasme (medic term), *orgasm.*
Orge, *barley.*
Orgue, *a pair of organs.*
Orifice, *orifice, opening.*
Orle (in heraldry), *an orle.*
Orme, *an elm-tree.*
Otage, *an hostage.*
Outrage, *outrage, affront.*
Ouvrage, *work.*
Pacte, *a pact.*
Paganisme, *paganism.*
Pagne, *cotton-cloth*
Pampre, *vine-branch.*
Panache, *a bunch of feathers.*
Panégyrique, *panegyrick.*
Papisme, *popery.*
Paradoxe, *a paradox.*
Paraphraste, *paraphrast.*
Parage, *latitude.*
Paragraphe, *a paragraph.*
Parafe, *a flourish added to one's name in singing.*
Paranymphe, *a public act in the university of Paris.*
Parnasse, *Parnassus.*
Parricide, *a parricide.*
Parterre, *a flower-garden, the pit (in a play-house).*
Participe, *a participle.*
Parjure, *a perjury.*
Passage, *a passage.*
Patrimoine, *patrimony.*
Patronage, *patronage, advowson.*
Pentamètre, *a pentameter.*
Péage, *toll, custom.*
Pécule, *money got by saving.*
Pédicule, *pedicle.*
Pégase, *Pegasus.*
Permesse, *Parnassus.*
Peigne, *a comb.*
Pélerinage, *a pilgrimage.*
Pène, *a bolt (of a lock).*
Pénates, *Penates*
Pentagone, *a pentagon.*
Péricarde, *pericardium.*
Péricrâne, *pericranium.*
Périoste, *periosteum.*
Périgée, *perigee.*
Péristyle, *peristyle.*
Perpendicule, *a plummet.*
Péritoine, *peritoneum.*
Pétale, *petal.*
Pétalisme, *petalism.*
Pétase, *the winged hat of Mercury.*
Peuple, *people.*
Phare, *a light-house.*
Phénomène, *phenomenon.*
Philtre, *a philter.*
Phosphore, *phosphorus.*
Piastre, *a piece of eight.*
Piége, *a snare, trap.*
Pilastre, *pilaster.*
Pillage, *plunder.*
Pinde, *the pindus.*
Pivoine, *a gnat-snapper.*
Plâne, Platane, *a plane-tree.*
Planisphère, *a planisphere.*
Plâtre, *plaster, parget.*
Pléonasme, *pleonasm.*
Plumage, *the feather of a bird.*
Poëme, *a poem.*
Poêle, *a stove, a pall.*
Poivre, *pepper.*
Pôle, *the pole.*
Polygone, *a polygon.*
Polype, *a polypus.*
Poncire, *a great lemon.*
Porche, *a porch.*
Pore, *a pore.*
Porphyre, *porphyry.*
Portage, *the carriage*
Porte-mouchettes, *a snuff-pan.*

ique, *a portico, piazza.*
ible, *might, possibility.*
ge, *potage, porridge.*
ce, *a thumb, an inch.*
mbule, *preamble.*
epte, *precept.*
he, *a religious meeting.*
ipice, *a precipice.*
udice, *hurt, detriment.*
ude, *the prelude.*
age, *presage, omen.*
bytère, *the parsonage.*
exte, *a pretence.*
cipe, *a principle.*
me, *a prism.*
ilége, *a privilege.*
blème, *a problem.*
lige, *a prodigy.*
ches, *kinsfolks, relations.*
gramme, *a college-bill.*
égomène, *a proem.*
ogue, *a prologue.*
nontoire, *a promontory.*
ne, *a morning sermon.*
gnostique, *a prognostick.*
ocole, *a precedent-book.*
otype, *the first pattern.*
verbe, *a proverb.*
ume, *a psalm.*
itre, *a desk.*
gatoire, *a purgatory.*
dernes, *two fours.*
drangle, *a quadrangle.*
dre, Câdre, *a frame.*
druple, *fourfold.*
ntième ? { *What day of the month?*
torze, *a quatorze at piquet.*
tre, *a four.*
trième, *a fourth part.*
nes, *two cinks* or *fives.*
nzième, *a fifteenth.*

Râble, *the back of a hare.*
Raccommodage, *mending.*
Raffinage, *the refining of sugar.*
Râle, *a rattling in the throat.*
Ramage, *the chirping of birds.*
Rance, *rusty.*
Rapiècetage, *patch'd work.*
Ravage, *havock.*
Réagrave, *the last commination.*
Réceptacle, *receptacle, nest.*
Réciproque, *return, like.*
Rectangle, *a rectangle.*
Réfectoire, *refectory.*
Régime, *a course of a diet.*
Règne, *reign.*
Relâche, *respite.*
Reliquaire, *a shrine.*
Remède, *a remedy.*
Repaire, *the haunt.*
Répertoire, *a repertory.*
Reptile, *a creeping thing.*
Réquisitoire, *a request.*
Rosaire, *great beads.*
Rouge-gorge, *a robin red-breast.*
Rouge-queue, *a red-tail.*
Reproche, *a reproach.*
Reste, *remainder, rest.*
Rêve, *a dream.*
Réverbère, *reverberate fire.*
Rhume, *a cold, a rheum.*
Risque, *a risk.*
Rivage, *a bank* or *shore.*
Rôle, *a roll, list, part.*
Royaume, *a kingdom.*
Rhombe, *a rhomb.*
Rhomboïde, *a rhomboid.*
Sâble, *sand.*
Sabre, *a broad sword.*
Sacrifice, *a sacrifice.*
Sacrilège, *a sacrilege.*
Sagittaire, *Sagittarius.*
Salaire, *salary*

Sacerdoce, *priesthood.*
Sacre, *coronation.*
Saltpêtre, *salt-petre.*
Sanctuaire, *a sanctuary.*
Sandaraque, *sandarack.*
Saule, *a sallow* or *willow tree.*
Savonnage, *soaping the linen.*
Scandale, *scandal.*
Scapulaire, *a scapulary.*
Sceptre, *a sceptre.*
Schisme, *a schism.*
Sciage, *sawing.*
Scribe, *a scribe.*
Scrupule, *a scruple.*
Seigle, *rye.*
Semestre, *the space of six months.*
Séminaire, *a seminary.*
Septième, *the seventh part.*
Sépulchre. *a grave.*
Séquestre, *sequestration.*
Service, *service, good turn.*
Sesterce, *sesterce.*
Sexe, *a sex.*
Siècle, *an age, a century.*
Siége, *a seat, see, siege.*
Signe, *a sign, token.*
Silence, *a silence.*
Simples, *the simples.*
Sinople, *sinople.*
Sixième, *a sixth part.*
Soliloque, *a soliloquy.*
Solécisme, *a solecism.*
Solstice, *solstice.*
Sommaire, *a summary.*
Somme, *nap, sleep, repose.*
Songe, *a dream.*
Sophisme, *sophism.*
Sortilége, *witch-craft.*
Souffle, *the breath.*
Soufre, *sulphur.*
Spécifique, *a specific.*
Spectre, *a ghost.*
Sphéroïde, *a spheroid.*
Squelette, *a skeleton.*
Squirre, *a schirrus.*
Stade, *a furlong.*
Stalle, *a seat (in the choir).*
Stigmates, *prints, marks.*
Style, *a style.*
Stocfiche, *stockfish.*
Suaire, *a cloth to wrap up the face of dead people.*
Subside, *subsidy.*
Subterfuge, *a shift.*
Sucre, *sugar.*
Succube, *a succubus.*
Suffrage, *a vote.*
Supplice, *a torment.*
Suspensoire, *a truss.*
Sycomore, *the sycamore-tree.*
Syllogisme, *a syllogism.*
Symbole, *symbol, badge.*
Symptôme, *a symptom.*
Synode, *a synod.*
Synonyme, *a synonyme.*
Système, *a system.*
Store, *a curtain.*
Tabernacle, *tabernacle.*
Tarse, *Tarsus.*
Tartre, *Tartar.*
Télescope, *a telescope.*
Témoignage, *a testimony.*
Temple, *a temple.*
Tendre, *tenderness.*
Terme, *a term, bound.*
Ternes, *two trois, six*
Territoire, *a territory.*
Tertre, *rising ground.*
Tête-à-tête, *tete-a-tete*
Texte, *a text.*
Théâtre, *a theatre, stage.*
Thème, *a theme.*
Thermomètre, *a weather-glass.*

| | |
|---|---|
| ·se, | *a thyrse.* |
| e, | *a tiger, the Tigris.* |
| bre, | *stamp, a clock-bell.* |
| amarre, | *thundering noise.* |
| ·, | *a title.* |
| te, | *a volume.* |
| nerre, | *the thunder.* |
| ique, | *a topic.* |
| me-broche, | *a jack.* |
| èze, | *a trapezium.* |
| llage, | *trellis, arbour-work.* |
| le, | *trefoil.* |
| nble, | *an aspen-tree.* |
| ge, | *choice.* |
| ngle, | *a triangle.* |
| otage, | *knitting.* |
| lyphe, | *a triglyph.* |
| mphe, | *a triumph.* |
| le, | *the triple.* |
| otage, | *a mish-mash.* |
| chisques, s. pl. | *a trochisk.* |
| ène, | *a privet.* |
| ne, | *a throne.* |
| phée, | *a trophy.* |
| pique, | *a tropick.* |
| uble, | *a trouble.* |
| e, | *a tube.* |
| ercule, | *a tubercle.* |
| ulte, | *a tumult.* |
| rbe, | *a theorba.* |
| e, | *a type, figure.* |
| arme, | *an uproar.* |
| ·, | *a vase.* |
| deville, | *a ballad.* |
| icule, | *a vehicle.* |
| Ventre, | *the belly.* |
| Ventricule, | *the ventricle* |
| Verbe, | *a verb* |
| Verbiage, | *idle words* |
| Verre, | *a glass* |
| Vertige, | *a dizziness.* |
| Vésicatoire, | *a blister.* |
| Vestibule, | *a hall, entry.* |
| Vestige, | *footstep* |
| Viatique, | *viaticum.* |
| Vice, | *vice.* |
| Vidame, | *a vidame.* |
| Vignoble, | *a vineyard.* |
| Vinaigre, | *vinegar.* |
| Vingtième, | *the twentieth part.* |
| Visage, | *the face.* |
| Viscère, | *a bowel.* |
| Vitrage, | *glazing.* |
| Vivres, | *victuals, food, provisions.* |
| Voile, | *a veil.* |
| Voisinage, | *the neighbourhood.* |
| Vocabulaire, | *a vocabulary* |
| Volume, | *a volume.* |
| Voyage, | *a journey* |
| Usage, | *usage, use, custom* |
| Ulcère, | *an ulcer.* |
| Ustensile, | *an utensil.* |
| Vide, | *an empty place.* |
| Vulgaire, | *the vulgar.* |
| Vulnéraire, | *a vulnerary.* |
| Zèle, | *a zeal.* |
| Zéphire (a god), | *Zephyrus.* |
| Zodiaque, | *the zodiac.* |
| Zoophyte, | *zoophytes* |

have made two more Lists: one of the English words that derived from the French, and which, being derived from n or Greek, are quite alike or very near: the other of words ame, or nearly alike in sound, but different in spelling and ification. But as this has been already too much swelled, I placed them in my Elements.

FINIS.

# Books for the Use of Schools.

PRINTED FOR

LONGMAN, BROWN & CO. AND OTHER PROPRIETORS.

AN ABRIDGEMENT of AINSWORTH'S LATIN DICTIONARY, designed for the Use of Schools. A new edition, materially improved by JOHN CAREY, LL.D. Price 12*s.* bound.

A DICTIONARY of the ENGLISH LANGUAGE, in which the words are deduced from their Originals, explained in their different Meanings, and authorised by the Names of the Writers in whose Works they are found. By SAMUEL JOHNSON, LL.D. Abridged from the Rev. H. J. TODD'S corrected and enlarged Quarto Edition. By ALEXANDER CHALMERS, F.S.A. 1 Vol. 8vo. Price 14*s.* boards. Also an Edition in MINIATURE, including a copious Vocabulary of Greek, Latin, and Scriptural proper Names. By THOMAS REES, LL.D., F.S.A. 18mo. With Portrait. Price 3*s.* bound.

ROMAN ANTIQUITIES; or an Account of the Manners and Customs of the Romans, designed chiefly to illustrate the Latin Classics, By ALEXANDER ADAM, LL.D. The twelfth edition, corrected and enlarged by the Rev. J. R. MAJOR, M.A., M.R.S.L., Head Master of the King's College School. 1 Vol. 8vo. Price 10*s.* 6*d.* boards.

A UNIVERSAL GAZETTEER, or Geographical Dictionary of the World. Founded on the Works of Brookes and Walker. By GEORGE LANDMANN, Esq., C. E., late Lieutenant-Colonel in the Corps of Royal Engineers. 8vo. boards. Price 14*s.*

## BY ISAAC WATTS, D.D.

A SHORT VIEW of the WHOLE SCRIPTURE HISTORY, with a Continuation of the Jewish Affairs from the Old Testament till the Time of Christ, represented in a way of Question and Answer. A new edition, carefully revised and corrected. 12mo. bound, 4*s.*

LOGIC; or the Right Use of Reason, in the Enquiry after Truth. A new Edition, 12mo. Price 4*s.* bound.

THE IMPROVEMENT of the MIND; or a Supplement to the Art of Logic. Fs.cap 8vo. Price 5*s.* 6*d.* boards.

LECTIONES SELECTÆ; or Select Latin Lessons, in Morality History, and Biography, adapted to the capacity of young beginners. By the Rev. JOHN ADAMS, A.M. Thirteenth Edition. Price 1*s.* bound.

A COLLECTION OF ENGLISH EXERCISES, translated from the writings of Cicero, for schoolboys to re-translate into Latin, and adapted to the principal Rules in the Eton Syntax. By WILLIAM ELLIS, M.A. Fifteenth Edition. Price 3*s.* 6*d.* bound.

A KEY to the second and third parts of the above. Fourth Edition. Price 3*s.* bound.

SELECTÆ E PROFANIS SCRIPTORIBUS HISTORIÆ. New Edition, improved. Price 3*s.* 6*d.* bound.

## WORKS BY THE LATE DR. WANOSTROCHT.

A GRAMMAR of the FRENCH LANGUAGE, with Practical Exercises. The eighteenth edition, revised and corrected by L. T. VENTOUILLAC. Price 4*s.* bound.

A KEY to the EXERCISES in the ABOVE. The seventh edition, carefully revised by L. T. VENTOUILLAC, Price 3*s.* bound.

A CLASSICAL VOCABULARY, French and English; to which is added a Collection of Letters, Familiar and Commercial, Bills of Exchange, Promissory Notes, &c., in both Languages. The Tenth Edition, carefully revised by V. WANOSTROCHT, LL.D. Price 3*s.* bound.

LES AVENTURES de TELEMAQUE, Fils d'Ulysse. Par M. FENELON. Nouvelle édition, avec la Signification des Mots les plus difficiles en Anglais au bas de chaque Page. A laquelle on a ajouté un petit Dictionnaire Mythologique et Géographique pour faciliter l'Intelligence de cet Ouvrage. Le tout soigneusement revu et corrigé d'aprés les meilleures éditions de Paris. Price 4*s.* 6*d.* bound.

Abrégé de l'Histoire de GIL BLAS de Santillane de M. LE SAGE. Cinquième édition, revue et corrigée, avec la Signification des Mots en Anglais au bas de chaque Page. Price 6*s.* bound.

*** In this Edition all freedoms of expression have been carefully expunged.

NUMA POMPILIUS, Second ROI de ROME. PAR FLORIAN. Sixiéme édition, avec la Signification Anglais des Idiomes, et des Mots les plus difficiles, au bas de chaque Page. Revue et soigneusement corrigée. Price 4*s.* bound.

HISTOIRE DE L'EMPIRE DE RUSSIE sous Pierre le Grand, par VOLTAIRE. Avec la Signification des Idiotismes en Anglais. Price 5*s.* bound.

RECUEIL CHOISI de Faits Historiques et de Contes Moraux; avec la Signification des Mots en Anglais au bas de chaque Page. New Edition. 12mo. 3*s.* bound.

SEQUEL to DR. WANOSTROCHT'S RECUEIL CHOISI; or Nouveau Choix de Faits Historiques et d'Anecdotes instructives; avec la Signification des Idiotismes en Anglais. Price 4*s.* bound.

LA LITURGIE, ou Formulaire des Priéres Publiques, selon l'usage de l'Eglise Anglicane. 32mo. Price 4*s.* bound.

## PERRIN'S ELEMENTARY FRENCH WORKS.

Revised and Edited by C. GNOS.

A NEW and EASY METHOD of LEARNING the SPELLING and PRONUNCIATION of the FRENCH LANGUAGE. Twenty-fifth edition. Price 2*s.* bound.

ENTERTAINING and INSTRUCTIVE EXERCISES, with the RULES of the FRENCH SYNTAX. Thirteenth edition. Price 3*s.* 6*d.* bound.

FABLES AMUSANTES. Twenty-second edition. Price 2*s.* 6*d.* bound.

## BY W. DUVERGER,

THE ENGLISH and FRENCH LANGUAGES COMPARED in their GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTIONS. Part 1. An Introduction to the Syntax of both Languages. The ninth edition. Price 4*s.* bound.

A COMPARISON BETWEEN the IDIOMS, GENIUS, and PHRASEOLOGY of the FRENCH and ENGLISH LANGUAGES. Fifth edition, carefully revised and corrected. 12mo. Price 4*s.* 6*d.* bound.

RECUEIL des MEILLEURES PIECES du THEATRE d'EDUCATION de MADAME DE GENLIS. Troisième édition. Price 6*s.* bound.

RECUEIL des PLUS BELLES SCENES de MOLIERE. Quatrième édition. Price 6*s.* bound.

---

NEUMAN and BARETTI'S DICTIONARY of the SPANISH and ENGLISH LANGUAGES. Fifth edition, thoroughly revised and enlarged. By M. Seone, M.D. 2 Vols. 8vo. Price £1 12*s.* A pocket edition may also be had, price 8*s.* bound.

TYRONIS THESAURUS; or, Entick's Latin-English Dictionary, containing all the Words and Phrases proper for reading the Classics in both Languages, accurately collected from the most approved Latin Authors; with a Classical Index of the Preterperfects and Supines of Verbs. By William Crakelt, A.M. New Edition, carefully revised throughout by the Rev. M. G. Sarjant, B.A. of Queen's College, Oxford; with the Syllables carefully accentuated by John Carey, LL.D. In square 12mo. 5*s.* 6*d.* bound, or with the English-Latin part, 9*s.*

---

GEOGRAPHY for CHILDREN; or a Short and Easy Method of Teaching and Learning Geography. Designed principally for the Use of Schools. The thirty-second edition. 12mo. Price 2*s.* bound.

AN INTRODUCTION to the ARTS and SCIENCES, adapted to the capacity of the Young. Originally compiled by R. Turner, LL.D, A new edition, altered and improved by Robert Mudie. 18mo. Price 4*s.* bound.

THE LOOKING-GLASS for the MIND; or Intellectual Mirror: being a Collection of Stories and Tales chiefly translated from Berquin's L'Ami des Enfans. Illustrated with Engravings on Wood. 12mo. Price 3*s.* 6*d.* bound.

MATURINI CORDERII COLLOQUIA SELECTA; or Select Colloquies of Mathurin Cordier. The twenty-first edition, revised and corrected. By Samuel Loggin, A.M. Price 2*s.* bound.

THE LONDON VOCABULARY, English and Latin, designed for the Use of Schools. By Dr. James Greenwood. Revised and arranged systematically, to advance the Learner in scientific, as well as verbal, Knowledge. By Nathaniel Howard. A new edition, in 18mo. Price 1*s.* 6*d.* bound.